Robert Snow.


THE COLLECTION OF
Theodorus Bailey Myers
PRESENTED BY
HIS WIDOW
Catalina Juliana Mason Myers
HIS DAUGHTER
Cassie Mason Myers Julian-James
HIS DAUGHTER-IN-LAW
Edmonia Taylor Phelps Mason
TO THE
New York Public Library
ASTOR, LENOX AND TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
IN MEMORY OF
Theodorus Bailey Myers
AND HIS SON
Theodorus Bailey Myers Mason
LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER
UNITED STATES NAVY
1899


M.r DE RAPIN THOYRAS
Vertue sculp.

AN ABRIDGEMENT OF THE HISTORY of *ENGLAND*.

BEING A

SUMMARY of Mr. RAPIN's History

AND

Mr. TINDAL's Continuation,

From the Landing of *JULIUS CÆSAR*, to the Death of King *GEORGE* I.

WITH

The CHARACTERS of the Kings at large, the State of the Public Revenues, Exchequer, and Coins, at and after the CONQUEST;

AND ALSO

LISTS of the Peers created in each Reign, Knights of the Garter and Bath, Baronets, Bishops, Chancellors, Chief-Justices, Judges, and Admirals, to the Present Times.

ILLUSTRATED

With the HEADS and MONUMENTS of the KINGS, QUEENS, &c.

On Seventy COPPER PLATES.

VOL. I.

LONDON:

Printed for JOHN and PAUL KNAPTON, at the *Crown* in *Ludgate-Street*. MDCCXLVII.

A SUMMARY OF THE History of *ENGLAND*, FROM THE Invasion of *JULIUS CÆSAR*, to the Death of King *GEORGE* I.

INTRODUCTION.

THE name of *BRITAIN* is most probably derived from the *Phœnician* words, *Barat-anac*, the land of Tin; or *Brithan*, outer: But the Natives were wont to call themselves *Cumri*.

The whole Island is of a triangular form: Whereof the south-side contains about three hundred miles; the east-side about seven hundred; and the western about eight hundred.

It was not originally peopled by *Brutus*, (from whom some would derive the name of *Britain*) and a body of *Trojans* he brought along with him: But its first inhabitants were *Celtæ* or *Gauls*, that came over from the neighbouring part of the Continent, then called *Gallia*, now *France* and *Flanders*.

The *Belgæ* are said by some writers to settle in the eastern, the *Spaniards* in the western, and the *Hibernians* or *Irish* in the northern parts of *Great-Britain*: However, it makes no variation in what is said before, for the people included under those several denominations did all originally come from *Gaul*.

There was a great affinity and likeness between the Religion, Manners, Customs, and Complexion of the *Gauls* and *Britons*.

The *Britons* were generally tall and well-made, and yellow-haired: Their constitution was so good, that they frequently lived to a hundred and twenty years.

The use of cloathes was scarce known in the Island; none but the inhabitants of the southern coast covering their nakedness with the skins of wild beasts, carelessly thrown over them.

They were wont, by way of ornament, to make incisions in their bodies, in the shape of flowers, trees, and animals; which they painted of a sky-colour, with the juice of woad that never wore out.

They lived in woods, in huts covered over with skins, boughs, or turf.

Their usual food was milk, and flesh got by hunting. As for domestic fowls, hens and geese, if they bred any it was for their pleasure, being strictly forbid by their Religion to eat them: neither did they eat any fish.

Their towns, or rather villages, were only a confused parcel of huts placed at a little distance from each other, without any order or distinction of streets. And they generally stood in the middle of a wood, the avenues whereof were defended with slight ramparts of earth, or with the trees that were felled to clear the ground.

Notwithstanding this plain manner of living, they were of quick of apprehension, nay, even of greater penetration than their neighbours the *Gauls*; and most eminent for honesty and integrity.

This remarkable custom they had; that ten brothers or more lived all together, and had their wives in common.

They fought, for the most part, in chariots; from whence, furiously driving among their enemies, they flung about their darts: But when they had to deal with the horse, they left their chariots to fight on foot with advantage.

Though they were well situated for trade, they had not any large vessels, nor ventured to sea beyond the coasts of *Gaul*. Their chief commerce was with the *Phœnician* Merchants, who, after the discovery of the Island, exported every year great quantities of tin.

They had in a manner the same gods with the *Gauls*; as *Dis* and *Samothes*. But the *Britons* had a very particular veneration for *Andate*, goddess of Victory.

Both

Both Nations had amongst them *Druids*, *Bards*, and *Eubates*. The *Druids* had the care and direction of all religious matters; and held Misletoe in great veneration and esteem.

As to their Government; they were divided into several petty States, with a Head or King over each. Upon imminent dangers, one of these Kings was, by common consent, chosen chief Commander, whose power was limited, as well as the time of his Administration.

Ireland was originally peopled by a colony from *Spain*: And was at first called *Scotland*, and the inhabitants *Scots*.

In the 5th century, after the birth of Christ, a body of them crossing the *Irish* sea, came and settled in the North part of *Britain*, which from them came to be called *Scotland*.

Before this time, that wild country was peopled only by such of the *Picts*, or painted *Britons*, as were driven thither, or had fled before the *Roman* arms.

Some *Scottish* Authors pretend, that *Gathelus* son of *Cecrops* King of *Athens*, who married *Scota* daughter of *Pharaoh* King of *Egypt*, was the founder of the *Scots* Monarchy, about 330 years before Christ; but this is too fabulous to admit of any credit.

The BRITONS *and* ROMANS.

JULIUS CÆSAR forms the design of conquering *Britain*; out of a thirst of glory, and a desire of enlarging the bounds of the *Roman* Empire. *Ant. C.* 55.

But to colour his ambition, he makes use of this pretence, That the *Britons* had assisted the *Gauls*.

Not being able to receive an account of the island from the Merchants trading to *Britain*, he sends *Volusenus* to view the coasts.

The *Britons* send Ambassadors to *J. Cæsar* with offers of obedience, in order to divert him from his attempt.

He sends *Comius* to persuade them to make an alliance with the *Romans*: They, for a reason unknown, imprison *Comius*.

Ant. C. *J. Cæsar* embarks two legions on board eighty transports; and orders the horse to follow in eighteen more.

1st expedition. He lands on the 26th of *August*, about five in the afternoon, at *Ritupæ*, or the shore at the mouth of the river that goes up to *Richborough*.

The *Britons* are routed by him. Whereupon, they set *Comius* at liberty, and send Ambassadors to sue for peace; which is granted them, four days after *Cæsar*'s landing.

The *Roman* horse are forced back to *Gaul*, by a storm, which shatters the *Roman* gallies on the *British* shore.

The *Britons* are encouraged thereby to break the treaty; and attacking the seventh legion obtain some advantage.

They are even so bold as to attack the *Roman* camp; but, being repulsed, they sue for and obtain peace.

J. Cæsar having repaired his fleet, leaves *Britain* about the 20th of *September*, and returns to *Gaul*.

He makes a second expedition into *Britain*.

Embarks five legions, and two thousand horse, on board six hundred ships, and twenty-eight gallies; and setting sail from *Calais* lands about *Dover*, without opposition.

The *Britons* are routed a second time.

Cassibelaunus, the *British* General, attacks the *Romans*, and is repulsed.

He has the advantage of them in the next rencounter, but the day following, the *Britons* are entirely defeated.

J. Cæsar passes the *Thames*, at *Coway-Stakes*, near *Walton* upon *Thames*, in *Surry*, in sight of the enemy.

The *Trinobantes*, and other States, submit to him: He takes *Cassibelaunus*'s chief City, supposed to be *Verulamium*.

Cingetorix, *Carvilius*, *Taximagulus*, and *Segonax*, attack the *Roman* camp: *Cingetorix* is taken prisoner.

Cassibelaunus sues for peace, and obtains it; upon promising to pay the *Romans* an annual tribute, *&c.* which is paid by *Tenuantius* and *Cunobeline*.

AUGUSTUS. AUGUSTUS resolves to go and subdue the *Britons*: They appease him, and regularly pay the tribute.

Ann. C. 40. CALIGULA. CALIGULA, upon the persuasion of *Adminius*, undertakes an expedition against *Britain*; which he carries on in a most ridiculous manner.

CLAUDIUS. CLAUDIUS, upon the sollicitation of *Bericus*, forms the design of conquering *Britain*.

He demands the tribute due to the Empire, which is refused.

There-

Thereupon he orders *Plautius* to go into *Britain* with an army; which lands without any resistance: And defeats *Togodumnus* and *Caractacus*. *Ann. C.* 43.

The *Romans* pass a river in sight of the enemies; by whom they are put in disorder, but defeat them at last.

The *Britons* retire beyond the *Thames*, where the *Romans* follow them.

Claudius arrives in *Britain*, and defeats the *Islanders*, advancing as far a *Camelodunum*. 44.

He behaves with great moderation towards the conquered, who erect a Temple to him, and pay him divine honours.

He returns to *Rome*, after a six months absence.

Plautius continues the war, and conquers the isle of *Wight*. 45.

He is recalled; and succeeded by *Ostorius Scapula*; who builds forts to confine the *Britons* between the rivers *Avon* and *Severn*. 50.

Camelodunum is made a military colony, and *London* a trading colony.

That part of *Britain* lying between the *Thames* and the sea, is reduced into a province under the name of *Britannia Prima*.

The *Iceni*, and other neighbouring Nations, unite against *Ostorius*, and are defeated.

The *Silures* also, headed by *Caractacus*, stand upon their defence, and are routed.

Caractacus is delivered up to the *Romans*, by *Cartismandua* Queen of the *Brigantes*, to whom he had fled for protection.

He is brought to *Rome*, and makes a remarkable speech to the Emperor.

The *Britons*, especially the *Silures*, gain several advantages over the *Romans*. 52.

Ostorius dies with vexation: And is succeeded by *Aulus Didius*. 53.

Venutius, King of the *Brigantes*, is persuaded by his Queen *Cartismandua* to enter into an Alliance with the *Romans*.

But, upon a family quarrel, the *Romans* espouse her cause, and he is forced to declare against them; which causes the war to be renewed.

A. Didius is succeeded by *Veranius*.

He dies; and *Suetonius Paulinus* comes in his room: Who conquers the isle of *Mona*, or *Anglesey*. NERO. 57. 58.

Ann. C. 60. *Boadicea*, Queen of the *Iceni*, causes a general insurrection against the *Romans*.

Eighty thousand of them are massacred.

Suetonius Paulinus, receiving advice thereof, leaves *Mona*, and marches against the *Britons*, who had an army of 100,000 men, commanded by *Boadicea*.

The *Britons* are entirely defeated; and *Boadicea* poisons herself.

62. *Paulinus* is removed, by the artifices of *J. Classicianus* the Procurator; and *Petronius Turpilianus* sent in his room.

65. After whom came *Trebellius Maximus*; *Vectius Bolanus*;

75. *Petilius Cerealis*; and *Julius Frontinus*.

GALBA, &c. *J. Frontinus* subdues the *Silures*.

Julius Agricola is made Governor of *Britain*.

VESPASIAN. Who makes seven campains against the *Britons*.

He defeats the *Ordovices*, and conquers the Isle of *Mona*.

78. Causes forts to be built in several places.

TITUS. Induces the *Britons* to conform to the *Roman* customs.

DOMITIAN. He carries his conquests into *Scotland*, beyond the *Friths* of *Dunbritton* and *Edinburgh*: And raises forts between those two *Friths*.

Galgacus, the *British* General, is defeated,

Domitian recalls *Agricola*, and poisons him.

That part of *Britain* lying South of the two *Friths*, is reduced to a *Roman* Province.

The *Britons* begin to be civilized.

85. *Sallustius Lucullus* is appointed Governor of *Britain*.

HADRIAN. The *Caledonians* make inroads into the *Roman* Province.

Julius Severus is constituted Governor; but is soon succeeded by *Priscus Licinius*.

117.

120. The Emperor *Hadrian* comes over to *Britain* in person, on purpose to subdue the *Caledonians*.

He causes a rampart of earth to be thrown up, covered with turf, from the mouth of the *Tine*, to *Solway-Frith*, eighty miles in length.

The southern *Britons* embrace the *Roman* customs and manners, and grow civilized.

The *Caledonians* destroy *Hadrian*'s rampart in several places.

ANTONINUS. *Lollius Urbicus* is sent to stop their ravages. He subdues the *Brigantes*, who endeavoured to shake off the *Roman* yoke.

PIUS. And then raises another rampart on the neck of land between the *Frith* of *Forth*, and the *Frith* of *Clyde*, about thirty-seven miles in length.

138.

140.

Cal-

Calphurnius Agricola is constituted Governor of *Britain*: *Ann. C.*
In his time *Lucius*, a *British* King, embraces Christianity. M. AURELIUS.
The *Caledonians* cut in pieces the *Roman* army, and make great ravages in their Province. 165.
M. Aurelius sends *Ulpius Marcellus* to stop their progress, who soon puts an end to that dangerous war. 183. COMMODUS.
He restores the antient discipline in the *Roman* army. 184.
But is ill-rewarded for it by the Emperor, who recalls him, and had like to put him to death. 185.
Perennis breaks or calls home all the old Officers, and puts his creatures in their place; whereupon the army mutinies. 186. 187.
They send a detachment to *Rome*, to demand justice of the Emperor against him: The Emperor delivers him up to the soldiers, and they execute him upon the spot.
Pertinax is sent to suppress the mutinous temper of the army. 188.
Resolving to proceed according to the rigour of military discipline, the ninth legion mutinies, and he is left for dead among the slain.
He gains however his point, but desiring to be dismissed, is succeeded by *Clodius Albinus*; who is presently recalled, and *Junius Severus* put in his room. 190.
Clodius Albinus is made Governor again by the Emperor *Pertinax*. 192. 193.
Albinus is, upon the death of *Julian*, proclaimed Emperor by his army in *Britain*; and at the same time *Septimius Severus* in *Pannonia*, and *Pescennius Niger* in *Syria*, receive the same honour from their respective armies. PERTINAX. ALBINUS. SEPTIMUS. PESCENNIUS.
Severus pretends to be willing to share the Empire with *Albinus*, in order to amuse him.
Then he marches against *Pescennius*, who is slain in battle.
And afterwards comes to an engagement near *Lyons* with *Albinus*, who is also defeated and slain. 196.
Britain is divided by *Severus* into two governments.
The *Caledonians* make incursions into the northern provinces. 205.
Severus comes over into *Britain* to chastise their insolence, though he was 60 years old. 207.
Refuses to grant them peace, unless they would submit to his mercy; but they will not.
He penetrates to the utmost parts of the North, in which expedition he lost 50,000 men.

Ann. C. After all, he thinks it best to relinquish the northern parts.

And so causes a wall of free-stone, sixty eight miles in length, to be built in the place where *Hadrian* had before made his rampart.

He leaves the command of the army to his son *Caracalla*, and returns to *York*.

Caracalla suffers the soldiers to grow licentious, whereupon the *Caledonians* revolt.

Severus orders the Rebels to be all massacred: He dies at *York*.

CARACALLA *and* GETA. *Caracalla* and *Geta*, *Severus*'s two sons, make a peace with the *Caledonians*, and return to *Rome*.

Some of the thirty tyrants were acknowledged, if not personally present, in *Britain*.

259. *Bonosus* was born in *Britain*.

276. PROBUS. *Probus* was the first that permitted the *Britons* to plant vines.

After subduing the *Vandals* and *Burgundians*, he sends over great numbers into *Britain*.

These new colonies are thought to have been settled on *Gogmagog-Hill* near *Cambridge*.

285. DIOCLESIAN *in the East*. MAXIMIAN *in the West*. *Carausius* is sent with a fleet to scour the seas, about *Britain*, of the piratical *Franks* and *Saxons*.

He grows immensely rich, and assumes the Imperial Purple.

288. *Maximian* advances as far as *Gaul*, with design to chastise him; but is forced to associate him in the Empire, and leaves him *Britain* for his share.

290. But being desirous to get rid of his associate, he sends *Constantius Chlorus* against him with an army.

Carausius is slain by *Allectus*, who takes the title of Emperor.

300. *Allectus* is killed by *Asclepiodotus*, who assuming likewise the Imperial dignity is slain afterwards in a battle.

304. GALERIUS *and* CONSTANTIUS. *Diocletian* and *Maximian* resign the Empire, and are succeeded by *Galerius* and *Constantius*.

Some commotions arising in *Britain*, *Constantius* comes over, and dies at *York*.

Constantine, his successor, is supposed to have been born in *Britain*, at *Colchester*.

307. CONSTANTINE. The *Britons* live under him in great tranquillity: And the Christian Religion flourishes.

He divides *Britain* into three Provinces, *viz.* *Britannia Prima*, *Britannia Secunda*, and *Maxima Cæsariensis*.

This

This last is afterwards divided into two. *Ann. C.*

Martinus is made Governor of *Britain*. CON-

Paulus a Notary sent by the Emperor, commits numberless extortions, and cruelly oppresses the *Britons*. STANTIUS.

The *Picts* and *Scots* making incursions into the Province of *Britain*, *Lupicinus* is dispatched by *Julian* to stop their progress; but is recalled before he reaches *London*. 353. 361. JULIAN.

The *Picts*, *Scots*, *Attacots*, *Franks*, and *Saxons*, invade at once the *Roman* Province.

Nectaridius, guardian of the coasts, and Duke *Buchobaudes* are defeated and slain by these new enemies. 364. VALENTINIAN I.

Severus and *Jovinus* are successively sent to put a stop to their ravages, but in vain. 365.

Theodosius the elder is commissioned to command the *Roman* forces in *Britain*. 366. 367.

He defeats them in several encounters, and drives them out of the *Roman* Province.

Repairs *London* and other places: Builds fortresses between the two Firths, and makes a fifth Province, which he names *Valentia*. 368.

Maximus, Governor of *Britain*, designs to reduce the whole island. VALENTINIAN II.

In order to that, he engages the *Picts* to join him against the *Scots*. GRATIAN.

The *Scots* are forced to fly into *Ireland*, and the adjacent isles.

Gratian associates *Theodosius* in the Empire. 378.

Maximus, being displeased at that, forms the project of making himself Emperor. GRATIAN.

The *Scots* endeavour to recover their Dominions, and make an irruption, but are driven back into *Ireland*. THEODOSIUS.

Maximus grants a peace to the *Irish*.

He assumes the Imperial dignity, and causes *Gratian* to be assassinated, but is himself vanquished and beheaded by *Theodosius*. 388.

Honorius appoints *Victorinus* Governor of *Britain*, and sends him to curb the insolence of the *Picts*. 393. ARCADIUS.

Victorinus treats the *Picts* ill: They recall the *Scots*, and invite over *Fergus* II. from *Denmark*. HONORIUS.

They chuse him for their King, and re-enter *Britain*.

Fergus takes the fortresses built by *Theodosius*, and, passing over *Severus*'s wall, lays the *Roman* Province waste. 403.

The *Britons* resolve to chuse an Emperor of their own. Their choice falls upon *Marcus*, an Officer, who is quickly slain or dethroned. 408.

Gratian

Ann. C. *Gratian* is chosen next, and meets with the like fate.

Constantine, a common soldier, is the third raised to the Imperial dignity.

He beats back the northern people into their Country, and makes a peace with them.

Not content to reign in *Britain*, he forms the design of becoming master of the whole Empire.

409. He assembles an army, and passes into *Gaul*.

Honorius, being pressed on all sides, is forced to own *Constantine* for his associate in the Empire.

Constantine, not satisfied therewith, associates his son *Constans*, and marches towards *Italy*, to dethrone *Honorius*.

Gerontius, the General of *Constans*, causes *Maximus* to be proclaimed Emperor, and besieges *Constans* in *Vienne*, who is slain in a sally he made.

Constantine retires to *Arles*, where he is besieged by *Gerontius*.

Honorius sends Count *Constantius* to curb the insolence of his opposers.

Gerontius flies into *Spain*, and is slain by his own people.

Constantine is taken at *Arles*, sent to the Emperor, and beheaded.

410. The *Britons* being thus left to themselves are reduced to great extremities.

Their defenceless Country is ravaged by the *Picts* and *Scots*. In this their extremity they implore in vain the *Romans* assistance.

Honorius voluntarily resigns the sovereignty of *Britain*, and discharges the inhabitants of their allegiance to the Empire.

This only serves to render the *Britons* more miserable; and the more exposed to their enemies.

Ætius sends them a legion, which is recalled soon after.

The Commander of that legion advises them to inure themselves to arms, and to repair *Severus*'s wall, which they accordingly do.

426, *or* 427. The *Romans* take their last farewel of *Britain*.

THE

THE *Picts* and *Scots* thereupon renew their hostilities, and make several breaches in *Severus*'s wall. *Ann. C.*

The *Britons* abandon part of their Country, and retire more southward.

Greham, Regent of *Scotland*, makes a peace with them.

Eugenius II. sends to demand from the *Britons* all the lands possessed by the *Scots* before the late treaty.

His Ambassadors are sent back with an insulting answer, and a war declared between the two Nations.

The *Britons* are beat, with the loss of 14,000 men.

They obtain a peace upon very hard terms; being obliged to give up all the Country North of the *Humber*.

The *Britons* after this elect several Kings. A cruel famine rages in *Britain*.

Great multitudes of the inhabitants fly into *Armorica*.

The *Picts* and *Scots* break the treaty, and passing the *Humber* ravage the whole Country.

The *Britons* apply once more to *Ætius* for assistance.

Not being able to obtain any, they chuse several Monarchs, and among the rest *Vortigern*. 445.

He calls a General Assembly, wherein he proposes to call in the *Saxons* to the assistance of the *Britons*.

His aim in it was to strengthen himself as well against his own subjects, by whom he was hated, as foreign enemies.

It was resolved, that the isle of *Thanet* in *Kent* should be given to the *Saxons*.

Ambassadors are appointed to go and negotiate the affair with those people.

Origin of the *Saxons* and *Angles*.

Their Manners, Government, and Religion.

BEFORE

Ann. C. BEFORE the birth of *Jesus Christ* the *Britons* were idolaters, and worshipped *Andate*, &c.

They were converted to Christianity, not by *Joseph* of *Arimathæa*, but most probably by *St. Paul.*

King *Lucius* sends Ambassadors, to Pope *Eleutherius*, desiring him to send Missionaries to instruct him in the Christian faith.

St. Alban, the first *British* Martyr, was martyred at *Verulam.*

314. There were three *British* Bishops at the Council of *Arles.*

359. And some also at that of *Ariminum.*

Pelagianism prevailed in *Britain.*

Germanus, *Lupus*, and *Severus* are sent from *Gaul* to confute those Heretics.

Germanus erects schools in *Britain.*

BOOK II.

Containing the space of about 130 *years.*

THE *British* Ambassadors apply to the *Saxons* for their assistance.

Witigisil, the *Saxon* General, promises to stand by them in their pressing necessities.

He engages to send over an aid of 9000 men, on condition the *Saxons* were put in possession of the Isle of *Thanet.*

The *Saxons* then form the project of settling in *Britain.*

Vortigern goes to the sea-side, to receive the *Saxon* forces.

449. *Hengist* and *Horsa* land at *Ebbesfleet* in the Isle of *Thanet*, and are put in possession of that Isle.

Vortigern leads the *Saxons* against the *Picts* and *Scots*, who were advanced as far as *Stamford.*

The *Caledonians* are defeated several times, and forced to retire into their own Country.

Vortigern gives *Hengist* and *Horsa* some lands in *Lincolnshire*; on which they build *Thong-caster.*

The *Britons* thereupon murmur at *Vortigern.*

Hengist

Hengist proposes to him to send for more *Saxon* forces, *Ann. C.*
to secure himself against his subjects.

He instills into the *Saxons* a desire of settling in *Britain.*

A fresh body of *Saxons*, with *Escus* and *Rowena*, come 450.
over.

Vortigern renders himself more absolute, and *Hengist* behaves with greater haughtiness than before.

Hengist invites *Vortigern* to *Thong-caster*, and places *Rowena* before him, at an entertainment, in order to ensnare him.

Vortigern falls in love with her, and demands her in marriage.

Whereupon, he divorces his wife, and marries *Rowena.*

Gives *Kent* to *Hengist* and *Horsa* upon that consideration, at which the *Britons* murmur.

Hengist inspires *Vortigern* with jealousy against *Ambrosius Aurelianus*, and persuades him to send for more *Saxon* forces.

Vortigern complying with that proposal, *Octa* and *Ebusa* 452.
come over with numerous troops.

They ravage the *Orcades*, and, having obliged the *Picts* to retire northwards, settle on the north-side of the *Tine.*

Afterwards they drive the *Britons* beyond the *Humber.*

Hengist sends for continual Supplies from *Germany*, without asking *Vortigern*'s leave.

Vortimer, eldest son to *Vortigern*, encourages the *Britons* 453.
to drive out the *Saxons.*

He compels his father to associate him in the Govern- 454.
ment, and leave to him the administration of affairs.

The *Britons* resolve to drive out the *Saxons* by force of arms.

Hengist concludes a peace with the *Picts*; and by their means makes a powerful diversion in the North.

The battle of *Eglesford* is fought; in which *Horsa* and 455.
Catigern are slain.

Hengist takes after it the title of King of *Kent.*

A battle is fought near *Crecanford*, wherein *Vortimer* is 457.
entirely defeated.

He is forced to shut himself up in *London*, till he could draw another army together.

Hengist ravages the Country, and burns all the Churches that were in his way.

Some of the *Britons* retire into *Armorica*, or *Bretagne.*

The *Britons* assemble to consider of means to prevent their own total destruction.

Guithelin, Archbishop of *London*, advises them to apply to *Aldroen*, King of *Armorica*, for assistance.

He

Ann. C. He sends them an aid of 10,000 men, commanded by
458. *Ambrosius Aurelianus.*

Vortimer's party grows jealous of *Ambrosius*, as if he was come to usurp the Crown.

Ambrosius and *Guithelin* conspire the ruin of *Vortigern* and *Vortimer.*

Vortigern and *Vortimer* accuse *Ambrosius* of aspiring to the Crown.

Civil wars break out among the *Britons*, which last till 465.

458. They come to a battle near *Catgwaloph*, whereby they were greatly weakened.

Some of the *Britons* abandon their own Country, and go and settle at *Brittenburge* in *Holland.*

465. The contending Princes part the Kingdom between them; the two *British* Kings having the *Eastern*, and *Ambrosius* the *Western* part.

466. The war breaks out again between the *Britons* and *Saxons*: And *Wipped* is slain.

Arthur, at fourteen years of age, makes his first appearance in *Ambrosius*'s army.

470. He defeats, and slays with his own hand, *Howel* King of *Areclute.*

473. The *Britons* are defeated in a fourth battle fought by them with the *Saxons.*

475. *Vortimer* dies.

A peace is concluded between the *Britons* and *Saxons.*

Hengist, not satisfied with his acquisitions, tries to enlarge them by treachery.

He causes 300 *British* Lords to be murthered.

Vortigern is at the same time taken prisoner, and forced to deliver up to the *Saxons* a great tract of land bordering upon *Kent.*

This is afterwards divided into *Sussex*, *Essex*, and *Middlesex.*

Hengist ravages the neighbouring Country, and takes *London*, *Lincoln*, and *Winchester.*

Vortigern's subjects desert him, and acknowledge *Ambrosius* for their Sovereign.

476. *Ambrosius* takes the title of Emperor.

Hengist invites over more *Saxons* into *Britain.*

477. *Ella* arrives, with his sons *Baldulph*, *Colgrin*, and *Cissa.*

He lands at *Whitering*, but not without great opposition.

Hengist gives those soldiers leave that desired it to return into *Germany.*

The

The *Britons* sollicit *Ambrosius* to take up arms again, after *Ann. C.* a nine years respite from war.

They turn their arms against *Vortigern*, and had like to surprize him.

He retires to a Castle in *Wales*, where he is burned to death. 485.

Ambrosius, now sole Monarch, renews the war against the *Saxons*.

He gains a victory over *Ella*, and his two sons: *Ella* retires to his strong holds. 487.

Hengist King of *Kent* dies, and is succeeded by his son *Escus*. 488.

Ambrosius retakes *London*, *Winchester*, and *Lincoln*.

Arthur makes a voyage to *Jerusalem*. 490.

Ambrosius, by the assistance of *Samson* Bishop of *Dol*, regulates the affairs of the Church.

The *Northumbrian Saxons* are defeated by Prince *Arthur*, who was returned from his voyage. 491.

Ella besieges *Andred-Cester*, in *Sussex*.

He assumes the title of King of the *South-Saxons*, and founds the Kingdom of *Sussex*. 492.

He is also elected Monarch, or General of the *Saxons*, in *Hengist*'s room.

Arthur defeats again the *Northumbrian Saxons*, near the river *Dugles*. 494.

Cerdic, a famous *Saxon* General, arrives in *Britain*, with his son *Cenric*. 495.

Northumberland is divided by *Octa* into *Bernicia* and *Deïra*.

Colgrin shuts himself up in *York*, where he is besieged by *Arthur*.

Cador, *Arthur*'s nephew, defeats *Baldulph*.

Cerdic lands at *Cerdic's-Ora*, and beats *Cador* with the forces sent against him.

Arthur raises the siege of *York*, and retires to a place of safety.

Baldulph and *Colgrin* commit great ravages in *Lancashire*.

Pascentius, son of *Vortigern*, endeavours to get some of his father's Dominions by force of arms: But is entirely routed by *Arthur*. 496.

He is defeated a second time, and forced to submit and sue for pardon. 497.

Ambrosius gives him *Brecknock* and *Radnor* in *Wales*.

The *Saxons* conquer the Kingdom of *Galway* from *Galwan*, *Arthur*'s nephew.

Porta, with fresh supplies of *Saxons*, lands at *Portsmouth*: Which obliges *Arthur* to quit the field, and retire to *London*. 501.

Hoel,

Ann. C. *Hoel*, King of *Armorica*, comes and brings a body of troops to *Arthur*'s assistance.

With this aid, *Arthur* defeats *Baldulph* and *Colgrin*, and afterwards *Cerdic*.

The *Saxons* and *Britons* make very great preparations for war.

Baldulph and *Colgrin* are defeated by *Arthur* near *Gainsford* in *Cornwal*.

508. The *Britons* are entirely routed by *Cerdic* near *Chardford*; and *Ambrosius* (called otherwise *Nazaleod*) is slain.

Arthur (otherwise named *Uther Pendragon*) is elected Monarch in the room of *Ambrosius*.

He beats the *Northumbrians* near the river *Ribroyt*, and *Baldulph* and *Colgrin* near *Cadbury*.

511. The *Saxons* are entirely routed, at the battle of *Badon-Hill*; and *Baldulph* and *Colgrin* slain.

The *Picts* make a diversion in the North, by besieging *Areclute*. *Arthur* compels them to raise the siege, and ravages their Country. His wife *Gueniver* dies, and is buried in the County of *Angus*.

Hoel King of *Armorica* returns into his own Country.

512. *Escus* King of *Kent* dies, and is succeeded by his son *Octa*.

514. *Ella* King of *Sussex*, and Monarch of the *Saxons*, dies. He is succeeded in his Kingdom by his son *Cissa*; and in the Monarchy by *Cerdic*.

A new supply of *Saxons* comes over, under the conduct of *Stuff* and *Withgar*.

514. Several bloody battles are fought between the *Britons* and
519. *Saxons*.

519. The *Britons* are entirely defeated.

Arthur concludes a peace with *Cerdic*, and grants him a tract of land, containing the present Counties of *Hampshire* and *Somersetshire*.

Cerdic founds the Kingdom of *Wessex*, and is crowned King at *Winchester*.

Arthur rebuilds some of the Churches that had been destroyed in the wars.

527. *Essex* and *Middlesex* having hitherto been governed by a deputy under the King of *Kent*, *Erchenwin* assumes the title of King of *Essex*.

The *Angles*, under the conduct of *Uffa*, arrive in *Britain*; and settling in the Country along the Eastern shore found the Kingdom of *East-Anglia*.

Arthur goes into *Armorica* to the assistance of his nephew *Hoel*.

Cerdic, in the mean time, breaks the peace, makes some conquests, and gains a signal victory over the *Britons* at *Cherdsley*. *Ann. C.*

Arthur returns to *Britain*, and makes a new treaty with *Cerdic*. 528.

Hoel King of *Armorica* applies again to *Arthur* for assistance; who, before his departure, appoints his nephew *Modred* regent, and entrusts him with the care of the Queen his wife.

Cerdic takes the Isle of *Wight*. 530.

Modred, having debauched *Arthur*'s Queen, publicly marries her; and then seizes his Dominions, and is crowned at *London*.

He enters into a league with *Cerdic*, to whom he resigns that part of *Britain*, containing at present *Cornwal*, *Berkshire*, *Wiltshire*, *Devonshire*, and *Dorsetshire*.

Cerdic invites over many *Saxons* and *Jutes* to people his new Dominions.

He is crowned a second time.

Repairs his strong holds, and takes all other precautions against Prince *Arthur*.

Gives *Stuff* and *Withgar* the Isle of *Wight*.

Cerdic dies; and is succeeded, both in the Kingdom of *Wessex*, and in the Monarchy of the *Saxons*, by his son *Cenric*. 534.

Octa King of *Kent* dies. His Successor was his son *Hermenric*.

Arthur returns from *Armorica*, and resolves to undertake the recovery of his Dominions. He defeats *Modred* twice. 535.

They come to a third engagement, wherein *Arthur* and *Modred* are both slain. 535. 537.

Arthur sends his Crown, before he expired, to *Constantine*, the son of *Cador*. 542.

He is buried at *Glastonbury*.

The *Britons* lose all courage after the death of *Arthur*: And great numbers of them go and settle in *Armorica*, which was called *Bretagne* from them.

Ida, an *Angle*, arrives at *Flamborough* in *Yorkshire*, and is acknowledged King of *Northumberland*. 547.

The *Britons* make an effort to recover part of their lands from *Cenric*, but are repulsed. 552.

Two sons of *Modred*, attempting to dethrone *Constantine*, are slabbed by him. 555.

Ida, first King of *Northumberland*, dies. After his death 559.

Ann. C. *Northumberland* is divided into the two Kingdoms of *Bernicia* and *Deïra*.

560. *Cenric* dies, and is succeeded, both in the Kingdom of *Wessex*, and the dignity of Monarch, by *Ceaulin*.

Ceaulin forms vast projects to enlarge his Dominions; and makes vast preparations.

After the death of *Arthur*, the *Britons* live in a sort of Anarchy; and cantle out their country into little independent States.

564. *Hermenric* King of *Kent* dies; and is succeeded by *Ethelbert*, who resolves to put a stop to *Ceaulin*'s ambitious projects, and declares war against him: But is twice defeated, and forced to sue for peace.

571. *Uffa* assumes the title of King of the *East-Angles*.

The Kings of *Kent*, *Essex*, and *Sussex* are forced to submit to *Ceaulin*; who also makes conquests upon the *Britons*.

578. *Uffa*, King of the *East-Angles*, dies, and is succeeded by his son *Titil*.

The *Britons* implore the assistance of the *Scots*. *Aidan* King of *Scotland* comes to their assistance, and defeats *Ceaulin*.

The *Britons* form the project of driving the *Saxons* out of the Island; but *Aidan* is vanquished in his turn, and forced to retire into *Scotland*.

584. *Crida* arrives in *Britain* with a numerous army of *Angles*, and makes large conquests.

The *Britons* are forced to retire into *Cambria*, or *Wales*.

Their retreat puts *Crida* in possession of the Counties lying between the *Humber*, the *Severn*, and the *Thames*; out of which he forms the Kingdom of the *Middle-Angles*, or of *Mercia*.

Great multitudes of *Britons* fly into *Armorica*; and others submit to the *Saxons* or *Angles*.

The *Saxons* change the name of *Cambria* into that of *Wallish*-land, or *Wales*: And the name of *Britain* is turned into that of *England*.

State of the BRITISH CHURCH *from* 449 to 584.

GERMANUS founds the schools of *Dubricius* and *Iltutus*.

Dubricius, Archbishop of *Caerleon*, teaches schools at *Henfland* and *Mockrost*; and *Iltutus* at *Llantwit*.

St. *Patric* converts the *Irish*.

Dubricius

Dubricius holds a Synod at *Brévi* in *Cardiganshire*. *Ann. C.*

St. David removes the Archiepiscopal See from *Caerleon* to *Menevia*, or St. *David's*; and holds a Synod at *Vittoria*. 529.

Accounts of *Sampson* the Elder, and Younger; *Cadoc* of *Lancarvan*; *Patern*; *Petroc*; *Kentigern*; *Asaph*; *Columba*; *Gildas*; and *Columbanus*.

Columba founds in *Ireland* the Monastery of *Dearmach*: Comes and preaches the Gospel to the *Highland Picts*; and founds a Monastery in the Island of *Jona*.

BOOK III.

The HEPTARCHY. *Containing the space of 243 years.*

ATHELRIC becomes King of *Bernicia*.

Sledda succeeds his father *Ercheriwin* in the Kingdom of *Essex*. 586.

Adelfrid having married *Acca*, daughter of *Alla* King of *Deira*, succeeds him in that Kingdom; as he doth his father *Athelric* in that of *Bernicia*, and so *Northumberland* becomes again but one Kingdom. 587. 588. 590.

Cissa King of *Sussex* dying without issue, *Ceaulin* King of *Wessex* seizes his Kingdom, and keeps his Court at *Chichester*.

Ceaulin is vanquished by *Ethelbert* King of *Kent*. 597.

Ethelbert is elected Monarch of the *Anglo-Saxons*, and exercises an almost absolute power over all the Kingdoms lying South of the *Humber*. 593.

He seizes the Kingdom of *Mercia*, upon the death of *Crida*; though he had left a son of fit age to succeed him. 594.

But, not long after, he restores it to *Wibba*, reserving however some right of Sovereignty. 597.

Ceolric King of *Wessex* dies, and is succeeded by his brother *Ceolulph*. 598.

Titilus King of *East-Anglia* dies, and has for his Successor his son *Redawald*. 599.

Sabert King of *Essex* is converted to the Christian Faith by *Mellitus*. 604.

The *South-Saxons* revolt against *Ceolric* King of *Mercia*, but are reduced to obedience. 607.

Ann. C. *Ceolulph* King of *Wessex* dies, and is succeeded by his ne-
611. phew *Cinigisil*:

612. Who associates his brother *Quicelm*.

613. *Adelfrid* King of *Northumberland* besieges *Chester*, kills 1250 Monks belonging to the Monastery of *Bangor*, defeats the *Welsh*, and then entirely demolishes the Monastery of *Bangor*.

614. *Cinigisil* and *Quicelm* obtain a signal victory over the *Britons* at *Beamdune*.

615. *Aldelfrid* King of *Northumberland* demands *Edwin*, son of *Alla*, from *Redowald* King of *East-Anglia*, to whom he had fled for refuge.

Wibba King of *Mercia* dies.

616. *Ethelbert* places *Cearlus* on the Throne of *Mercia*; who, after the death of *Ethelbert*, frees that Kingdom from the dominion of the Kings of *Kent*.

Ethelbert I, King of *Kent*, dies. His son *Edbald* succeeds him.

Sabert King of *Essex* dies, and is succeeded by his three sons, *Saxred*, *Seward*, and *Sigebert*.

617. *Aldelfrid* King of *Northumberland* is slain in a battle with *Redowald* King of *East-Anglia*; who places *Edwin* on the Throne of *Northumberland*.

623. *Saxred*, *Seward* and *Sigebert*, Kings of *Essex*, are cut off in an engagement with *Cinigisil* and *Quicelm*, Kings of *Wessex*, and are succeeded by *Sigebert the Little*.

624. *Redowald* King of *East-Anglia* dies, and is succeeded by his son *Erpwald*.

Cearlus King of *Mercia* dies also this year, to whom succeeds *Penda*.

Upon *Redowald*'s death, *Edwin* aspires to the Monarchy, and carries the prerogative higher than his Predecessors.

625. He marries *Ethelburga*, sister to *Edbald* King of *Kent*, and embraces Christianity.

Erpwald King of *East-Anglia* is assassinated.

633. *Edwin* King of *Northumberland* is slain in a battle with *Penda* King of *Mercia*, and *Cadwallo* King of *Wales*. After which *Osric* is made King in *Deira*, and *Anfrid* in
634. *Bernicia*; but they are soon after defeated and killed by *Cadwallo*.

Oswald defeats *Cadwallo*, who is slain: Whereupon *Oswald* takes possession of the Kingdom of *Northumberland*.

635. *Quicelm* King of *Wessex* embraces Christianity, and dies.

636. *Sigebert*, *Erpwald*'s half-brother, is placed on the Throne of *East-Anglia*.

Edbald

Edbald King of *Kent* dies, and is succeeded by his youngest son *Ercombert*. *Ann. C.* 640.

Penda defeats *Oswald* King of *Northumberland*, who is slain in the battle. 642.

After him *Oswy* is made King in *Bernicia*, and *Oswin* in *Deïra*. 643. 644.

Cinigisil, King of *Wessex*, dies, and is succeeded by his son *Cenowalch*.

Sigebert King of *East-Anglia*, after having caused his subjects to be instructed in Christianity, retires into a Monastery, resigning his Crown to *Egric*.

Egric and *Sigebert* are slain in a battle with *Penda* King of *Mercia*. They are succeeded by *Annas*.

Cenowalch King of *Wessex*, being attacked by *Penda*, flies for refuge to *Annas*; and, after three years, is by his assistance restored to his Kingdom. 645. 648.

Adelwalch is made King of *Sussex*.

Oswy King in *Bernicia* endeavours to deprive *Oswin* of the Kingdom of *Deïra*; and causes him to be murdered. 650. 651.

The people of *Deïra* set *Adelwalt*, *Oswald*'s son, upon the Throne. 652.

Cenowalch King of *Wessex* obtains a signal victory over the *Britons*.

Peda is crowned King of *Leicester*, and marrying the daughter of *Oswy* King of *Northumberland*, embraces Christianity. 653.

Annas King of *East-Anglia* dies, and is succeeded by *Ethelric*.

Penda resolves to carry fire and sword into *East-Anglia*, but is bribed with a sum of money by King *Ethelric* I. Who, to induce him to invade *Northumberland*, offers to accompany him with his forces. 654.

Penda and *Ethelric* invading *Northumberland* are both slain: Whereupon *Oswy* becomes master of *Mercia*, and is chosen Monarch. 655.

Sigebert the Good, King of *Essex*, is assassinated. He is succeeded by his brother *Swithelm*.

Peda King of *Leicester* being poisoned by his wife, *Oswy* seizes also that Kingdom. 657.

Cenowalch obtains a victory over the *Britons* in *Somersetshire*. 658.

Oswy is driven out of *Mercia*, and *Wulpher* *Penda*'s son placed on the Throne. 659.

Wulpher defeats *Cenowalch* King of *Wessex*. Then penetrating as far as *Sussex*, he takes King *Adelwalch* prisoner, 660. 661.

Ann. C. and becomes master of his Kingdom, and of the Isle of *Wight*.

663. *Adelwalch* turning Christian, *Wulpher* gives him the Isle of *Wight*.

664. *Adelwald* King of *East-Anglia* dies, and is succeeded by his nephew *Aldulph*.

Ercombert King of *Kent* dies: He is succeeded by his son *Egbert*.

666. *Wulpher* having conquered the Kingdom of *Essex*, gives the Bishopric of *London* to *Wina*.

670. *Oswy* King of *Northumberland* dies, and is succeeded by his son *Egfrid*; who is also chosen Monarch in his room.

671. *Cenowalch* King of *Wessex* dies; and leaves the Crown to his Queen *Sexburga*. But she dies, or is deposed, after having reigned one year. And the Kingdom is divided among several of the great men.

673. *Egbert* King of *Kent* dies, and has for successor his brother *Lothair*.

674. *Census* King of *Wessex* associates his son *Escwin*, and also *Centwin*, brother to *Cenowalch*.

675. These Princes fight a bloody battle with *Wulpher* King of *Mercia*.

Wulpher dies, and is succeeded by his brother *Ethelred*.

677. *Census* and *Escwin* Kings of *Wessex* die.

679. *Ethelred* King of *Mercia* invades *Kent*, making great devastations; and after that turns his arms against *Northumberland*.

682. *Centwin* King of *Wessex* obtains a signal victory over the *Welsh*; *Cadwallader* their King sues to the King of *Armorica* for assistance.

683. *Siger* King of *Essex* dies.

684. *Egfrid* King of *Northumberland* sends an army into *Ireland* to conquer that place, under the conduct of *Bertfrid*, who exercises great cruelties, but is forced to return home without success.

Egfrid carries his arms against the *Picts*, but is defeated and slain. Whereupon the *Picts* conquer part of *Bernicia*;

685. and the *Welsh* the Kingdom of *Areclute*, erecting out of it the Kingdoms of *Lenox* and *Dunbritton*. *Alfred* succeeds *Egfrid*.

Lothair King of *Kent* is defeated by his nephew *Edric*, and dies. *Edric* succeeds him.

686. *Edric* dies, and is succeeded by *Widred* and *Swaberto*.

Adelwalch King of *Sussex* is defeated by *Cedwalla*, and slain

slain in battle. *Authun* and *Berthun* succeed him in the Throne. *Ant. G.*

Cedwalla is made King of *Wessex*. He wages war against *Authun* and *Berthun*; the latter whereof is slain in a battle.

After that he turns his arms against *Kent*, and carries off a great booty.

Then makes himself master of the Isle of *Wight*, and compels all the inhabitants to turn Christians, and be baptized.

Sends his brother *Mollo* to conquer *Kent*, which he terribly ravages; but being defeated, and taking shelter in a house, he is miserably burnt to death. *Cedwalla* revenges his death in a cruel manner; and also defeats *Berthun* King of *Sussex*. 687.

Cedwalla goes to *Rome* to receive baptism at the Pope's hands. 687.

He dies there, and is succeeded by his cousin *Ina*; who is also declared Monarch. 688.

Sebba King of *Essex* turns Monk, and leaves his Crown to his sons *Sighard* and *Senofrid*. 694.

Ina King of *Wessex* carries his arms into *Kent*.

Swabert dying, *Widred* remains sole King of *Kent*. 695.

Ostrith the wife of *Ethelred* King of *Mercia* is assassinated. 697.

Ethelred King of *Mercia* resigns his Crown to his nephew *Cenred*, and retires into *Bardney* Monastery, of which he becomes a Monk. 704.

Alfred King of *Northumberland* dies, and is succeeded by his son *Osred*. 705.

Sighard and *Senofrid* Kings of *Essex* depart this life; and *Offa Siger's* son mounts the Throne after them.

Offa is persuaded by *Cinifwintha* to turn Monk: And is succeeded by *Sealred*. 707.

Cenred King of *Mercia*, by the same lady's persuasion, exchanges also his Crown for the Monkish habit; being succeeded by *Ceolred*. 709.

Ina King of *Wessex* conquers part of *Cornwal*. 710.

Ceolred, and *Ina* King of *Wessex*, fight a bloody battle at *Wodensburgh*, in *Wiltshire*, with equal loss on both sides. 715.

Osred King of *Northumberland* is defeated and slain. He is succeeded by *Cenred*. 716.

Ceolred King of *Mercia* dies, and is succeeded by *Ethelbald*, who is also elected Monarch.

Cenred King of *Northumberland* dies: And *Osric* mounts the Throne after him. 718.

Ina rebuilds *Glassenbury* Monastery.

Ann. C. The *South-Saxons* attempt to recover their liberty; but
722. *Ina* King of *Wessex*, to whom they were in subjection, reduces them to obedience.

725. They place one *Albert* on the Throne; but *Ina*, having defeated and slain him, unites that Kingdom to *Wessex*.

Widred King of *Kent* dies; and is succeeded by his two sons *Ethelbert* and *Edbert*.

727. *Ina* builds a College and a Church at *Rome*, for the use of the *English* Ecclesiastics; institutes *Romescot* or *Peter-pence*; and then turns Monk; *Ethelburga* his Queen becomes also a Nun at *Berking*. *Ina* is succeeded by *Adelard*.

730. *Osric* King of *Northumberland* dies, and is succeeded by *Ceolulph*.

737. *Ceolulph* turns Monk; and has *Edbert* for successor.

740. The *Picts* invade the Northern frontiers; and at the same time the King of *Mercia* plunders the Southern parts of *Northumberland*.

Adelard King of *Wessex* dies, and is succeeded by *Cudred*.

743. *Cudred* obtains a signal victory over the *Cornishmen*.

745. *Ethelun*, a *West-Saxon* Lord, raises a Rebellion against *Cudred*: He is defeated, and pardoned.

746. *Seolred* King of *Essex* dies, and is succeeded by his son *Swithred*.

748. *Edbert* King of *Kent* dies: *Ethelbert* remains sole King.

749. *Alfwald* King of *East-Anglia* dies, and is succeeded by *Beorna* and *Ethelbert*.

752. *Ethelbald* King of *Mercia*, carrying the prerogatives of the Monarchy too high, is defeated by the united forces of the Kings of *Wessex* and *Northumberland*.

753. *Cudred* King of *Wessex*, conquers part of *Cornwal*, and unites it to his Dominions.

754. He dies, and leaves his Crown to his nephew *Sigebert*.

Sigebert governing in a very tyrannical and arbitrary manner, is publicly deposed; and killed soon after by a Swineherd. *Cenulph* son of *Adelard* is made King in his room.

The *South-Saxons* revolt against *Sigebert* King of *Wessex*, and chuse one *Osmond* for their King.

756. *Edbert* King of *Northumberland*, making a league with the King of the *Picts*, recovers *Arreclute* from the *Welsh*.

757. *Ethelbald* King of *Mercia* is slain in a mutiny raised by *Beornred*, who is proclaimed King in his room.

The *Mercians* displeased therewith, place *Offa* nephew to *Ethelbald* upon the Throne. He defeats the usurper *Beornred*, and is chosen Monarch.

Edbert

Edbert King of *Northumberland* retires into a Monastery, *Ann. C.* leaving his Crown to his son *Osulph*. 758.

Osulph is assassinated, and *Mollen-Adelwald* raised to the Throne. 759.

Ethelbert King of *Kent* dies, and is succeeded by his brother *Aldric*. 760.

Some Lords conspire against *Mollen-Adelwald*; and, among the rest, *Alcred*, having found means to insnare and put him to death, is crowned in his room. 761.

Alcred is forced to fly to the King of the *Picts*, and *Ethelred* son of *Mollen* is placed on the Throne. 774.

Offa King of *Mercia* gains a victory over *Aldric* King of *Kent*.

He defeats the *Welsh*, and throws up *Offa*'s dike, to stop their incursions.

A conspiracy being formed against *Ethelred* King of *Northumberland*, and his army defeated, he is forced to leave his Kingdom, and *Alfwald*, son of *Osulf*, is placed on the Throne. 779.

Cenulph King of *Wessex* is assassinated by *Cunebard*, *Sigebert*'s brother; and is succeeded by *Brithric*. 784.

Offa King of *Mercia* associates his son *Egfrid* in the Government. 786.

Brithric King of *Wessex* marries *Offa*'s daughter, and banishes *Egbert*. 787.

The *Danes* make a descent to the Isle of *Portland*.

Alfwald I. King of *Northumberland* is assassinated. *Osred*, the son of *Alcred*, succeeds him; who being soon after shut up in a Monastery, *Ethelred* is restored to the Throne. 789.

Ethelred King of *East-Anglia* dies, and is succeeded by *Ethelbert*. 790.

He goes to *Offa*'s Court to demand his daughter *Adelfrida* in marriage, but *Offa* basely causes him to be murdered, and seizing his Kingdom unites it to *Mercia*, 792.

To atone for that crime, *Offa* goes to *Rome*, to obtain a pardon from the Pope. He extends the *Romescot*, or *Peter-pence*, throughout *Mercia* and *East-Anglia*; and, having obtained the canonization of *St. Alban*, builds a stately Church and Monastery at *Verulam*, which he dedicates to that Protomartyr's memory. 794. 794. 795.

The *Danes* make a descent in *Northumberland*, burn *Lindisfarn*, and pillage *Tinmouth* Monastery.

Aldric King of *Kent* dies, and is succeeded by *Edbert Pren*. 794.

Ethelred King of *Northumberland* is assassinated, and succeeded 796.

ceeded by *Osbald*; who being shortly after dethroned, *Ardulph* is chosen in his room.

Offa King of *Mercia* dies. His son and successor *Egfrid* surviving him but four or five months, *Cenulph* is made King in his stead.

Cenulph ravages *Kent*, defeats and takes *Edbert Pren* prisoner, and, carrying him into *Mercia*, orders his eyes to be put out: Then he places *Cudred* on the Throne.

799. *Brithric* King of *Wessex*, being poisoned by his Queen
800. *Edburga*, is succeeded by *Egbert*.

The *West-Saxons* make a strict law against any Queen's being advanced to the Throne of that Kingdom.

Ardulph King of *Northumberland* puts *Alcmund* son of *Alcred* to death.

805. *Cudred* King of *Kent* dies, and is succeeded by his son *Baldred*.

808. *Ardulph* King of *Northumberland*, being forced to leave his Dominions, retires to the Court of *Charles the Great*; and is succeeded by *Alfwald* II.

809. *Egbert* reduces all *Cornwal* to his obedience in one campain.

810. *Alfwald* II. dies, and is succeeded by *Andred*, who submits to the dominion of *Egbert* King of *Wessex*.

Egbert attacks the *Welsh*, who intended to assist the *Cornishmen*, and subdues the Kingdom of *Venedotia*.

811. The *Welsh* endeavouring to shake off *Egbert's* yoke, he
813. re-enters their country, and destroys all with fire and sword.

819. *Cenulph* King of *Mercia* dies. He is succeeded by his son *Cenelm*, who being assassinated by his sister *Quendrida*, the *Mercians* place *Ceolulph* on the Throne.

Egbert King of *Wessex* is invested with the dignity of Monarch.

821. *Ceolulph* King of *Mercia* is deposed, and *Bernulph* chosen in his room.

823. *Egbert* defeats *Bernulph* at *Ellandunum*, or *Ellisfield* near *Winchester*.

Ethelwulph, son of *Egbert*, conquers the Kingdom of *Kent*, which is annexed to *Wessex*.

Egbert renders himself also master of the Kingdom of *Essex*.

The *East-Angles* shake off the yoke of the Kings of *Mercia*, and defeat *Bernulph*, who is slain in the battle.

825. The *Mercians* chuse *Ludican* for their King, who dying, *Witglaph* is elected in his room.

Egbert

Egbert declaring war against *Mercia*, *Wittlaph* is defeated; but *Egbert* restores him to his Kingdom, on condition of his paying him homage, and becoming tributary to him. *Ann. C.* 828.

The *East-Angles* submit to him upon almost the same terms.

As does afterwards *Northumberland*.

By which means *Egbert* becomes King of *Wessex*, *Sussex*, *Kent* and *Essex*, Sovereign of *Mercia*, *East-Anglia*, and *Northumberland*.

Thus an end was put to the Heptarchy, after it had lasted *Three hundred and seventy-eight years*, from the arrival of *Hengist* in 449. to the year 828. Or *Two hundred and forty-three years*, from the founding of the Kingdom of *Mercia* to the final dissolution of the Heptarchy.

The State of the Church of KENT.

ETHELBERT King of *Kent* marries *Bertha* daughter of *Cherebert* King of *Paris*. As she was a Christian, she is allowed to have the free exercise of her Religion, and to bring over with her a certain number of Ecclesiastics.

She inspires *Ethelbert* with a favourable opinion of the Christian Religion.

In this favourable juncture Pope *Gregory* I. sends Missionaries into *England* to preach the Gospel. 596.

These Missionaries consisted of forty *Benedictine* Monks, with *Austin* at their head.

They land in the Isle of *Thanet*, and send King *Ethelbert* word of their arrival. 597.

He and his Queen go into the Isle of *Thanet*, to hear from their own mouths the occasion of their journey.

The Queen gets leave for them to settle at *Canterbury*; where they convert many of the principal *Saxons* to the Christian Faith.

Ethelbert himself is baptized.

The number of Christians increasing, several of the Heathen Temples are turned into Churches. 598.

The foundations of *Canterbury* Cathedral, and of *St. Augustin's* Monastery, are also laid.

Ethelbert leaves *Canterbury* to the *Italian* Monks, and goes and keeps his Court at *Reculver*.

Austin baptizes 10,000 in one day, in the river *Swale*.

He goes to *Arles* to get himself consecrated Archbishop of the *Saxons*.

The

Ann. C. 603. The See of *Rochester* is erected, of which *Justus*, one of *Austin*'s companions, is made the first Bishop.

Austin sends to the Pope for more Missionaries to come and assist him.

Pope *Gregory* sends the *Pall* to *Austin*; and orders him to erect Bishops Sees in several places, particularly at *York*. He also gives him directions upon other points.

Austin undertakes to bring the *British* Bishops to a conformity with the *Roman* Church, about the celebration of *Easter*; and to make them acknowledge the Pope's jurisdiction.

602. He convenes two Synods for that purpose, but cannot prevail with the *Britons*. *Dinoth* makes a remarkable speech to him.

605. *Austin* dies, and was buried at *Canterbury*.

He is succeeded by *Laurentius*, who endeavours to bring the *Britons* to the aforementioned conformity; but all in vain.

Justus Bishop of *Rochester* is forced to quit his See, upon the apostasy of the inhabitants.

619. *Laurentius* dies, and to him succeeds *Mellitus*.

After whom come

624. *Justus*.
628. *Honorius*.
654. *Deusdedit*.
668. *Theodorus*, who erected a school at *Crecklade*, and made a visitation of all the Churches in his jurisdiction.
690. He dies; and is succeeded, by
692. *Berthwald*, who was the first *Saxon* Archbishop.

Then came

731. *Tatwine*.
735. *Nothelm*.
742. *Cuthbert*.
759. *Bregwin*.
761. *Jambert* or *Lambert*.
795. *Athelard*.
804. *Wulfrid*.

The Church of NORTHUMBERLAND.

PAULINUS converts the *Northumbrians* to the Christian Faith.

Ansleda King *Edwin*'s daughter, with twelve persons belonging to the Court, are the first persons baptized in that Kingdom.

Edwin

Edwin delays to embrace Christianity, though the Pope writ a letter to him about it. *Ann. C.* 626.

Edwin is at length baptized, with his niece *Hilda*. After which prodigious crowds daily come to be taught and baptized. 627. *Apr.* 12.

Ten thousand are baptized in one day.

A Church of timber is hastily run up at *York*: *Edwin* lays the foundation of a Church of free-stone round the former, which is finished by his successor *Oswald*. 628.

Paulinus preaches at *Lincoln*, and converts *Blecca* the *Saxon* Governor.

Upon *Edwin*'s death *Paulinus* being forced to leave the Kingdom, the *Northumbrians* fall back again to idolatry. 633.

Oswald endeavours to restore the Christian Religion in his Dominions; and desires the King of *Scotland* to send some persons of learning to instruct his subjects. 634.

Corman, and some others, accordingly come; but *Corman* being disliked by the *English* returns to his Monastery of *Jona*; and *Aidan* comes in his room, being consecrated Bishop of the *Northumbrians*. 635.

The *Northumbrians* embrace again the Christian Religion.

Aidan dies, and *Finan* another Monk of *Jona* is sent to supply his place. He fixes the Episcopal See in the Isle of *Lindisfarn*. 652.

Finan dying, is succeeded by *Colman*. 661.

A Synod is held in the Nunnery of *Hilda*, at *Whitby*, in order to decide the dispute about the celebration of *Easter*: And also about the Ecclesiastical tonsure. 664.

The matter being there determined contrary to the notions of the *Scottish* party, *Colman* quits his See and retires into *Scotland*. He is succeeded by *Tuda*.

Cedd Bishop of the *East-Saxons* complies with the decisions of that Synod.

Tuda dying soon after his consecration, is succeeded by *Chad*.

Chad is removed, to make room for *Wilfrid*.

Great complaints being made against *Wilfrid*, he is deposed, and *Northumberland* is divided into two Dioceses.

Bosa is made Bishop of the first, containing *Deira*, the See whereof was at *York*; and of the other, which continued fixed at *Lindisfarn*, and consisted of *Bernicia*, *Eata* is made Bishop.

Egfrid having conquered *Lincolnshire*, erects it into a Bishopric, of which *Ethedus* is made the first Bishop.

Ann. C. *Wilfrid* goes and carries his complaints to *Rome*, and obtains a decree from the Pope to be restored to his Bishopric; but is imprisoned upon his return home.

Being released, he withdraws to *Glastonbury* Monastery; but is forced to fly for refuge to *Adelwalch* King of *Sussex*, and some time after is made Bishop of *Selsey*.

Whithern, or *Candida Casa*, is made a Bishop's See.

Hagustad, or *Hexham*, is erected also into a Bishopric, of which *Thambert* is the first Bishop: But he is soon after deposed, and *Eatta* translated thither in his room.

Cuthbert is made Bishop of *Lindisfarn*, in the room of *Eatta*, which he soon after resigns.

Bosa being translated to *Lindisfarn*, *Wilfrid* is restored
686. to the See of *York*.
687. *Cuthbert* dies.
703. *Wilfrid* attempting to annul what had been done during his disgrace, is driven once more from his See.

He flies to *Ethelred* King of *Mercia*, and is by him made Bishop of *Chester*: Of which he is presently after dispossessed.

A Council is held at *Onestresfield*, wherein *Wilfrid* is deposed.

708. He appeals to the Pope, and is by him acquitted. However, he is not restored to his See, but is made Bishop of *Hagulstad*; *John*, Bishop thereof, being removed to *York*.

721. *John* resigns his Bishopric, and retires to *Beverly* Monastery, being the same as was afterwards called *St. John of Beverly*. He is succeeded in the See of *York* by *Wilfrid the Younger*.

Wilfrid the Elder is succeeded in the See of *Hagulstad* by *Acca*.

Egbert succeeds *Wilfrid the Younger* in the See of *York*.

744. He procures the *Pall* from *Rome*, with the Archiepiscopal dignity; and obtains a jurisdiction over the three northern Bishoprics, of *Lindisfarn*, *Hagulstad*, and *Whithern*.

Egbert builds a library at *York*, and furnishes it with books.

He is succeeded by *Eanbald*.

The Church of WESSEX.

634. *BIRINUS*, an *Italian* Priest, converts the *West-Saxons* to Christianity.
635. He baptizes King *Cinigisil*, and his brother *Quicelm*.
636. Fixes his See, and builds a Cathedral Church, at *Dorchester*.
650. Dies there.

After

After a few years vacancy, *Agilbert* is made Bishop of *Dorchester*. Ann. C. 656.

King *Cenwalch* growing weary of him, divides his Kingdom into two Dioceses, *viz.* *Dorchester*, and *Winchester*: And leaving *Agilbert* at *Dorchester*, makes *Wina* Bishop of *Winchester*. 660.

Agilbert displeased at this partition, retires into *France*.

Wina is dismissed by *Cenwalch*; who not thinking fit afterwards to return, recommends his nephew to *Eleutherius*. 666.

Eleutherius is accordingly made sole Bishop of the *West-Saxons*. 670.

He is succeeded by *Heda*. After whose death *Wessex* is again divided into two Dioceses, the Sees whereof are fixed at *Winchester* and *Sherborn*.

Daniel is made Bishop of *Winchester*. He is succeeded by *Almund*. } and *Aldhelm* of *Sherborn*. Whose Successor was *Forthere*.

The Church of MERCIA.

PEDA, King of *Leicester*, going to *Northumberland* to demand *Alfleda* King *Oswy*'s daughter in marriage, turns Christian, and is baptized. 644.

He brings along with him these four Priests, *Cedda*, *Adda*, *Beti*, and *Diuma*.

Diuma is made Bishop of the *Mercian* Church: And is succeeded by *Cellach*.

Wulpher persecutes his Christian subjects, and is even said to have put two of his own sons to death; he is converted soon after. 659.

During this persecution, *Cellach* retires into *Scotland*.

Trumbere is consecrated Bishop of *Mercia* in his room.

He is succeeded by *Jaruman*, who replants the Christian Religion in the Kingdom of *Essex*. 664.

After his death *Ceadda*, or *Chad*, is made Bishop of *Mercia*. He fixes his See at *Lichfield*. 669.

His Successor was *Winfrid*; who being soon after deposed, is succeeded by *Saxulph*. 675.

King *Ethelred* divides the Kingdom of *Mercia* into four Dioceses; namely, those of *Lichfield*, *Worcester*, *Hereford*, and *Chester*. 680.

Saxulph

Ann. Ch. *Saxulph* continues at *Lichfield*. *Fraddric* is sent to *Worcester*; and dying soon after, is succeeded by *Boselus*. *Cuthwin* is made Bishop of *Chester*, and *Putta* of *Hereford*.

After *Cuthwin*'s death, *Chester* is united to *Lichfield*, but they are separated again upon *Wilfrid*'s account, who was made Bishop of *Chester*.

Hedda succeeds *Saxulph* in the See of *Lichfield*.

785. *Lichfield* is erected into an Archbishopric, and *Higbert*, the then Bishop, declared Archbishop. It had for Suffragans the Bishops of *Mercia* and *East-Anglia*, i. e. those of *Worcester*, *Chester*, *Sinacester*, *Hereford*, *Helmham*, *Dommoc*.

799. *Lichfield* is deprived again of the honour of being an Archbishopric.

The Church of ESSEX.

MELLITUS preaches the Gospel to the *East-Saxons*, particularly at *London*.

610. King *Sebert* founds the Cathedral Church of St. *Paul*'s.

614. *Mellitus*, with the assistance of *Ethelbert* King of *Kent*, builds a Church and Monastery at a place called *Thorney*, afterwards *Westminster*.

616. Upon *Sebert*'s death, the *East-Saxons* fall back to Paganism, and expel *Mellitus*.

Sigebert the Good is converted in *Northumberland*, and baptized.

He brings along with him *Cedd*, who is consecrated Bishop of the *East-Saxons*.

655. *Siger* and *Sebba* are made jointly Kings of the *East-Saxons*.

664. *Siger* returns to Idolatry; but *Sebba* stedfastly adheres to the Christian Religion.

Wulpher King of *Mercia* sends *Jaruman* his Bishop to restore the *East-Saxons* to the way of truth.

666. *Wina* buys the Bishopric of *London* of *Wulpher*.

675. *Wina* dies, and is succeeded by *Erkenwald*.

The Church of EAST-ANGLIA.

620. THE *East-Angles* are converted to Christianity.

636. King *Sigebert* is baptized in *France*, and brings along with him *Felix*, who is consecrated Bishop; and fixes his See at *Dummoc*, now *Dunwich*.

Sigebert

Sigebert erects schools in his Kingdom. *Ann. C.*

Furseus, an *Irish* Monk, comes and preaches to the *East-Angles* with good success. He builds a Monastery at *Cnobersburgh*.

Felix is succeeded by *Thomas*. 648.

After whom came *Berchtgislus*, *Boniface*, and *Bisus*. 652.

Bisus growing infirm, *Becca* and *Badwin* are made his assistants, and *East-Anglia* is divided into two Dioceses, 665. 673.

Becca residing at *Dumnoc*, and *Badwin* at *Elmham*. 955.

The Diocese of *Dumnoc* is united to that of *Elmham*. 1047.

The Episcopal See is removed to *Thetford*, and afterwards to *Norwich*. 1088.

The Church of SUSSEX.

ADELWALCH King of *Sussex* founds a Monastery at *Besenham*.

The *South-Saxons* are converted to Christianity by *Wilfrid* Bishop of *York*; who teaches them the art of fishing in the sea. 686.

Wilfrid establishes his Episcopal See at *Selsey*; and founds a Monastery there.

Upon his being recalled to the See of *York*, *Selsey* remains a long time without a Bishop, and the *South-Saxons* are put under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of the *West-Saxons*.

Wessex being divided into two Dioceses, *Sussex* is annexed to the See of *Winchester*.

It is separated again from it, and the See fixed at *Selsey*, as before: *Edbert* being the first Bishop.

The See is removed from *Selsey* to *Chichester*. 1070.

The Isle of *Wight* is converted to Christianity by the furious zeal of *Cedwalla*, and put under the Bishop of *Winchester*'s jurisdiction.

The COUNCILS, from the Conversion of the *Anglo-Saxons* to the Union of the *Seven Kingdoms*, were those of,

Hertford. 673.

Hatfield, in the same County. 680.

Becanceld, or *Beckenham*, in *Kent*. 694.

Berghamsted, in the same County. 697.

Clovesham, or *Abingdon*, in *Berkshire*. 747. 800. 803.

Calcuith, in *Northumberland*. 785. 816.

Ann. C. The Eminent Persons, within this period, were,

692. *Wilbrod*, who converted the *Friesslanders*, and was made Bishop of *Utrecht*.

716. *Egbert*.

750. *Winfrid*, who was the first Archbishop of *Mentz*. *Guthlac*, the first Anchoret in *England*.

The most considerable Writers were,

620. *Nennius*, who flourished about 620.

Bede, born in 673, and died in 735.

Stephen Eddius.

Alcuin, or *Albin*, who taught *Charles the Great Logic*, *Astronomy*, and *Mathematics*, and persuaded him to found the Universities of *Paris* and *Pavia*. He died in 804.

BOOK IV.

From the year 828 *to* 979.

EGBERT *first Monarch of* England.

828. *EGBERT* finishes his conquests over the rest of the Kings of the Heptarchy.

The *Welsh* attempting to shake off his yoke, he marches against them, and forces them to submission, without coming to a battle.

832. The *Danes* land in the Isle of *Shepey*, and lay it waste.

833. They land again at *Charmouth*, in *Dorsetshire*, and ravage the Country.

Egbert, marching against them with troops hastily drawn up together, is defeated.

835. The *Danes* being informed, that the *Cornish Britons* desired to cast off *Egbert*'s yoke, land in *Cornwal*; but *Egbert* obtains a signal victory over them at at *Hengistdun*.

Egbert confirms or revives the name of *England*, given to *Britain*.

The Character *of King* EGBERT.

Egbert died in 838, after he had reigned thirty-seven years, twenty years as King of *Wessex* only, seven years with the dignity of Monarch, and ten years as real Sovereign


K EGBERT
the Great.

reign of all *England*. *Redburg* his Spouse had never assumed the title and port of a Queen, because of the law made in *Wessex*, on account of the death of *Brithric*. She is said to have persuaded the King to forbid the *Welsh* on pain of death to come beyond *Offa's Dike*, the boundary of *Mercia* and *Wales*.

Egbert left but one son, named *Ethelwulph*, who succeeded him both as King of *Wessex*, *Essex*, *Kent* and *Sussex* and as Sovereign of the other three Kingdoms. *Egbert* had doubtless another son, since this was designed for the Church. A modern Author gives the name of *Ethelbert* to *Egbert*'s eldest son; but I know not whence he had his information. Some say he had also a daughter called *Edgith*, who founded the Abbey of *Pollesworth* but this is uncertain.

By all that has been said of *Egbert*, it is easy to see this Prince had all the qualifications of a great warrior. He accomplished his ends, not by such methods as *Hengist* and *Offa* had taken, but by way of arms, which though no less criminal, tarnishes not the reputation of those that make use of it, especially when crowned with success. It is a lamentable thing that ambition, by which Princes are led to invade the property of others, should pass in the world for a virtue, and that an Historian, by reason of men's depraved notions, should not dare to represent it in its true colours, since, generally speaking, they are your ambitious Princes that are honoured with the sirname of *Great*.

2. ETHELWULPH *second King of* England.

ETHELWULPH, *Egbert*'s only son, ascends the Throne. 838.

A fleet of *Danes* lands near *Southampton*, and ravages the Country; *Wulfherd*, the *English* General, beats them back to their ships.

Another body of *Danes* lands at *Portland*, and beats the *English* twice; their Generals, Earl *Ethelhelm* and *Herebert*, being slain.

The *Danes* over-run *Lindsey*, *East-Anglia*, *Kent*, and *Middlesex*, and plunder *Canterbury*, *Rochester*, and *London*.

Wiglaph King of *Mercia* dies, and is succeeded by his brother *Berthulph*. 839.

Ann. C. 840. The *Danes* land again at *Charmouth*, on the coast of *Wessex*, and defeat the *English*, who were commanded by King *Ethelwulph*.

The *Picts* are entirely rooted out by the *Scots*.

Ethelwulph associates his natural son *Athelstan* in the Kingdom, resigning to him the Kingdoms of *Kent*, *Essex*, and *Sussex*, with the title of King of *Kent*.

ETHELWULPH *in* Wessex; ATHELSTAN *in Kent*.

841. *ANDRED* King of *Northumberland* dies, and is succeeded by his son *Ethelred*.

842. *Roderic Mawr*, King of *Wales*, invades *Mercia*, but *Ethelwulph* marching against him, he sues for peace.

844. *Ethelred* King of *Northumberland* is driven out of his Country, and *Redowald* placed on the Throne; but *Redowald* being shortly after slain by the *Danes*, *Ethelred* is recalled.

845. The *Danes*, landing in *Wessex*, are defeated by the Earls *Enulph* and *Osric* with Bishop *Alestan*, near the river *Parret*.

848. *Ethelbert* King of *Northumberland* is put to death, and *Osbert* placed on the Throne.

851. The *Danes* land on the coast of *Wessex*, and ravage the Country; but are entirely routed at *Wenbury*, by Earl *Ceorle Ethelwulph*'s General.

Athelstan fights the *Danes* near *Sandwich*, and takes nine of their ships. But cannot hinder another band from wintering in the Isle of *Shepey*.

852. They come up the *Thames* with 300 sail, land near *London*, ravage the Country, and commit cruel barbarities, overthrow *Berthulph* King of *Mercia*, but are themselves defeated at *Okely* in *Surrey*.

Berthulph King of *Mercia* dies, and is succeeded by *Buthred*.

Athelstan dies.

ETHELWULPH *alone*.

ETHELWULPH is entirely governed by his two favourites, *Swithin* Bishop of *Winchester*, and *Alestan* Bishop of *Sherburn*.

He grants to the Church the tithes of all his Dominions.

Sends

Sends his youngest son *Alfred* to *Rome.* *Ann. C.*

Ethelwulph himself goes to *Rome*, to obtain the Pope's 853.
benediction; carrying *Alfred* with him. 854.

Rebuilds the *English* College at *Rome*, extends the tax of *Peter-pence* all over his Dominions, and obliges himself to send yearly to *Rome* the sum of 300 marks.

Ethelwulph returns home through *France*, where he mar- 855.
ries *Judith*, daughter of *Charles the Bald.*

Alstan, Bishop of *Sherburn*, excites Prince *Ethelbald* to a revolt against the King his father.

Ethelwulph arrives in *England.*

Ethelbald pursuing his rebellious design, the King his father resigns to him the Kingdom of *Wessex*, and sits down contented with that of *Kent.*

ETHELWULPH *in* Kent. ETHELBALD *in* Wessex.

ETHELWULPH spends the two last years of his 855.
life in acts of charity and justice, and *Ethelbald*, on the contrary, in licentiousness and debauchery.

Edmund, son of *Alcmund*, is crowned King of *East-Anglia.*

Ethelwulph makes a will, wherein he disposes of his Dominions to his sons, one after another.

He orders his heirs to maintain one poor person for every tithing in his hereditary lands.

Ethelwulph dies, after a 20 years reign, leaving four sons, 857.
Ethelbald, *Ethelbert*, *Ethelred*, and *Alfred*; and one daughter; and was buried at *Winchester*. He was succeeded by,

3. ETHELBALD *in* Wessex. ETHELBERT *in* Kent.

ETHELBALD marries *Judith*, his father's widow.
He dies, and is buried at *Sherburn*; being succeeded in 860.
the Kingdom of *Wessex* by his brother *Ethelbert*, who was already in possession of the Kingdom of *Kent.*

ETHELBERT *alone.*

THE *Danes* renew their invasions; and, landing at 860.
Southampton, penetrate as far as *Winchester*, which they reduce to ashes, but are beat back to their ships.

Ann. C. 865. Some land in the Isle of *Thanet*, and winter there: *Ethelbert*, uneasy at that, offers them money to go off quietly.

They take his money; but, notwithstanding, rush into *Kent*, and ravage the eastern parts of that Country.

Ethelbert levying an army to intercept them, they embark hastily with their plunder.

866. *Ethelbert* dies, after a six years Reign, and was buried at *Sherburn*. Though he left two sons, *Adhelm* and *Ethelward*, his younger brother *Ethelred* succeeds him by virtue of *Ethelwulph*'s will.

5. ETHELRED I.

THE *Northumbrians* shake off the yoke of the King of *Wessex*, and unanimously place one *Osbert* on the Throne.

Osbert ravishes Earl *Bruern-Bocard*'s Lady, which involves his Country into endless Troubles.

The *Bernicians* revolt against him, by Earl *Bruern*'s management, and chuse another King named *Ella*.

A civil war thereupon ensues; and the two Kings frequently strive to decide their quarrel by arms, but to no purpose.

Earl *Bruern* goes and invites *Ivar*, or *Hinguar*, King of *Denmark*, to come over, and invade *Northumberland*.

867. *Ivar* accordingly comes and winters in *East-Anglia*, and, the next spring, entering the *Humber* with a numerous fleet, makes himself master of the northern side of that river. He then marches to *York*, in which *Osbert* was; who, sallying out, is defeated and slain, after a very obstinate fight; and the *Danes* make themselves masters of *York*.

Ella, to whom *Osbert* had applied for assistance, advancing against the *Danes*, is also defeated and slain, at a place called *Ellescrost*.

868. *Ivar* takes possession of *Northumberland*, and ravages *Mercia*.

Buthred and *Ethelred* march against *Ivar*, and besiege him in *Nottingham*, but at last conclude a peace with him, and *Buthred* gives him a sum of money to retire elsewhere.

869. The *Danes* return to *York*, where they remain one year.

The Nuns of *Coldingham* Abbey, to prevent being ravished by them, cut off their own noses and upper lips; they are slain by the *Danes*, and their Monastery set on fire.

The Monasteries of *Croyland*, *Ely*, and *Peterborough* are also destroyed.


K. ALFRED
the Great.
Vertue Sculp

Ivar, leaving his brother *Hubba* in *Northumberland*, embarks, and makes a descent in *East-Anglia*. *Ann. C.* 870.

Edmund King of *East-Anglia* marching against him, is overthrown; and, refusing to acknowledge *Ivar* for Sovereign, is put to death at *Hegilsdon* or *Hoxon* in *Suffolk*. His body was buried at *St. Edmund's-bury*, so called from him.

Ivar makes *Gothurn* Governor of *East-Anglia*, and *Egbert* King of *Northumberland*.

The *Danes* invade *Wessex*, and advance as far as *Reading*. 871.

Nine battles are fought between the *English* and *Danes*, within the compass of one year.

The *English* are routed at *Reading*; at *Basing* in *Hampshire*; and at *Marden* in *Wiltshire*, in which last *Ethelred* received his death's wound. The *Danes* are defeated at *Inglefield*, and *Aston*, in *Berkshire*, &c.

Ethelred dies, after a Reign of 5 years, and is succeeded by his brother *Alfred*. *Apr.* 23.

He was buried at *Winburn* in *Dorsetshire*.

6. ALFRED *the* GREAT.

ALFRED is crowned at *Winchester*. 871.

The *Danes* advance as far as *Wilton*, and *Alfred*, marching against them with few forces, is defeated.

They however sue for peace, and *Alfred* makes a treaty with them.

The *Danes* thereupon quit *Wessex*, and retire to *London*, which they had taken. 872.

Ivar goes back to *Denmark*, and leaves the command of his army to his brother *Hubba*; who enters *Mercia*, but *Buthred* buys him off with a sum of money.

The *Danes* march thereupon towards *Northumberland*; and deposing *Egbert* place *Ricsige* in his room. But finding provisions scarce in *Northumberland*, they come and winter at *Torksey* in *Lincolnshire*. 873.

Buthred complains of their breach of faith, but they oblige him to give them a sum of money; which as soon as they had received, they fall a plundering his Country.

Buthred abandons his Kingdom, and goes and spends the residue of his days at *Rome*. *Ceolulph* is by the *Danes* made King in his room. 874.

The *Danes* being masters of *Mercia*, *East-Anglia*, and *Northumberland*, want to seize *Wessex*, but they are forced to make an alliance with *Alfred*.

Ann. C. 875. Notwithstanding that treaty, they come and surprize *Warham-Castle* in *Dorsetshire*.

Alfred treats again with them, and makes them swear never to set foot again in *Wessex*. But they break the treaty, and go and besiege *Exeter*.

876. *Ricsige* King of *Northumberland* dies, and *Egbert* is made King again: But being dethroned soon after, *Northumberland* is cantled out among the *Danish* Officers, after that Kingdom had lasted 330 years.

Alfred, not thinking fit to rely on treaties, levies an army, with which he engages the *Danes* seven times in one campain.

He makes a treaty with them, whereby they oblige themselves never to return more into *Wessex*.

Rollo the *Dane* arrives in *England*; and, not being able to obtain a settlement there, goes to seek his fortune in *France*.

Alfred fits out a fleet, to prevent the *Danish* Invasions, and beats the *Danes* twice.

877. A *Danish* fleet is shipwracked near *Swanwic* in *Hampshire*, and 120 ships lost.

August. *Alfred* obliges the *Danes* to quit *Wessex* entirely. They retire into *Mercia*, and deposing *Ceolulph* divide the lands among themselves; by which an end was put to the Kingdom of *Mercia*, after it had lasted about 300 years.

The *Danes* invade *Wessex* again; and make themselves masters of *Chippingham*.

The *West-Saxons* are struck with such terror, that *Alfred* finds himself deserted by all.

He is forced to lie concealed 6 months, at a Neat-herd's, in the Isle of *Athelney* in *Somersetshire*.

Hubba and *Halfdene* invade *Wales*, and destroy all with fire and sword.

They enter *Devonshire* with the same intent, but, besieging *Kinwith* Castle, *Odda*, Earl of *Devonshire* bravely sallies out, and totally routs the *Danes*. *Hubba*, *Inguar*, and *Halfdene* are slain; and the famous *Danish* standard, called *Reafan*, taken.

Alfred, hearing of this victory, consults how to regain his Kingdom.

He goes himself into the *Danish* camp, disguised like a harper, to observe the enemy's posture.

The *Danes* are entirely defeated by *Alfred* at *Ethandun*, or *Edington* in *Somersetshire*.

Alfred makes a treaty with them; and agrees, to give up the lands in *East-Anglia* to those that were willing to turn Christians,

Christians, but requires the rest immediately to quit *England*, never to return more. *Ann. C.*

Guthurm is invested by *Alfred* with the title of King of *East-Anglia*; in which *Essex* was also included.

The *Danes* settled in *Northumberland*, *Mercia*, and *East-Anglia* submit to *Alfred*, and swear allegiance to him.

A band of *Danes* comes up the *Thames*, and, wintering at *Fulham*, sollicit *Guthurm* to renew the war in *Wessex*, but he refuses. 879.

Another body, that had overrun *Brabant*, lands in *Kent*, and tries to surprize *Rochester*, but is repulsed by *Alfred*.

Alfred increases his naval forces; and, fitting out a fleet, orders his Admiral to cruize along the coasts, and attack all *Danish* ships whatsoever. 882.

Sixteen are surprized in *Harwich*, and all the men put to death.

Guthurm incensed at it, suffers the parties concerned to retrieve their losses; who attack the King's ships in the mouth of the *Thames*, and have some advantage over them.

Alfred causes the wasted parts of *Northumberland* to be again inhabited; and *Guthred* is made King of *York*, and *Egbert* of *Northumberland*. 883.

Having thus secured the sea-coasts, *Alfred* fortifies the rest of the Kingdom with Castles and walled Towns. 883, &c.

He rebuilds those Towns that were gone to ruin, particularly *Shaftsbury*, and builds others in a strong manner.

Sends presents to the *Indies*, in honour of St. *Thomas*.

Alfred besieges and takes *London*, which he gives to his son-in-law *Ethelred*, with the title of Earl of *Mercia*. 886.

England, after having been quiet ever since the year 885, is again invaded by the *Danes*. Part of them, coming with 250 ships into the mouth of the *Rother* in *Kent*, take *Appledore*. And another fleet of eighty sail, commanded by *Hastings*, enters the *Thames*, and lands at *Middleton*. In both places they build Castles. 893.

The *East-Anglian Danes* go and join *Hastings*, though they had taken an oath of fidelity to *Alfred*.

Alfred marches against a band of *Danes*, who were ravaging *Kent*; but, being informed by the way that another body had entered *Wessex*, he advances against these last, and forces them hastily to raise the siege of *Exeter*. 894.

A troop of *Danes* advances towards *London*, but retires afterwards to *Bemfleet*, in a fort built by *Hastings*.

Alfred's forces go and destroy that fort, and take *Hastings's* wife and children that were in it, which are brought to *Alfred*.

The

Ann. C. 897. The *Danes*, after having committed numberless ravages, depart from *England*, on account of a plague and dearth that prevailed in the Island.

Some few, that refused to follow *Hastings* to *France*, put themselves under the command of *Sigefert* settled in *Northumberland*. These invading the coasts of *Wessex*, twenty of their ships are taken, and the men hanged along the sea-shore.

England is entirely freed from the *Danish* Pirates. And the *Danes* settled in *England* acknowledge *Alfred* for their Sovereign.

Alfred, now being in perfect peace, makes a body of laws; and causes them to be strictly observed.

He institutes juries.

And divides *England* into *Shires*, hundreds, and tithings; making the householders responsible for their families, the tithings for the householders, the hundreds for the tithings, and the counties for the hundreds.

Alfred regulates the *Militia*, keeping in each County a body of troops always ready to march: He has also a numerous fleet either ready to put to sea, or cruising round the Island.

He causes Merchant-ships to be built, which he lets out to the principal Merchants. Some of them are said to trade as far as the *East-Indies*.

Alfred invites several learned men over from foreign Countries into *England*.

886. Founds the University of *Oxford*.

Made use of three Councils, whence the origin of our present Councils.

Beautifies *London*, and augments its privileges.

Introduces the way of building with brick and stone.

As to his private life, he distributed his time so, as to allot eight hours every day to acts of devotion, eight hours to public affairs, and as many to sleep, study, and necessary refreshment.

Clocks not being in use; he invents wax-candles marked with circular lines of divers colours, to measure time; and, to keep them from the wind, incloses them in lanthorns.

The Character *of* ALFRED *the* GREAT.

His charities were very extraordinary, considering his revenues, and so much the more praise-worthy, as they were done privately, or at least without ostentation. He educated, at Court, or at *Oxford*, a great many young Noblemen,

blemen, who were instructed in all things necessary to render them one day serviceable to their country. But this was not his only method to cause the arts and sciences to flourish: His own example greatly contributed towards it, for never was Prince more given to his studies. The progress he made in learning, notwithstanding his being so long employed in his wars and the administration of the Government, demonstrate how well he improved his intervals from public business. The Author of his life assures us, he was the best *Saxon* Poet of his time, an excellent *Grammarian*, *Orator*, *Philosopher*, *Architect*, *Geometrician*, and *Historian*. He composed several works, that were in great esteem. Among others, he translated into *Saxon*, *Gregory's Pastoral*, *Boetius de Consolatione*, and *Bede's Ecclesiastical History*. What a shame and reproach was it for the *English* Nation to be so ignorant, when they had so learned a King at their head? This excellent Prince complained bitterly that from the *Humber* to the *Thames* there was not a Priest that understood the *Liturgy* in his *Mother Tongue*, and that from the *Thames* to the *Sea*, there was not one that knew how to translate the easiest piece of *Latin*. This universal ignorance, and the little relish the *English* had then for the *Arts* and *Sciences*, caused the King to seek all occasions, of earnestly inviting into his Dominions foreigners that were eminent in their professions. He took particular care to have always about him the most noted workmen and *Architects*, and to keep them employed, with the sole view of improving their skill. He placed in the *Chairs* at *Oxford*, men famous for their learning, and allowed them handsome salaries. His aim was to stir up the emulation of the *English*, and provoke them to use their endeavours to come out of that state of gross ignorance they were in. The fame of his great wisdom and piety reaching as far as *Rome*, the *Pope* sent him a large quantity of *Relicks*, and upon his account granted some new privileges to the *English College*. *Abel*, Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, willing also to show him marks of his esteem, sent him a present of *Relicks*, which the King received with great satisfaction.

It is time now to take a view of the manner of his ordering his *Domestick* concerns, where his prudence was no less conspicuous than in his management of State Affairs. He made three divisions of his attendants, who were to wait monthly, by turns: A custom which, though not practised then in other Courts, was afterwards followed by other Princes.

Princes. As for his revenues, he divided them in two parts, one whereof was wholly assigned for charitable uses, and subdivided into four portions. The first for alms to the poor: The second for the maintenance of the monasteries he had founded: The third for the subsistence of the Professors and Scholars at *Oxford*: The fourth for poor Monks, as well Foreigners as *English*. The other half was thrown into three divisions; one was expended in his family; another in paying his *Architects*, and other curious workmen; and the rest was bestowed in pensions upon strangers, invited to his Court for the encouragement and instruction of his subjects. When I speak of his revenues, I mean his own *hereditary* estate. It was not customary in those days, for Princes to levy taxes upon the people, in order to squander the money in luxury and extravagancies.

What has been said of this illustrious Prince, may suffice to make known the principal events in his reign, and to give an idea of his personal qualities. I might add many more particulars, since his *Life* alone affords matter for a large *Volume*. But I believe I may venture to stop here, without injuring the memory of this monarch, who is justly distinguished with the sirname of *Great*. No Historian charges him with any vice, but all unanimously agree to represent him as one of the most glorious Princes that ever wore the Crown.

He died in 900, and in the 52d year of his age, after a reign of twenty-eight years and six months, the greatest part whereof was spent in wars and troubles, and the rest in peace. His History shews, that both in war and peace, he governed with prudence and steadiness. But what chiefly distinguishes him from the generality of Princes, was his sincere and constant love for his People. Of this he gave demonstration, not by words only, as is too commonly the case, but by real and substantial deeds. Accordingly never was Prince better beloved by his subjects. No doubt, this mutual affection contributed to destroy in the *Danes*, settled in *England*, all hopes of shaking off his yoke, when once they had submitted to it.

Alfred had several children by *Alswitha* his Queen. Some of them, particularly *Edmund* his eldest son, whom he designed for his Successor, died before him. Of those that survived him, *Edmund* mounted the Throne after him. *Ethelward*, who was bred a scholar at *Oxford*, was a very learned man, and died in the fortieth year of his age, in 922. *Elfleda*, his eldest daughter, wife to *Ethelred*

Earl of *Mercia*, became very famous in her brother *Edward*'s reign. *Alfwitha* or *Ethelfwitha*, called also *Elfrude* by the *Flemish* Writers, married *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*. *Ethelgitha*, who chose to be a *Nun*, was made *Abbess* of *Shaftsbury* Nunnery, founded by the King her Father.

7. EDWARD *the Elder*.

EDWARD the Elder succeeds his father. *Ann. C.*

Ethelward, eldest son of King *Ethelbert*, pretends to the Crown. 901.

Finding the *English* unwilling to support his title, he applies to the *Danes*, and seizes *Winburn*, in *Dorsetshire*, and *Christ-Church* in *Hampshire*.

Edward marches against *Ethelward*, who had shut himself up in *Winburn*, and has like to surprize him; but he escapes in the night, and flies to the *Danes* in *Northumberland*, who proclaim him King.

Edward, sensible that he was in danger of being involved in a dangerous war, orders his men to pursue *Ethelward* in *Northumberland*.

The *Danes*, not being in a condition to withstand his troops, are forced to abandon and banish *Ethelward*; who retires to *France*. 902.

Edward secures several strong-holds in *Mercia*, and repairs some fortresses there, in order to confine the *Danes* within narrower bounds. 903.

Ethelred Earl of *Mercia*, and his wife *Elfleda*, are of great service to him in those wars.

Ethelward lands in *Northumbria* with a powerful aid of *Normans*. The next year he makes himself master of *Essex*. And the *Danes* in *Northumbria* and *East-Anglia* ravage *Mercia*, in a merciless manner. 904. 905.

Edward defeats the *Danes* in several battles; in one of which *Ethelward* is slain.

The *Danes* carry on the war two years after that, but at length *Edward* makes peace with them. 907.

The war is renewed, and the *Danes* lose two battles; the first at *Wednesfield*, and the second at *Tetnal*. 910. 911.

Edward improving his victories takes from the *Danes* several towns in *Mercia*, and at last drives them quite out of that Kingdom; whereupon *Ethelred* becomes in reality Earl of *Mercia*. 912.

Ethelred

Ann. C. 912. *Ethelred* dies, and is succeeded in the sovereignty of *Mercia*, by his Countess *Elfleda*; *Elfleda* repairs or fortifies *Warwick*, *Tamworth*, *Wedensbury*, *Charbury*, *Eadsbury*, *Stafford*, *Bridgnorth*, *Runckborne*, &c.

Then she carries her arms into *Wales*, and obliges the *Welsh* to become her tributaries.

913. *Edward* builds a Castle at *Hertford*: And the next summer builds the town of *Witham* in *Essex*; then the greatest part of *Essex*, which belonged to the *Danes*, submits to him.

914.

915. This year is memorable for the founding of the University of *Cambridge*.

918. *Edward* builds two Castles at *Nottingham*, and one at *Bedford*. He repairs also *Malden* in *Essex*.

920.

920. *Elfleda* dies at *Tamworth*, and is buried in the porch of *St. Peter*'s Monastery of *Gloucester*, founded by her husband and herself.

921. The *Danes* in *Mercia*, *East-Anglia*, and *Northumbria* submit to *Edward*, and own him for their Sovereign.

922.

921. *Edward* repairs and fortifies *Tocester*, *Wigmore*, *Colchester*, *Huntingdon*, *Stamford*, *Thelwall*, and *Manchester*.

923.

924. The *Welsh* endeavouring to free themselves from the tribute imposed upon them by *Elfleda*, are reduced by *Edward*, and promise to pay the usual tribute.

924. The *Cumberland Britons* submit also to him, and the King of *Scots* does him homage.

925. *Edward* dies at *Farringdon* in *Berkshire*, after a 24 years Reign, and was buried at *Winchester*: He left 15 children behind him, and was succeeded by his son *Athelstan*.

In this Reign *Rollo* the *Norman* gets possession of *Neustria* [or *Normandy*] and dying in 917. was succeeded by his son *William*.

8. ATHELSTAN.

925. *ATHELSTAN*, though a bastard, is elected King of *England*; and crowned at *Kingston*.

Some Lords, disdaining to be governed by a bastard, conspire to dethrone *Athelstan*, and place *Edwin* in his room.

Alfred, the chief of the conspirators, protesting his innocence, is sent to purge himself by oath in the presence of the Pope, as he offered to do.

926. The *Danes* in *Northumberland* beginning to raise commotions, *Athelstan* marches against them, and obliges them to return to their allegiance.

Upon

Upon the death of *Sithric* King of *Northumberland*, *Athelstan* marches into that Country, at the head of an army, and obliging the three *Danish* Princes, *Anlaf*, *Godfrid*, and *Reginald*, to save themselves by flight, makes himself master of all *Northumberland*. *Ann. C.* 927.

Athelstan requires *Constantine* King of *Scotland* to deliver up *Godfrid*; but *Godfrid* escapes, and *Constantine* has an interview with *Athelstan* at *Dacor*.

Godfrid makes an attempt upon *York*, but, missing his aim, turns Pirate. 928.

Anlaf and *Constantine* join against *Athelstan*.

Constantine stirs up *Hoel* King of *Wales* to make war upon *Athelstan*; but *Hoel* is defeated, and the tribute he paid augmented.

Athelstan marches into *Scotland*, and takes some places; but at last makes a peace with *Constantine*, and returns home. 934.

Constantine renews the war. 938.

Athelstan puts his brother *Edwin* to death, upon a false accusation.

He repents of it; and founds the Abbey of *Middleton* in *Dorsetshire*. Shortly after, he causes the false Accuser of *Edwin* to be executed.

Anlaf enters into a league with the *Irish*, *Welsh*, and *Northumbrian Danes*, against *Athelstan*; and, together with *Constantine* King of *Scotland*, invades *Northumberland*, with a fleet of 600 sail.

Constantine and *Anlaf* are entirely defeated at *Brunanburgh*.

After that, *Athelstan* extends his conquests in *Scotland*, raises the tribute of the *Welsh*, and increases the yoke of the *Northumbrian Danes*.

Then, marching against the *Cornish Britons*, he takes from them *Exeter*, which he repairs, and pens them up beyond the *Tamar*.

Athelstan dies at *Gloucester*, in the 46th year of his age, and the 16th of his reign; and is buried at *Malmsbury*. He is succeeded by *Edmund*, eldest son of *Edward the Elder*. 941.

In *Athelstan*'s Reign, the Bible was translated into *Saxon*.

9. EDMUND I.

IMmediately after *Athelstan*'s death, the *Danes* prepare for a revolt. 941.

Anlaf having obtained an aid from *Olaus*, King of *Norway*, invades *Northumberland*, and becomes master of *York*, and several other towns.

Not

Ann. C. 942. Not content with that, he marches into *Mercia*, and takes several places.

Edmund advancing against him, a battle is fought between those two Princes near *Chester*.

A peace is concluded between them, whereby *Edmund* engages to deliver up to the *Danes* all the Country lying North of *Watling-Street*.

944. *Anlaf* lays heavy taxes on his subjects, to pay *Olaus*; which occasions a revolt.

The inhabitants of *Deïra* send for his nephew *Reginald*, and crown him at *York*.

Edmund marching into *Northumberland*, at the head of an army, procures peace between the two Kings, and obliges them to swear allegiance to him, and be baptized.

They take up arms again, in order to shake off *Edmund*'s yoke: Who, immediately marching into *Mercia*, takes from them *Leicester*, *Stafford*, &c. and then advancing into *Northumberland*, obliges the two *Danish* Kings to abandon *England*. The *Danes* swear allegiance to him.

945. *Edmund* conquers the Kingdom of *Cumberland*, and bestows it upon the King of *Scotland*, who does homage to him for the same.

He enacted some laws, and was the first that made robbery a capital crime.

948. *Edmund* is assassinated at *Pucklekirk* in *Gloucestershire*, in the 25th year of his age, and the 8th of his reign; and was buried at *Glastonbury*. He is succeeded by his brother *Edred*, who is crowned at *Kingston*.

10. EDRED.

948. THE *Northumbrian Danes* league with *Malcolm* King of *Scotland*, and endeavour to shake off the *English* yoke.

Edred, marching against them, forces them to submit, and sue for peace.

He punishes the principal Authors of the revolt, and obliges *Malcolm* to pay him homage.

949. The *Northumbrian Danes* revolt again, and recall *Anlaf*, who makes himself master of *Northumberland*.

952. But growing tyrannical, he is driven out a second time by his subjects, and *Eric* placed on the Throne.

Northumberland being divided into two factions, *Edred* takes hold of that opportunity to reduce *Northumberland*; but, upon the submission of the inhabitants, he replaces *Eric* on the Throne.

In

In his return to *Wessex*, he falls into an ambush laid for him by the *Danes*, and had like to have his army cut off. *Ann. C.*

Highly incensed thereat, he returns to *Northumberland* to punish the *Danes*, but they submit to his mercy; and *Northumberland* is reduced to a province.

Edred turns his thoughts entirely to religious affairs, being guided by *Dunstan*.

Dunstan is in great credit, and is made the King's Treasurer.

The Monks make use of *Dunstan*'s interest to get into the Ecclesiastical benefices; and proclaim, upon that account, his sanctity.

Edred rebuilds the Monasteries of *Glastonbury*, *Croyland*, and *Abington*.

Edred dies, in the 10th year of his Reign, and was buried at *Winchester*. He is succeeded by *Edwy*, son of *Edmund*, 14 years old. 955. *Nov.* 23.

11. EDWY.

EDWY disgraces *Dunstan*, and calls him to an account for the sums intrusted with him by the late King. 955.

The Monks are turned out of their benefices, and the secular Priests put in their room.

Great outcries being made against it, *Dunstan* is banished.

The Monks stir up an insurrection against *Edwy*, which is headed by his brother *Edgar*.

Edgar having seized *Mercia*, and being joined by the *Danes* in *Northumberland*, and *East-Anglia*; *Edwy* is forced to deliver up *Mercia* to him. And *Edgar* is elected King of *Mercia*, which contained all the Country lying North of the *Thames*, except *Essex* and *Middlesex*. 959.

EDWY *in* Wessex. EDGAR *in* Mercia.

EDWY dies, after a Reign of 4 years, and some months; and was buried at *Winchester*. 959. *Oct.* 1.

12. EDGAR.

EDGAR succeeds his brother *Edwy* in all his Dominions, at the age of 16 years. 959.

He recalls *Dunstan* from banishment, and promotes him to the See of *Worcester*.

By keeping a ſtanding-army, and a numerous fleet, he becomes ſo formidable, that no one dares to attack him.

The Kings of *Wales*, *Ireland*, and the Iſle of *Man*, ſwear allegiance to him.

He is rowed down the river *Dee* by 8 Kings.

Edgar frees *England* from wolves; and makes a ſevere law againſt corrupt Magiſtrates.

He ſhews a great attachment to the Monks, and forms the project of replacing them into the Eccleſiaſtical benefices, in the room of the ſecular Clergy.

961. *Dunſtan* is entruſted with the management of the See of *London*, and ſoon after is made Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, and the Pope's Legate for *England*.

963. He, with *Oſwald* Biſhop of *Worceſter*, and *Ethelwald* of *Wincheſter*, manage all Eccleſiaſtical affairs.

964. Returns to his project, of turning out the ſecular Clergy, and putting Monks in the Eccleſiaſtical benefices.

Edgar countenances that project, and makes a notable harangue before his Council about it.

The *ſecular* Prieſts are expelled from the Monaſteries, and the *Regulars* put in their places.

969. *Edgar* lays the Iſle of *Thanet* waſte.

He was laſcivious and cruel.

975. *Edgar* dies in the 32d year of his age, and the 16th of
July 18. his reign; leaving two ſons, *Edward* and *Ethelred*; and a daughter named *Editha*; and was buried in *Glaſtonbury* Church.

13. EDWARD II. *the Martyr.*

975. UPON *Edgar*'s death, diſputes ariſe concerning the Succeſſion to the Crown, ſome being for *Edward*, and others for *Ethelred*.

Dunſtan crowns *Edward* by his own authority. He was but 14 years of age.

The diſſenſions are revived on account of the Monks. *Elfer* Duke of *Mercia* turns them out of all the benefices they poſſeſſed in that Province.

Dunſtan protects the Monks, and ſtands up ſtrenuouſly for them.

976. Several Councils are held about that affair; namely, one
977. at *Kirtlington*, and another at *Wincheſter*.

978. In a Council held at *Calne*, the floor of the room where it was aſſembled breaking down, ſeveral were cruſhed to death,

death, but *Dunstan* saved himself, by taking hold of a beam. *Aun. C.* 979.

Edward is assassinated at *Corfe-Castle*, by the procurement of his mother-in-law *Elfrida*; and was first buried privately at *Warham*, and then removed to *Shaftsbury*. Part of his body was some time after removed to *Leominster*, and another to *Abingdon*.

State of the Church of England, *from the year* 828 *to* 978.

THE *Danish* Invasions produce an extreme corruption of manners, and a profound ignorance all over *England*.

The memoirs of what passed in Church and State were destroyed, with the Monasteries in which they were preserved.

Ethelwulph grants by charter the tithes to the Clergy. 854.

The Sees of *Crediton*, *Wells*, *St. Germains*, and *Petrockstow*, are erected. 909.

King *Edmund* grants very great privileges to *Glastonbury* Monastery.

Turketul rebuilds *Croyland* Abbey, for which he obtains a very advantagious Charter.

The Bishoprics of *Leicester* and *Lincoln* are united into one, and the See removed to *Dorchester*.

The COUNCILS in this interval were mixt Assemblies, consisting of the Clergy and Nobility.

Odo's constitutions are made. 923.

The Synod of *Graetley* is held; as also another in *Edmund* and *Edgar*'s Reigns. 928.

The most noted PERSONS, within this Period, for piety or learning, were

Alfred, *Swithin*, *Humberi*,

Joannes Scotus, surnamed *Erigena*, who taught at *Oxford*, and wrote against Transubstantiation.

Grimbald.

Asserius Menevinsis, who wrote the life of *Alfred the Great*. 893.

Werefrid, who translated the dialogues of *Gregory the Great* into *Saxon*.

C. *Ann.* *Plegmund*, *Dunulf*, *Wulfig*, *Neot*, *Odo*, *Dunstan*, *Oswald*, *Ethelwald*, and *Turketul*.

Turketul casts a great bell, which he called *Guthlac*. His successor, adding some more to it, made the first tuneable ring of bells in *England*.

BOOK V.

Containing the space of about 88 *years.*

14. ETHELRED II.

979. Apr. 25. *ETHELRED* II. is crowned at *Kingston*, being then 12 years of age.

He bitterly laments the death of the King his brother, for which his mother unmercifully beats him.

980. *Edward*'s body is, by *Ethelred*'s order, removed to *Shaftsbury*.

981. The *Danes* renew their invasions, after an intermission of 60 years; and are joined by their countrymen settled in *England*.

They plunder *Southampton*, the Isle of *Thanet*, and the Coasts of *Cornwal*.

Another band lands at *Portland*, and pillages the Country round about.

983. *Elfric*, Duke of *Mercia*, one of the best supports of his Country, dies:

984. Aug. 1. And *Ethelwold*, Bishop of *Winchester*, who founded a dozen Monasteries.

Ethelred disregards the Monks, and puts them upon a level with the rest of his subjects.

986. Upon a quarrel with the Bishop of *Rochester*, he lays waste the lands belonging to his Cathedral.

988. *Dunstan* loses his credit, and dies of vexation: As doth also *Oswald* Archbishop of *York*.

991. *Justin* and *Guthmund*, two *Danish* Captains, land at *Gippeswic*, and having defeated *Brithnoth*, Duke of *East-Anglia*, at *Mældune*, ravage the Country.

993. *Ethelred*, at the persuasion of *Siric* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, gives the *Danes* 10,000 *l.* to be rid of them.

993. Another *Danish* fleet lands on the North-side of the *Humber*, and, defeating the three Earls *Fræna*, *Frithegist*, and *Goodwin*, plunders the Country.

Sweyn

Sweyn King of *Denmark*, and *Anlaf* King of *Norway*, invade *England*, and land near *London*, which they endeavour to take, but in vain: So they go and plunder *Kent*, *Hampshire*, and *Sussex*. *Ann. C.* 994.

Ethelred promises them 16,000 *l.* in order to put a stop to their ravages.

Anlaf visits *Ethelred* (at *Andover*) who persuades him to be baptized, and stands Godfather to him. At his departure, he obliges himself by oath never to infest *England* any more.

Sweyn and *Anlaf* return home, but *Sweyn* leaves a fleet at *Southampton*: Which, renewing the war, plunders *Wales*, 997.
Cornwal, *Devonshire*, *Dorsetshire*, *Somersetshire*, and *Kent*. 998.

The *Danes* are unexpectedly called off, to go and assist 999.
Richard II. Duke of *Normandy*, whom the King of *France* attempted to dispossess of that Duchy.

Ethelred takes that opportunity to go and ravage *Cumberland*. 1000.

The *Danes* return again into *England*, plunder *Cornwal*, take *Exeter*, and get possession of *Hampshire*, *Dorsetshire*, and the Isle of *Wight*. 1001.

Ethelred, and the Wittena-gemot, agree to pay the *Danes* 30,000 *l.* which was raised by the tax called *Danegeld*. 1002.

The *Danes* return home; but several stay behind, who behave insolently, and are called *Lord-Danes*.

Elgiva or *Ethelgiva*, *Ethelred*'s Queen, dying, he marries *Emma*, sister of *Richard* II, Duke of *Normandy*.

Ethelred being informed that the *Danes* settled in *England*, had formed a conspiracy to kill him, causes them all to be massacred in one day, and among the rest *Sweyn*'s sister. *Nov.* 13.

Sweyn resolves upon revenge, and swears he would never rest till he had satisfaction for so bloody an outrage.

He gains to his interest Earl *Hugh*, Governor of *Cornwal*.

Sweyn lands in *Cornwal*, with a fleet of 300 sail, and burns *Exeter*, *Wilton*, and *Sarum*, 1003.

He goes and passes the winter in *Denmark*. *Ethelred* is betrayed by his General, *Alfric* Duke of *Mercia*.

Sweyn returns to *England*, burns *Norwich* and *Thetford*, and defeats *Ulfketel* Duke of *East-Anglia*. 1004.

Ethelred is betrayed on all hands.

A famine happens in *England*, which obliges *Sweyn* to return to *Denmark*. 1005.

Another *Danish* fleet lands at *Sandwich*; *Ethelred* marching against them, they retire to the Isle of *Wight*, from 1006.

Ann. C. whence issuing out afterwards, they ravage *Hampshire* and
1007. *Berkshire*. To stop their progress, *Ethelred* gives them 30,000 *l.*

1008. *Ethelred* gives one of his daughters in marriage to *Edric Streon*, Duke of *Mercia*, who proves a traitor.

The *Danes* demanding with threats the same sum as was given them the year before, *Ethelred* fits out a great fleet; but it proves of no use to him.

1009. Two *Danish* fleets arrive in *England*, one in *East-Anglia*, and another in the Isle of *Thanet*. These, joining forces, plunder *Kent*, and besiege *Canterbury*, but the inhabitants purchase a peace with 3000 *l.*

1010. The *Danes* afterwards plunder *Sussex*, *Hampshire*, and *Berkshire*. *Ethelred* levies an army against them, but, through *Edric Streon*'s advice, suffers them to pass by unmolested.

They winter in the Isle of *Thanet*, plunder the neighbouring Counties, and make several attempts upon *London*.

Ulfketel Duke of *East-Anglia* is defeated, and the *Danes* remain masters of that Country.

1011. The *Danes* mount part of their troops, and become masters of *Essex*, *Middlesex*, *Hertfordshire*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Oxfordshire*, *Bedfordshire*, *Cambridgeshire*, *Huntingdonshire*, *Northamptonshire*, *Kent*, *Surrey*, *Sussex*, *Hampshire*, *Berkshire*, *Wiltshire*, and *Devonshire*. *Oxford* is burnt.

They take *Canterbury*, and reduce it to ashes.

1012. *Elphegus* Archbishop of *Canterbury* is murdered by those Barbarians.

The King and *Wittena-Gemot* bribe the *Danes* with 8000 *l.* to leave the Kingdom; which having received, they depart.

1013. *Sweyn* returns to *England*, lands in *Lincolnshire*, and soon becomes master of *Northumberland*, *East-Anglia*, and of all the Counties lying North of *Watling-Street*.

He lays siege to *London*, where *Ethelred* was shut up: But, not being able to take it, he goes and ravages the western parts of *Wessex*.

Ethelred retires into *Normandy*, with all his family: Whereupon *Sweyn* is proclaimed King of *England*.

15. SWEYN, *first* Danish *King*.

1014. *Feb.* 3. *SWEYN* imposes a great tax on *England*, for the payment of his *Danish* troops.

He dies suddenly.

ETHELRED

ETHELRED is recalled by the *English*, and the *Danes* proclaim *Canute Sweyn*'s son. *Ann. C.*

Ethelred soon finds himself at the head of a powerful army, but, instead of using it against the *Danes*, he employs it to chastise the *Lindsey-men*.

He marches against *Canute*, who embarks his troops, and sets sail for *Denmark*.

Instead of performing his engagements to his subjects, *Ethelred* lays a tax of 21,000 *l.* upon them, for the payment of his fleet; and causes *Morcard* and *Sifferth*, two Earls, to be unjustly put to death, for the sake of their estates. 1015.

Edmund, the King's eldest son, marries *Algitha Sifferth*'s widow.

Canute, after having secured the Crown of *Denmark*, returns to *England*, and lands at *Sandwich*.

Edric Streon declares for him, and carries along with him a considerable body of troops, with forty ships of war.

Canute plunders *Dorsetshire*, *Wiltshire*, and *Somersetshire*.

He subdues all *Mercia*, with *Edric Streon*'s assistance.

Edmund endeavours to persuade the King his father to head his army, but he will not, for fear of being delivered up to the *Danes*.

Canute enlarges his conquests, and becomes master of several Counties in *Wessex*.

Edmund retires into the *North*, and, joining *Uthred*, Earl of *Northumberland*, they ravage *Staffordshire*, *Shropshire*, and *Leicestershire*; while *Canute* lays waste *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, *Huntingdon*, *Lincoln*, and *Nottingham* Shires. 1016.

Upon *Canute*'s approach, *Edmund* retires into *Lancashire*, and *Uthred* submits to *Canute*, who puts him to death soon after.

Edmund comes to the King his father at *London*.

Ethelred dies, in the 50th year of his age, and the 37th of his Reign, leaving eight children behind him, and was buried in *St. Paul*'s Cathedral. He is succeeded by his eldest son *Edmund* II. The rest of his children were, *Eduy*, *Alfred*, *Edward*: *Edgiva*, *Edgith*, *Edgina*, and *Goda*. *Apr.* 23.

16. EDMUND II. *Ironside*.

EDMUND is proclaimed King by the *English*, but the *Danes*, and all the Counties in their possession, declare for *Canute*. 1016.

Ann. C. Many of the *English* come and offer their services to *Edmund.*

Canute besieges *London* twice, but in vain.

A bloody battle is fought, at *Sceorstan*, between the two Kings, wherein neither side obtains the victory.

Edric Streon makes use of an artifice to dishearten the *English* army.

Canute withdraws in the night, and comes and besieges *London* a third time, but without success.

Five battles are fought between *Edmund* and *Canute*, within the course of this year; namely, at *Pen*, *Sceorstan*, *Brentford*, *Shepey*, and *Assandun*.

Edric Streon, by his pernicious advice, hinders *Edmund* from gaining the victory at the battle fought in *Kent*.

He deserts *Edmund* at the battle of *Assandun*, or *Asdon* in *Essex*, which is the cause of his total overthrow.

Edmund rallying his dispersed troops, and drawing together a more powerful army, goes in quest of *Canute*, and meets him at *Deerhurst*; but they part without fighting.

Edmund sends a challenge to *Canute*, who refuses to accept it.

An end is put to the war, by a peace concluded between the two Kings in the Isle of *Alney*.

All the Country lying South of the *Thames*, with the City of *London*, part of the antient Kingdom of *Essex*, and all *East-Anglia*, is assigned to *Edmund*: And *Canute* has for his share the Kingdom of *Mercia*, including *Northumberland* and *East-Anglia*.

Nov. 30. *Edmund* is assassinated by the treachery of *Edric Streon*; leaving two sons, *Edmund* and *Edward*, behind him; and was buried at *Glastonbury*. He is succeeded by *Canute*.

17. CANUTE, *second* Danish *King*.

1016. *CANUTE* calls a General Assembly at *London*, wherein he gets himself acknowledged King of all *England*, to the prejudice of *Edmund*'s sons and brothers: And accordingly he is proclaimed and crowned.

1017. He divides *England* into four Governments, *Mercia*, *Northumberland*, *East-Anglia*, and *Wessex*.

And takes measures, for gaining the affection of his new subjects, and for getting rid of those that could give him any uneasiness.

To


K. CANUTE
the Great

To that end, he publicly declares, there should be, for the future, no distinction between the *English* and *Danes*. And publishes an edict, That every County should be governed by the same laws as under the *Saxon* Kings; except the northern Counties. *Ann. C.*

Canute contrives how to get rid of *Alfred* and *Edward*, (*Edmund*'s brothers) and of his two sons.

He sends *Edmund*'s two sons to the King of *Sweden*; who has them conveyed to *Hungary*, where they both marry; and to *Edward* is born there *Edgar-Atheling*, *Margaret*, and *Christian*.

Edwy-adeling, and *Edwy-ceorleging*, sons of *Ethelred* II, are banished *England*.

Canute recalls the first, and finds means to dispatch him out of the way.

Canute marries *Emma*, widow of *Ethelred* II, and the Crown is settled on her issue.

He puts *Edric Streon* to death, and banishes *Eric* Earl of *Northumberland*, and *Turkil* Duke of *East-Anglia*.

The *English* pay him a tax of 81,000 *l.* for the arrears due to his army. 1018.

Canute goes to *Denmark*, to war against the *Goths* and *Vandals*, and carries over with him the flower of the *English* troops under the command of Earl *Goodwin*, who signalizes himself in this war; and is created Earl of *Kent*. 1019.

Canute returns to *England*, and holds a great Council at *Cirencester*, wherein the observance of the laws of *Edgar* was enforced. 1020.

He takes a second voyage to *Denmark*, which was invaded by the *Swedes*, by whom he is worsted. 1025.

Richard II, Duke of *Normandy*, dies, and is succeeded by his son *Richard* III. 1026.

His brother *Robert* succeeds him. 1027.

Canute revives some old pretensions to *Norway*; and, accordingly going thither with numerous forces, drives *Olaus* the King away, and makes himself master of that Kingdom. 1028.

Canute, laying aside all thoughts of war, gives himself up to acts of devotion, and inriches the Churches and Monasteries.

He builds a stately Church over the grave of Prince *Edmund*, and enlarges the town where he was buried, from him called *St. Edmundsbury*.

Goes to *Rome*; confirms the grants of his Predecessors to the *Roman* Church and *English* College; and obtains an exemption 1031.

Ann. C. exemption from toll for his subjects, as they should pass through *Italy*, *France*, and *Germany*. Returns to *England*.

Robert Duke of *Normandy* dies, and is succeeded by his son *William*.

1036. *Canute* dies at *Shaftsbury*, in the 19th year of his Reign,
Nov. 12. leaving three sons, *Sweyn*, *Harold*, and *Hardicanute*, and a daughter, named *Gunilda*, behind him, and was buried at *Winchester*. He is succeeded by his son *Harold* I.

18. HAROLD I. *Harefoot*, *third* Danish *King*.

1036. THE *Danes* stand up for *Harold*, and the *English* for *Hardi-Canute*.

Harold seizes the treasure laid up by the King his father at *Winchester*, and by the help of that is chosen and proclaimed King of *England*, in *Mercia*.

The *West-Saxons*, through the management of Earl *Goodwin*, elect and proclaim *Hardi-Canute* King of *Wessex*.

Earl *Goodwin* remains Regent of *Wessex*, till *Hardi-Canute* should come and take possession of the Crown; he being in *Denmark*.

Harold contrives by secret practices to gain the Kingdom of *Wessex*.

By promising *Goodwin* to marry his daughter, he prevails upon him to deliver up that Kingdom to him.

Emma forms the design to place on the Throne one of her sons by *Ethelred*.

She desires leave for them to come over from *Normandy*; and accordingly *Alfred* and *Edward* come, and reside with her at *Winchester*.

Goodwin finds out the Queen's design, and acquaints *Harold* with it.

The King being alarmed at it, *Goodwin* advises him to put the two young Princes to death.

For that purpose, *Harold* invites them to come and pass a few days at Court, before they returned into *Normandy*.

Emma, for fear of any ill design, sends only *Alfred*, the eldest, and keeps *Edward* by her.

1037. *Alfred* is stopped upon the road, and confined in *Guildford* Castle; from whence being removed to *Ely* Monastery, and his eyes put out, he dies soon after.

Edward speedily returns to *Normandy*, for fear of the like treatment; and *Emma* having received orders to depart the Kingdom, retires to *Bruges*.

Hardi-

Hardi-Canute forms a design of recovering the Kingdom of *Wessex* by force of arms. *Ann. C.*

Harold dies at *Oxford*, without issue, in the 4th year of his Reign, and was buried at *Westminster*. He is succeeded by *Hardi-Canute*. 1039. *Mar.* 17.

19. HARDI-CANUTE, *fourth* Danish *King*.

HARDI-CANUTE is unanimously acknowledged King of all *England*, by the great men of both Nations. 1039.

He comes to *England* with forty ships, which he had brought from *Denmark*.

Causes his brother *Harold*'s body to be digged up, and thrown into the *Thames*; but it was afterwards found, and buried again at *St. Clement's-Danes*.

Hardi-Canute imposes a tax of above 32,000 *l.* on *England*, for the payment of his fleet and army. 1040.

The inhabitants of *Worcester* opposing the levying of that tax, an army is sent to quell them, which plunders and burns that City.

Edward, son of *Ethelred* II, comes to Court, and demands justice against *Goodwin*, for the murder of his brother *Alfred*.

Goodwin diverts the storm by making the King a present of a fine galley; and is acquitted, upon taking his oath he had no hand in the death of Prince *Alfred*.

Hardi-Canute dies at *Lambeth*, without issue, in the second year of his Reign; and was buried at *Winchester*. He is succeeded by *Edward*, second son of *Ethelred* II.

20. EDWARD III. *the Confessor*.

SOME difficulties arise concerning the Succession to the Crown, which had like to put an obstacle to *Edward*'s promotion. 1041.

Edward courts Earl *Goodwin*'s assistance, who promises to procure him the Throne: But upon certain conditions; and among the rest that he should marry his daughter *Editha*.

Goodwin convenes a General Assembly at *London*, where *Edward* is elected King, and proclaimed.

In this Assembly, *Goodwin* proposes to the *English* to free themselves

Ann. C. themselves from the oppressions of the *Danes*, and particularly from *Danegelt*, which amounted to 40,000 *l.* a year.

Accordingly it was resolved, That no *Dane* for the future should sit upon the Throne of *England*, and that the *Danes* should be expelled the Kingdom.

1042. *Edward* is crowned, at *Winchester*. He was a Prince of
April 3. a weak constitution, and a narrow genius.

Defers his marriage with *Editha* as long as he could.

Edward takes from the Queen his mother all her estate, leaving her only a moderate pension.

Sweyn King of *Norway*, *Canute*'s son, asserts his right to the Crown of *England*, and prepares to invade the Kingdom. *Gunilda*, *Canute*'s niece, is thereupon banished.

1043. A war breaks out between *Denmark* and *Norway*, which puts a stop to *Sweyn*'s designs.

Edward solemnizes his marriage with *Editha*, Earl *Goodwin*'s daughter.

1045. *Swane* *Goodwin*'s son, having deflowered the Abbess of *Leominster*, flies to *Denmark*, and turning pirate infests the *English* coasts.

He kills Earl *Beorn*, who went to treat with him; and yet, notwithstanding all his crimes, is forgiven by the weak King.

1046. Twenty-five *Danish* ships arrive at *Sandwich*, and the sailors plunder the coasts of *Kent* and *Essex*.

1048. The *Normans* are in great favour with *Edward*, and very numerous at his Court.

Goodwin and the *Normans* bore a great enmity to one another.

Robert, a *Norman*, is made Archbishop of *Canterbury*.

Eustace Earl of *Boulogne* comes to *England*, to visit his brother-in-law King *Edward*.

As he was going back, a quarrel happens between his retinue and the inhabitants of *Dover*, and several are killed on both sides.

The Earl comes back to *Edward* to demand satisfaction; whereupon *Goodwin* is ordered to go and chastise the *Dover* men. But, upon enquiry, finding the Earl's servants to have been in fault, he refuses to comply with the King's orders.

Edward resolves to punish *Goodwin*; who draws together some troops, and stands upon his defence.

The King and *Goodwin* are reconciled.

Edward takes new measures against *Goodwin*, and summons him and his sons before a General Assembly; but they, refusing

refusing to appear, are banished. *Goodwin* retires to the Earl of *Flanders*, and *Harold* sails for *Ireland*. *Ann. C.*

William Duke of *Normandy* comes and pays a visit to King *Edward*. 1051.

Edward receives him with abundance of civility, and is said to have made a will, wherein he appointed him his heir.

Edward shuts the Queen his wife in the Nunnery of *Wherwell*.

Elfgiva his mother dies, and was buried at *Winchester*. 1052.

Goodwin takes measures to right himself by force of arms, and infests the eastern coasts of *England*, whilst his son *Harold* does the same to the western.

The Earl of *Flanders* lends him a very considerable aid, whilst *Harold* equips a good number of ships in *Ireland*.

Edward fits out a fleet, to go in quest of *Goodwin*.

Discontents arising, and alterations being made, in the fleet, which rendered it useless for a time, *Goodwin* makes a descent on the Isle of *Wight*, and then comes up the *Thames* to *London*.

Edward is for going out to fight *Goodwin*, but, upon *Goodwin*'s submission, he is reconciled to him.

Goodwin is acquitted, by the General Assembly, of Prince *Alfred*'s murder; and gives up his son *Ulnoth*, and his grandson *Hacune*, as hostages for his good behaviour: And then he and his sons are restored to their estates and dignities.

Edward takes again the Queen his wife.

Robert Archbishop of *Canterbury* is banished, and *Stigand* put in his room. The *Frenchmen* that were about the King are also banished.

Earl *Goodwin* dies suddenly, and was succeeded by his son *Harold* in all his estates and dignities. 1053.

Harold behaves in so prudent and courteous a manner, that he is more feared than loved by the King.

Macbeth, King of *Scotland*, drives away *Malcolm*, who pretended to the Crown of *Cumberland*, and makes himself master of that Kingdom. 1054.

Edward sends Earl *Siward* to right *Malcolm*, who defeats *Macbeth*, and puts *Malcolm* in possession of *Cumberland*.

Siward Earl of *Northumberland* dies; and is succeeded in his government by *Toston*, *Harold*'s brother. 1055.

Harold's personal merit and liberal temper procure him many friends.

Alfgar, the Duke of *Mercia*'s son, enters into a Conspiracy, and holds intelligence with *Griffin* King of *Wales*.

Ann. C. Being accused for it of Treason, and banished, he goes and joins *Griffin*, and they make an inroad together into *Herefordshire*.

Harold defeats them, and, through his interest, *Alfgar* is restored to his estate and honours.

1057. The people begin to talk of *Harold's* succeeding to the Crown.

Edward, being jealous of him, sends for his nephew *Edward*, son of *Edmund Ironside*, out of *Hungary*; who, dying soon after his arrival into *England*, leaves his title to his son *Edgar-Atheling*.

Leofric Duke of *Mercia* dies, and is buried in the Monastery of *Coventry*, which he and the famous *Godiva* his wife had built. He is succeeded in the Earldom of *Mercia* by his son *Alfgar*.

1059. *Alfgar* dies, and is buried by his father.

1062. *Harold* aspires to the Crown, and demands his brother *Ulnoth* and his nephew *Hacune*, which his father had given for hostages to the King.

Edward puts him off, saying, they were not in his power, but in the Duke of *Normandy's*, to whom they had been sent.

Harold desires leave to go into *Normandy*, to follicit the Duke for their deliverance.

He sets out for *Normandy*, but, being driven by a tempest on the coast of *Picardy*, is seized by the Earl of *Ponthieu*.

The Duke of *Normandy*, being informed of it, sends and demands *Harold* of the Earl of *Ponthieu*, who gives him up.

Harold comes to *Roan*. And Duke *William*, knowing of *Harold's* design upon the Crown of *England*, is at a loss, whether he should detain him by force, or gain him by fair means.

He endeavours to gain him, by discovering to him his hopes of mounting one day the Throne of *England*.

Harold dissembles the matter, and promises, nay swears on the Gospels, that he would never attempt to mount the Throne of *England*. At the same time he demands one of his daughters in marriage.

Looking upon his oath as extorted, *Harold*, at his return to *England*, takes new measures to secure the Succession of the Crown to himself.

1036. The *Welsh* renewing their incursions under King *Gruffydh*, *Harold*, and *Toston* march against them, and compel them

them to dethrone their King, and to become tributary to *England*. *Ann. C.*

Gruffydh being afterwards restored, and renewing the war, *Harold* marches to the frontiers, and strikes such a terror into the *Welsh*, that they send him the head of their King. 1064. *Aug.* 7.

Tosten, Earl of *Northumberland*, behaving with a great deal of cruelty and injustice, is expelled by the *Northumbrians*.

Harold is sent to chastise them, and to restore his brother; but, instead of that, he procures the *Northumbrians* a pardon, and gets *Morcard* son of *Alfgar* created Earl of *Northumberland*, in *Tosten*'s room.

Tosten, incensed thereat, causes some of *Harold*'s domestics to be cut in pieces, and then barrels them up, and sends them to him for a present: After which he retires into *Flanders*.

Edward prepares for the dedication of the Abbey Church at *Westminster*, which he had rebuilt; and it is accordingly performed in a solemn manner. 1065. *Dec.* 28.

Edward being seized with a sudden illness, the Nobles are induced by *Harold* to send deputies to him, to intreat him to name a Successor; but he leaves it to them to chuse whom they thought fittest.

Edward dies, without issue, after a 24 years Reign, and was buried the next day at *Westminster*. 1066. *Janu.* 5.

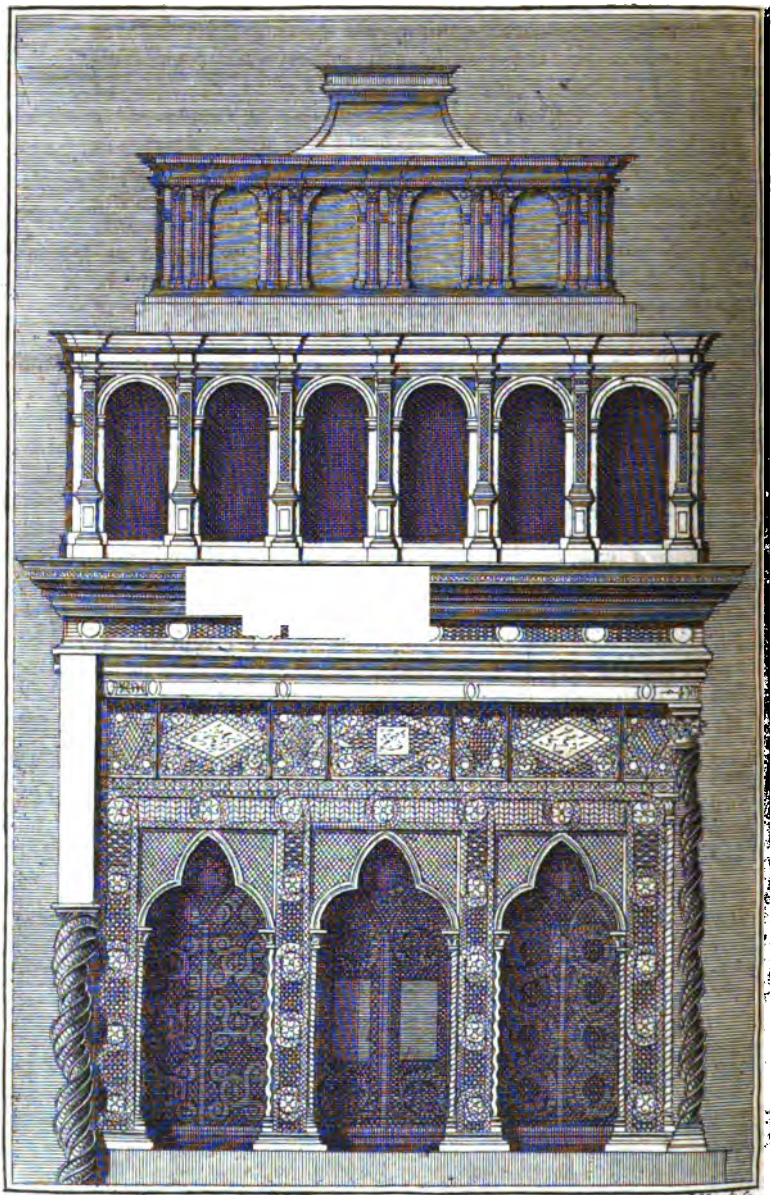
The Character of EDWARD the CONFESSOR.

This Prince, who was born at *Gissip* near *Oxford*, reigned twenty-four years, without ever suffering any misfortune from foreign enemies. However, he cannot be said to have reigned happily, since he lived in continual fears, occasioned by the overgrown power of Earl *Goodwin* and his family. His mild and peaceable temper were a great means however to procure him some tranquillity. Had he attempted to humble *Goodwin*'s pride, and lessen *Harold*'s power, he would certainly have been involved in troubles, from whence he would have found it difficult to extricate himself. But by shutting his eyes at their secret practices, and feigning to know nothing of their designs, he prevented them from acting more openly, caused them to lay more distant schemes, and thereby gained time to arrive at the end of his days. He was remarkable neither for his virtues nor vices; and his natural

tural parts were but mean. His piety has been exceedingly cried up, and has acquired him the glorious title of *Confessor*; and yet we do not find he was any sufferer on account of religion, unless we consider as a sort of martyrdom, the mortifications he privately laid upon himself from a religious motive. It is certain he was very charitable, and expended in alms the sums vainly lavished away by other Princes upon their pleasures. This, joined to his good-nature, of which he gave from time to time uncommon instances, made him pass for a Saint among the people, and particularly among the Monks, who reaped great advantages from his liberal disposition. They have not been satisfied with extolling his virtues to the skies, but have even, if I may so say, canonized his very faults, and endeavoured to represent them as so many proofs of his sanctity. Of this we need no other witness but his own Historian, or rather Panegyrist, who attributes his voluntary chastity to a vow made before his marriage. This Writer assures us, *Edward* espoused *Editha*, daughter of *Goodwin*, purely to exercise his virtue by a continual temptation. But it is easy to see he acted from a very different motive, since he parted with his wife the moment he thought he could do it with safety. However, the opinion of his sanctity taking by degrees deep root in the minds of the people, he was canonized by Pope *Alexander* III, under the name of *Edward the Confessor*.

It was not thought sufficient to allow this Prince all the virtue necessary to carry him to Heaven, unless he had a place given him also among the Saints of the first class. We are told he was favoured with several revelations, with the gift of prophecy, and many other miraculous powers, in proof of which such weak and trifling instances are produced, as are not worth mentioning. However, I can't pass over in silence one special privilege he is said to receive from Heaven, of curing the *King's Evil*. Nay, it is affirmed, this privilege has descended to the Kings of *England* his successors. Hence the custom in *England* of the King's *Touching for the Evil* at a certain time of the year. But the late King *William* III. of glorious memory, was so persuaded he should do no injury to persons afflicted with this distemper, by not touching them, that he refrained from it all his reign. The Kings of *France* also have claimed the same privilege ever since the time of *Clovis*, the first Christian King of that Kingdom.

What



The Monument of K. EDWARD the CONFESSOR in Westminster Abbey.

What has been most commended in King *Edward*, was his good nature, the excessiveness whereof has been carefully insinuated by several circumstances of his life, of which I shall content myself with producing two as a specimen of the rest. One day, being laid down upon the bed, one of his domesticks, who did not know he was in the room, stole some money out of a chest he found open, which the King let him carry off without saying a word. Presently after, the Boy returning to make a second attempt, the King called to him, without the least passion, *Friend, you'd best be satisfied with what you've got, for if my Chamberlain comes and catches you, he'll not only take from you all you have stolen, but whip you severely.* Another Malmsb. time, as he was hunting, a countryman maliciously spoiling his sport, he galloped up to him, and said to him in anger, *By our Lady, I would be revenged on thee, if it was in my power.* These are the incontestible proofs of his extraordinary good nature, which, according to his Panegyrists, advanced him so far above all other men.

Edward was the last King of *Egbert*'s race, though not the last Saxon King, as some have affirmed, since his successor was of that nation. Had not this weak Prince preposterously abstained from conversing with his Queen, a very beautiful and virtuous Lady, he might perhaps have had children, and thereby prevented a revolution, which involved the *English* in slavery.

Before the reign of *Edward*, the *West-Saxon*, *Mercian* and *Danish* laws were observed in *England*, namely, the first in *Wessex*, the second in *Mercia*, and the last in *Northumberland*. This Prince reduced them all into one body; and from that time they became common to all *England*, under the name of the *Laws of Edward*, to distinguish them from those of the *Normans*, introduced afterwards.

A Description of EDWARD the CONFESSOR's Monument.

The Monument, or rather Shrine, erected by *Henry* III, in the venerable chapel, that takes its name from this King and Saint. It is composed of stone, covered with mosaick-work of stained glass of various colours, particularly red and gold. The stone-work is hollow within-side, where there is a large chest bound with iron, into which it is said, the old coffin being decayed with the bones of this King in it, were put by the order of King *James* II. Over the stone-work is a neat and regular wainscot-frame, said

to have been formerly plated with gold, and adorned with precious stones. Those precious stones are supposed to be no more than the same kind of mosaick-work of stained glass, which still remains on the pilasters and several parts of the monument. That frame had another over it, which is now much decayed and sunk in; and over these, on the top of the shrine, was the curious one mentioned by *Matthew Paris*. The tomb seems to have been repaired in *Richard* IId's time, as is conjectured from the painted Mosaic of gold and black to be seen in some places of it. Round the verge is this inscription in gold letters upon black.

Omnibus insignis virtutum laudibus heros
Sanctus Edwardus Confessor, Rex venerandus
Quinto die Jani moriens super æthera scandit.

* Motto. * SURSUM CORDA. Moritur anno Domini 1065.

In English,

The Heroe renowned for all virtues,
Saint *Edward the Confessor*, and venerable King,
Dying the 5th of *January*, he ascended to the skies.

PLACE YOUR HEARTS ON HIGH.

He died in the year of our Lord 1065.

The above inscription is supposed to have been put on this tomb, when the old one embossed on it was worn away: these monkish verses were the old one:

Anno milleno Domini cum septuageno,
Et bis centeno, cum completo quasi deno,
Hoc opus est factum, quod Petrus duxit in actum,
Romanus civis; homo, causam noscere si vis,
Rex fuit Henricus, Sancti præsentis amicus.

The sense of which is,

In the year of our Lord 1280, this work was finished by *Peter*, a *Roman* citizen: Reader, if you will know why it was done; it was because King *Henry* was the present saint's friend.

21. HAROLD II.

Ann. C. 1066. *Janu.* 6. HAROLD is unanimously elected King by the General Assembly, without any regard to the right of *Edgar-Atheling*. He

He is crowned the next day by the Archbishop of *York*. *Ann. C.*

Tostin prepares to disturb the King his brother in the possession of his new dignity.

Being furnished with ships by the Earl of *Flanders*, he infests the *English* coasts, plunders the Isle of *Wight*, lands some troops at *Sandwich*, and then goes and makes a descent in *Northfolk*.

Edwin and *Morcar* drive *Tostin* to his ships; who steers towards *Scotland*, but meeting with no encouragement there, he puts to sea again; and is driven on the coast of *Norway*, where he enters into a combination with the King thereof.

Harold insinuates, as if he intended to resign the Crown to *Edgar Atheling* when of age, and creates him Earl of *Oxford*.

The Duke of *Normandy* prepares for the invasion of *England*, and sends Ambassadors to *Harold* to require him to resign up his Kingdom; or, in case of refusal, to declare war against him.

Harold slights the Duke's message, and endeavours to gain the affections of the people, by lessening the taxes, *&c.*

Duke *William* endeavours to raise money, but the States of *Normandy* refuse to grant him any; so he raises it by way of subscription among private persons.

He also engages several of the neighbouring Princes to furnish him with troops and transports, on condition of having lands assigned them in *England* after the conquest.

France obstructs not his proceedings, and the Pope approves of the undertaking, and sends him a consecrated banner.

Harold equips a large fleet, and raises a numerous army; *Sept.* 8.
but, finding it very chargeable, he dismisses it, upon a false information that the Duke had deferred his expedition till the next spring.

Harold-Harfager King of *Norway*, and *Tostin*, enter the *Tine* and the *Humber*, ravage the Country on both sides, defeat *Marcar* and *Edwin* at *Fulford*, and make themselves *Sept.* 20.
masters of *York*.

Harold marches against them, and entirely routs their army, after an obstinate fight of eight hours, in which *Harfager* and *Tostin* were both slain. *Sept.* 25.

Instead of dividing the booty among his soldiers, *Harold* retains it to himself, which causes a great discontent in his army.

William Duke of *Normandy* invades *England*, and lands *Sept.* 29.
at *Pevensy* in *Sussex*.

Ann. C. He builds a fort near the place of his landing, and marching to *Hastings* raises a stronger fortification there, and publishes a Manifesto.

Harold comes to *London*, and reviews his army, which he finds very much diminished.

The Nobility repair to him, and offer him their assistance.

Duke *William* sends Ambassadors to *Harold* to require him to resign the Crown; but he returns a menacing and insulting message.

Harold draws his forces together, and goes and encamps about nine miles from the *Norman* army, resolved to give them battle.

Gurth endeavours to persuade his brother *Harold* to defer the engagement, but he will not hearken to him.

Duke *William* sends proposals to *Harold*, which are rejected.

Oct. 14. The *English* and *Norman* armies come to an engagement; and after a bloody fight, which lasted a whole day, *Harold* is slain, and the *English* are entirely defeated.

The *Normans* are said to have lost 6,000 men, and the *English* above 60,000.

The body of *Harold* being found among the slain, is sent to his mother, who buries it in *Waltham* Abbey.

This battle was fought near *Heathfield* in *Sussex*, where the town of *Battle* now stands.

Thus ended in *England* the Empire of the *Anglo-Saxons*, after it had lasted above 600 years.

State of the Church from 979, *to* 1066.

THE doctrine of Transubstantiation was introduced into the Church of *England* within this period, and not before.

The invocation of the Virgin *Mary* and of the *Saints* began also now to be practised.

981. *Gucan* Bishop of *Landaff* is consecrated by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, being the first *Welsh* Bishop that owned him for their Metropolitan.

990. The See of *Lindisfarn* is removed to *Durham*; and that
1049. of *Crediton* to *Exeter*.

1009. The Council of *Ensham* is held.

1012. nd that of *Haba*.

1032. *Canute* and *Edward the Confessor* make some Ecclesiastical laws.

Elfric

Elfric publishes also some Canons. *A. Cnn.*

The elections of Bishops and Abbots are taken from the Monks, and vested in the Kings. 1052.

The succession of the Archbishops of *Canterbury* and *York* was as follows.

Archbishops of *Canterbury*.

Ethelgar.	989.
Siricius.	994.
Elfric.	995.
Elphegus, murdered by the *Danes*.	1006.
Livingus.	1013.
Egelnoth.	1020.
Edsius.	1038.
Robert.	1050.
Stigand.	1052.

Archbishops of *York*.

Oswald.	972.
Adulph.	993.
Wulstan II.	1002.
Alfric Putta.	1023.
Kinsius.	1050.
Aldred.	1061.

Some *English* Missionaries are sent to convert *Sweden* and *Norway*.

The division of Parishes in *England* was made before the conquest.

The most remarkable Ecclesiastics within this period, were, *Wulstan* Bishop of *Worcester*, and *Edmund* Bishop of *Durham*.

And the most eminent Writers were, *Ethelward*, Author of a Chronicle: *Osbern* who wrote the lives of St. *Dunstan* and St. *Elphegus*; and the Author of *Encomium Emmæ*.

Account of the Government, Laws, Manners, Customs, and Language of the Anglo-Saxons.

MOST of the laws in *Europe* are derived from those of the northern Nations.

The laws and customs of *England* are, for the most part, the same as were brought in by the *Anglo-Saxons*; and had their original from them.

Ann. C. Their usual *arms* were, the sword, club, battle-ax, or bill, and javelin.

They were extremely addicted to Religion.

Common *swearing* was not frequent among them.

But they were very much addicted to *drunkenness*; and *Edgar* made a law to restrain that vice.

They used to reckon time by nights.

They were also wont to separate their lands by large and deep ditches.

The *language* of the *Anglo-Saxons*.

In the parts lying North of the *Thames* was spoken pure *English* or *Danish*; and South of the *Thames* pure *Saxon*.

Modern *Danish* was chiefly used in *Northumberland*, *Mercia*, and *East-Anglia*.

In the reign of *Edward the Confessor*, the *Norman* language was introduced into *England*.

The language of the *Angl-Saxons*, just before the conquest, consisted: 1. Of *British*: 2. Of *Latin*: 3. Of the ancient *English* or *Danish*: 4. Of modern *Danish*: 5. Of pure *Saxon*: 6. Of *Norman* mixed with *Danish* and *French*.

BOOK VI.

Containing the space of about 88 *years.*

1. WILLIAM I. *surnamed the Bastard, or the Conqueror.*

Ann. C. 1066. *Regni* 1. *Oct.* 14. THE *English* are in a very great consternation after the battle of *Hastings*, being destitute of men, arms, and ammunition.

William marches to *Romney*, and punishes the inhabitants for having killed some of his men that landed there.

He marches next to *Dover*, and having made himself master of that place, causes it to be more strongly fortified.

The County of *Kent* sends Deputies to him, to assure him of their submission, and to demand the preservation of their antient privileges.

William marches towards *London*, where every thing was in the utmost confusion, and encamps in *Southwark*.

The


K. WILLIAM
the Conqueror.

The *Londoners* take arms, and sally out to surprize the *Norman*s, but are repulsed. *Ann. C.*

In order to reduce the *English* by terror, not being able to do it by force, *William* goes and posts himself at *Wallingford*, from whence he sends continual detachments to ravage the Counties adjoining to *London*.

He causes *Southwark* to be reduced to ashes: And reduces to his obedience the Counties of *Sussex*, *Kent*, *Hampshire*, *Surrey*, *Middlesex*, and *Hertfordshire*.

Morcar and *Edwin* endeavour to place *Edgar-Atheling* on the Throne, and have the majority of the People on their side, but the Clergy oppose it.

Edwin and *Morcar* despairing of success, retire with their forces into the North.

Stigand Archbishop of *Canterbury*, *Aldred* Archbishop of *York*, and the Bishops of *Worcester* and *Hereford*, with *Edgar-Atheling*, submit to Duke *William*, and swear fealty to him; and he, on his part, makes a league or covenant with them.

The Duke marches towards *London*, as if he intended to besiege it: Whereupon the Magistrates go and present him with the keys of the gates; and he promises to preserve their privileges.

They resolve to place him on the Throne, and accordingly go and make him an offer of the Crown; he hesitates whether he should accept of it, but takes it at last.

He appoints *Christmas-day* for his Coronation, and causes a fortress to be built, which he garrisons with *Normans*, because he suspected the *Londoners*.

William is crowned at *Westminster*, by *Aldred* Archbishop of *York*, being elected and approved of by the *English* and *Normans*. *Dec.* 25.

He takes the usual oath, and promises to govern the *English* and *Normans* by the same laws.

When it is known that *William* was crowned at *London*, the rest of the Kingdom submits to him. 1067.

He seizes *Harold*'s treasure, and distributes part among the principal Officers of his army, and part to the Churches and Monasteries; and sent also the *Peter-pence* to the Pope, with *Harold*'s standard.

The Cities and richest Men in the Kingdom make presents to their new King.

William treats the *English* with great moderation, and orders his officers and the soldiers to do the same.

He confirms by a public edict the People's privileges.

Having

Having some mistrust however of the *Londoners*, he retires to *Berking*, till the Tower he had begun was finished.

He places also strong garrisons in *Hastings*, *Dover*, and *Winchester*.

Edwin, *Morcar*, *Cano*, and other great men come and swear fealty to *William*; and to all of them he restores their estates, and receives them into his favour.

He bestows large possessions upon *Edgar*, and gives lands to many of the *English*, in token of his Royal bounty. He also distributes great rewards among his followers; but, however, does not, for that purpose, take any thing unjustly from the *English*.

The foundations of *Battle-Abbey* are laid, by King *William*, in the place where *Harold* was slain.

March. *William* goes to *Normandy*, carrying along with him such *English* Lords as he most suspected, and having placed *Norman* garrisons in all the Castles.

Odo Bishop of *Bayeux*, and *William Fitz-Osbern*, are left Regents in his absence. They very much oppress the people, which causes an insurrection in *Kent*; but it is soon appeased.

Edric the Forrester, refusing to submit to King *William*, and having called in to his assistance the Princes of *Wales*, they ravage *Herefordshire*.

Dec. 6. *William*, hearing of these commotions, sets out for *England*, and lands at *Winchelsey*.

The late insurrections render *William* suspicious of all the *English*, and cause him not to pay a due regard to them; And they, on their part, are very much prejudiced against the *Normans*.

1068. *William* rewards his troops that had attended him in his expedition to *England*, and for that purpose lays a heavy tax upon the Kingdom.

In order to prevent any disturbance, he caresses the principal *English* Lords, and promises to give Earl *Edwin* one of his daughters in marriage.

Aldred sends a remonstrance to the King against that tax, which being ill-received, the Archbishop curses the King and all his race, and dies soon after.

The levying of that tax occasions great murmurs and complaints.

The inhabitants of *Exeter*, uneasy at it, refuse to take their oath of fealty to the King, and admit a *Norman* garrison; but *William* advancing against them, they submit, and a Castle is built in their City.

Matilda,

Matilda, the King's consort, comes over to *England*, *Ann. C.* and is crowned. This year she was brought to bed of Prince *Henry*.

King *William* divides the lands of those that had sided with *Harold*, or had been concerned in the late insurrections, among his Officers and Soldiers: And imposes the tenure of *Knight-Service* upon all lands held of the Crown.

Edwin and *Morcar*, Earls of *Chester* and *Northumberland*, revolt against *William*; who advancing against them with the utmost expedition, they are forced to submit, and are *Reg. 2.* pardoned.

King *William* fortifies the Castle of *Warwick*, and builds new Castles at *Nottingham*, *York*, *Lincoln*, *Huntingdon*, and *Cambridge*.

He imprisons great numbers for having been concerned in the late Rebellion, or for having abetted it.

Morcar, *Gospatric*, and other *Northumbrian* Lords, for fear of being also imprisoned, retire into *Scotland*.

Malcolm Macmore receives them kindly, and marries *Margaret Edgar*'s eldest sister.

Goodwin, *Edmund*, and *Magnus*, sons of *Harold* make a 1069. descent in *Somersetshire*, and having defeated *Eduath*, retire laden with booty.

The *Normans* and *English* commit several outrages one upon another.

William makes a law, that when a *Norman* should be slain or robbed, the Hundred where the fact was done should be responsible for the crime, and pay a fine.

Hugh de Grentmesnil, *Humphrey de Titol* and several other *Normans*, upon their wives earnest sollicitations, leave *England*, and return home.

The *Northumbrians* being the most impatient of the *Norman* yoke, *Robert Cumin*, a man of a rough disposition, is appointed their Governor; but he is soon after murdered, with all his followers, except one.

The *Danes* having been invited over by the *Northumbrians*, a fleet of them comes and lands in the *Humber*: And they are joined by *Edgar Atheling*, *Gospatric*, *Marcheswyn*, and the rest of the *English* Malecontents.

They besiege *York*, the Suburbs whereof being set on fire by the *Normans*, the greatest part of that City with the Cathedral, are reduced to ashes.

The *Danes*, taking advantage of the confusion, enter the City, and having carried the Citadel, put the Garrison to the sword.

Walthoff

Ann. C. *Waltheoff* is left Governor of *York*, and the *Danish* army goes and winters in a strong post between the *Ouse* and the *Trent*.

William, being afraid of an universal revolt, pacifies the *English*, by recalling several he had banished, and setting others at liberty.

He summons a Council, consisting of twelve wise and noble *Englishmen* out of each County, whom he requires to give upon oath an exact account of the ancient laws and customs of the Kingdom, and then he confirms them.

Sends his Queen and Sons into *Normandy*, and then advances into *Northumberland*, swearing he would not leave a soul alive there.

But first he bribes *Osbern*, the *Danish* General, to retire.

Then he goes and besieges *York*, which was defended for a good while by Earl *Waltheoff*; but he, capitulating at last, was pardoned; and so pleased was the King with his valour, that he gave him his niece *Judith* in marriage, and created him Earl of *Northampton*, *Huntingdon*, and *Northumberland*.

Reg. 3. But the rest of the Officers and Soldiers he punishes severely, and ravages *Northumberland* in so unmerciful a manner, that between *York* and *Durham*, for sixty miles together, there was not one house left standing.

The lands lie untilled for nine years, which produces a cruel famine and mortality.

King *William* keeps his *Christmas*, and his *Court* (answerable to our present Parliaments) at *York*.

1070. He orders Castles to be built at *Durham*, *Chester*, and *Stafford*.

After this Rebellion, King *William* removes the *English* out of all places of trust, and distributes the lands of those that had appeared in arms against him, among his Officers and Followers.

He also imposes the burden of *Military Service* upon the Clergy, whereof they were exempted before.

And orders all the religious houses to be searched, seizing the money and plate that had been deposited there by the richest persons in the Kingdom.

William sends for two Legates from *Rome*, who convening a Council at *Winchester*, depose *Stigand* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, *Egelmer* Bishop of *East-Anglia*, and *Agelric* Bishop of *Selsey*.

Lanfranc, an *Italian*, is made Archbishop of *Canterbury*, *Thomas*, Canon of *Bayeux*, Archbishop of *York*; *Walkelin* Bishop

Bishop of *Winchester*, *Arfast* of *Helmham*, and *Stigand* of *Selsey*. Ann. C.

Fretheric Abbot of *St. Albans*, forms a combination against King *William*, and the Conspirators suddenly draw an army together.

William holds a Conference with the heads of the malecontents, at *Berkhamsted*, promises to redress their grievances, swears on the Gospels to establish the laws of *Edward*; whereupon the Conspirators dismiss their troops: But the King, breaking his promise, puts to death, banishes, and imprisons, several of them. Reg. 4.

Fretheric retiring to the Isle of *Ely*, and dying there of grief, *William* seizes the goods of the Monastery.

A great Council is held at *Pedreda*.

Another Conspiracy is formed against *William*, and the revolters chuse *Hereward* for their leader, who fortifies himself in the Isle of *Ely*. 1071.

Edwin, *Morcar*, *Swane* King of *Denmark*, and other *Danes* join them; but *Swane* concludes a treaty with King *William*, and retires: And *Edwin*, going to *Scotland*, is murdered on the road by his followers.

Hereward builds a Castle, and takes all other precautions, that might render a siege the more difficult.

King *William* marches with all speed against the revolters, and blocks them up; building a bridge two miles in length, and also a Castle at *Wisbich*.

The King of *Scotland*, in the mean time, makes an inroad into the northern Counties. King *William* having seized several Manors belonging to *Ely* Monastery, the Abbot delivers up the Isle to the King, on condition of having them restored: But *Hereward* escapes, by opening himself a way with his sword.

The Rebels are severely punished; and Earl *Morcar*, and *Egelwin* Bishop of *Durham*, imprisoned. Reg. 5.

Malcolm King of *Scotland* continues his ravages in a merciless manner, and wastes *Tesedale*, *Cleveland*, *Cumberland*, and the neighbouring parts.

William marches into *Scotland*, and concludes a peace with *Malcolm*, whereby the bounds of the two Kingdoms were fixed in the middle of the mountains of *Stanemare*: and *Malcolm* does homage for *Cumberland*. 1072.

The King of *Scotland* giving the *English* fugitives a good reception, several families go and settle there; and among the rest *Gospatric* Earl of *Northumberland*, who had been Reg. 6.

deprived

Ann. C. deprived of that Government; and was succeeded in it by Earl *Waltheof*.

This year, King *William* held his Court at *Winchester* at *Easter*, and the *Whitsuntide* following at *Windsor*.

1073. *Philip* I. King of *France* invades *Normandy*; but *William* going over with an army of *English* and *Normans*, and having recovered the places he had lost, concludes a peace with *Philip*.

Edgar-Atheling comes out of *Scotland* into *Normandy*, and submits to King *William*, who allows him a pound of silver a-day.

Pope *Gregory* VII. summons King *William* to do him homage for *England*, and to pay the arrears of *Peter-pence*.

Reg. 7. The King absolutely refuses to do him homage; and forbids, by an edict, his subjects from acknowledging any Pope but what he allowed of, or to receive any orders from *Rome* without his leave; but he promises to pay the arrears of *Peter-pence*.

1074. *Ralph de Guader* Earl of *Suffolk*, *Roger de Breteuil* Earl of *Hereford*, Earl *Waltheof*, and many others, *Normans* as well as *English*, form a Conspiracy against King *William*.

Earl *Waltheof* repents of being engaged in this plot, and making a discovery of it to the King, is pardoned.

The Conspiracy is stifled in its birth, by the vigilance of *Odo*, the Regent, and a few others.

Ralph de Guader escapes to *Denmark*, and having obtained there a powerful aid, comes in the *Thames* with 200 sail; but not finding the *English* inclined to rise, he sails to *Flanders*.

King *William* returns to *England*, and having extinguished the remains of the Conspiracy in the West of *England*, he holds his *Curia*, or Court at *Westminster*, and severely punishes the Conspirators.

Dec. 15. *Edgitha*, relict of *Edward the Confessor*, dies and is buried at *Westminster*, by her husband.

1075. Earl *Waltheof*, notwithstanding the pardon granted him,
May 31. is ignominiously beheaded at *Winchester*, and passes for a Martyr.

Reg. 9. From this time *William* behaves with great severity towards the *English*, and will not put them into any places of trust or profit.

He goes to *Normandy*, and besieges *Dol* in *Bretagne*, but is forced to raise the siege with a very considerable loss, and returns to *England*.

1077. *Robert*, the King's eldest son, pretending that his father had

had promised to resign *Normandy* to him, attempts to render *Ann. Co*
himself master of that Dukedom.

King *William* goes over with numerous forces into *Normandy*, but is wounded by his son at the siege of *Gerberoi*, *Reg.* 11.
and obliged to retreat in disorder.

Robert submits thereupon entirely to the King's mercy; who has never after any affection for him, and brings him to *England*.

This year were laid the foundations of the *Tower* of *London*, *Gundulph* Bishop of *Rochester* being the chief Surveyor *Reg.* 12. 1078.
of the work.

King *William* dispeoples the Country in *Hampshire* for above 30 miles, demolishing 36 Churches, to make the *New Forest*. 1079.

Malcolm King of *Scotland* makes incursions into *Northumberland* as far as the river *Tine*; kills great numbers of *Reg.* 13. *August.*
people, and carries off a large booty, and many prisoners.

Walcher Bishop of *Durham* is slain at *Gentshead*, and *Ode* is sent down to revenge his death, who wastes a great part *May.* 1080.
of *Northumberland*. *Walcher* is succeeded by *William*, the founder or restorer of *University-College* in *Oxford*.

Prince *Robert* is sent into *Scotland*, to be revenged on *Reg.* 14.
Malcolm for his late ravages. He builds *Newcastle*.

The King, by the advice of his great Council, causes a survey to be taken of his own lands and demesnes, and of all that was held by his tenants *in capite*; which is set down in a Book called *Domesday*. 1080. 1086.

King *William* sends an army against the *Welsh*, to chastise them for some incursions they had made. They submit, and agree to pay an annual tribute. 1081. *Reg.* 15.

The King being now at peace, takes that opportunity to settle the affairs of the Kingdom.

He causes justice to be strictly and impartially observed.

The laws of the land, and the statutes of the *English* Kings, are, by his order, translated into *French*.

And he also enjoins, that *French* should be taught in schools.

The *King's Court*, and the Court of *Exchequer* are erected.

King *William* goes into *Normandy*.

Ode buys a stately palace at *Rome*, with a design to go and reside there in order to get himself chosen Pope; but the King seizes him as he was ready to sail, and confiscates his estate. 1082. *Reg.* 16.

King *William* lays a tax of 6 shillings upon every hide of land, throughout *England*. 1083. *Reg.* 17.

Ann. C. *Canute* IV. King of *Denmark* forms the project of con-
1084. quering *England*, and prepares a fleet of above 1600 sail,
Reg. 18. but being hindered by several accidents, he gives over that
1085. design.

Reg. 19. King *William*, to defend himself, brings over a numer-
Nov. 1. ous army of foreigners, which he quarters upon his subjects.

Queen *Matilda*, the King's consort, dies, and was buried in the Nunnery of the Holy Trinity, near *Caen*.

The Bishops are deprived of the privilege of sitting in the County and Hundred Court, and of receiving fees there; and the King ordains they should have a Court of their own, which was the origin of the spiritual Courts.

King *William* keeps his Court at *Christmas de-more* at *Gloucester*.

1086. He keeps his Court at *Winchester* at *Easter*, and at *Whitsuntide* at *Westminster*. In general, he is said to have worn his Crown, or kept his Court, three times a year regularly; namely, at *Easter* at *Winchester*, at *Whitsuntide* at *Westminster*, and at *Christmas* at *Gloucester*. [Chronic. Saxon. p. 190.]

He prepares to go into *Normandy*, and summons all the great men of the Kingdom, with the military tenants, to meet him at *Salisbury*, and to take an oath of fealty to him.

Aug. 1. After which, having extorted a large sum of money from his subjects, he sets sail.

Reg. 20. *Edgar-Atheling* leaves the King in *Normandy*, and goes into the East, with some *English* Knights, to serve the Emperor of *Constantinople* against the *Saracens*.

1087. King *William* makes great preparations for war against *France*, but *Philip* I. offers him proposals that are followed by a truce.

August. The truce being broken by a jest of *Philip*'s, *William* ravages *Le Vexin*, and reduces *Mantes* to ashes.

He falls into a fever, which was increased, by a bruise he receives in the rim of his belly, against the pummel of the saddle.

Finding his end approaching, he orders large sums to be given to the Poor and the Churches, particularly for rebuilding those at *Mantes*. And sets *Mercar*, *Ulnoth*, *Roger*, *Sward-Barn*, his brother *Ode*, and several other prisoners, at liberty.

He leaves the Dukedom of *Normandy* to his eldest son *Robert*; 5000 marks to his youngest son *Henry*; and sends his second son *William*, with a letter to Archbishop *Lanfranc*, to secure the Crown of *England*.

Causes

Causes himself to be removed to *Hermentrude*, a village near *Roan*; where he dies, in the 64th year of his age, after a reign of 52 years in *Normandy*, and of 20 years, 10 months, and 26 days in *England*. *Sep.* 9.

His principal Officers abandon him before he expires, and the servants plunder whatever came in their way.

King *William*'s body is buried in the Abbey-Church at *Caen*, built by himself: Where a stately monument was erected to his memory, by his son *William Rufus*.

The Character *of* WILLIAM the CONQUEROR.

This Prince's Character is variously drawn by the Historians, according to the different faces, under which they were pleased to view him: Some considering him only as a Conqueror of a great Kingdom, extol him to the skies for his valour and prudence, and slightly pass over the rest of his actions. Others considering the same Conquest as a real Usurpation, and reflecting chiefly on the means he made use of to preserve it, scruple not to represent him as a real Tyrant. It is certain, they may be all in the right, since there was in this Monarch a great mixture of good and bad qualities. He was reckoned one of the wisest Princes of his time. Ever vigilant and active, he shewed as great resolution in executing, as boldness in forming his designs. He saw danger at a distance, and generally endeavoured to prevent it. But, when that could not be done, no man faced it with greater intrepidity. On the other hand, his extreme covetous temper, and partiality to his countrymen, led him to the commission of many things, which can hardly be justified. Malmsb. Sax. Ann.

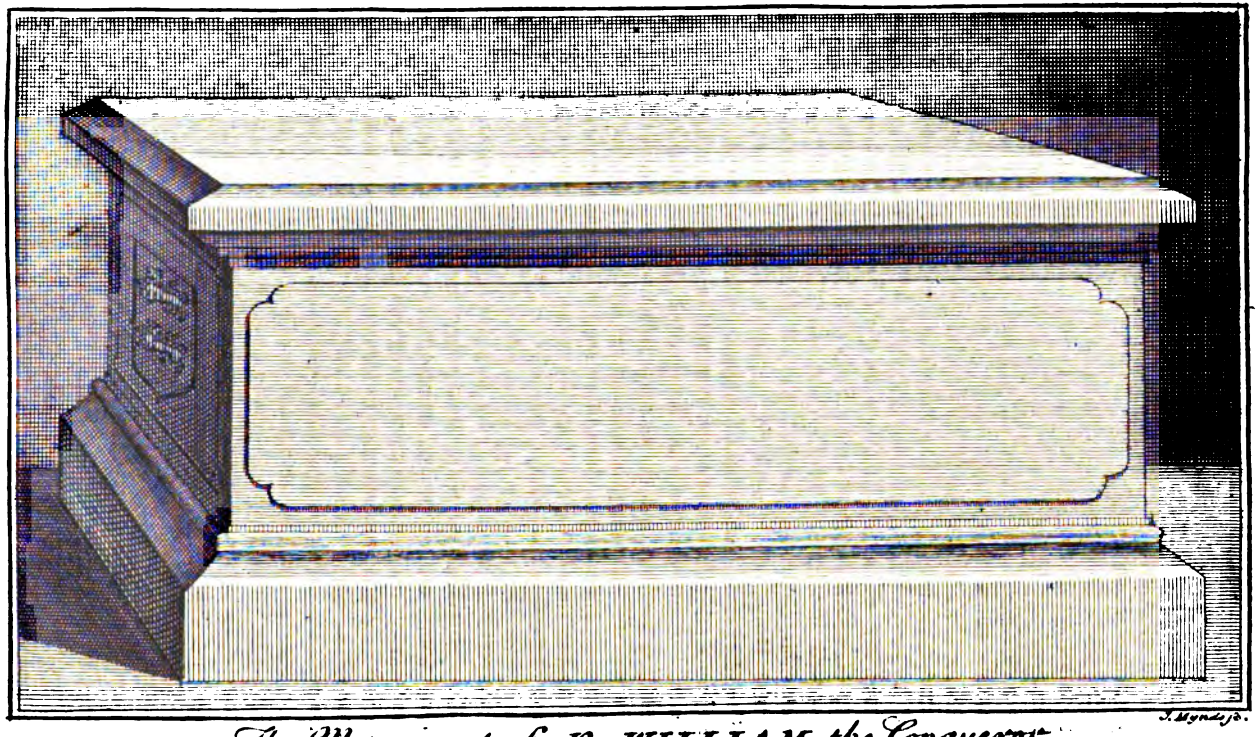
In his younger years, he was handsome and well proportioned. He had rather a stern and majestick, than a mild and taking countenance; however, he could sometimes put on such sweetness and gentleness in his looks, as were hardly to be resisted. We may guess his great strength and vigour from Historians assuring us, none but himself could bend his bow. The same Historians are very much divided concerning his chastity. Some say, he was very much addicted to women in his youth: Others tell us, his little inclination that way, gave occasion to call his manhood in question. Some affirm, after he was married, he never gave his Queen cause to be jealous. Others assure us, he kept for his mistress a Clergyman's daughter, whom *Matilda* ordered to be hamstringed. Malmsb.

ſtringed. Be this as it will, after he was on the throne of *England*, Hunting was obſerved to be his ſole diverſion. His houſhold was perfectly well regulated; but his expences were not anſwerable to his greatneſs and riches. Nevertheleſs, upon ſolemn occaſions, he loved magnificence, and took a pleaſure in appearing in all his grandeur. Seldom did he fail of being crowned every year, at the three great feaſts of *Chriſtmas*, *Eaſter*, and *Whitſuntide*, which he generally ſpent at *Glouceſter*, *Wincheſter*, and *Weſtminſter*. During theſe feſtivals he kept a ſplendid Court, was much more eaſy of acceſs and liberal of his favours. The great men of the Kingdom were uſually about him whilſt theſe ſolemnities laſted; but one can hardly believe it was in order to hold a *Wittena-Gemot* or Parliament, as ſome do pretend. And indeed, there is no likelihood, that after depriving the *Engliſh* of their eſtates, he ſhould leave them in poſſeſſion of the greateſt of their privileges. It is ſtill leſs probable he would tranſfer this right to foreigners, ſince he was at liberty to grant them the *Engliſh* eſtates on what terms he pleaſed. Now it is certain, his temper was ſuch, that he would never voluntarily render himſelf dependant on his own ſubjects. However this be, if the *Saxon Wittena Gemot* ſubſiſted in his reign, it may at leaſt be affirmed, its authority was very limited, and its nature very different from what it had been.

Sax. Ann. Malmſb.

There are Hiſtorians who greatly commend this Prince's clemency, on account of his being very often ſatisfied with puniſhing the *Engliſh* Rebels, by the confiſcation of their eſtates. It cannot be denied, what they ſay is true, with regard to perſons of the firſt rank. Indeed, except Earl *Walthoff*, who was publickly beheaded, and *Egelwin* Biſhop of *Durham*, who was ſtarved in priſon, we don't find any of the principal *Engliſh* Lords put to death in this Reign. But his clemency with reſpect to perſons of a lower rank cannot be juſtly extolled. It is certain he puniſhed great numbers with death, put out the eyes or cut off the hands of many others, and condemned multitudes to perpetual impriſonment for very ſlight crimes. All the Hiſtorians unanimouſly upbraid him with the death of Earl *Walthoff*, as an action the moſt heinous; ſince he beheaded him for what he had already pardoned. But this ſeverity was in ſome meaſure balanced by his moderation to Prince *Edgar*, who had furniſhed him with ſufficient pretences to ſacrifice him to his jealouſy. Perhaps, the

Sax. Ann. Brompt.



J. Mynde sc.

The Monument of K. WILLIAM *the Conqueror*
at CAEN *in* NORMANDY.

little merit of this Prince was the sole motive of this moderation; since the King never considered him as a very formidable rival. However, I think he ought to be praised for his clemency in this respect, since the motive is unknown. How little formidable soever *Edgar* might be, with regard to his personal qualities, he can't be denied to be so on account of his birth. He was the only surviving Prince of the Royal Family of the *Saxons*, and as he served for a cloak to several insurrections, the King could not be entirely assured of him.

King *William* had by *Matilda*, daughter to the Earl of *Flanders*, four sons and five daughters. *Robert* was Duke of *Normandy*. *Richard* was killed by a stag in the new forest, or, as others say, by a distemper caught in hunting, of which he died in his Father's life-time. *William* mounted the Throne of *England*, and was succeeded by *Henry* his Brother. *Cicely* his eldest daughter was Abbess of the Holy-Trinity at *Caen*. *Constance* was married to *Alain Fergeant* Duke of *Bretagne*. *Adela* was wife to *Stephen* Earl of *Blois*, and by him had a son of the same name, whom we shall see King of *England*. *Adeliza*, promised to *Harold*, died young. *Alphonso* King of *Galicia* married the fifth, whose name was *Agatha*. She is said to remain a virgin after marriage, and, being entirely devoted to the service of God, spent her days in the constant exercise of prayer. Sanford. Malmsb.

A Description of WILLIAM the CONQUEROR's Monument.

The first Monument of this Prince was a very stately Mausoleum, erected by William Rufus, his second son, in the front of the high Altar of the Abbey of St. Stephen, a Benedictine Convent, founded by him at Caen in Normandy. One Otho, a Goldsmith, had the direction of this work, the materials of which was gold, silver, and curious stones. The wits of that age composed epitaphs for it; but that of Thomas Archbishop of York had the preference, and was inscribed upon the Tomb.

Qui rexit rigidos Northmanos atque Britanos,
Audacter vicit, fortiter obtinuit,
Et Cœnomanenses virtute coercuit enses,
Imperiique sui legibus applicuit;
Rex magnus parva jacet hac GUILLELMUS in urna
Sufficit & magno parva domus Domino.
Ter septem gradibus se volverat atque duobus
Virginis in gremio Phœbus, & hic obiit.

There is an old tranſlation of it as follows:

He that the ſturdy Normans rul'd,
And over Engliſh reigned,
And ſtoutly won, and ſtrongly kept
What he had ſo obtained;
And did the ſwords of thoſe of Mans
By force bring under awe,
And made them under his command
Live ſubject to his law;
This great King WILLIAM lieth here
Entombed in this grave,
So great a Lord, ſo ſmall an houſe
Sufficeth him to have.
When Phæbus in the Virgin's cap
His circled courſe applied,
And twenty three degrees had paſt,
Even at that time he died.

This ſtately Monument ſubſiſted till the year 1562, when the City of Caen being taken by Count Chaſtillon, ſome of his ſoldiers opened it. Not finding the treaſure they expected, they broke it to pieces, and threw out the Conqueror's bones, of which ſome were afterwards brought to England.

The Monks of that Abbey cauſed a Tomb to be erected in the year 1642; the ſides and ends of which are of ſpeckled Marble, and the top of Lapis Lydius, or Touch-ſtone: the whole ſtructure is raiſed on a caſe of Free-ſtone. On an Eſcutcheon at the head are the three Lions of England, and at the foot, upon another, the two Lions of Normandy. On the ſouth ſide the ancient Epitaph by Thomas Archbiſhop of York, is reſtored, and on the north is the preſe-inſcription:

Hoc Sepvlchrum invictiſſimi ivxta et clementiſſimi Conqveſtoris Gvillelmi, dvm viveret Anglorvm regis, Normandorvm Coenomanorvmq; Principis, hvivs inſignis Abbatiæ piiſſimi Fundatoris, cvm anno 1562 vetano Hæreticorvm fvrore direptvm fviſſet, pio tandem nobilivm eivſdem Abbatiæ Religioſorvm gratitvdinis ſenſv in tam Beneficvm largitorem inſtavratvm fvit, Anno. Dom. 1642. Domino Ioanne de Bailhache Aſcetorii Protopriore. P. D. D. D.

In *Engliſh* thus:

The Sepulchre of the moſt victorious and merciful Conqueror, William, whilſt he lived King of England, Prince

Prince of Normandy and Mans, the most pious Founder of this Abbey, being broke to pieces and thrown down by the frantick rage of the Hereticks in the year 1562, was at length rebuilt by the noble Religious of this Abbey, out of their pious sense of gratitude to the memory of so munificent a Benefactor, in the year of our Lord 1642. John de Bailhache being Principal of the Monastery. F. D. D. D.

An Account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

It is probable, the *Britons* never coined any money, but in *Cæsar's* time used only *iron rings* and shapeless pieces of brass, and that even their tribute-money afterwards was the ordinary current coin brought in or minted here by the *Romans*, as long as this Island continued a Province. For among the many thousand *Roman* Coins, there was never one undoubted *British* Coin yet produced; those of *Cunobelin* be liable to unanswerable objections. After the *Saxons* were settled in *England*, their Silver Coins were generally all of a fine and ill-minted, which they call *Pennies*, worth about three-pence of our money. They had also *Half-pennies* and *Farthings*, (as appears from the *Saxon* Gospels) and Half-farthings, called *Stica's*. Of which kind Bishop *Nicolson* takes those brass pieces to be, that were found some years since at *Rippon* in *Yorkshire*, and communicated by Sir *Edward Blacket*, the owner, to several curious Antiquaries. After the *Norman Conquest*, a pound of gold being divided into twenty-four *Carats*, (or half-ounces) and every *Carat* into four grains, the *Old Sterling*, (as it was afterwards called) or *Right Standard of Gold*, consisted of twenty-three *Carats*, and three grains and a half of fine gold, and half a grain of allay of copper or silver. Again; a pound of silver being divided into twelve ounces, and every ounce into twenty penny-weights, and every penny-weight into twenty-four grains, a pound weight of *Old Sterling* consisted then (as it does now) of eleven ounces two penny-weights of fine silver, and eighteen penny-weights of allay. The first eight Kings after the *Conquest* continued to coin money much like their *Saxon* Predecessors, only a little lighter; for of the *Saxon Pennies* there are some at this day that weigh more than a penny-weight, whereas few of those of the *Norman* Kings reach twenty-two grains till *Edward* I, when the *English* pennies were to weigh a penny weight. The *Normans* also continued the like method with the *Saxons* as to inscriptions, having round the King's head his name

and ſtile; which was very ſhort, only REX or REX ANGL. and on the reverſe, the name of the Mint-maſter and place of coinage. The coins of the two firſt *Williams* were very rare, till a neſt of them was accidentally found at *York*, 1703-4. On their Coins they both appear in a pearl diamond with *labels* at each ear, and an arch croſs the head, conſequently they are impoſſible to be diſtinguiſhed. Mr. *Thoresby* indeed aſcribes thoſe with a full face to the *Conqueror*, and thoſe with the half face and ſcepter to *Rufus*. The inſcription on the *Conqueror*'s money is, WILLEM. WILLEM V. (miſtaken by Dr. *Nicolſon* for WILLEM. II.) or WILLEMVS. PILLEM. PILLEMV. PILLEMVS. (P being the *Saxon* W) REX. REX. A. ANGL. ANGLO. or ANGLOR. Reverſe, a croſs Fleuree, with four ſcepters quarterly, or a croſs with four pellets in each quarter, the name of the Mint-maſter and place of mintage; as HEREFORD. LVNDEN. LOND. LVNDRE. LVNDR. for *London*; C. for *Canterbury*; EO or EOFER for *York*; LINCOLN. EXETER. LEOYNC. for *Lanceſter*; PINC. for *Wincheſter*; DEOTFORD. for *Thetford*. See the Coin annexed, which hath on one ſide PILLEM REX ANGLOR. and on the Reverſe GODICON LUNDNEN.

W. 2.

Ann. C. The NOBILITY created in this Reign, were as follows:

1066. *William Fitz-Osbern*, Earl of *Hereford*.

1067. *Alan de Britannia*, Earl of *Richmond*.

Odo, Biſhop of *Bayeux*, Earl of *Kent*.

Roger de Montgomery, Earl of *Arundel*, *Suſſex*, and *Shrewsbury*.

1068. *Waltheoff*, Earl of *Huntingdon*, *Northampton*, and *Northumberland*: Beheaded 1075.

Robert de Mortain, Earl of *Cornwal*.

1069. *Gherbord*, Earl of *Cheſter*.

1070. *Hugh D'Abrincis* [*Lupus*] Earl of *Cheſter*.

Walter Gifford, Earl of *Bucks*.

Ralph


K. WILLIAM II.

Ralph de Waher, Earl of *Norfolk*. *Ann. C.*
Simon St. Liz, Earl of *Huntingdon* and *Northampton*. 1073.
Walcher, Bishop of *Durham*, Earl of *Northumberland*. 1076.
Ursus D'Abitot, Earl of *Worcester*. 1078.
Alberic, Earl of *Northumberland*.
Henry de Nieubourgh, Earl of *Warwic*.
Osmund de Sees, Earl of *Dorset*.
Richard Fitz-Gilbert, Earl of *Clare*.
Randolph de Meschines, Earl of *Carlisle*, *Cumberland*, and *Chester*.
Arnulf de Montgomery, Earl of *Pembroke*.
Robert de Montgomery, Earl of *Lancaster*.
William Fitz-Eustace, Earl of *Gloucester*.

2. WILLIAM II. *Rufus*.

WILLIAM concerts all necessary measures, to secure the Crown of *England*. 1087. *Reg.* 1.

He was beloved neither by the *French*, nor the *English*.

But *Eudo* and *Lanfranc* do him great service on this occasion.

Eudo, the King's Steward, secures *Dover*, *Winchester*, *Pevensey*, *Hastings*, and other places for him: And delivers to him the late King's treasures, which amounted to 60,000*l.* in money, besides plate and jewels.

Archbishop *Lanfranc*, who was beloved both by the *English* and *Normans*, draws to his party the leading Lords of both Nations.

Mercar and *Ulnoth* are brought over to *England* by *William*, but, instead of being set at liberty, are imprisoned at *Winchester*.

King *William* is crowned. *Sept.* 27.

He distributes, according to his father's will, money among the Churches, the Monasteries, and the Poor.

And holds his Court at *Christmas* at *London*.

Odo returns to *England*, and is restored to the Earldom of *Kent*, and his other estates. 1088.

Out of jealousy and ill-will to *Lanfranc*, he forms the project of dethroning King *William*, and placing Prince *Robert* on the Throne; and brings the chief of the *Normans* and the *English* into his plot. *March.*

He sends word to Prince *Robert* to come over, who borrows, for that purpose, 3000*l.* of his brother *Henry*, for which he mortgages to him the County of *Cotentin*.

Ann. C. The Conspirators take up arms, and secure several places, particularly *Bath*, *Bristol*, *Worcestershire*, &c.

King *William* omits nothing to stifle the Conspiracy, and gains the *English* to his side, through *Lanfranc*'s interest; who reclaims the Conspirators, and persuades the rest to continue firm to the King.

Reg. 2. He sends a fleet out to sea, and marches against *Odo*, who had secured *Rochester*, and shut himself up in *Pevensey*; of both which *William* soon becomes master.

Prince *Robert*, by his neglect, loses the advantage of so favourable a juncture. And, instead of coming over himself, sends only part of his army, which was destroyed by King *William*'s fleet.

Odo, being deprived of his estates, retires to *Normandy* to Prince *Robert*.

King *William* marches against the Bishop of *Durham*, who was one of the Rebels, and banishes him, with the rest of those that had taken arms in those parts.

And then regains to his side *Roger de Montgomery*, and several other *Norman* Lords.

1089. When his enemies are all crushed, he loads his subjects with several impositions.

Lanfranc admonishes him about it, and taxes him with the breach of the promise he had made, *That he would*
May 24. *make good laws, and abolish the taxes:* But he falls into disgrace upon that account, and dies.

King *William*, being now without restraint, gives himself up to avarice and prodigality.

He seizes the revenues of the benefices that become
Reg. 3. void in his Reign, and, after having pillaged and kept them for several years, sells them to the highest bidder.

1090. King *William* forms the design of conquering *Normandy*.

He makes a descent there, and, by money and secret practices, becomes master of *St. Valeri*, *Albemarle*, and other places.

Prince *Robert* implores the protection of the King of *France*, who comes in person to his assistance, but being bribed by *William*, he retires without doing any thing.

Reg. 4. *William* thereupon takes several places, and bribes some Burghers of *Roan* to deliver up that City to him; but *Robert* having obtained his brother *Henry*'s assistance, defeats that Conspiracy.

King *William* comes over to *England*, and keeps his Court at *Christmas* at *Westminster*, and then returns to
1091. *Normandy* about *Candlemas*.

He carries along with him a great fleet, on purpose to deprive *Robert* of his Dukedom, but a peace is soon after concluded between the two brothers. *Ann. C.*

Prince *Henry*, angry at not being included in the treaty, and finding his brother *Robert* no way disposed to perform his engagements to him, surprizes *Mount St. Michael.*

Prince *Robert* and King *William* block him up there, so that he is forced at last to surrender upon terms.

Edgar-Atheling being banished by *Robert* out of *Normandy*, and forbidden by *William* ever returning to *England*, retires into *Scotland*.

Malcolm, King of *Scotland* makes an incursion into *Northumberland*, and carries away a great booty. *May.*

King *William* and Prince *Robert* come over, and march into *Scotland*; but have no success, *William's* fleet being destroyed by a storm, and his army suffering much in searching over the morasses and mountains. *August.* *Sept.* *Reg.* 5.

A peace is made between *William* and *Malcolm*.

Prince *Edgar*, who was instrumental in bringing it about, is received into favour with *William* and *Robert*, and has leave to return into *England*.

Robert endeavours to obtain the performance of the treaty concluded between him and King *William*, but finding himself amused, he returns to *Normandy*, taking Prince *Edgar* along with him. *Dec.* 23.

Glamorganshire is conquered by *Robert Fitz-haman*, assisted by twelve Knights.

Prince *Henry* takes *Domfront*, and retires there. 1092.

King *William* rebuilds *Carlisle*, to serve for a barrier against the *Scots*. *Reg.* 6.

He holds his Court at *Christmas*, *pro more*.

Grows very arbitrary, and imposes taxes on divers pretenses. 1093.

Falling ill at *Alvestan* in *Gloucestershire*, he shews signs of repentance, and fills the Sees of *Canterbury* and *Lincoln*, which he had kept vacant some years. *March.*

When he recovers, he forgets all his promises, and returns to his former wicked courses.

Malcolm King of *Scotland* comes to *Gloucester*, to settle some matters with King *William*, left undetermined in the late treaty. *August.*

King *William* insisting upon having homage done him there, which the other refused to do any where but on the frontiers of the two Kingdoms, *Malcolm* returns home in a rage, and ravages *Northumberland*.

Ann. C. *Robert de Mowbray*, Governor of the northern parts, marching out against him, *Malcolm* and his eldest son *Edward* are both slain.

His General was *Walter*, Steward of his Kingdom, from whom sprung the family of the *Stewarts*.

Margaret Queen of *Scotland* survives the news of her husband's death but three days.

Donald, *Malcolm*'s brother, is placed on the Throne: He expels all the *English* out of *Scotland*, and, among the rest, *Edgar-Atheling*, who retires into *England*.

Reg. 7. *Donald* invades *England*, and cruelly revenges *Malcolm*'s death; but being defeated, he is forced to retire into one of the *Hebrides*, and *Duncan*, *Malcolm*'s natural son, is crowned King of *Scotland*.

Troubles arising in *South-Wales*, the *English* march thither, and make themselves masters of it, *Rees* the *Welsh* King being slain.

King *William* holds his Court at *Christmas* at *Gloucester*.

1094. Prince *Robert* displeased at the non-execution of the late treaty, and making preparations, *William* leads an army into *Normandy*, to secure his fortresses, and make new conquests.

Febr. *Battle-Abbey* Church is consecrated.

March. King *William* arrives in *Normandy*, and has two Conferences with his brother, but they proving ineffectual, he begins hostilities, and becomes master of several places, by bribing the Governors.

Prince *Robert*, having received assistance from *France*, retakes those places.

Reg. 8. *William* raises 10,000 *l.* in *England*, wherewith he bribes the King of *France* to withdraw his troops.

Novemb. Prince *Henry* comes to *England*.

The *Welsh* make several incursions in *England*, and ravage *Shropshire* and *Chester*.

King *William* returns to *England*, and makes two expeditions against them; in the first he rebuilds *Montgomery* Castle.

Robert de Mowbray, Earl of *Northumberland*, thinking himself not sufficiently rewarded, forms the project of dethroning King *William*, and placing the Crown on the head of *Stephen*, Earl of *Albemarle*, nephew to *William* I, and draws a great number of Lords into that Conspiracy.

King *William* sends his brother *Henry*, with a large sum of money, into *Normandy*, to harass that Country, and then marches against the Malecontents.

He

He besieges *Newcastle* and *Bamburough*, and builds *Mal-vision*. *Ann. C.*

Robert de Mowbray is taken and imprisoned, and his Associates, *Roger de Lacy*, *Hugh* Earl of *Chester*, the Count of *Eu*, *William* of *Ardres*, &c. are all severely punished.

A great quarrel happening between King *William* and *Anselm*, about the Church's immunities, *Anselm* retires to a Monastery at *Lyons*.

The King holds his Court at *Winchester*, at *Easter*; and at *Windsor*, at *Whitsuntide* and *Christmas*.

Prince *Robert* engages in the crusade, or holy war, and borrows 10,000 marks of silver of the King his brother, for which he mortgages *Normandy* to him for three years. 1096.

King *William* goes and takes possession of it, and has a war with the King of *France* about the *French Vexin*, which he pretended belonged to *Normandy*. *Sept.* *Reg.* 10.

He holds his Court, in the beginning of *January*, at *Salisbury*.

King *William* undertakes the conquest of *Wales*, but after having lost many men, is forced to desist. 1097.

He keeps his Court at *Easter*, at *Windsor*; and also at *Whitsuntide*, and in *August*. *Reg.* 11.

Duncan King of *Scotland* is expelled the Kingdom, and *Edgar* son of *Malcolm* is placed on the Throne, by the assistance of *Edgar-Atheling*. 1098. *Septemb.*

King *William* goes over and reduces the Province of *Maine*, which had revolted. *Reg.* 12. *Novemb.*

The Earls of *Chester* and *Shrewsbury* invade *Wales*, and ravage all with fire and sword, obliging *Griffith* and *Cadagan*, Kings of *Wales*, to fly into *Ireland*.

Magnus King of *Norway*, who had taken the Isle of *Man*, attempts to land in *Anglesey*, but the *English* endeavouring to hinder him, *Hugh de Montgomery*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, is slain in the skirmish.

King *William* repairs *London-Bridge*; builds *Westminster-Hall*, 270 foot long, and 74 broad; and a wall round the *Tower*.

He returns to *England*, after having reduced the Province of *Maine*. 1099.

Elias Count *de la Flesche* takes *Mans*, but King *William* flying to the relief of it, takes the Count prisoner: Whom he sets again at liberty, upon his giving him a stout answer. *June.*

King *William* returns to *England*. He holds his Court at *Whitsuntide*, in his new Hall at *Westminster*; and at *Christmas* at *Gloucester*. *Septemb.* *Reg.* 13.

A great

Ann. C. A great inundation happens on the coast of *Kent*, which
Nov. 11. covers the lands formerly belonging to Earl *Goodwin*, and makes the *Goodwin-Sands*.

Jerusalem is taken by the *Croisés*, and 40,000 *Saracens* put to the sword. The Crown is offered to *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, but he refusing to accept of it, it is given to *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*.

1100. King *William* holds his Court at *Winchester*, at *Easter*; and at *Whitsuntide*, at *London*, *patria more*.

William Earl of *Poitiers*, having a mind to undertake the crusade, mortgages his Dominions of *Guienne* and *Poitou*, to King *William* for a sum of money.

Aug. 2. King *William* is accidentally shot through the heart by Sir *Walter Tirell*, as he was hunting in the *New-Forest*.

The Character of WILLIAM RUFUS.

Thus fell *William Rufus* on the second of *August* of the year 1100, in the forty-fourth year of his age, after a reign of twelve years, ten months, and twenty days. His tragical death, in the very place where his Brother and Nephew perished by no less extraordinary accidents, gave occasion for many reflections. It was publickly said, that God was pleased to take vengeance upon the Conqueror's Family, for his destroying and laying waste the country in so prodigious a manner to make the *New-Forest*. But there is no need to have recourse to the Father's faults; enough might be found in the Son, not to wonder at his perishing by an uncommon death. Accordingly Historians, without hesitation, rank *William Rufus* among those Princes who are no great ornament to the Throne of *England*.

This Prince had all the vices of his Father, without his virtues. *William* I. balanced his faults, by a religious outside, a great chastity, and a commendable temperance. But by the description given of his Son by Historians, it appears, he was neither religious, nor chaste, nor temperate. He was profuse to his favourites and soldiers, and magnificent in his buildings and cloaths. It is said, his Valet bringing him one day a new pair of breeches which cost but three shillings, he fell into a passion, and ordered him never to bring him any but what cost at least a mark. It is added, he was contented with a pair not worth so much, being valued to him at a mark. If we may believe those who have writ his life, he had neither honour nor con-

conscience, nor faith, nor religion, and that he took a pride in appearing as such. It is related that one day [fifty *English*] gentlemen accused for hunting and killing the King's deer, having passed through the trial of the *Fire Ordeal*, untouched, he swore, *He could not believe God was a just Judge, since he protected such sort of people.* *Eadmer*, who lived in his time, says, the King took money of the *Jews* at *Rom*, to compel such as were baptized to return to *Judaism*. *Malmsbury* adds, *William* ordered some Bishops and some Rabbies to meet together and dispute in his presence upon religion, promising the Rabbies he would be circumcised, if their arguments seemed to him stronger than those of the Christians. Indeed, the Historian says, it is to be supposed this promise was only in merriment. He is charged with denying a Providence, and openly maintaining that Prayers addressed to Saints were vain and impertinent.

Eadmer. p. 123.

But to judge impartially of the testimony of these Historians, who were all either Monks or Ecclesiasticks, it must be considered they may very possibly have drawn him in blacker colours than he deserved. For he was the first King of *England* that seized the Church revenues, without regarding the clamours of the Clergy. This was unpardonable with them. Their strong prejudices against him on that account, might perhaps make them think, that a Prince, guilty of so heinous a crime, must have been without faith or religion. This conjecture may be supported by observing that the writers, who charge him with prophaneness, produce no other evidence than some publick rumours. As for incontinency, which he is also accused of, they alledge no instances, nor so much as name any of his mistresses, though the amours of Kings are not easily concealed. It is true, they father a bastard son upon him, called *Berstrand*. But this alone would not have been sufficient to put them so much out of humour, had not his other actions, which more nearly concerned them, stirred their choler. However, that is only a conjecture, which the Reader may value as he pleases. Nevertheless, as I find in the Life of this Prince but few laudable actions to balance these accusations, I do not see how he could possibly be justified, since all the Historians unanimously agree in saying so much ill of him.

Thorn. Baker.

His ordinary revenues were probably the same with his Father's. But, as he ran into many more needless expences, he often increased them by extraordinary impositions, which

Sax. Ann. Huntingd. p. 3. M. Paris, p. 46.

which were very frequent in his reign. To these were added the profits of the vacant benefices, which brought him very large sums. At the time of his death, he had in his hands the Archbishoprick of *Canterbury*, the Bishopricks of *Winchester* and *Salisbury*, and twelve rich Abbies, besides many other benefices of less value. When, after enjoying the incomes some years, he thought fit to dispose of the benefices, he never regarded the merit of the persons, but only the sum they bid for them. However, it is related, that one day two Monks striving to out-bid one another for a rich Abbey, he perceived a third standing by, of whom he demanded how much he would give? The Monk replied, he had no money, and, if he had, his conscience would not suffer him to lay it out in that manner; whereupon the King told him, swearing by St. *Luke's Face*, his usual oath, that he best deserved it, and should have it for nothing.

Huntingd. M. Paris

Higden.

Ranulph Flambert, a man of mean birth, was his treasurer, and the contriver of most of the extraordinary ways practised by the King to extort money from his subjects. He was rewarded for his services with the Bishoprick of *Durham*, conferred on him by the King a little before his death.

Malmsb. Eadmer. Sax. Ann.

Among his charitable works are reckoned, the Hospital he founded at *York*, and a Church in *Southwark* for the use of the Monks, called *de Charitate*.

Speed.

This Prince was of a middle stature, but being very fat, looked shorter than he was. His hair a deep yellow, inclined to red; his eyes of two different colours, speckled with small black spots. He was generally of a very ruddy complexion. Though he was far from being eloquent, he talked a good deal, especially when angry. His countenance was severe, and his voice strong, which he would exalt sometimes on purpose to frighten those he was speaking to. He is said however to converse affably enough with his courtiers, who easily found the way to soften his fierce temper.

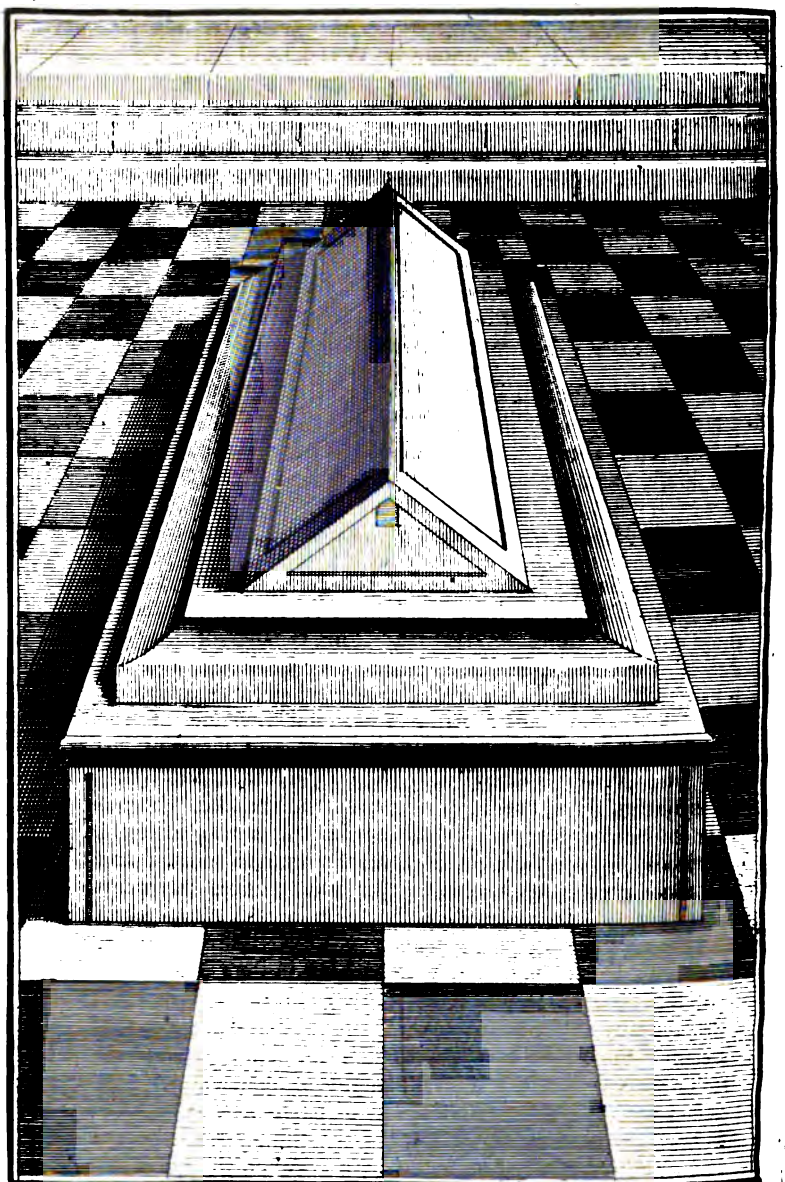
Malmsb.

Malmsbury observes of the reign of *William Rufus*, that notwithstanding mens minds were turned to war, yet excess and sensuality prevailed in a very scandalous manner among the Nobility, and even among the Clergy. Vanity, lust and intemperance, reigned every where, says that Historian. The men appeared so effeminate in their dress and conversation, that they showed themselves men in nothing but their daily attempts upon the chastity of the women.

p. 23.

Eadmer.

A De-



J. Mynde sc.

The Monument of K. WILLIAM RUFUS, in the Cathedral of Winchester.

A Description of the Monument *of* WILLIAM RUFUS.

Henry I. his Brother and Successor, ordered a Monument to be erected for him facing the high altar in the church of St. *Swithin* at *Winchester*. This tomb is of grey marble, raised about two foot from the pavement. It was broke open by the rebels in the reign of King *Charles* I; and it is said, the King's ashes, some fragments of cloth of gold, a large gold ring, and a small chalice of silver was found in it.

There are two *Latin* lines, translated into *English* in *Mat. Prideaux's Introduction to History*;

Rex cervum insequitur, Regem vindicta, Tyrellus
Non bene provisum transfixit acumine ferri.

The King the stag, vengeance the King, doth chace;
Tyrrel's hard hap concludes this tragick case.

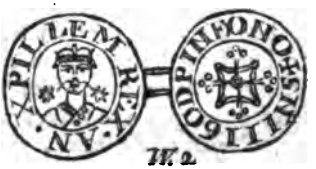
An Account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

As there is but little to say of this King's Coin, it may not be amiss to show how the King's revenue was paid in those ancient times. At first, The tenants of *Knight's Fees* answered to their Lords by military services; and the tenants of *Socage* Lands and *Demesnes* in great measure by work and provisions: Afterwards, the revenue of the Crown was answered in gold and silver, and sometime in *Palfreys*, *Destries*, *Chaseurs*, *Leveriers*, *Hawks*, &c. (that is, in horses, dogs, and birds of game) and the like. Sometime in both together. When a man paid money into the *Exchequer*, it was said, *in Thesauro liberavit* so much; and the same phrase continueth to this day. These payments were made *ad Scalam* and *ad Pensum*; and in *Blank* Silver and *Numero* by tale. *Ad Scalam* was by paying six-pence over and above each pound or twenty shillings, which at first was thought sufficient to make good the weight. *Ad Pensum* was the persons making good the deficiencies of weight, though it was more than six-pence *per* twenty shillings. But as the money might be deficient in fineness as well as weight, a third way of payment was by *Cumbustion*, or melting down part of the money paid in, and reducing it to plate of a due fineness. When the Ferm was melted down, it was said to be *dealbated* or *blanched*. As suppose a Ferm of a hundred pounds was paid into the *Exchequer*, after the Combustion it was said to be a hundred

pounds

pounds *Blank*. Frequently the twentieth part of one shilling was accepted in lieu of Combustion, to save trouble and charges. The payment by *Numero* or tale needs no explanation. Payments, or at least computations, were made by marks, and half-marks; ounces and half-ounces of gold: And in pounds, marks, half-marks, shillings, pence, &c. of silver. The mark of gold was equal to six hundred and twenty shillings of silver. The ounce of gold was equivalent to fifteen shillings of silver. The pound of silver by tale was twenty shillings; the mark thirteen shillings and four-pence; and the shilling consisting of twelve-pence; and a penny was the twentieth part of an ounce, equal to our three-pence.

The Coins of *William Rufus* are exceeding rare, if as is justly believed, all those with the full-face are to be ascribed to the *Conqueror*: However, several Authors place one with the full-face to this King, inscribed PILLEM. REX. AN. a cross, or a star, on each side the King's head: Reverse, a cross composed of double lines, as in the figure here annexed.



Ann. C. The NOBILITY created in this Reign was as follows:

1088. *William de Warren*, Earl of *Warren* and *Surrey*.
Geoffrey de Constantia, Earl of *Northumberland*.
Robert de Mowbray, Earl of *Northumberland*.
1096. *Ode de Champagne*, Earl of *Albemarle*.

3. HENRY. I. *Beau-Clerk*.

1100. HENRY makes a promise to the *Normans* and *English*, that he would abrogate all rigorous laws, abolish arbitrary taxes, fill the vacant benefices, &c.

Aug. 2. *Reg.* 1. He attempts to get possession of the Crown and Sceptre, and of the Royal treasure kept at *Winchester*, but is opposed by *William de Breteuil*.

Several

Parlao Sc.

Several Lords repairing to *Winchester*, and *Henry* finding the people in his interest, he draws his sword, and swears that no man should take possession of the Crown; whereupon he is elected King, chiefly through the assistance of *Henry de Beaumont* Earl of *Warwick*. *Ann. C.* *Aug.* 3.

He immediately sets out for *London*, and is crowned King by *Maurice* Bishop of *London*, taking the usual oath. *Aug.* 5.

As soon as he is crowned, he reforms abuses, particularly in his Court, publishes a severe edict against adulterers, and orders the oppressors of the people to be put to death.

Ranulph Flambart, Bishop of *Durham*, the late King's Minister, is imprisoned, by the advice of the great Council.

King *Henry* grants his subjects a charter, wherein he confirms their privileges.

Prince *Robert* comes back to *Normandy*, having, in his return through *Apulia*, married *Sibil* sister to the Earl of *Conversana*. *August.*

Anselm is recalled, and lands at *Dover*. *Sept.* 23.

King *Henry*, by the advice of his great Council, marries *Matilda*, daughter of *Malcolm* King of *Scotland* by *Margaret*, sister to *Edgar-Atheling*. *Nov.* 11.

He holds his Court at *Christmas* at *Westminster*;

And the *Easter* following at *Winchester*. 1101.

Prince *Robert*, angry at his being deprived of the Crown, makes preparations for asserting his right; being stirred up thereunto by *Ranulph Flambert*, who had escaped out of the *Tower*. *February.*

Several *English* and *Norman* Lords declare in his favour.

Anselm uses all his skill and interest to retain the *English* in their Allegiance to *Henry*, by assuring them the King would perform all his promises.

And yet as soon as it was known that Prince *Robert* was going to embark for *England*, the greatest part of the Nobility, and part of the King's fleet, declare for him.

King *Henry* encamps with a large army near *Hastings*. *June.*

Prince *Robert* lands at *Portsmouth*, being convoyed by that part of the King's fleet that had revolted, and goes and encamps near *Winchester*. *August.* *Reg.* 2.

King *Henry* takes all proper measures to frustrate his brother's designs, by making use of *Anselm*'s credit; who calling the principal Officers together, and representing to them the heinousness of breaking their oath, confirms them in their allegiance.

Prince *Robert* finding the Nation did not declare for him,

Ann. C. him, as he had expected, and fearing lest he should be excommunicated by *Anselm*, concludes a peace with King *Henry*.

October. He stays about two months after that in *England*, and then returns to *Normandy*.

King *Henry* holds his Court at *Christmas* at *Westminster*.

1102. He resolves to prevent any fresh attempts to dethrone him, by ruining his enemies one after another.

Accordingly he attacks, on divers pretences, *Hugh de Grantmesnil*, *Robert de Pontfract*, and particularly *Robert de Belesme*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, and *Arundel*, dispossesses him of his Castles of *Shrewsbury*, *Bridgnorth*, *Tickhill*, and *Arundel*, and confiscates his and his brothers estates.

Reg. 3. The King holds his Court at *Easter* at *Winchester*; at *Michaelmas* at *Westminster* or *London*; and at *Christmas* at *Westminster*.

Anselm forms the project of obliging the Clergy to live unmarried, and of wresting from the King the investiture of Bishops and Abbots.

He convenes a Synod, wherein he carries the first point, by causing all the married Priests to be excommunicated. But he is strenuously opposed in the second by the King.

1103. *Anselm* applies thereupon to the Pope, and goes to *Rome*,
May. attended by some Prelates that had resigned their Bishoprics on that account: The King sends also three Agents thither, to plead his cause; and deprives the Archbishop of his temporalities.

Prince *Robert* comes to *England*, to press the payment of a pension of 3000 marks granted him by the late treaty; but the King and Queen caress him so, that they insensibly prevail upon him to desist from his demand.

Reg. 4. His wants, which daily increase, make him repent of it, so that he complains of being abused, and adds some imprudent menaces to his complaints.

King *Henry* holds his Court at *Easter* at *Winchester*, and at *Christmas* at *Westminster*.

1104. He casts a greedy eye upon *Normandy*, and resolves to take the first opportunity of annexing it to his Crown.

Robert de Belesme revenges himself on King *Henry*, by fiercely falling upon such of his subjects as had lands in *Normandy*.

Reg. 5. Prince *Robert* attempting to chastise him, is defeated, whereupon *de Belesme* aspires to the whole Dukedom of *Normandy*.

He is joined by *William* Earl of *Mortagne*, who had, for his

his ill behaviour, been dispossessed of the Earldom of *Cornwal*. *Ann. C.*

Being thus united, Prince *Robert* is obliged to conclude a peace with them, upon very dishonourable terms.

King *Henry* holds his Court at *Easter* at *Winchester*; at *Whitsuntide* at *Westminster*; and at *Christmas* at *Windsor*.

Robert de Belesme and the Earl of *Mortagne* continuing their ravages, some of the chief men in *Normandy* apply to King *Henry* for assistance. 1105.

King *Henry* having raised a great sum of money, and levied an army in *England*, goes over into *Normandy*, and makes himself master of *Bayeux*, *Caen*, and other places, by bribing the Nobility, and the Governors of Castles. *March.*

The *Normans*, that had invited him over, press him to push his conquests, and make himself master of all *Normandy*. *Reg.* 6.

King *Henry* returns to *England* in Autumn; and holds his Court at *Christmas* at *Westminster*.

Prince *Robert* comes to *England* to sue for peace, but not being able to succeed, he returns home full of rage and vexation. 1106.

King *Henry* summons a great Council at *London*, and shews to them the justice of his proceedings against his brother; whereupon the *English* unanimously declare they would live and die in his service, and grant him fresh Supplies. He holds also his Court at *Bath* at *Easter*, and on *Whitsuntide* at *Salisbury*.

He goes to *Normandy*, with a numerous fleet, and lays siege to *Tinchebray*. *July.*

Prince *Robert* advances against him, to give him battle, but is unhappily defeated near *Tinchebray*, and taken prisoner, with *Edgar-Atheling*, the Earl of *Mortagne*, 400 Knights, and 10,000 Soldiers. *Reg.* 7. *Sept.* 28.

Edgar-Atheling is set at liberty, and comes and passes the remainder of his days in *England*; but Prince *Robert* is imprisoned in *Cardiff-Castle*, and the Earl of *Mortagne* in the *Tower* of *London*.

King *Henry* being, by this victory, become master of all *Normandy*, returns in triumph to *England*. 1107.

He reforms some abuses usually committed by his attendants when the Court took a progress; and orders, That coiners should be punished with loss of eyes and genitals.

King *Henry* holds his Court at *Easter* at *Windsor*; at *Whitsuntide* at *Westminster*; and there also on the beginning of *August*; and at *Christmas*. *Reg.* 8.

Ann. C. 1108. He grows more haughty and less popular than before; and treats the Nobles with intolerable arrogance.

Anselm causes severe penalties to be decreed against all married Priests, and deprives some of them.

Lewis the Gross King of *France* seeks means to humble King *Henry*'s over-grown power, and intends to make use of *William Crito*, Prince *Robert*'s son, for that purpose.

July. *Reg.* 9. King *Henry* having notice of it passes into *Normandy*, and orders *Crito* to be taken into custody, but he escapes, and sollicits in vain several Courts for assistance to recover his father's Dominions.

1109. *Henry* having spent the winter and part of the summer in *Normandy*, returns to *England* about *Whitsuntide*, and holds his Court at *Westminster*.

Matilda, King *Henry*'s daughter, is married by proxy to the Emperor *Henry* IV. but does not go to him till the year following.

The King lays a tax of 3 shillings upon every hide of land, to pay her portion; which is computed to be equal to 824,850 *l.* of our money.

Apr. 21. *Reg.* 10. *Anselm* Archbishop of *Canterbury* dies, in the 76th year of his age. The King seizes thereupon the revenues of the Archbishopric, and keeps them five years.

King *Henry* holds his Court at *Christmas* at *Westminster*.

1110. This year the University of *Cambridge* was founded; or, according to others, it having been founded by *Edward the Elder*, and destroyed by the *Danes*, learning was now restored there.

The King held his Court at *Easter* at *Marlborough*, and at *Whitsuntide* at *New Windsor*, which he had rebuilt.

Reg. 11. *Robert*, the King's natural son, marries *Maud* daughter and heir of *Robert Fitz-hamon*, Earl of *Gloucester*, and is invested with that Earldom.

1111. A Colony of *Flemings* is planted in *Pembrokeshire*, where their posterity still continues.

August. *Reg.* 12. *Fulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, having caused a revolt in *Normandy*, King *Henry* goes over thither, and taking in battle *Elias* Earl of *Maine* (who had espoused *Fulk*'s interest) orders him to be put to death.

1112. The Earl of *Anjou* seizes thereupon the Earldom of *Maine*; which occasions a war between him and King *Henry*; wherein the Earl is assisted by the King of *France*.

Reg. 13. 1113. But at last a peace is concluded between them.

Robert de Belesme falls into King *Henry*'s hands, who sends

sends him to *England*, where he is kept prisoner all his life, *A. Cun.*
in *Warham* Castle.

King *Henry* returns to *England*. *July.*

He holds his Court, *Sept.* 16. at *Westminster*, and at *Reg.* 14.
Christmas at *Windsor*. 1114.

At the persuasion of the Bishops and great Men, he fills up the Archbishoprics of *Canterbury* and *York*, and the other vacant benefices.

The *Welsh* having committed several ravages on the borders, King *Henry* enters *Wales* with a numerous army resolved to root them out entirely, but they having retired to their mountains, King *Henry* consents to make a peace *Reg.* 15.
with them.

The Empress *Matilda*'s marriage is consummated, and she is crowned at *Mentz*.

King *Henry* goes to *Normandy*, and causes the *States* to *October.*
swear fealty to his son *William*. 1115.

He returns to *England*. *July.*

And, summoning a great Council at *Salisbury*, gets the *Reg.* 16.
English to swear fealty also to his son. 1116.

He holds his Court at *Christmas* 1115. at *St. Albans*, and *Mar.* 20.
the *Easter* following at *Odiham* in *Hampshire*. And then passes into *Normandy*, where he remains till 1120.

Henry, to be revenged on *Lewis* King of *France* for *Reg.* 17.
creating him perpetual troubles, stirs up *Theobald* Earl of *Blois* against him, and lends him a powerful aid.

Lewis, on his part, invests *William Crito* with the Duchy of *Normandy*, and being reinforced by the Earl of *Flanders*, 1117.
enters *Normandy* to put *William* in possession of it. *Reg.* 18.

Almeric de Montfort demands the Earldom of *Evreux* of 1118.
King *Henry*, and being refused, takes up arms, and excites almost all *France* to do the like.

King *Lewis* retires hastily out of *Normandy* upon the enemies approach, and sends proposals of peace to King *Henry*, which are accepted.

A great Council is held at *London* in King *Henry*'s absence.

Queen *Matilda* dies, and was buried in *Westminster-* *May* 1.
Abbey. It was she that built *Bow-Bridge* between *Essex* and *Middlesex*, it being the first stone-bridge in *England*.

King *Lewis* renews the war, because King *Henry* neglect- *Reg.* 19.
ed to demolish the Castle of *Gisors*, according to the late treaty; but the two Kings coming to a battle, *Lewis* is defeated.

Ann. C. 1119. *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, King *Henry*'s sworn enemy, dies; and *Fulk* Earl of *Anjou* makes a peace with King *Henry*.

June. A marriage is solemnized between that Earl's daughter and Prince *William*, King *Henry*'s son.

Reg. 20. King *Henry* is like to be excommunicated by the Council of *Rheims* for detaining *Normandy* from the Duke his brother, but he appeases the Pope by magnificent presents.

1120. A peace is concluded at *Gisors* between the Kings of *England* and *France*.

Reg. 21. King *Henry* returns to *England*, after having been absent
Nov. 27. above four years and a half.

Prince *William*, the King's son, is cast away in his return to *England*, with about 300 persons, no one being saved except a butcher.

King *Henry* holds his Court at *Christmas* at *Brampton*.

1121. He marries *Adeliza* daughter of *Geoffrey* Earl of *Louvain*,
February. but has no children by her.

The *Welsh* make an incursion into *Cheshire*; King *Henry* marches against them, but, not making any great progress, he concludes a peace with their King *Gruffydh*.

Reg. 22. King *Henry* holds his Court in *Epiphany* at *London*; at *Easter* at *Berkley*; at *Whitsuntide* at *Westminster*; and at *Christmas* at *Norwich*.

1122. *Ralph* Archbishop of *Canterbury* dies; and is succeeded the next year by *William de Curboil* Prior of *St. Osith*'s in *Essex*.

King *Henry* cuts a dike from *Torksey* to *Lincoln*, called *Foss-Dike*.

Reg. 23. He holds his Court this year, at *Easter* at *Northampton*; at *Whitsuntide* at *Windsor*; and at *Christmas* at *Dunstable*.

1123. And the beginning of the next year at *Woodstock*, and afterwards at *Gloucester*, at *Berkhamsted*, and at *Winchester*.

Waleram de Mellent, Lord of *Pont Audemer*, being secretly countenanced by the King of *France*, undertakes to restore *William Crito* to his Dominions.

June. King *Henry* passes over into *Normandy*.

Reg. 24. He takes *Pont-Audemer*, fortifies the Castles of *Caen*, *Roan*, and *Arques*, and reinforces the garrisons, which puts a stop to the *Normans* designs.

1124. *Waleram de Mellent*, and *Hugh* Earl of *Montfort* his as-
Reg. 25. sociate, being drawn into an ambush, are taken prisoners.

Decem. A great Council is held at *Huncot* in *Leicestershire*, by *Ralph Basset* the Regent, and the King's Thanes.

Cardinal

Cardinal *John de Crema*, the Pope's Legate, comes to *England*, and holds a Synod at *London* against the marriage of Priests. *Ann. C.* 1125. *Septemb.*

The Coiners and Clippers are severely punished, by the cutting off of their right hands and testicles. *Reg.* 26.

King *Henry* returns to *England*, having been in *Normandy* ever since *Whitsuntide*, 1123. 1126. *Sept.* 11.

His daughter *Matilda*, whose husband (the Emperor *Henry* IV.) had died the year before, comes over with him.

Prince *Robert* is removed from *Cardiff* to *Bristol* Castle. *Reg.* 27.

King *Henry* holds his Court at *Christmas* at *Windsor*, where the Archbishops, Bishops, Abbots, Earls, and Thanes, take an oath to *Matilda*, acknowledging her the presumptive heir of the Crown.

She goes to *Normandy*, and is soon after married to *Geoffrey Martel*, alias *Plantagenet*, son to *Fulk* Earl of *Anjou*, who was but fifteen years of age. *June.*

King *Henry* having held his Court at *London* in *May*, goes to *Normandy*, to see the marriage concluded between his daughter *Matilda* and *Geoffrey Plantagenet*. *Aug.* 26.

Matilda was averse to that match, and the *English* and *Norman* Barons were no less dissatisfied with it.

Charles Earl of *Flanders* being murdered, *Lewis* King of *France* invests *William Crito* with that Earldom. 1128.

King *Henry* enters *France* with a powerful army; and engages the *Flemings* to rise against *William*, and to join with *Theodoric* of *Alsatia*, who pretended to *Flanders*.

William defeats *Theodoric*; but, at the siege of *Alost*, he receives a wound, of which he dies *July* 27. *Reg.* 29.

Lewis being hereby disappointed in his designs, concludes a peace with King *Henry*.

King *Henry* returns to *England*, and holds his Court at *Christmas* at *Worcester*; the *Easter* following at *Woodstock*; and in *May* at *Canterbury*. 1129. *August.* *Reg.* 30.

He goes to *Normandy*, and has an interview with Pope *Innocent* II. whom he owns for the true Pope. 1130. *Reg.* 31.

King *Henry* returns to *England*; and bringing with him his daughter *Matilda*, who was parted from her husband, summons a great Council at *Northampton*, and causes the Barons to renew their oath of fealty to her, after which she returns to her husband. 1131. *July.* *Reg.* 32. *Sept.* 8.

The King holds his Court at *Christmas* at *Dunstable*; and, the next year, at *Easter* at *Woodstock*; after *Easter* at *London*; and at *Christmas* at *Windsor*. 1132.

Ann. C. The See of *Carlisle* is founded: And the greatest part of
Reg. 33. *London* is reduced to ashes.
1133. Prince *Henry*, afterwards King by the name of *Henry* II, is born.

King *Henry* assembles all the great men, and causes them to renew the oath of the Succession, in which the new-born Prince is included.

Reg. 34. He holds his Court at *London* in *Lent*; at *Easter* at *Oxford*; and in *May* at *Winchester*.
Aug. 3. And then he goes over into *Normandy*.
1134. Prince *Robert*, surnamed *Court-hose*, dies, after having
Feb. 10. been prisoner near 27 years, and was buried in the choir of St. *Peter*'s Church at *Gloucester*.
Reg. 35. King *Henry* is detained in *Normandy*, by the unnatural quarrels between him and his son-in-law the Earl of *Anjou*.
1135. The *English* are driven out of a great part of *Wales*.
Reg. 36. King *Henry* dies, at the Castle of *Lyons* near *Rouen*, after
Dec. 2. a seven days illness, in the 68th year of his age, and the 36th of his Reign; and was buried in the Abbey of *Reading*.

This King built a Palace at *Woodstock*, to which he adjoined a Park, which is affirmed to have been the first Park in *England*.

The Character *of* HENRY I.

We find in this Prince a great mixture of good and bad qualities. He was very courageous, and of a great capacity, both in military and civil affairs. His prudence in the administration of his Government appeared chiefly in that during his frequent voyages to *Normandy*, there was never any insurrection in *England*, though the Kingdom did not want male-contents. He was exceeding regular in his diet. Never was he known to be guilty of any excess in eating or drinking, except that which cost him his life. He was inexorable to all malefactors, being persuaded, severity was absolutely necessary to curb the licentiousness introduced in the late reign. His education was the reverse of that of *William Rufus*: Whereas this last had no learning at all, *Henry* was brought up to letters, and made great progress in his studies. Hence he acquired the surname of *Beau-Clerc*, that is, the Scholar; for in those days none but Ecclesiasticks troubled themselves about books, and Princes least of all others. He retained all

shine: he had a relish for the Sciences, imbibed in his youth. He had even built a Palace at *Oxford*, where he often retired to divert himself with the conversation of the learned. His handsome face, his sweet and serene looks, his free and open countenance, his affable carriage and agreeable conversation, prepossessed at first sight all the world in his favour. These fine qualities would have rendered him an accomplished Prince, had they not been sullied with many faults, among which, cruelty, avarice, and an inordinate love of women, were most predominant. The first appeared in the barbarous usage of his elder brother. The second, in his exorbitant and frequent taxes on the people. The third, in the great number of bastards by several mistresses. I shall not stay to remark here his usurpation of the Crown; because it may be objected, *Robert*'s claim was not incontestible, by reason of the diversity of opinions on that subject. But for his injustice to his Brother, in depriving him of his dominions, and detaining him prisoner twenty-six years, I think nothing can be alledged to excuse it. In order to repair in some measure his misdemeanours, he founded the episcopal See of *Ely* and *Carlisle*, and the Abbies of *Reading*, *Hyde*, *Chester*, with the *Priory* of *Dunstable*. This was the method of atoning for offences, much in vogue in those days, which being very easy for the rich and powerful, was long in use, and is still practised to this day. The charter this Prince granted the Nation upon his accession to the Crown, is one of the most remarkable particulars of his reign, during which *England* enjoyed a prodigious plenty of all things. For a shilling might be bought as much corn as would serve one hundred men a day; and for a groat, which was also the price of a sheep, as much hay and oats as twenty horses could eat in the same time. It is true indeed, money was then much scarcer than at present.

The only surviving legitimate issue of King *Henry* was, *Maud*.

His natural children were, 1. *Robert* Earl of *Glouceſter*. 2. *Richard*. 3. *Reynald*. 4. *Robert*. 5. *Gilbert*. 6. *William de Tracy*. 7. *Henry*. 8. *Maud*, Countess of *Perch*. 9. *Maud*, Countess of *Bretagne*. 10. *Julian*. 11. *N*——. 12. *Constantia*. 13. *N*——. 14. *Elizabeth*.

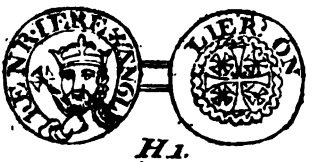
An Account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

The manner of paying in and computing the King's money being shown in the Note at the end of *William Rufus's* reign, it may not be amiss to show here how the Royal Revenue was levied, and the manner of issuing it. First, as to the *levying*, the person principally intrusted, was the *Sheriff* of each County, who in those days was an officer of great authority. However, there were several other stated Collectors and Accomptants, namely, The *Escheators*, the *Farmers*, (or *Custodes* of such Towns and Burghs as were not within the Sheriff's receipt) the *Custodes Gembli*, or Customers, the Keepers of the Wardrobe, and in general, all persons who held Bailywicks from the King, or received any of his treasure or revenue by impreſt, or otherwise, were obliged to render an account thereof, and in succeeding times the Collectors of *Tallages*, *Disnes*, *Quinzimes*, &c. But in case these officers could not enforce the King's debtors to make payment, the Sheriff was armed with sufficient power to do it. The most ancient process made use of was the *Summons* of the *Exchequer*, which issued twice a year into all the Counties of *England*, and was returnable against the times of holding the *Duo Scaccaria*, namely, the *Scaccarium Paschæ*, or *Exchequer of Easter*, and the *Scaccarium St. Michaelis*, or *Exchequer of Michaelmas*, which were the general Terms for the Sheriffs and other Accomptants to pay in their Fermes or Rents, and other issues of their Bailywicks. This was the ordinary Process, but upon urgent occasions the Kings sometimes issued Special Writs to the Sheriffs and others concerned in collecting the Revenue, commanding them to levy debts, *&c.* with all speed. Secondly, As to the manner of *issuing* the King's Money: This was done several ways. Whilst the Money remained in the hands of the Sheriffs, Fermers and others, it was usual for the King, his Chief Justicier, Great Officers of his Court, Treasurer, or Barons of the *Exchequer*, to order them by Writ, to make provisions and payments out of the money in their hands. This Writ was sometimes called *Warrantum*, *the Sheriff's Warrant*, for upon producing it, he had allowance made to him *de tanto* upon his accompt. Sometimes the King's Money was issued by way of *Preſt* or *Impreſt*, *de Præstito*, either out of the Receipt of *Exchequer*, the Wardrobe, or other the King's Treasuries. *Impreſt* seems to have been

of

of the nature of a *Concreditum* or *Accommodatum*; and when a man had money imprested to him, he became accountable to the Crown for the same. In the fifth year of King *Stephen*, an accompt was rendered at the *Exchequer* of certain Moneys imprested to the Accomptant, when the Empress came into *England*. *Mag. Rot.* 5. *Steph.*. According to ancient usage, the King's Treasure was to be issued by virtue of a Writ or Mandate under the Great and Privy-Seal, and directed sometimes to the Chief Justicier and Barons of the *Exchequer*, but most commonly to the Treasurers and Chamberlain of the *Receipt*. And the Writ was founded upon a Bill or Certificate from the Exchequer or Wardrobe, or other Matter of Record. But the usual Writ for issuing the King's Money out of the Exchequer was the *Liberate*, (so called from that word used in it,) directed to the Treasurer and Chamberlain. This Writ was of two sorts: a *Liberate* for paying a sum *hac vice* only: and a *Liberate* Current or Dormant for paying in continuance or more than once. The Reader may see instances of these things in *Madox's Hist. of the Exchequer*, ch. vi. x.

The Coins of *Henry* I, are of the same shape and size with those of the *Conqueror*, and inscribed HENRIC. REX ANGL. The King's full-face, scepter and cross, and an open Crown with three Flower-de-lis (which distinguishes his Coin from those of *Henry* II,) on one side; and the reverse, a Cross Potent in each quarter of a large Cross, as in the Figure annexed.



H. 1.

The NOBILITY were as follows.

Robert de Mellent, Earl of *Gloucester*.	*Ann. C.*
Richard de Redvers, or *Rivers*, Earl of *Devonshire*.	1100.
Robert de Bellomont, Earl of *Leicester*.	
Randolph de Meschines, Earl of *Chester*.	1103.
David le Scot, Earl of *Huntingdon* and *Northumberland*.	1120.

STEPHEN

Ann. C. 1135. Reg. 1. STEPHEN, grandson of *William* the Conqueror by his daughter *Adela*, marries *Matilda*, only daughter and heir of the Earl of *Boulogne*.

His brother *Henry* Bishop of *Winchester*, with *William* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and *Roger* Bishop of *Salisbury* heartily espouse his interest, and prevail upon the Clergy to declare for him.

Stephen embarks at *Witsands*, and repairs immediately to *London*, in order to secure the Crown.

The Archbishop of *Canterbury* declares, That it was contrary to the customs of the *English* to have a woman reign over them; and the Bishop of *Salisbury*, That the oath taken to *Matilda* was not binding, because she was married out of the Realm, without the consent of the Barons.

Hugh Bigod, the late King's Steward, swears, on the Evangelists, that *Henry*, before he died, disinherited *Matilda*, and nominated *Stephen* for his Successor.

In consequence of this, *Stephen* is elected, and crowned, Dec. 26. being 31 years old.

He promises the Barons more privileges than they had enjoyed in the Reigns of the *Norman* Kings, his Predecessors.

Takes an oath at his Coronation, importing, That he would fill the vacant Bishoprics; that he would not seize the woods of any Clerk or Layman; and, That he would abolish *Danegelt*, i. e. the tax of 2 *s.* upon every hide of land.

The Bishops swear allegiance to him no longer, than he should continue to maintain the Church in her privileges: And the Lay-Lords, on condition he would preserve their estates and honours entire, and observe the covenants made with the Barons.

King *Stephen* promises to grant an authentic Charter to his subjects.

He goes to *Winchester*, and seizes the late King's treasure, amounting to 100,000 *l.* besides plate and jewels: And with that money he levies an army of *Britons*, *Picards*, *Flemings*, and other Foreigners.

He holds his Court at *Christmas*, at *London* or *Westminster*.

1136. *Matilda*, *Stephen*'s Queen, is crowned.

Mar. 21. The King goes to *Oxford*, where he confirms again by oath the promises he had made.

In


K. STEPHEN

In the mean time, *David* King of *Scotland* having seized *Carlisle* and *Newcastle*, King *Stephen* marches against him, but they conclude a peace. *Ann. C.*

King *Stephen* returns to *Oxford*, and having convened a General Council at *Oxford*, grants his subjects an advantageous Charter.

William de Curboil Archbishop of *Canterbury* dying, the King seizes the revenues of that See, and keeps them in his hands for above two years.

The King, in order to gain the people's affections, confers titles and honours on several persons, alienates abundance of the Crown-lands, and suffers the Barons to fortify their Castles, and to build new ones.

Robert de Bathenton revolts against the King, and fortifies his Castle, but he is taken and hanged.

Baldwin de Rivers Earl of *Devonshire*, being disgusted, fortifies his Castle against the King: But King *Stephen* goes and lays siege to *Exeter*, pursues the Rebel to the Isle of *Wight*, compels him to fly from thence, and banishes him the Realm.

The *Welsh* ravage the lands in *Cardiganshire*, belonging to the *Normans* and *Flemings*; after which they defeat the *English* in a battle, wherein above 3000 of them were slain.

King *Stephen* holds his Court at *Easter* at *Westminster*, with greater magnificence than usual. *Reg.* 2.

He falls into a lethargy, so that his death being thought to be at hand, his friends are disheartened, and *Matilda*'s party increases. 1137. *May.*

The *Welsh* thereupon renew their ravages. *Geoffrey* Earl of *Anjou* enters *Normandy*, in order to take possession of it, but the *Normans* call in *Theobald* Earl of *Blois*.

King *Stephen* recovers, and finds several factions formed in his Dominions.

He goes into *Normandy*, and carries along with him large sums of money, wherewith he bribes the chief men of the Country to abandon *Theobald* Earl of *Blois*. *March.*

Having gained *Lewis* King of *France* by the same means, he concludes an offensive league with him; and, at *Lewis*'s desire, resigns *Normandy* to his son *Eustace* Earl of *Boulogne*. *May.*

Theobald retires, and desisting from his pretensions, accepts of a yearly pension of 2000 marks of silver from King *Stephen*.

The Earl of *Anjou*, having tried in vain to get *Normandy* by force of arms, accepts also of a pension of 5000 marks.

Ann. C. The King returns to *England*, and holds his Court at
Decemb. *Dunstable*, at *Christmas*.
Reg. 3. *Milo de Beauchamp* seizes the Castle of *Bedford* for the
1138. King of *Scots*, but King *Stephen* besieges it, and becomes again master of it.

David King of *Scotland* makes an irruption into *Northumberland*, demanding that Country for his son: King
Febr. *Stephen* advances against him, and drives him back into *Scotland*.

He is recalled by a general revolt of his Barons, whose pretence for rising was, because he had broken his Coronation-oath, but in reality it was, because he refused to grant them all their demands.

Robert Earl of *Gloucester* was at the head of the Revolters, and had formed a party in favour of the Empress *Matilda*, in order to place her on the Throne.

He goes and informs *Matilda* of what he had done for her, and then writes an abusive letter to King *Stephen*, and publishes a manifesto against him.

The King returns him no answer, but confiscates his estate, and razes all his Castles, except those of *Bristol* and *Slede*.

Sept. 30. *Matilda's* party daily growing stronger, the Earl of *Gloucester* comes to *England*, and gets possession of *Bristol*, in which he puts a strong garrison.

Some other Lords having seized some Castles, *Stephen* retakes and razes them.

He supports himself chiefly by his army of *Flemings*, which were commanded by *William d'Ipres* his favourite.

Matilda is invited over by the Malecontents.

David King of *Scotland*, to foment the troubles in her
Aug. 22. favour, enters and ravages *Northumberland*, but he is defeated, by *Ralph* Bishop of the *Orcades*, with the loss of 12,000 men.

King *Stephen* reduces the Malecontent Barons to obedience.

The Earl of *Gloucester* goes and sollicits *Matilda* to come into *England*, and encourage her friends by her presence.

King *Stephen* resolves to pursue the *Scotch* war, and for that purpose marches into *Scotland*.

Reg. 4. *Theobald*, Abbot of *Bec*, is chosen Archbishop of *Canterbury*. after the See had been vacant two years.

1139. A peace is concluded between *Stephen* and *David*,
Apr. 9. whereby *Henry* Prince of *Scotland* is put in possession of *Northumberland* and *Huntingdon*; and *David* swears never more

more to concern himself in the quarrel between *Stephen* and *Matilda*. *Ann. 6.*

King *Stephen* returns home, bringing along with him Prince *Henry*, as an hostage, for whom he expresses a very great affection.

The King holds his Court, or a great Council, at *Oxford*. *June.*

He falls out with the Bishops of *Salisbury*, *Lincoln*, and *Ely*.

The retainers of the Bishop of *Salisbury* quarrelling with those of *Alan* Earl of *Bretagne*, and one of the Earl's Knights being killed, and many wounded on both sides, the King summons the Bishops of *Ely*, *Lincoln*, and *Salisbury*, who had been concerned in that riot, and requires them to deliver all their Castles into his hands. *Aug. 27.*

The Prelates desire time to consider of it, and, in the mean time, the Bishop of *Ely* retires to the Castle of the *Devizes*.

King *Stephen* makes himself master of that, and also of the Castles of *Salisbury*, *Sherborn*, and *Malmsbury*.

Finding in them very large treasures, he purchases therewith the friendship of the King of *France*, and makes an Alliance with him.

Eustace, King *Stephen*'s son, marries *Constantia*, sister to *Lewis* the Young, King of *France*.

All the Clergy, except the Archbishop of *Roan*, are highly displeased at the King's severity towards the Bishops; and the Bishops of *Winchester* summons the King to appear before a Synod at *Winchester*, and give an account of his actions.

In that Synod, the Archbishop of *Roan* pleads for the King, but the Bishop of *Winchester* was for excommunicating him: At last, the Synod is satisfied with ordering a deputation to the King, to demand a suitable reparation. *Aug. 29.*

The people are all in a combustion upon this occasion, and side with the Clergy; and the Lay-Lords espouse also their cause.

Matilda, improving this juncture, comes to *England*, and lands at *Portsmouth* with a considerable number of troops, being attended by the Earl of *Gloucester*. *Sept. 30.*

She takes up her first quarters in *Arundel* Castle, where she is besieged by the King; but, through the sollicitations of *Adeliza* the Queen Dowager, *Stephen* permits her to be safely conducted to *Bristol*, where the Earl of *Gloucester* had retired.

Ann. C. *October.* After two months stay in this place, she removes to *Gloucester* (where she is received by *Milo* King *Stephen's* Constable) and gains, by her artful management, both the Clergy and Nobility to her side; while there adhered to the King only a few Barons, and his foreign army.

The King, to engage the great men to his service, assembles them, and grants them new Earldoms and Baronies out of his own Demesnes, or Crown-Lands.

Baldwin Earl of *Rivers*, who had been banished, lands at *Warham*, and seizes *Corfe* Castle.

Brian Fitz-Count declares for *Matilda*, and fortifies *Wallingford* Castle, which is blocked up by the King, but *Milo* marching from *Gloucester* raises the blockade.

Milo returns back to *Gloucester*, and made it the chief seat
Reg. 5. of the war for that part of *England*.

Dec. 7. He plunders and burns *Worcester*, which was held for the King.

King *Stephen* having besieged the Castle of *Trowbridge* in vain, returns to *London*, to recruit his forces: Where he holds his Court the *Lent* ensuing.

1140. He makes himself master of the Isle of *Ely*, and reduces *Hereford*, which had revolted.

Henry Bishop of *Winchester* comes over to him, and seizes the Castle of that City for him.

A treaty of peace is set on foot between *Matilda* and King *Stephen*, but it comes to nothing.

Reg. 6. *Robert* Earl of *Gloucester* takes *Nottingham*, which is accidentally burnt.

1141. *Ranulph* Earl of *Chester* surprizes the Castle of *Lincoln*, where he is besieged by the King; but getting out in the
January. night, he goes and raises fresh forces in *Cheshire* and *Wales*.

With these, and the Earl of *Gloucester's* assistance, he
Feb. 2. marches to the relief of the place; but both armies coming to an engagement near *Lincoln*, the King's forces are defeated, and he is himself taken prisoner.

The King is conducted to the Empress at *Gloucester*, who orders him to be confined in *Bristol* Castle, where he is laid in irons.

All *England*, except *London* and *Kent*, forsakes the captive King, and declares for *Matilda*.

Normandy acknowledges also *Matilda*.

And *David* King of *Scotland* invades the northern Counties.

The Barons, who retained their allegiance to *Stephen*, retire

tire to *London*, and prevail with the Citizens to enter into a Confederacy with them in favour of the King. *Ann. C.*

Henry Bishop of *Winchester* is gained over to *Matilda*'s party. And the Archbishop of *Canterbury* also swears fealty to her.

A Synod is held at *Winchester*, wherein *Maud* is elected Queen by the Clergy. *April 9.*

Deputies from *London* come to this Synod, and petition the King's liberty, as does also a Chaplain of King *Stephen*'s Queen, but all in vain.

The Synod breaks up after excommunicating all *Stephen*'s adherents. *April 12.*

Matilda removes from *Winchester* to *Wilton*, and thence to *Reading*, and *Oxford*, and after receiving the homage of the inhabitants and the adjacent Country, comes to *St. Albans*, where she waits for the resolution of the *Londoners*.

The *Londoners* acknowledging her, she comes to *London*, and is magnificently received.

King *Stephen*'s Queen comes to her, and petitions for her husband's liberty, promising he would renounce the Crown; but her request is haughtily rejected.

Matilda loses all her interest with the Bishop of *Winchester*, by refusing to grant, as he desired the titles of Earl of *Mortagne* and *Boulogne* to Prince *Eustace*; and with the *Londoners*, by not agreeing to revive the laws of St. *Edward*.

The Bishop cherishing these discontents, stirs up the *Londoners* to seize *Matilda*, but she escapes, and retires to *Gloucester*, and then to *Oxford*.

In the mean time, he concerts measures with King *Stephen*'s Queen, and son, and stores the Castle of *Winchester*, and some others, with provisions and arms.

Matilda marches from *Oxford* to *Winchester*, attended by the King of *Scotland*, and tries by a cunning artifice to get the Bishop into her hands, but he steals out of the City, and draws his friends together. *July.*

The *Kentishmen* and *Londoners*, headed by Queen *Maud*, *Eustace*, and *William d'Ipres*, hasten to *Winchester*, and had like to have surprized the Empress *Matilda*, but she retires into the Castle.

The inhabitants of *Winchester* appearing too zealous for *Matilda*, that City is set on fire by the Bishop's order, so that a great part of it is burnt down, with above twenty Churches. *Aug. 2.*

Ann. C. *Matilda*, after a seven weeks siege, sallies out of *Winches-*
Sept. 14. *ter* Castle, and escapes, but *Robert* Earl of *Gloucester* is taken, and imprisoned in *Rochester* Castle.

The Empress, after her escape, repairs to *Lutgershall*, then to the *Devizes*, and at last to *Gloucester*.

Novemb. The King is exchanged for the Earl of *Gloucester*, after this last had been in vain sollicited to change sides.

The Bishop of *Winchester* writes to the Pope to authorize his proceedings in favour of King *Stephen*; which his Holiness accordingly does.

Decemb. The Prelate thereupon summons a Synod at *Westminster*,
Reg. 7. at which the King was present, and wherein all *Matilda*'s adherents are excommunicated.

1142. *Matilda*'s party declining a-pace, the Earl of *Gloucester*
June. passes into *Normandy*, to demand succours from the Earl of *Anjou*, who accordingly lets him have between three and four hundred men, together with his son Prince *Henry*.

Septemb. *Matilda* retires in the mean while to *Oxford*, where she is closely besieged by King *Stephen*, but she escapes in a snowy night, dressed in white clothes, and repairs to *Abington*, and thence to *Wallingford*.

Decemb. Prince *Henry* and the Earl of *Gloucester* arrive in *England*,
Reg. 8. and wait upon *Matilda*.

1143. A Council is held at *London*, in which the King was present. Another Council was also held this year at *St. Albans*.

Geoffrey de Mandeville Earl of *Essex* is arrested by the King's order, on account of his perfidious practices, and forced to surrender his Castles of *Walden* and *Plaisseiz*, with the *Tower* of *London*; but in revenge he plunders *Canterbury*, and other places.

King *Stephen* goes to *Wilton*, where his quarters being
July 1. beaten up by the Earl of *Gloucester*, he flies away in the
Reg. 9. night, with the loss of his plate and baggage.

1144. *Matilda*'s affairs decline, and King *Stephen*'s party increases.

Reg. 10. *Geoffrey de Mandeville* Earl of *Essex*, and *Robert Marmion*, two men of note, are slain.

Dec. 24. *Milo* Earl of *Hereford* is slain with an arrow, at a hunting match.

1146. Prince *Henry* goes to *Normandy*, that was now entirely subdued by his father *Geoffrey* Earl of *Anjou*.

Oct. 31. *Robert* Earl of *Gloucester*, dies, and was buried in *St. James*'s Priory at *Bristol*.

King *Stephen* holds his Court at *Northampton*; and the
Reg. 12. *Christmas* following at *Lincoln*.

The

The Empress *Matilda* retires to *Normandy*. *Ann. C.*

King *Stephen* being now master of the whole Kingdom, 1147.
thinks of means to secure it to his son *Eustace*, after his death, and for that purpose causes some of the Barons to take an oath to him. *Reg.* 13.

The Pope sets on foot a new Crusade against the *Saracens*, wherein *Lewis* the Young, King of *France*, signalizes 1148.
himself. *William* Earl of *Warren*, and *Roger de Mowbray* were in that expedition. *Reg.* 14.

Henry, Duke of *Normandy*, thinks of asserting his right to 1149.
the Crown of *England*; and accordingly he comes over, *May.*
and meets *David* King of *Scotland* at *Carlisle*, but King *Stephen* marching against them, they both return into their *Reg.* 15.
own Countries, the beginning of the next year. 1150.

Henry, *Matilda*'s son, is invested with the Dukedom of *Reg.* 16.
Normandy.

Lewis King of *France* being returned from the Crusade, 1151.
divorces his wife, *Eleanor*, Countess of *Poictou* and Duchess of *Aquitain*; but she marries soon after *Henry* Duke of *Normandy*.

King *Lewis* and *Stephen* growing jealous of *Henry*'s greatness, enter into a league against him; and *Lewis* invests *Eustace* again with the Dukedom of *Normandy*.

King *Stephen*, in order to ruin *Henry*'s party in *England*,
tries to get his son *Eustace* crowned beforehand, but the *Reg.* 17.
Archbishop of *Canterbury* refuses to perform that ceremony, and flies into *Normandy*.

The King seizes all his lands, and also the castles of 1152.
some of *Henry*'s adherents; and sends his son *Eustace*, to join the King of *France*, and to invade *Normandy*.

He holds his Court this year at *London*.

Henry makes a peace with the King of *France*, and thereby breaks all *Stephen*'s measures.

King *Stephen* takes *Newbury* Castle; and then lays siege to *Wallingford* Castle, which being reduced to extremity,
the besieged send to *Normandy* to Duke *Henry*, for assistance. *Reg.* 18.

Henry comes over with 140 horse, and 3000 foot; takes 1153.
the Castles of *Malmsbury*, *Stamford*, and *Nottingham*; is *Jan.* 14.
joined by several Barons, and hastens to the relief of *Wallingford* Castle.

The two armies being near one another, and just ready to engage, *William* Earl of *Arundel* prevails upon the King to make peace.

Henry is with much difficulty brought to it, but he consents at last, and a truce is concluded.

Ann. C. *Maud*, King *Stephen*'s Queen, dies at *Hemingham*, and
May 11. was buried in *Feversham* Abbey.

Prince *Eustace* mightily exasperated at the late treaty, whereby he was excluded from all hopes of Succession to the Crown, goes to *Cambridge*, threatening to lay the Country
Aug. 10. waste, but he dies in a fit of frenzy in *St. Edmundsbury* Monastery, and was buried in *Feversham* Abbey.

Simon Earl of *Northampton*, and *Ranulph* Earl of *Chester*, die also about the same time.

The truce being expired, hostilities are renewed on both sides; and *Henry* takes *Stamford* and *Nottingham* Castles, and King *Stephen* that of *Ipswich*.

At last another treaty is concluded between the two contending Princes, whereby it was agreed, That King *Stephen* should enjoy the Crown during life: And, That, after his decease, *Henry* should succeed him.

Reg. 19. This treaty is signed at *Winchester*, where a general As-
Decemb. sembly was held for that purpose.

King *Stephen* adopts *Henry*, and *William*, the King's son, does homage to *Henry* for the Earldom of *Norfolk*, and *Warren*, the Lordships of *Pevensey*, *Dover*, *Feversham*, &c.

1154. A great Council is held at *Oxford*, where all the chief
Jan. 13. men of *England* do homage, and swear fealty to *Henry*.

The King and Duke have an interview with the Earl of *Flanders* at *Dover*, and then return to *Canterbury*.

April 22. *David* King of *Scotland* dies, and is succeeded by his grandson *Malcolm*.

A Conspiracy is formed against *Henry*, which is defeated by a fall Prince *William* had from his horse, whereby his thigh was broke.

Henry takes his leave of King *Stephen*, and returns to his Dominions.

The King takes several Castles in the North, and raises them to the ground, and then returns to *Canterbury*, to meet there the Earl of *Flanders*.

Oct. 25. King *Stephen* dies of the cholic and piles, in *Christ-Church* Monastery at *Canterbury*, in the 50th year of his age, and the 19th of his Reign; and was buried in the Abbey of *Feversham*, which he had founded.

The Character *of* King STEPHEN.

If this Prince's Character be considered in general only, he may be said to be worthy to live in better times, and his good qualities to outweigh his defects. However, it would be very difficult to justify all his proceedings in acquiring

quiring the Crown, and particularly the breach of his Oath. Accordingly, though the consent of the Barons may seem to be of some weight, yet as the Crown was procured by unjust practices, many are of opinion, he ought, for all that, to be deemed an Usurper. His breaking his word on certain occasions, is moreover a stain to his memory. Perhaps the circumstances of the times and affairs hurried him beyond his natural inclination. But however, the commendations due to his valour, clemency, and generosity, cannot be denied him. The first of these virtues appeared chiefly at the battle of *Lincoln*, where he was taken prisoner. The other two must be owned, when it is considered, that throughout his reign there is not a single instance of severity to be found, though several of the Barons, whom the chance of war had put in his power, had given him but too much reason to use them with rigour. It is true, there are Historians, that made it their business to blacken his reputation. But it must be observed, most of them wrote in the reign of *Henry* II, or his Sons. As for *William of Malmsbury*, who was Cotemporary with *Stephen*, he is known to be the Earl of *Gloucester*'s Creature, to whom he dedicated the last part of his History. This alone should make us read with caution, what he relates to *Stephen*'s disadvantage. After all, it is not easy to determine whether the Crown justly belonged to *Matilda*, or *Stephen*'s election entitled him to take possession. What may be said with more certainty, is, that after the Conquest, the *Saxon* laws were no longer observed, and it does not appear that the *Normans* had yet any settled rules concerning the Succession to the Crown.

His legitimate issue were, 1. *Baldwin*; 2. *Eustace*; 3. *William* (who survived him:) 4. *Maud*; 5. And *Mary*, who also survived him.

His natural issue were, 1. *William*; and 2. *Gervase*, Abbot of *Westminster*.

The troubles during this Reign furnished the Clergy with a favourable opportunity to exalt the Mitre above the Crown. The Court of *Rome* improved also these junctures, to introduce into *England* new Laws, which the *English* doubtless would have opposed at any other time. The Canon-Law compiled by *Gratian* in 1151, by the authority of *Eugenius* III, was brought into *England* on occasion of the contests between the Archbishop of *Canterbury*,

Gervase. Act. Pontif. Cant. p. 1665.

bury, and the Bishop of *Winchester* about the Legateship. These differences gave the *Italian* Canonists opportunity to settle in *England*, and introduced by degrees the study of the Canon-Law into the University of *Oxford*, where *Vacarius* was the first Professor.

An Account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

Having shown before, how the Money was paid in and issued out of the *Exchequer*, it may not be amiss now to set down the particular branches of the Royal Revenue; namely, I. The Demeans of the Crown. II. Escheats. III. Feudal and other Profits arising out of the Demeans and Escheats. IV. The yearly Ferms of Counties and Towns. V. Fines and Americaments. VI. Aids, Scutages, Tallages and Customs. VII. Casual Profits of divers kinds. These particulars will give great light to several parts of the *English* History. First, Of the antient Demean of the Crown, it appears, at the time of the *Conquest* and afterwards, the *Demean* lands were considerable for extent and income. *Doomesday* Book shows what they were in the reign of *Edward the Confessor*, and serves to distinguish the King's Demeans from his Escheats and other Lands, and from the Lands of other men. II. The second branch of the Revenue arose by *Escheats*, under which term are comprehended not only those Lands, most properly so called, but those also which at sundry times after the *Conquest* became vested in the Crown, either by devolution, forfeiture, seizure, or perhaps by some other title. By the Revenue-Rolls of the *Pipe* of the Reigns of *Stephen* and *Henry* II, (which next to *Doomesday*, are the most ancient Rolls of Records now extant) and likewise by those of the next succeeding Kings, we find the Crown then in possession of several great Honours, Baronies and Lands, of that sort, which are usually stiled *Honor*, *Baronia*, or *Terra* of such a one, with the addition sometimes of *quæ est in manu Regis*, without expressing by what title they became vested in the Crown. These great Escheats were antiently committed usually by the King to certain persons in Ferm or Custody, who answered at the *Exchequer* yearly for the Issues or Ferm thereof. Besides these greater fees, the lands of lower persons, and sometimes of hereditary Offices and Serjeanties, with the lands appertaining thereto became forfeited to the Crown. As the King had the full Dominion in all these

Escheats,

Escheats, after they had been long vested in the Crown, they were hardly to be distinguished from the King's antient Demean. About the latter end of *Henry* II's reign, they began to form an *Escheatry*, which in subsequent times was managed by Officers called at first *Custodes Escaetriæ*, and afterwards *Escheators*. However, some of the smaller *Escheats* were usually holden by the Sheriffs. When *Escheats* came to the Crown, the Justices itinerant took care within their several circuits, to have them seized to the Crown, and put in charge to the Sheriffs or other Officers to the King's profit. III. Some Revenues likewise, accrued to the Crown from vacant Bishopricks and Abbeys of Royal Foundation and Patronage. For in antient times, when such Bishop or Abbot happened to die, the King used to seize the Temporalities into his hands, and receive the profits till the vacancy was filled. *Ordericus Vitalis* ascribes this practice first to *William* II. He says, before the *Norman* Invasion, the Bishop of the Diocese took care of the Revenues of a vacant Abbey, as the Archbishop did of those of a Bishoprick, till filled. In 1164, (10 *Hen.* II.) by the Constitutions of *Clarendon*, an Archbishoprick, Bishoprick, Abbey or Priory of Royal Foundation becoming void, the same was to be in the King's hands, and he might receive the issues thereof as if he had held them in Demean. And so, it seems the Usage was, both before and after the Council of *Clarendon*. In the 5th of *Stephen*, the Manors of the Bishoprick of *Durham*, then vacant, are said, in the Roll, to be in *Dominio Regis*, and therefore discharged of *Danegelt*. In the Statute *de Provisoribus* (25 *Edward* III.) it is declared, That the Kings, Earls, Barons, as Lords and Advowees, had, and ought to have the custody of vacant Prelacies, *&c.* This power was often abused by the King, as well as private Lords and Patrons, by keeping the Benefices void several years together. However this be, the Crown was wont to take into its hands the Temporalities of the vacant Bishopricks and Abbeys, which were at first committed to a *Custos*, who accounted to the Crown for the same. And afterwards, when the office of *Escheatry* was settled, the *Escheators* used, upon a voidance, to seize them for the King, and answer for the same as part of their Escheatry. The succeeding Bishop could not meddle with the Temporalities thus seized, without a Writ to give him possession, called a Writ of Restitution of Temporalities, which continues in use to this day. The Kings, in five or six Successions after the Conquest,

made a considerable Revenue this way, as appears by the Revenue-Rolls. The rest of the branches will be continued in the following Coin-Notes.

In King *Stephen*'s time there seems to have been a great deal of Money coined. For thus writes *William of Newbury*: "Erant in Anglia quodam modo tot Reges, vel "potius Tyranni, quot Domini *Castellorum*, habentes singuli "percussuram proprii numismatis & potestatem subditis "Regio more dicendi jus." And yet we have very few Remains of their Treasure. His Penny, in *Speed*, is no bigger than his Predecessors. It is the first after the Conquest that's half-faced, with this Inscription, STIEFNI EI. and on the reverse, SPTIDETS: DN. V. which *Nicolson* takes to be the blundered name of some of his above-mentioned Royal Lords. Different from this is another, which gives both his eyes, though even here the face is somewhat side-ways. The Crown is much the same with *Henry* I, only the Flowers are raised higher. *Tanner* met with one, which instead of the King's head, bore two Angels with STIEFEN RE. with a reverse like that of *William the Conqueror*. Mr. *Thoresby* has one with both the Figures of *Stephen* and *Henry*, and likewise of EISTAOTHIVS (*Eustatius* Son of *Stephen*) with a Horse on one side, and a large Cross of *Flower-de-lis* on the other. Another of *Eustatius* with a Sword in his hand: Reverse EBORACI. ED. TS. a Pellet in each quarter of a Cross, surrounded with a Rose. (See the Figure annexed.)

Ann. C. The NOBILITY created in this Reign, were as follows.

1136. *Hugh Bigot* Earl of *Norfolk*.
1137. *Richard de Clare*, Earl of *Hartford*.
1138. *Gilbert de Clare*, Earl of *Pembroke* and *Buckingham*.
Robert de Ferrers, Earl of *Nottingham* and *Derby*.
William de Grasi, Earl of *Albemarle* and *York*.
1139. *William de Meschines*, Earl of *Cambridge*.

Geoffrey

Geoffrey de Mandeville, Earl of *Essex*.	*Ann. C.*
Reginald de Dunstaville, Earl of *Cornwall*.	1140.
William de Mohun, Earl of *Dorset*, or *Somerset*.	
William de Ipres, Earl of *Kent*.	1141.
William de Romara, Earl of *Lincoln*.	
Waleran de Beaumont, Earl of *Worcester*.	1144.
William de Blois, Earl of *Warren* and *Surrey*.	1148.
William de Bellemont, Earl of *Bedford*.	
Gilbert de Gant, Earl of *Lincoln*.	
Those created by *Maud* the Empress.	1137.
Aubrey de Vere, Earl of *Oxford*.	
Milo, Earl of *Hereford*.	
[By patent, being the first that was so created.]	1141.
William de Albini, Earl of *Arundel* and *Sussex*.	1150.
Patrick D'Evreux, Earl of *Salisbury*.	1153.

State of the Church from 1066, *to* 1154.

THE Pope and Clergy were considerable losers by the *Norman* Conquest, because the *Norman* Princes were not so submissive, and had not so much regard for the Clergy, as their *Saxon* Predecessors.

They could not bear any distinction between the Clergy and Laity as to point of obedience, and challenged an equal authority over both.

William I. made the Church-lands liable to the same services as the lay-fees; and seized the gold and silver deposited in the Monasteries.

William II. keeps the vacant Bishoprics and Abbies in his hands, notwithstanding the Popes menaces.

The Popes gave way to Princes of resolution and steadiness, while they proceeded vigorously against such as durst not oppose them.

Henry I. hath a long contest with the Court of *Rome*, about the investitures of Bishops and Abbots; but at last the Pope agrees, that they should do the King homage.

In King *Stephen*'s Reign, the Court of *Rome*, by appointing a Legate different from the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, aims at humbling the Clergy as well as the Kings.

The Pope refuses to send the Pall to *Lanfranc*, but obliges him to come to *Rome* for it, in order to keep up the Archbishop's dependance on the Pope.

Thomas

Ann. C. *Thomas* Archbishop of *York* refuses to make profession of Canonical obedience to the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, which occasions a long dispute, but it is at last decided in favour of *Canterbury*.

Thomas owns the Archbishop of *Canterbury*'s superiority and jurisdiction over the whole Church of *England*.

Thurstan Archbishop of *York* revives this dispute, and absolutely refuses to make the customary submission to the See of *Canterbury*.

The See of *Canterbury* by degrees extends its jurisdiction over *Wales*, the Bishop of *St. David*'s, who exercised Archiepiscopal functions in that Country, being consecrated by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*.

A contest arises between the Sees of *Canterbury* and *York*, about the jurisdiction over *Scotland*; but, at last, the *Scottish* Bishops are, by a Bull of *Paschal* II, made Suffragans to the See of *York*.

The Popes zealously promote the celibacy of the Clergy, in order to render them independent from the civil power, and to make them a separate body.

Legates are frequently sent into *England*, on purpose to keep the Clergy in strict obedience.

The Antipopes, and Schisms in the Court of *Rome*, are very prejudicial to the Papal power.

But they gain a great deal of ground by the Crusades, which were very frequent in those days.

1095. They were first set on foot by *Peter the Hermit*, and Pope *Urban* II.

An old dispute about Transubstantiation is revived between *Berengarius* and *Lanfranc*.

1063. A Council is held at *Roan* upon that subject. And another
1075. at *Poitiers*.

The Councils and Synods, within this period, were those of,

1070. *Winchester*.
1072. *Windsor*.
1075. *London*.
1076. *Winchester*, on occasion of the marriage of Priests.
1077. *Westminster*.
1078. *London*.
1094. *Rockingham*.
1102. *London*.
1103—1107. *London*, concerning the point of investitures.

London,

London, summoned by Cardinal *John de Crema*. — *Ann. C.*
Westminster. 1125.
Westminster. 1126.
London, concerning the marriage of Priests. 1127.
Northampton. 1129.
Westminster, convened by *Alberic*, the Pope's Legate. 1138.
London. 1140.
Winchester. 1142.
Westminster.
London. 1143.
The See of *Selsey* is removed to *Chichester*. 1070.
That of *Lichfield* to *Chester*. 1075.
That of *Sherbourn* to *Salisbury*.
That of *Wells* to *Bath*. 1088.
And that of *Dorchester* to *Lincoln*. 1092.
Ely is made a Bishop's See. 1109.
As is also *Carlisle*. 1133.
A project is formed of erecting *Winchester* into an Archbishopric, but it comes to nothing. 1144.

Battle-Abbey was founded by *William* I, and the Monastery of *Bermondsey* by *William* II.

Henry I. founded the Abbey of *Reading*, with a Priory at *Dunstable*; and King *Stephen*, *Feversham* Monastery, and the Abbies of *Coggeshall* in *Essex*, and *Furnesse* in *Lancashire*.

Maud, King *Stephen*'s Queen, founded the Monastery of St. *Katherine*'s, by the *Tower* of *London*.

Within this period sprung up the orders of the *Carthusians*, *Cistercians*, and *Præmonstratenses*, which settled afterwards in *England*.

The most *noted persons*, within this period, were,

Aldred, Archbishop of *York*.
Stigand, Archbishop of *Canterbury*.
Marianus Scotus, born 1028, and died 1086.
Wulstan, Bishop of *Worcester*.
Lanfranc, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, who rebuilt that Cathedral.
Anselm, Archbishop also of *Canterbury*, who had a long contest with King *Henry* I. about the investiture of Bishops and Abbots.
Gilbert, Bishop of *London*.
Osmund, Bishop of *Salisbury*, Corrector of the Liturgy, *secundum usum Sarum*.
Malachy, Archbishop of *Armagh*.

The

The most famous *Historians*, about this time, were, the Authors of

The *Saxon Chronicle*.
Ingulphus, born in *London* 1030, and died in 1109.
Jeffrid, who erected schools at *Cambridge*.
Godfrid, Prior of *Winchester*.
Gulielmus Pictaviensis.
Florence of *Worcester*.
Eadmerus.
Ordericus Vitalis.
William of *Malmsbury*.

BOOK VII.

The Restoration of the Saxon *Line. The Reigns of* HENRY II. *and* RICHARD I. *Containing the space of* 45 *years.*

5. HENRY II. *surnamed* PLANTAGENET.

Ann. C. 1154. *Reg.* 1. *Dec.* 7. *Dec.* 19.

DUKE *Henry* comes to the Crown without opposition, no one attempting to stir in favour of Prince *William*, son of the deceased King.

Henry arrives in *England*;

And, being chosen by all with common consent, is crowned at *Westminster*, together with his Queen *Eleanor*. He was in the 23d year of his age.

1155. In order to put it out of the power of the Factious to excite troubles, he demolishes the Castles that were fortified in the late King's Reign, and disbands the foreign troops.

He holds his great Council at *Christmas* at *Bermondsey*, and by their advice revokes all the grants made by his Predecessor, and resumes all the lands alienated from the Crown.

Hugh Mortimer, presuming to hold out one of his Castles against the King, is deprived of all those he had, *viz.* those of *Gloucester*, *Worcester*, *Bridgnorth*, *Wigmore*, and *Colebrugh*.

William


K. HENRY. II.

William son of *Stephen* is dispossessed of whatever was given him by his father, except the lands belonging to his family before his father's accession. *Ann. C.*

King *Henry* deprives the Earls of the new creation, of the honourable titles conferred on them by King *Stephen*.

Thomas Becket, Archdeacon of *Canterbury*, is made Chancellor.

A General Council, or Parliament, is held at *Wallingford*, where the King causes the chief men of the Kingdom to take the oath to his sons, *William* and *Henry*; the first died soon after, and the second was born this year, on *Febr.* 28.

In this Assembly the King confirms the laws of *Edward*, and renews the Charter of *Henry* I.

Another great Council is held at *Winchester*, wherein the King advises with his great men about the conquest of *Ireland*. *Sept.*

Pope *Anastasius* dies, and is succeeded by *Nicolas Breakspear* an *Englishman*, who took the name of *Adrian* IV. *Reg.* 2.

King *Henry* passes over into *Normandy*, and goes and does homage to the King of *France* for *Normandy*, *Aquitains*, *Anjou*, *Maine*, and *Touraine*, which he possessed in that Kingdom. 1156. *Jan.*

He comes back to *England*, but returns soon after to *France*, and deprives his brother *Geoffrey* of *Anjou*, which he had seized; but grants him, in lieu of it, a pension of 1000 *l. English*, and 2000 *l.* of *Angevin* money.

Geoffrey is made Earl of *Nantes*.

King *Henry* returns to *England*; and makes a very advantageous treaty with *Malcolm* King of *Scotland*, who resigns to him *Northumberland* and *Cumberland*, that had been seized by his father *David*, and contents himself with the Earldom of *Huntingdon*. *Reg.* 3.

Maud, the King's daughter, is born. 1157.

The *Welsh* having made incursions on the frontiers, King *Henry* marches into *North Wales*, and puts all to fire and sword.

A body of his troops is defeated, and *Henry de Essex*, the hereditary Standard-Bearer, throws the standard down, which occasions a great consternation in the *English* army.

King *Henry* concludes a peace with the *Welsh*.

Richard, the King's 3d son, is born this year at *Oxford*. *Sept.*

The King takes a progress through *England*, and causes himself to be crowned in *Wickford*, a village belonging to *Lincoln* City. *Reg.* 4. 1158.

Ann. Cr. The money is called in, and new-coined.
Sept. 28. *Geoffrey*, the King's 4th son, is born.
Reg. 5. The King goes to *France*, and returns to *England* in the
1159. beginning of the next year.

He, and his Queen take a progress as far as *Worcester*, where they are both crowned on *Easter-Sunday*; and, at the oblation, they offer up their Crowns at the high Altar, and never wear them more.

Geoffrey the King's brother dying, the Duke of *Bretagne* seizes the City of *Nantes*; but King *Henry* claims it as heir to his brother, and having raised a scutage, amounting to 124,000 marks, passes over into *Normandy*.

In the mean time, he gains the King of *France* to his side, by concluding a marriage between his eldest son and King *Lewis*'s daughter.

Then he marches against *Conan*, and compels him to resign *Nantes* to him. And that Duke obliges himself by treaty to give his daughter *Constance* in marriage to *Geoffrey*, *Henry*'s son; who thereby becomes afterwards Duke of *Bretagne*.

King *Henry* undertakes to revive his Queen's title to the Earldom of *Tholouse*, and having made an Alliance with the Earl of *Arragon* and *Barcelona*, and engaged the King of *Scotland* to lend him a powerful aid, he takes *Cahors*, and goes and lays siege to *Tholouse*.

At this siege *Thomas Becket* maintained 700 Knights or horse-men, and 1200 hundred others of less quality, with 4000 thousand mercenary foot, for one month.

Reg. 6. The King of *France* having thrown himself into *Tholouse*, a few days before King *Henry*'s besieging of it, the latter is forced to raise the siege, and to return into *Normandy*.

In his return he ravages *le Beauvoisis*. *Simon* Earl of *Montfort* having delivered to King *Henry* his Castles about *Paris*, *Lewis* is forced to sue for a truce, which is agreed upon for one year.

William Earl of *Blois*, son of King *Stephen*, dies, in his return from the *Tholouse* expedition.

1160. A peace is concluded between the Kings of *France* and
May. *England*.
Reg. 7. King *Henry* causes the marriage between his son *Henry* and *Margaret*, daughter of *Lewis*, to be solemnized, which occasions the renewal of the war between the two Kings.
1161. But this war is soon after ended, by the mediation of Pope *Alexander* III.

The

The two Kings hold his stirrup, and, walking on foot, lead his horse by the bridle to his lodgings. *Ann. C. Reg.* 8.

Theobald, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, dies. 1162.

Thomas Becket, the Chancellor, is chosen Archbishop in his room, upon the King's recommendation. *Reg.* 9.

He sends the Great Seal to the King, and suddenly alters his way of living, wearing sack-cloth next his skin.

King *Henry*, having settled his affairs in *France*, returns to *England*. 1163. *January*.

He gives the new Archbishop a very cold reception, being displeased at his resigning the Great Seal.

The King resolves to reform some abuses among the Clergy, that were detrimental to the State; particularly about the Clergy's being tried only in the Ecclesiastical Courts.

Becket resolves to oppose the King therein with all his might.

Accordingly, a Clergyman having committed murder, he is only deprived of his benefice, and committed to a Monastery.

The King expostulates with *Becket* about it, and declares, he intended to have Clergymen, guilty of heinous offences, tried in his Courts; but *Becket* answered, he would never allow it.

He upbraids the King for depriving him of the custody of *Rochester* Castle; summons the Earl of *Clare* to do him homage for *Tunbridge*; and excommunicates a Baron for disturbing a Clerk, presented by him to the Rectory of *Aynesford*.

The King, highly provoked at all this, sets about reducing the power of the Clergy within its just bounds.

He holds a great Council at *Westminster*, wherein he proposes, that Clerks, convict of heinous crimes, should be degraded, and delivered over to the temporal Courts. *Reg.* 10.

Not being able to have this proposal approved, he demands of the Bishops, Whether they would observe his Royal prerogatives? To which they answer, Yes, *saving their Order by and in all things.*

Henry dissatisfied with that saving clause, goes away to *Woodstock*; where the Archbishop and Bishops wait upon him, and consent to acknowledge his laws, without the saving clause.

This year *London-Bridge* was new-built of timber. 1164.

A General Council is held at *Clarendon*, wherein the King proposes many antient regal customs, which he requires *Jan.* 14.

Ann. C. quires the Bishops to recognize, but, with much ado, they are brought to subscribe to them.

Becket repents his signing of them, and having suspended himself, applies to the Pope for absolution.

The Pope refuses to confirm those laws by a Bull, and sends the Archbishop of *Roan* to make up the differences between the King and *Becket*.

Becket goes to *Rumney*, and tries twice to go out of the Kingdom, but is forced back.

Oct. 13. The King calls a great Council at *Northampton*, wherein *Becket* is prosecuted for several offences; and all his moveables are confiscated.

Nov. 11. He is charged with perjury and treason, and declared guilty of perjury.

Taking his cross in his hand, he goes into Court, without asking leave; and appeals to the Pope from the sentence passed upon him.

The King desires the Barons to proceed to sentence against *Becket*, and accordingly they condemn him to imprisonment.

The Earls of *Cornwal* and *Leicester* go and acquaint him with the judgment, but he forbids them under anathema to pronounce sentence, because he had appealed to the Pope.

Becket is informed, that some persons of Quality had conspired his death; whereupon he sends the Bishop of *Rochester* to the King, to desire leave to go beyond sea.

The King answering, He would first advise with his Council about it; *Becket* thereupon steals aways privately in the night, goes to *Lincoln*, and thence, through by-ways, and in disguise, to *Canterbury*, and at last to *Sandwich*, where getting a ship, he passes over to *Graveline*.

King *Henry* sends Ambassadors to the King of *France*, to desire him not to receive *Becket*: But *Lewis*, hoping *Becket*'s affair would raise troubles, of which he might make an advantage, offers him his protection.

He also desires the Pope, to maintain the Archbishop's cause against the Tyrant of *England*.

King *Henry* sends Ambassadors to the Pope, who complain grievously of *Becket*, and desire to have Legates come to *England*, to decide summarily the matter; but the Pope will not consent thereto.

The King seizes the Archbishop's revenues, and orders *Peter-pence* to be collected, and not to be sent out of the Kingdom.

This year a *Parliament* was held at *Westminster*.

King

King *Henry* forbids all appeals to *Rome*; banishes *Becket*'s kindred, and imprisons the relations of those that had fled with him; sequesters the revenues of the Ecclesiastics who espoused his cause; and enjoins such to be punished, as should be taken with his or the Pope's letters. *Ann. C.* 1165.

The Archbishop excommunicates them that adhered to the Constitutions of *Clarendon*, and writes a threatening letter to the King.

King *Henry* passes over into *Normandy*, and has a Conference with King *Lewis*; but he is recalled by some ravages of the *Welsh*, and marching against them, is forced to return home ingloriously; which so enraged him, that he ordered the hostages to be gelt, and their eyes to be put out.

Matilda, King *Henry*'s daughter, is married to the Duke of *Saxony*. *Reg.* 12.

Malcolm King of *Scotland* dies, and is succeeded by his brother *William*. *Dec.* 10.

He comes to *England* to do homage to King *Henry*; and demands *Northumberland* of him, but he is put off. 1166.

King *Henry* goes to *Normandy*, and is accompanied thither by *William* King of *Scotland*.

Becket's Suffragans write to him, and let him know, that they appealed from him to the Pope.

The Pope sends two Legates in *England*, to decide *Becket*'s affair; but he refuses to stand to their sentence.

His own friends persuade him to give his Sovereign some satisfaction, and to resign his Archbishopric, but he remains inflexible.

King *Henry* returns to *England*, and holds a Parliament.

He threatens the Abbot of *Pontigny*, to expel all the *Cistercians* out of *England*, if he continued to entertain *Becket*, who had been two years with him. But the King of *France* gives him a kind reception. *Reg.* 13.

John, the King's fifth son, is born at *Oxford*. *Dec.* 24.

Some *German* Heretics arrive in *England*, and being condemned and branded at *Oxford*, they all perish with hunger.

In order to make King *Henry* uneasy, the Pope shews a great regard for *Becket*, and writes to the Bishop of *London* to admonish the King. 1167.

Henry threatens to own *Paschal* III. for Pope.

King *Henry* goes over into *France*, and the war is renewed between Him and *Lewis* about *Tholouse*; but at last a truce is concluded between them.

The Empress *Matilda*, mother of King *Henry* II, dies. *Sept.* 10.

Ann. C. King *Henry* undertakes the conquest of *Ireland*, upon
Reg. 14. occasion of *Dermot* King of *Leinster*'s applying to him for assistance, whilst he was engaged in reducing *Aquitain*.

This project had been formerly approved by a bull of *Adrian* IV.

Dermot, having obtained letters patents from King *Henry*, comes to *Bristol*, and engages *Robert Fitz-Stephen*, and *Richard Strongbow*, Earl of *Striguil* and *Pembroke*, to go and assist him in recovering his Dominions.

Dermot promises the latter, to give him his only daughter in marriage, and settle the Succession upon him.

1168. *Robert Fitz-Stephen* goes into *Ireland* with about 500 men,
April. and landing near *Waterford*, makes himself master of *Wexford*; which is given to him and *Maurice Fitz-Gerald*, by *Dermot*.

Then they go and subdue *Donald* Prince of *Offery*. *Roderic* sollicits *Fitz-Stephen* by great promises and gifts to leave *Ireland*, but cannot prevail.

A peace is concluded between *Dermot* and *Roderic*.

Maurice Fitz-Gerald lands near *Wexford* with a body of troops.

Roderic is vanquished by *Dermot*; whereupon *Dermot* forms the project of making himself Sovereign of the whole
Reg. 15. Island, and accordingly imparts his design to *Maurice* and *Fitz-Stephen*, and writes to the Earl of *Pembroke* to make good his agreement. The Earl sends him a few forces.

King *Henry* reduces the *Poictevins* and *Bretons* that had revolted, and makes a peace with the King of *France*.

Novemb. He hath an interview with *Becket*, in the presence of *Lewis*, where the Archbishop behaves with great arrogance.

1169. *Becket* excommunicates the greatest part of the *English* Clergy.

King *Henry* appeals to a future Council, and threatens the Pope, which puts him in great perplexity.

The Pope sends Legates, who meet the King in *Normandy*.

King *Henry* has another Conference with *Becket*, but without success.

The Archbishop of *Sens* pressing the Pope to put *England* under an interdict, King *Henry* forbids all appeals to *Rome*, the receiving any orders from the Pope or *Becket*, &c.

August. *Richard* Earl of *Pembroke* lands in *Ireland* with 1200 men, and makes himself master of *Waterford*.

He marries *Eva*, daughter of King *Dermot*. And then he, and the rest of the *English*, carry on their conquests, and take *Dublin*, and some other places.

King

King *Henry* growing jealous of those Adventurers, forbids the exporting any ammunition to *Ireland*, and commands all his subjects to return from thence. *Ann. C. Reg. 16.*

They send Deputies to assure him of their obedience, and to tell him, That all their present and future conquests were at his command.

King *Henry*, after having spent near four years in *France*, returns to *England*; and at *Easter* holds his Court at *Windsor*. 1170. *Mar. 3.*

He appoints Commissioners to go through the several Counties, and enquire into the misdemeanors of the Magistrates.

And in a great Council of all the Bishops, Abbots, Earls, Barons, Sheriffs, Bailiffs and Aldermen of all *England*, turns most of the Sheriffs and their Bailiffs out of their offices, and obliges them to make satisfaction to those they had injured. *June 14.*

Before this great Assembly, the King causes his eldest son, *Henry*, to be crowned at *Westminster*, with the consent of the Clergy and People, by the Archbishop of *York*. But *Becket* gets the Archbishop excommunicated by the Pope, for performing that office.

Lewis preparing to renew the war, because his daughter had not been crowned with her husband, King *Henry* goes over to *Normandy*, and makes peace again with the King of *France*. *June 24.*

King *Henry* falling ill at *Domfront*, makes his will, and resolves to be reconciled with *Becket*.

After two Conferences between King *Henry* and *Becket*, at *Montmirail* and *Amboise*, the King is reconciled to *Becket*. *July 22. Oct. 12.*

The King holds his stirrup, whilst he was getting on horse-back. *Reg. 17.*

The Archbishop lands at *Sandwich*, and, as soon as he arrives, suspends the Archbishop of *York* and Bishop of *Durham*, and excommunicates the Bishops of *London*, *Rochester*, and *Salisbury*. *Dec. 1*

He sends word to the young King, that he intended to wait upon him at *Woodstock*, but that Prince orders him to repair forthwith to *Canterbury*.

Becket makes a triumphant entry into *Canterbury*, and, soon after, excommunicates *Nigel de Salcaville*, and *Ranulph* and *Robert de Broc*.

The excommunicated Bishops go and carry their complaints to the King, who was in *Normandy*.

Ann. C. The King, upon hearing of them, rashly wishes, that some of his Domestics *would vindicate him from the injuries he received from that one Priest*, meaning *Becket*.

Whereupon four Knights, belonging to his bed-chamber, namely, *Reginald Fitz-Urse*, *William de Tracy*, *Richard le Britton*, and *Hugh de Morville*, bind themselves by a solemn oath to revenge the King's quarrel.

And, accordingly, coming privately to *Dover*, and thence
Dec. 30. to *Canterbury*, they assassinate Archbishop *Becket* in the Cathedral.

1171. The King of *France*, the Earl of *Blois*, and the Archbishop of *Sens*, press the Pope to excommunicate King *Henry*, and put *England* under an interdict.

King *Henry* sends Ambassadors to *Rome*, and forbids the bringing any Bulls from the Pope to *Normandy* or *England*.

Aug. 5. He returns to *England*, and visits *Henry* Bishop of *Winchester*, who was at the point of death.

Octob. Soon after he passes over into *Ireland*, with 400 sail, and makes himself master of several places.

Reg. 18. All the Archbishops, Bishops, and Abbots of *Ireland* come to him at *Waterford*, and swear fealty to him and his heirs.

The Kings of *Cork*, *Limeric*, *Ossery*, *Methe*, and even *Roderic* himself, submit to him.

Novemb. King *Henry* comes to *Dublin*, where he causes a palace of wattles (according to the fashion of the Country) to be built, and keeps his *Christmas* there.

1172. Having placed fresh Garrisons in *Wexford*, *Waterford*,
March. and other places, he comes to *England*; and holds a Parliament.

May 1. *Dermot* King of *Leinster* dies, and is succeeded by *Robert* Earl of *Pembroke*, who the year before had married his only daughter *Eva*.

May. King *Henry* goes into *Normandy*, to meet the Pope's Legates sent to examine into *Becket*'s murder.

Aug. 27. He sends his son *Henry* back to *England*, to be crowned a-new with the Princess *Margaret*.

Sept. 27. Swears solemnly, That he neither commanded, nor con-
Reg. 19. sented to, *Becket*'s Assassination; and is absolved, upon some certain conditions.

Novemb. The young King and his Queen come to *Normandy*, and go and pay a visit to the King of *France*, who advises him to demand of the King his *Father* either *England* or *Normandy* for his maintenance.

Richard,

Richard, Prior of *Dover*, is chosen Archbishop of *Canterbury*. *Ann. C.* 1173.

A dangerous Conspiracy is formed against the King, in which his Queen *Eleanor*, and his own sons, with several of the principal Barons, were concerned.

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*. *April.*

The King sends for his son from the Court of *France*, and carries him along with him to a Conference with the Earls of *Maurienne*, *Arragon*, *Vienne*, and *Tholouse*.

The young King falls out with his Father, and withdraws to the Court of *France*.

Queen *Eleanor* sends her sons *Richard* and *Geoffrey* to *France*, for which she is imprisoned.

Prince *Richard* repairs to *Guienne*; *Geoffrey* raises an insurrection in *Bretagne*; *Normandy* is attacked by the King of *France*, and the Earls of *Flanders*, *Boulogne*, and *Blois*; the King of *Scotland* ravages the northern parts; and the Earl of *Leicester* lands at *Walton* with an army raised in *France*. *Sept.* 28.

Young *Henry*, who continued at *Paris*, acts as sole King of *England*, receiving homage, making grants of the Crown-lands, assigning pensions, and the like. *Reg.* 20.

The old King, not desponding in the midst of his dangers, baffles all the attempts of the King of *France*, reduces the *Bretons* to reason, and subdues all the rest of his enemies. 1174.

William King of *Scotland*, and *Robert* Earl of *Leicester*, are defeated and taken prisoners, and being carried into *Normandy* are confined at *Falaise*. *July* 13. *Septemb.*

King *Henry*, the son, raises an army of *French* and *Flemings*, and comes to *Graveling*, where he designed to embark for *England*, but is prevented by contrary winds.

The old King, to baffle his son's designs, comes with great speed to *England*, and lands at *Southampton*, *July* 8.

He proceeds directly from thence to *Canterbury*, in order to do penance at *Becket's* tomb, and walks barefoot for three miles before he comes to that City; where he was scourged by the Monks. *July* 12, 13.

Then he reduces with the utmost speed all the Rebels in *England*, and takes their Castles.

Lewis King of *France* besieges *Roan*, but King *Henry* coming over, forces him to raise the siege. *Aug.* 10-14.

A peace is concluded between those two Princes, though *Richard*, *Henry's* son, was against it. *Sept.* 29. *Reg.* 21.

A marriage is agreed upon between Prince *Richard* and *Alice Lewis's* daughter.

Ann. C. King *Henry*, and his son the young King, come to *England*; and hold a Parliament at *Woodstock*; and another at
1175. *Reading* at *Whitsuntide*;
May 9.
June 29. And again at *Gloucester*.
Aug. 10. And at *York*; when it was agreed, That *William* King of *Scots* should be released, upon his restoring what he had taken, doing homage for *Scotland*, and delivering several Castles.

Oct. 6. Another great Council is held at *Windsor*, in which King
Reg. 22. *Henry* grants to *Roderic*, That he should hold of him the Kingdom of *Ireland*, upon condition of being ready at all times to do him service, and paying tribute.

1176. A Parliament is held this year at *Northampton*, wherein
Jan. 25. the King renewed the constitutions of *Clarendon*.

By the advice of this Assembly, *England* was first divided into six *Circuits*, and *Itinerant Justices* appointed.

May. *Richard Strongbow*, Earl of *Pembroke*, dies at *Dublin*.

Young King *Henry* passes into *Normandy*, where he stays three years.

The Princess *Joanna* is given in marriage to *William* the good King of *Sicily*, by advice of a great Council, which
June 19. was summoned to meet at *London* for that purpose.

King *Henry* forms the design of erecting *Ireland* into a Kingdom, in behalf of his son Prince *John*.

William Earl of *Gloucester* leaves his large estate to the same Prince, upon condition he would marry his youngest daughter *Avisa*.

Besides the Parliaments already mentioned under this
June 29. year, there was one held at *Northampton*, and another at *Winchester*.

This year *London-Bridge* began to be built with stone, and was 33 years in building.

Reg. 23. King *Henry* demolishes all the fortified Castles, that still remained in private hands.

1177. A great Council is held at *Northampton*.

Jan. 14. The Kings of *Castile* and *Navarre* having referred their
Febr. differences about some territories to King *Henry*, a Parliament is convened at *Westminster* to hear and determine them.

A great Council is held at *Gayton*, which is transferred, or adjourned, to *Windsor*, and afterwards to *Oxford*.

The Princes, and several of the great men of *Wales*, come and swear fealty to him there, and he gives *Merionethshire* to *Rees ap Griffin*, and *Ellesmore* to *David ap Owen*.

He also gives several Provinces and Cities in *Ireland*, to such

such great men as had assisted him in the conquest of that Island. *Ann. C.*

King *Henry* goes to *Normandy*, being attended by almost all the Earls, Barons, and Knights of *England*. *August.*

He has a Conference with the King of *France*, and concludes a treaty with him. *Sept.* 21.

The Earl of *Marche* sells his Earldom to King *Henry*. *Reg.* 24.

John de Courcy invades and subdues *Ulster*, in *Ireland*.

King *Henry* returns to *England*, and, in his way to *London*, pays his devotions at *Becket*'s shrine. 1178.

Henry the son comes to *England*, and soon after returns to *Flanders*. *July.*

A great Council is held at *Windsor*, by whose advice *England* is divided into four *Circuits*. *Reg.* 25. 1179. *March.*

Lewis King of *France* resolves to have his son *Philip* crowned in his life-time, but the young Prince falling dangerously ill, *Lewis* comes in pilgrimage to *Becket*'s tomb to pray for his son's recovery. The young Prince recovering accordingly, is crowned soon after. *Aug.* 22. *Reg.* 26. *Nov.* 1.

Miles Cogan, and *Ralph* son of *Robert Fitz-Stephen*, are treacherously slain in *Ireland*.

King *Henry* goes to *Normandy*, on account of some outrages committed by the young King of *France* upon his relations. 1180. *March.*

Lewis VII. King of *France*, dies; and is succeeded by his son *Philip* II. *Sept.* 18.

Ranulph de Glanville is appointed chief Justiciary of *England*. *Reg.* 27.

New money is coined in *England*, and the old called in.

King *Henry* returns to *England*. 1181.

He makes an assize, or law, concerning what arms every man should have, according to his rank. *Aug.* 25. *Reg.* 28.

King *Henry*'s sons cause him fresh troubles and vexations; and his son *Henry* demands *Normandy*, or some other Province. 1182.

A Parliament is held at *Bishop's Waltham*.

King *Henry* the father goes to *Normandy*, and brings his son *Henry* back to his duty; and in order to divide his sons, he sows dissension amongst them. *Mar.* 3. *Reg.* 29.

All his sons come to meet him in *Anjou*, and swear perpetual fidelity to him; but, however, they soon after revolt against him. 1183.

Young King *Henry* falls sick, and expresses great concern for his disobedience to his father, who sends him a ring in token of his pardon.

Ann. C. He dies, in the 29th year of his age, and was buried in
June 11. the Cathedral of *Roan*.

Sept. 10. King *Henry* does homage to *Philip* King of *France*, for
Reg. 30. all his Dominions in *France*.

1184. He returns to *England*.

June 10. *Richard* Archbishop of *Canterbury* dies, and is succeeded
Reg. 31. by *Baldwin* Bishop of *Worcester*.

1185. *Heraclius* Patriarch of *Jerusalem* being come to follicit succours from the King, for the relief of the *Holy-Land*, a great Council both of the *English* and *Scottish* Nations is held at *Clerkenwell*, which grants the Patriarch 50,000 marks, and several of the Nobility engage in the Crusade, though the King himself refused to do it.

Reg. 32. Prince *John* is knighted, and sent Governor into *Ireland*, but not behaving well is recalled.

King *Henry* goes to *France*, and has a Conference with King *Philip* about the Crusade.

1186. He has another Conference with him, wherein he binds himself by oath to give the Princess *Alice* in marriage to his son *Richard*.

Soon after which he returns into *England*.

Prince *Richard* makes war upon the *Britons*, and defeats his brother *Geoffrey*.

Geoffrey dies, leaving *Constance* of *Bretagne* his wife with child of Prince *Arthur*, of whom she was soon after delivered.

The King of *France* claims the guardianship of *Geoffrey*'s children, but it is given to their mother *Constance*, upon
Reg. 33. condition, That nothing of moment should be transacted without King *Henry*'s advice.

The States of *Bretagne* swear fealty to young *Arthur* as their Sovereign.

1187. King *Philip*, uneasy to see so many Provinces in *France* in the hands of the *English*, makes great preparations to recover them; and summons Prince *Richard* to do him homage for *Poictou*, and requires King *Henry*, who was newly come over to *France*, to restore *Margaret*'s dowry.

King *Henry* and *Richard*, uniting, oblige him to sue for a two years truce.

Prince *Richard* goes to the Court of *France*, where he is highly caressed by the King, and drawn away from his allegiance to his father.

Reg. 34. The King his father sends often for him, but he refuses to come: And going to *Chinon*, seizes the greatest part of his father's treasure, wherewith he fortifies his Castles in *Poictou*.

He

He returns at last to his duty, and swears allegiance to his father. *Ann. C.*

The Archbishop of *Canterbury* makes a visitation in *Wales*.

Jerusalem is taken by *Saladin*, Sultan of *Babylon*.

King *Henry* comes back to *England*; but being informed, that the King of *France* threatened to lay *Normandy* waste, he immediately returns thither, and has a Conference with him near *Gisors*, where they undertake the Crusade. They also renew the truce. 1188. *January*. *Jan.* 25.

King *Henry* returns to *England*, and holds a great Council at *Gayton* in *Northamptonshire*, wherein money was granted for the Crusade. *Jan.* 29.

Above 130,000 *l.* were raised for that use.

A quarrel arises between Prince *Richard* and the Earl of *Tholouse*, which occasions the breaking of the truce between the Kings of *England* and *France*.

King *Henry* goes to *Normandy*, and sends a defiance to the King of *France*. *July* 10.

They have several Conferences about a peace, but without effect. In the first a truce is concluded till the *January* following. *Aug.* 19. *Oct.* 6.

In one, *Philip* offers to restore what he had taken, provided Prince *Richard* married *Alice*, and was crowned. Which *Henry* refusing, *Richard* withdraws to the King of *France*, and swears fealty to him. *Oct.* 19. *Reg.* 35.

Richard presses his father to declare him his Successor, being apprehensive he intended to settle the Crown upon Earl *John*.

King *Henry* being worsted on all sides, and deserted by his subjects in *France*, desires the Pope to interpose his authority, and procure a peace. 1189.

The Pope's Legate anathematizes Prince *Richard*, and pronounces sentence of excommunication against all men that should hinder the conclusion of the peace: And threatens to interdict the King of *France*'s Dominions.

King *Henry* concludes at last a peace with the King of *France*. *June*.

Having got a list of those who had privately deserted him, and gone over to the King of *France*, and finding his son *John* amongst them, he goes to *Chinon* full of grief, and curses the day of his birth, giving at the same time God's curse and his own to his sons, which he would never release.

He falls sick of a fever at *Chinon*, and dies, in the 57th year of his age after a reign of 34 years, 8 months, and 12 days. *July* 6.

And

And was buried in the Choir of the Nunnery at *Font-Evraud*, which he himself had founded.

The Character *of* HENRY II.

Such was the end of *Henry* II. one of the most illustrious Princes of his time, both for greatness of genius and extent of Dominions. The mixture of vice and virtues in this Monarch, makes it difficult to give him a general Character that perfectly agrees with him. He was valiant, prudent, generous, politick, studious, learned, and of an exalted genius. On the other hand, he was excessive haughty, and of an immeasurable ambition, and a boundless lust. Never satisfied with love or empire, he spent his whole life in pursuit of new conquests in both. He attempted the chastity of all that came in his way, not excepting the Princess designed for his own Son: Failings which in great measure balance all his noble endowments. In the beginning of his Reign, which was one of the happiest, for some years, there was not in *Europe* a King more feared or respected. Encircled with glory and honour, which seemed to promise him great prosperity, he was looked upon as the happiest Prince in the World, before *Becket*'s affair interrupted his felicity. But that fatal quarrel, which created him so many troubles, being followed by dissentions in his family, he beheld the happiness, which till then had attended him, turned into misfortunes. However, if this Prince was unhappy, his misfortunes fell only on his own head, and not on his Kingdom, which had never been in so flourishing condition as in his Reign. By his accession to the Crown, *England* became one of the most powerful States in *Europe*, and began from that time to be on a level with *France*, to which before it was very much inferior. Besides the large and rich Provinces annexed in his time to the *English* Monarchy, the conquest of *Ireland* is what gives a great lustre to his reign, and ought to render his memory dear to the *English*.

King *Henry*'s legitimate children, by his wife *Eleanor* daughter and heir of *William* Earl of *Poictou*, were, 1. *William*. 2. *Henry*. 3. *Richard*. 4. *Geoffrey*. 5. *John*. 6. *Maud*, married to *Henry* V. Duke of *Saxony*, from whom is descended his Majesty King *George*. 7. *Eleanor*, married to *Alphonso* VIII. King of *Castile*. 8. *Joan*, married to *William* II. King of *Sicily*.

His

His natural issue, were,

By the Lady *Rosamond Clifford*, 1. *William Longespée*, created afterwards Earl of *Salisbury*. 2. *Geoffrey*, Archbishop of *York*.

By the Lady of Sir *Ralph Blewer*,

3. *Morgan*, Provost of *Beverley*.

A Description of the Monument *of* HENRY II. *and* RICHARD I.

The Monument of these Princes was erected in the Church of the Monastery of Font-everaud by the Lady Abbess, Jean Baptiste de Bourbon, Daughter of Henry IV. of France, in honour of them, and others of the Norman Line, buried there. Their effigies were removed from their first station in this Church to this new Mausoleum, with those of their Queens, Eleanor of Aquitain, and Berengaria of Navarre. RICHARD's lay first, at the feet of his Father HENRY's, and was gilt with Gold. HENRY has a Latin Epitaph on his Tomb, as follows,

Rex HENRICUS eram, mihi plurima Regna subegi
  Multiplicique modo, Duxque Comesque fui,
Cui satis ad votum non essent omnia, terræ
  Climata, terra modo sufficit octo pedum.
Qui legis hæc, pensa discrimina mortis, et in me
  Humanæ speculum conditionis habe.
Sufficit hic tumulus, cui non sufficerat Orbis,
  Res brevis ampla mihi, cui fuit ampla brevis.

It is to this effect in English:

If conquer'd Realms, or power from death could save,
I HENRY, mighty King, had scap'd the grave;
To me, who thought the earth's extent too small,
Now eight poor feet, a narrow space, is all.
Reader, behold in mine, thy own sure fate,
And curb thy vast desires, and know thy state;
He, whom the globe entire could not suffice,
In this small Tomb in smaller ashes lies.

To the Statue of RICHARD was affixed six verses, which express his greatest exploits; as his victory over the Sicilians, his conquering Cyprus, his sinking the great Galleas of the Saracens, the taking their convoy, and the defending Joppa in the Holy-land against them; but, as they are not very practicable in English Rhimes, the substance of them was thought sufficient here.

The

The Verses are as follow:

Beritur hoc tumulo, Rex aurea laus tua, tota.
Aurea, materiæ conveniente nota.
Laus tua prima fuit Siculi, Cyprus altera, Dromo
Tertia, Carvana quarta, suprema Joppe.
Suppressi Siculi, Cyprus pessundata Dromo
Mersus, Carvana capta, retenta Joppe.

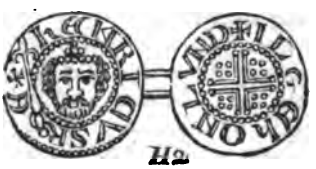
An Account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

The two first branches of the Royal Revenue being spoken of already; namely, the Demeans of the Crown and Escheats, the third branch is the feudal and other profits arising from thence, as *Reliefs*; upon the death of his Ancestor, every Heir that held his Lands by Barony, or Knight's Service, was obliged to pay a sum of money to the King, on his taking possession of the Inheritance. These Reliefs were at first uncertain, till *Magna Charta*, when an Earl paid one hundred pounds, a Baron one hundred marks, a Knight, for one fee, five pounds. Here it must be observed, that some Baronies were much larger than others, and so of the Knight's Fees. This difference arose from the respective Charters of the Feoffment. For if the King enfeoffed a man of forty Knight's Fees, to hold by Barony; or ten Knight's Fees, to hold by Barony; the tenure was Barony in each case. So also, if the King enfeoffed a man of twenty Carues of Land, to hold by the service of one Knight; or forty Carues, to hold by the service of one Knight; the Feoffee had in each case, one Knight's Fee. For this reason, at certain times, a distinction was made between the Baronies, and Fees of the old, and those of the new Feoffment; the old being commonly larger than those of the new. Notwithstanding this difference, the Relief of the Barony or Fee, whether it was a greater or lesser, was the same. But when two Baronies came to be vested in one man, he was charged with a Relief for each. 2. Another feudal profit, was *Wardship* and *Marriage*. During the nonage of the Heirs of the King's Tenants *in Capite*, the King could dispose of the custody and marriage of them to whom he pleased, which raised him a great Revenue. A fourth branch of the Revenue, was the yearly Ferms of the Counties. From the Reign of *William* I. the King used to let out the several Counties, upon a yearly Ferm or Rent, or commit them to Custody.

The

The Farmer or Committee, was usually stiled Sheriff. Most, if not all the Counties, as appears by the Revenue-Rolls, were thus let at Ferm in King *Stephen's* Reign. When a County was let for more than formerly, the Improvement was called *Crementum*, the *Increment*; which was sometimes answered in Palfreys, Hawks, &c. 2. The yearly Ferms of the Towns, Burghs, and Gilds. It is to be remembered, that from the time of *the Conquest*, the Cities and Towns were invested either in the Crown, or the Clergy, or the Baronage. Some of these Towns the King was possessed of, as part of the original Inheritance of the Crown; others by antient Escheat, just as his other Lands. When the King was seized of a City, or Town, in Demean he was Lord of the Soil, *viz.* of all the Land within the site and precinct thereof, of all the Burgage houses, sheds, stalls and buildings, herbage, profits of fairs and markets, pleas and perquisites of courts; in a word, of all issues, profits, and appurtenances, of the city or town of any kind, that was not alienated by himself or ancestors. For sometimes the Crown thought fit to grant some part, or profit to a private person or monastery. Such a city or town, was commonly stiled *Civitas Regis*, *Villa Regis*, *Burgus Regis*; and the men, *Homines* or *Burgenses Regis*. The yearly profit, made by the King, of his cities and towns, was paid him several ways. The issues of some were included in the general Ferms of the county, where they lay, and were answered by the Sheriff. Sometimes the King committed them to *Farmers*, or *Custodes*, distinct from the Sheriffs. In a word, sometimes the King let his town to the townsmen, at Ferm for years, or in *Fee Ferm*, that is, perpetual Ferm for ever, since *Feodum*, *Fee* was used in *England*, to signify a perpetual estate, it has been used to denote perpetuity in office and in rent. Thus inheritable offices have been called *offices in fee*. When a town was put to *Fee Ferm*, the tenure was *Burgage*. Particular Burgage, tenements lying in the town, as well as the town itself, were said to be so holden. In process of time, most of the towns and burghs, came to be let to the respective townsmen or burgesses at *Fee Ferm*. To the Ferms of the towns may be referred the Ferms or yearly payments to the Crown, by the *Gilds* and *Mesteres*. The word *Gild*, signifies a *Company*, *Society*, *Brotherhood*, by which last name the religious *Gilds* were called, that were founded for devotion and alms deeds, as the secular *Gilds* were chiefly for trade and alms deeds. These Gilds could

could not be set up without the King's warrant. The *Gilds* of Goldsmiths, Bochers, and others, were amerced in *London*, to the Crown, as adulterine, in the reign of *Henry* II. There was also in former times a secular Gild, called *Gilda Mercatoria*, a *Merchant Gild*. From these Gilds, perhaps, sprung the practice of gildating or embodying whole towns. In time, the several *Gilds* of Goldsmiths, Salters, *&c.* were stiled *Corporations* or *Companies*. All these Gilds paid a yearly Ferm to the King. As for the *Mesteres*, it is to be observed, that this word has no relation to the word *Mystery*, as if there was, it is vulgarly said, some Mystery in every trade. For though Mystery has been used for many years past for a *Craft*, or *Occupation*, the true derivation is from the *Gallic Mistera*, *Mestera*, or *Mestier*, signifying a trade. Thus we find in *Edward* III. the *Mistere* of Taylors, Armorers, and others. The other three remaining branches of the revenue, will be the subject of the next note on the Coin.



H2

King *Henry* IId's Coin is the same with those of his predecessors, giving him full-faced, with a sceptre in his right-hand, a Crown of a row of pearls of five points, with a cross raised upon the middlemost, and this Inscription, HENRICUS. REX. on the reverse, a double-lined cross, terminating at the inner circle, and four pellets in each quarter: Which on some are conjoined by a small stroke, in form of a cross. DODELM. ON. WINC. (*Winchester*) NICOLE. ON. LUND. one there is, ILGEH. ON. LUND. THOMAS. ON. EVE. (*York*) RENAUD. ON. EVE. Whether his son *Henry*, who died before him, coined any money, is uncertain, but he had a Great Seal. There appears to be in this reign a foreign current coin, called a *Bezant*, of the value of two shillings. For *Cressalin*, the *Jew* of *Winchester*, was amerced one hundred Marks, and he paid instead thereof one hundred *Bezants*, which were accepted by the King, *merâ gratia*. *Mag. Rot. Hen.* II. *Rot.* 10. *a.* *Sudhantescira*. This coin was so called from being coined at *Bizantium*, or *Constantinople*, says *Nicolson*, *Hist. Lib.* p. 252. The


K. RICHARD. I

Ann. C.

The NOBILITY in this Reign were as follows,

Malcolm King of *Scotland*, Earl of *Huntingdon*. 1154.
Aubrey de Vere, Earl of *Oxford*. 1155.
Simon de St. Liz (Earl of *Huntingdon* and *Northampton*) 1156.
Earl of *Lincoln*. *Nov.* 30.
Hamlin Plantagenet, Earl of *Warren* and *Surrey*. 1163.
Geoffrey Plantagenet, Earl of *Richmond*. 1171.
William de Mandeville (Earl of *Essex*) Earl of *Albemarle*. 1180.
Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of *Hereford*. 1187.
Ranulph de Blundeville (Duke of *Bretagne*, Earl of *Chester*, and *Lincoln*) Earl of *Richmond*. *April* 6.
William de Fortibus, Earl of *Albemarle*. 1188.
Peter de Dreux, Earl of *Richmond*. 1189.

6. RICHARD I. *Coeur de Lion.*

RICHARD imprisons *Stephen de Tours* Seneschal of *Anjou*, the late King's Minister, and obliges him to surrender the Castles and Treasures in his custody. *Reg.* 1.

Having provided for the security of *Touraine* and *Maine*, he comes to *Normandy*, and is girt with the sword of that Duchy. *July* 19.

He has an interview with the King of *France*, and obtains from him the restitution of the places taken in the late war. *July* 22.

By *Richard*'s command, Queen *Eleanor* is released, after a 16 years confinement, and intrusted with the administration of affairs.

She releases all prisoners, for the good of her late husband, King *Henry*'s soul.

And causes every freeman in the Kingdom to swear allegiance to her son *Richard*.

Richard restores *Robert* Earl of *Leicester* and others to their estates, of which they had been disinherited in the late Reign; and at the same time banishes from his presence such as had sided with him against his father, loading with favours those who had resisted his sollicitations.

He comes to *England*; and, going to *Winchester*, takes an account of his father's treasure, which amounted to above 100,000 *l.* *Aug.* 13—15.

On his brother *John*, he confers the Earldom of *Mortain* in *Normandy*, and those of *Nottingham*, *Derby*, and *Lancaster*;

Ann. C. Lancaster; the Honours of *Wallingford* and *Tickhill*; and
Aug. 29. the Castles of *Marlebrugh*, *Ludgershal*, *Pac*, and *Bolsover*. And, soon after, he marries *Avisa* of *Glouceſter*.

Sept. 3. King *Richard* is crowned at *Weſtminſter*, and takes the uſual oath.

Many *Jews* that were at the Coronation are killed or wounded, and the next day ſeveral *Jewiſh* houſes are pillaged and burnt.

Sept. 4. The King receives the homage and fealty of the Biſhops, Abbots, Earls, and Barons.

Sept. 15. A general Council is held at *Pipewell* in *Northamptonſhire*.

Novemb. *Philip* King of *France* ſends to put King *Richard* in mind of the vow he had made, of going to the *Holy-Land*; whereupon he calls a Parliament at *Weſtminſter*, to conſider of that affair.

October. To raiſe money for that expedition (not being ſatisfied
Novemb. with the 100,000 *l.* left him by his father) he ſells many
Decemb. of the Crown-lands, and Caſtles, as *Sedgefield*, and the Earldom of *Northumberland* to the Biſhop of *Durham*; delivers up *Berwick* and *Roxburgh* to the King of *Scotland* for 10,000 marks; and ſqueezes money out of ſeveral people for fines, and the like.

King *Richard* confers on his brother *John* the Earldoms of *Devonſhire*, *Dorſet*, and *Cornwal*.

He appoints the Biſhops of *Durham* and *Ely* his chief Juſticiaries, making alſo the laſt Chancellor; and aſſociates to them in the Government *Hugh Bardolf*, *William* Earl *Mareſchal*, *Geoffrey Fitz-Peer*, and *William Briwere*.

Dec. 11. Then he embarks at *Dover*, in his way to the *Holy-Land*, and is met at *Calais* by the Earl of *Flanders*.

1190. The King of *France* and King *Richard* meet, and ſet-
Jan. 13. tle a firm peace between Themſelves, and their Kingdoms; and agreed to meet at *Vezelay*, *June* 24.

King *Richard* cauſes his brother *John* to ſwear, that he would, during his abſence, remain in *Normandy*; but he releaſes him from that oath, before his departure.

John Longchamp, Biſhop of *Ely*, and Chancellor, cauſes a deep ditch to be made round the *Tower* of *London*.

At *Norwich*, on *Febr.* 6; *Stamford*, *March* 7; *York*, *March* 16; *St. Edmundsbury*, *March* 18; and at *Lincoln*, and *Lynn*, the rabble riſes upon the *Jews*, pillages and burns their houſes, and murders ſeveral of them.

The Sheriff and Conſtable of *York* are diſplaced by the Chancellor, for ſuffering this outrage.

King

King *Richard* comes to *Chinon*, where he appoints the Commanders of his fleet (that consisted of 100 sail of ships, besides 14 busses) and makes some very remarkable orders, for the preserving of peace. *Ann. C. Reg.* 2.

Having received the Pilgrim's staff at *Tours*, he advances to *Vezelai*, the rendezvous of the *English* and *French* armies, which together amounted to above 100,000.

From hence the two Kings march together as far as *Lyons*; *Philip* taking the rout to *Genoa*, and *Richard* to *Marseilles*, where he had appointed his fleet to meet him.

Part of the fleet being driven by a storm into the *Tagus*, *Sanctius* I, King of *Portugal*, makes use of them to relieve *Santarin*, besieged by the *Miramolin*.

Richard being come to *Marseilles* before his fleet, and impatient to be at *Messina*, the general rendezvous of the *Cruisers*, he hires 30 vessels to convey him to *Sicily*. *Aug.* 9.

Being forced to come to an anchor in the *Tiber*, the Pope invites him to *Rome*, but he refuses to go: And arrives at *Messina*, *Sept.* 20.

His fleet comes to *Marseilles*, *Aug.* 22, and to *Messina*, *Sept.* 14. *Aug.* 22. *Sept.*

The sight of so noble a fleet raises a jealousy in the King of *France*.

King *Richard* seizes a Castle and Monastery near *Messina*, for a magazine for his provisions. *Sept.* 30.

He obliges *Tancred* to release his sister *Joanna*, widow of *William* II, and to pay her her dowry.

Upon a quarrel between his soldiers and the townsmen of *Messina*, he makes himself master of that place; and sets up his banners on the walls, at which the King of *France* is affronted. But *Richard* takes them down again. *October* 3—5.

Tancred makes a treaty with King *Richard*, and agrees to give his daughter in marriage to *Arthur* Duke of *Bretagne*. *Novemb.*

King *Richard* presents *Tancred* with King *Arthur*'s sword, called *Caliburn*.

Robert Earl of *Leicester*, *Ranulph de Glanville* the late Justiciary, *Baldwin* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and others, die in their journey to the *Holy-Land*.

Tancred endeavours to sow dissensions between the Kings of *England* and *France* by a forged letter; whereupon King *Philip* requires King *Richard* to marry his sister *Alice*; but he refuses, alledging she had had a child by his father. 1191.

A treaty is concluded between the two Kings, whereby *Richard* is left at liberty to marry whom he would. *Mar.* 29.

King *Philip* sails from *Messina* for *Palestine*.

Ann. C. Queen *Eleanor* comes to *Messina*, bringing along with her *Berengera* of *Navarre*, who is married to King *Richard*; and accompanies him to *Palestine*, but *Eleanor* returns home.

Apr. 10. King *Richard* puts to sea, with a fleet of 150 sail, 52 gallies, 10 ships of burden, and many small vessels.

Part of this fleet being driven on the coast of *Cyprus*, the cruel and avaritious King of it, *Isaac Comnenus*, abuses the *English* that were in those ships, whereupon King *Richard* drives the tyrant out, and makes himself master of *Cyprus*.

May 12. Here he consummates his marriage with *Berengera*; and causes her to be crowned Queen of *England*.

Guy of Lusignan King of *Jerusalem*, and other great men, repair to King *Richard* at *Cyprus*.

During King *Richard*'s absence, the two regents disagree, and at length *Longchamp* the Chancellor, by violent and arbitrary means, deprives his partner *Hugh*, Bishop of *Durham*, of his share in the Administration.

June 8. King *Richard* arrives in the camp before *Acon*.

Reg. 3. That City is surrendred to the *Croises*, after a two years

July 8. siege, wherein perished about 300,000 pilgrims.

During this siege King *Richard* affronts *Leopold* Duke of *Austria*, which proved the occasion of his captivity afterwards.

The Kings of *England* and *France* divide the captives and spoil of *Acon* between themselves, at which the rest of the pilgrims are disgusted.

July 31. King *Philip* growing jealous of King *Richard*, resolves to return home, and accordingly sets out for *France*, after taking an oath, That he would not attack any of *Richard*'s Dominions till after *Richard*'s return.

He leaves 10,000 men in *Palestine*, under the command of the Duke of *Burgundy*.

Aug. 18. *Richard* and *Saladin* kill their prisoners.

20. *Richard* obtains a great victory over the *Saracens*; wherein 40,000 were slain.

The King of *England* becomes master of *Ascalon*, *Joppa*, and *Cæsarea*, and repairs them.

In the mean time, *Longchamp* acted in *England* in a very arbitrary manner, and treated with extreme contempt the six Counsellors joined with him in the Administration; who apply to Prince *John* for his protection.

Sept. 14. *Longchamp* causes the Archbishop of *York* to be imprison-

Oct. 3. ed; and refusing to release him, is summoned before a great Council at *London*, deprived of the Regency and of all his other places.

He

He comes to *Dover*, intending to pass over into *Flanders*, and accordingly having disguised himself in woman's clothes, with a bundle of cloth under his arm, he comes on the shore; but he is discovered, beaten, and abused, and thrown into a dark cellar. *Ann. C.*

After eight days confinement, Prince *John* orders him to be released, and he goes into *Normandy*.

Prince *John* and the King's Justices confirm the privileges of *London*; and at the same time the Citizens swear fealty to King *Richard* and his heirs, and for want of issue to his brother Earl *John*.

King *Arthur*'s body is found at *Glastonbury*.

This year there was a Parliament held at *Reading*, and two at *London*.

King *Philip*, at his return to his Dominions, loads King *Richard* with calumnies, sends to demand his sister *Alice*, and, contrary to his oath, prepares to invade *Normandy*. 1192. *January*.

King *Richard* marches to *Jerusalem*, and in his way takes the great *Babylon-Caravan*.

He comes within view of *Jerusalem*, but finding the Country destitute of forage, he is forced to put off the siege till the spring. In the mean time, the Dukes of *Austria* and *Burgundy* deserting, and the Marquis of *Montferrat* refusing to serve any longer with the *Italian* troops, King *Richard* makes a three years truce with *Saladin*.

He declares his resolution to return to *England*, whereupon the Marquis of *Montferrat* is elected General of the Christians to be left in *Palestine*; but being assassinated shortly after, *Henry* Earl of *Champagne* is chosen in his room, and marries *Isabel* the deceased's widow. *Reg.* 4.

King *Richard* gives *Guy* of *Lusignan* the Kingdom of *Cyprus*.

Things being thus settled, King *Richard* sends before his Queen and his sister *Joanna* on *Sept.* 29, and embarks himself at *Acra*, *October* 9.

He is shipwracked near *Aquileia*, goes into the Duke of *Austria*'s Dominions, where he is discovered, and taken on *December* 20, in a village near *Vienna*, and delivered to the Emperor *Henry* VI. *Dec.* 20.

This year a Parliament was held at *Northampton*, and another at *London* or *Westminster*, on *December* 10.

Upon the news of the King's imprisonment, Prince *John* takes measures to ascend the Throne, by endeavouring to become master of the fortified towns, to get the administration of affairs into his hands, and to obstruct the King's return. 1193.

Ann. C. turn. But he is prevented by the diligence of the Queen his mother and the Barons, who enter into an association, and other Regents are appointed.

Prince *John* having miscarried in *England*, tries in vain to corrupt the loyalty of the *Normans*; and then goes and makes a league with the King of *France*.

In this treaty, he engages, to marry the Princess *Alice* refused by *Richard*, and to do homage to *Philip* for the Provinces in *France*, belonging to the Crown of *England*.

Then returning to *England*, he tries, without success, to gain *William* King of *Scotland*; and causing it to be rumoured that King *Richard* was dead in prison, demands the Crown, but is refused.

The King of *France* makes himself master of *Gisors*, *Evreux*, and *le Vexin*; and lays siege to *Roan*, but is repulsed.

Queen *Eleanor* writes to the Pope in behalf of her captive son, but the Pope does not concern himself about him.

King *Richard* is carried before the Diet of the Empire, and accused by the Emperor of six articles, which he clears himself of.

The *German* Princes intercede for him.

Longchamp comes to King *Richard*, and complaining of his hard usage, is restored to his office of Chancellor.

Reg. 5. King *Philip*, and Prince *John*, make the Emperor large offers, if he would but keep *Richard* in perpetual imprisonment.

June. The Emperor at last agrees to release him, upon his engaging to pay 150,000 marks of silver, and promising to release the King of *Cyprus*.

The Emperor makes him titular King of *Arles*.

Money is raised in *England*, by authority of Parliament, for the King's ransom, namely, by taxing every Knight's fee at 20 shillings; by one fourth granted by the Clergy and Laity; and by taking all the gold and silver that was in the Churches.

Hubert Bishop of *Salisbury* is chosen Archbishop of *Canterbury*.

This year died *Saladin*, and was succeeded by his brother *Saphadin*.

1194. *January.* King *Philip* and Prince *John* send Ambassadors to the Emperor, to make him very extraordinary offers, in order to induce him to break his agreement with King *Richard*, and to keep him prisoner one year longer.

Henry accordingly puts off King *Richard*'s deliverance, and endeavours to elude the treaty; but the *German* Princes make

make him such strong remonstrances about it, that King *Richard* is at length set at liberty. *Ann. C.*

He arrives in *England*, after a four years absence, fifteen months whereof he had passed in prison. *Mar.* 13.

King *Richard* reduces his brother *John*'s party, and takes all his Castles and Towns: And withal orders him to be summoned to appear within 40 days, which he not doing, all his lands are confiscated, and he is declared incapable of succeeding to the Crown.

A great Council, or Parliament is held at *Nottingham*; which granted to the King two shillings upon every carucate of land, and the third part of a Knight's fee from every military tenant. *Mar.* 30. *April* 2.

Another Parliament is held at *Northampton*, wherein a very advantageous charter is granted to *William* King of *Scotland*. *April* 10, 11.

King *Richard* is crowned again, at *Winchester*. He prepares for a war with *France*; and, in order to raise money, revokes all the alienations of the Crown-Lands he had made before his voyage to *Palestine*; and causes Patents and Commissions to be renewed, *&c.* *April* 17.

A peace and final concord is made between the Archbishop of *York*, and Chancellor *Longchamp*. *April* 24.

The King of *France* having besieged *Verneuil*, King *Richard* with his mother marches to its relief, and causes the *French* to raise the siege. *May* 20.

King *Richard* is reconciled to his brother *John*, through the mediation of their mother, Queen *Eleanor*.

The Earl of *Leicester* is taken prisoner, and forced to pay 10,000 *l.* for his ransom.

Several treaties for a peace between the two Kings are set on foot, but come to nothing.

King *Richard* advancing against King *Philip*, the latter betakes himself to flight, leaving his baggage, with a great deal of treasure, and the *Records of the Crown*, for a prey to the *English*. *Reg.* 6.

A truce is concluded between the two Kings for one year. *July* 23.

In order to raise money for the continuation of the war with *France*, Itinerant Justices are sent through every County of *England*, to enquire into all offences, forfeitures, escheats, wardships, *&c.* to borrow money of the *Jews*, &c. *Sept.*

King *Philip* offers to have the quarrel between Him and King *Richard* decided by four combatants on each side.

Leopold Duke of *Austria* dying, in the beginning of this year, orders, on his death-bed, King *Richard*'s hostages 1195.

Ann. C. to be restored, and the money that was behind for his ransom to be released.

June. The war between the Kings of *England* and *France* is
Reg. 7. renewed, and several ravages are committed on both sides.

Decemb. A truce is concluded between them till the 14th of *January* ensuing. And *Alice* is restored to the King her brother.

King *Richard* being admonished by a Hermit for his sodomitical practices, repents of them, and takes again the Queen his wife to his bed.

He orders new plate to be made for the Churches, in the room of that which had been taken for his ransom.

And restores his brother *John* all his Earldoms, except the Castles.

1196. A peace is concluded between the two Kings.

But the war breaking out again afresh, King *Richard* is defeated, and the Castles of *Albemarle* and *Nurencourt* are taken by the *French*.

A great sedition is raised at *London*, by *William Fitz-Osbern*, surnamed *Long-beard*, upon occasion of a tax.

King *Richard* builds a Castle in the Isle of *Andely*, belonging to the Archbishoprie of *Roan*, at which the Archbishop is so angry, that he puts *Normandy* under an interdict.

May 19. The Bishop of *Beauvais* is taken prisoner.

Reg. 8. King *Richard* burns *Valery*, and makes himself master of
1197. several places.

Reg. 9. The two Kings agree upon a truce for sixteen months.

Rees Prince of *South-Wales*; *Henry* Earl of *Champagne* King of *Jerusalem*; and the Emperor *Henry* VI. died this year.

1198. The King imposes, without consent of Parliament, an
Reg. 10. aid of five shillings upon every hide of land; and obliges his military tenants to find him three hundred horse for a year.

August. The war is renewed between King *Richard* and *Philip*, and they put the eyes of their prisoners out.

The Earls of *Brene*, *Boulogne*, *Perche*, and *Blois*, quit the King of *France*, and join the King of *England*.

Sept. 28. King *Philip* invades *Normandy*, but his army is entirely routed, and he is forced himself to fly in the utmost confusion.

Both Kings being now weary of war, begin to treat of peace; and *Philip* offers to restore all he had taken: However a truce is concluded between them till the 14th of
Novemb. *January* following.

This

This truce is prolonged for five years longer by the mediation of the Pope's Legate, who came to sollicit the two Kings to engage in a fresh Crusade. *Ann. C.* 1199. *Jan.* 14.

K. *Philip*, in order to set King *Richard* at variance with his brother *John*, shews him some papers whereby Prince *John* appeared to have ill designs against him; whereupon *Richard* ordered the Prince to be disseized of all his territories; but *John* openly vindicates himself.

Vidomar Viscount of *Limoges*, having found a treasure in his own estate sends part of it to King *Richard*; who, not contented with that, demands the whole, but *Vidomar* refusing to part with it, the King besieges him in his Castle of *Chaluz*, and, during the siege, receives from one *Bertram de Gurdon* a mortal wound in his shoulder. *March.* *Mar.* 26.

The Castle being taken, King *Richard* orders *Bertram* to be set at liberty with a present of a hundred shillings; but he is afterwards flea'd alive.

The King makes his will, and leaves all his Dominions, with three parts in four of his money, to his brother *John*.

King *Richard* dies, in the 42d year of his age, after a Reign of about 9 years and 9 months. *April* 6.

His body was buried at *Fontevraud*, at the feet of his father; his heart at *Roan*; and his bowels at *Chaluz*.

The Character *of* RICHARD I.

Such was the life and death of this valiant Prince, who, for the greatness of his courage, was sirnamed *Cœur de Lion*. After commending his valour, which was something like a brutish fierceness, in vain do we seek in him some other virtue to afford matter for his panegyric. Those that praise him for his bounty and magnificence, do not consider, if he was liberal and splendid, it was at the expence of his subjects, from whom he extorted several large sums by unjustifiable means. But, on the other hand, we find in him abundance of vices, and some of the most enormous. His Rebellion against his own Father is a blemish, may justly be cast on his memory. It is even apparent, God was pleased to punish him for it, by a continual scene of troubles during his ten years Reign, and particularly by a fifteen months captivity. We find likewise in this Prince an insatiable love of money, which proved the cause of his death; a pride, which made him look upon his equals with contempt, and his inferiors as slaves. In fine, if what certain Historians say of him be true, an unbridled lust hurried him, Brompt. G. Vapisauf.

not only to neglect the Queen his wife, in order to abandon himself to an infamous debauchery, but even to sins against nature. It is affirmed, a poor Hermit took the boldom to upbraid him with that detestable crime before the whole Court, and conjure him, in the name of God, to reflect on the destruction of *Sodom*. Be this as it will, those that have writ his life agree, that pride, avarice and lust were his three reigning vices. It is said, that being one day amonished by *Fulk*, Curate of *Neville*, a man famous for his zeal, to throw off those wicked habits, which were commonly called his *Three Daughters*, he replied jestingly, that it was his design; and to that end he resolved to give the first to the Templars, the second to the Monks, and the third to the Bishops.

Hoved. p. 789.

Richard was tall and well made. His eyes were lively and sparkling, and his hair of a bright yellow, inclining to red. It may be said that *England*, where he never was above eight months, during the whole course of his Reign, which lasted near ten years, was very unhappy under his Government. He loaded his subjects with frequent impositions and excessive taxes. And yet no other benefit accrued to the people for those prodigious sums, but a little glory for their King, with which however they were satisfied, as redounding to the honour of the Nation.

It is remarked as a thing deserving particular notice, that this Prince, who restored the use of the *Cross-Bow*, received his death's wound from that instrument, as if heaven intended to punish him for reviving that diabolical invention. But I question whether this remark is built on a good foundation. We have observed, the *English* made use of the *Cross-Bow* in the conquest of *Ireland*, in the Reign of *Henry* II; and it is not likely they should discontinue it, in the few years that were since passed.

Brompt. p. 1278.

He left only one natural son, named *Philip*, to whom he bequeathed the Lordship of *Cognac* in *Guienne*.

Richard was the first King of *England* who carried in his shield *Three Lions passant*. And in his Reign *Coats of arms* came to be hereditary in families, they owing their origin to the *Croisades*.

During this Reign, the City of *London* began to put on a new face with respect to its Government, and was divided into several Corporations or Societies, or, as they are called at present, Companies.

Stow's Survey.

J. Mynde sc.

The Monument of K. HENRY II, & K. RICHARD I, at FONT EVRAUD in ANJOU.

An Account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

The next great branch of the revenue was V. *Fines, Oblatas*, and *Amerciaments* of many kinds, in civil and criminal cases, and for the forest. It is surprizing to see, how numerous the fines and amerciaments, appearing upon the Revenue-Rolls of the ancient times, were. As to fines for the profit, it suffices to observe, that by the Revenue-Rolls of *Henry* II, and *Richard* I, and King *John*, an ample revenue was raised, by trespasses, defaults, purprestures, *&c.* As to the fines in civil and criminal cases, they may be reduced to these three general heads; fines for liberties, fines in law-proceedings, and fines of a mixt nature. But first, it may be observed, after a fine was preferred and accepted, if the party could not have the thing for which he was fined, he was then acquitted of the fine, in such-like words, *Sed non debet inde summoneri quia non habuit rectum nec habere potuit.* However, a small fine was sometimes paid for such acquittal. When the party obtained the thing for which he fined, he was wont to have the King's Charter made to him. If the party fining, failed in payment of his fine, he could not have his Charter for the thing desired. When a fine was preferred and refused, if the party offered an addition, it was called *Crementum Finis.* 1. As for fines of the first sort, for grants and confirmations of liberties, franchises and exemptions, there are numberless instances on the Revenue-Rolls. 2. The fines in law proceedings were likewise very numerous, and brought in a very considerable Revenue. The several instances may be reduced to these heads: Fines to have justice and right, fines for writs, pleas, trials, and judgments; fines for expedition, or speeding their right. Fines for stopping, or delay of pleas, trials and judgments. Sometimes the parties litigant preferred the Crown a certain portion out of the debts which they recovered. Some preferred half, others a fourth, or some other proportional part, in order to have or recover the same at law. Here we may see the occasion of this clause in King *John*'s and *Henry* III's *Magna Charta*, viz. *Nulli vendemus, nulli negabimus, aut differemus, rectum vel justiciam.* By means of this clause, excessive fines to have justice, were moderated, and actual denial of right and delaying of it, which before, upon paying of money or fines, used to be practised, were quite taken away, or by degrees brought into disuse. Moderate fines for having

justice

justice, were constantly paid, as well after the great Charters as before. 3. Fines of a mixt nature. Many fines were made for leave to hold or quit certain offices or bailywicks. For licences of divers kinds, especially to marry, or not to be compelled to marry, &c. Many fines were made relating to trade or merchandize, with its incidents. Hither also refer the fines and difines, paid by merchants upon several occasions; of which hereafter. Besides these fines for licences, there were others, that may be called miscellaneous, as being of divers sorts: As for the concord of a duel, for opening a mine, &c. There were also fines for the King's favor, and that he would remit his displeasure. For the King's protection and aid. To obtain his mediation or interposal in men's affairs. To have seizin or restitution of their lands or chattels, and that men might not be disseized. Fines were made that men might be discharged out of prison, and replevyed or bailed to the custody of lawful men. For acquittals in divers cases. Concurrent fines were, when both parties fined to obtain the same thing: Counter fines, when two parties fined, one for a thing, the other against it. I shall conclude this head with observing, that men fined for respite of Knighthood; and shall subjoin the form of the summonce, to take Knighthood directed to the Sheriff. "Rex Vicecomiti Norf. & Suff. "Salutem. Præcipimus tibi, quod, visis literis istis per "totam Ballivam tuam clamari facias, quod omnes illi "qui de nobis tenent in capite feudum unius militis vel "plus, & Milites non sunt, citra festum Natalis Domini "anno Regni nostri decimo nono arma capiant & se milites "fieri faciant sicut tenementa sua quæ de nobis tenent, "diligunt. Teste Rege apud *Wallingford*, VII° die *Nov.*" *Claus.* 19 *Hen.* III. And as it was usual to set amercement for not taking Knighthood after summonce, so the King sometimes seized the lands of military tenants for the same reason. I proceed now to the Revenue arising by *Misericordia's* or Amerciaments; which in antient times are hardly to be distinguished from fines, by a nice observer. It is likely there was some difference between a *Misericordia* and an Amerciament. For instance, it was called an Amerciament, after it was reduced to a certain sum, and a *Misericordia*, both before and afterward. When a *Misericordia* (or discretionary fine) was reduced to a certain sum, it was said to be *admensured*, or *afferred*, e. g. *Warinus de Qyedic debet C Marcas de Misericordia, sed postea ammensuratus fuit per Justiciarum et Barones ad LX Marcas.* Mag. Rot.

Ret. 9. Joh. By *Magna Charta*, Earls and Barons are not to be amerced, unless by their Peers, and according to their trespass. Concerning Amerciaments in general, it may be observed, it was frequent for some persons to be amerced for the trespasses or defaults of others. Lords of Seigneuries for their men, and for such as were *de manupastu suo*; Tedings and Frank-pledges, for such as were within their Teding or Frank-pledge, and the like. When general Amerciaments were set upon Hundreds, Towns, &c. for murders, or the like; so much thereof as was charged upon lands, within the said Hundred, &c. which the King held in Demean, was discharged of course. Lands holden by the Queen, were also free from common Amerciament. Several Barons and Lords of Seigneuries had the like freedom by Charter, probably, from the King. Barons of the Exchequer had freedom from common Amerciaments for their lands and tenants, by their privilege of sitting at the Exchequer. Ecclesiastical fees were likewise exempt from the same, and other persons by virtue of Charters. Divers Lords of Seigneuries were, by Charter, intitled to have to their own use the Amerciaments that arose within their Seigneury. However, the Lords were to claim the same at the Exchequer. This is frequently done at this day. Amerciaments *pro Foresta*, and in criminal and common pleas, are very numerous on the Revenue-Rolls, these last containing many things useful and historical, as the curious Reader may see in *Madox's History of the Exchequer*, &c. These Amerciaments were for murders and manslaughters, for misdemeanors, for Disseisins, for recreancy, for non-appearance, for false judgments, for not making pursuit, or hue and cry: To these may be added, miscellaneous Amerciaments for trespasses of divers kinds.

The next great branch of the Revenue was, VI. Aid, Scutages, Tallages, and Customs. In former times the Prestations or Payments to the King were called by several names, as Danegelt, Aid, Donum, *Assisa*, Scutage, Tallage, and, in succeeding times, Subsidy, *Quinzime*, *Vintism*, &c. several of the former then continuing in use. I shall begin with the Aid payable out of Baronies and military Fees, which was an honourable Service or Duty, rendered by a free Vassal to his Lord. There were three sorts of Aid due to the Crown, of common Right, or by reason of Seigneury. Aid to make the King's eldest Son a Knight, to marry his eldest Daughter, and to ransom his Person, when taken in war. These Aids were rendered to the King by all persons,

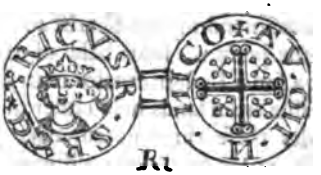
who

who held of him *in Capite*; that is, *immediately*, *sine Medio*. All the King's Tenants were to pay Aid, whether they held *in Servitio*, or *in Dominico*; that is, in elder times, Aid was to be rendered by persons, who held of the King immediately, by Barony, or Knight's Service, or by Serjeantry, with Knight's Service annexed; and by persons who held of the King immediately, either by Rent-Service, Socage, or other Service, that was not military, whether they lived upon the Lands that were antient Demean, or upon Honours and Lands escheated to the King, and upon Lands of his Wardships or Purchases. King *William* I. took six shillings, of each Hide, through *England*. King *Henry* I. took three shillings for each Hide, as *aid pur fille marier*. But, for want of requisite notices concerning these Aids, nothing distinctly can be learnt of them. The first that gives us any insight into these matters, is an Aid levied by *Henry* II. for the marriage of his Daughter *Maud*, to the Duke of *Saxony*; namely, one Mark *per Fee*. It was paid by the several Barons and Knights, holding *in Capite*, according to the number of their respective fees. In order to the due levying this aid, the Barons and Tenants *in Capite* were commanded to certify to the King what fees they had, how many of the old, and how many of the new feoffment, and of whom the same were holden. These certificates were called *Cartæ Baronum*, and were ordered to be laid up in the *Exchequer*, a hutch being made to keep them. But the originals are not now to be found, except that of the Bishop of *Chichester*. The contents of many other certificates may be seen in an orderly manner in the Red-book of the *Exchequer*. The fees of the new feoffment were small, and paid but twelve shillings *per fee*, when those of the old paid twenty shillings. The Temporal Barons and Tenants *in Capite*, were generally charged to the aid for the number of fees in their certificates. But if no certificates were sent, they were charged according to what appeared by the King's records, or testimony of his Officers. It was the same with the Bishops and Abbots. But it may be observed, that several Ecclesiastical persons, besides the aid for their fees rendered a farther sum, under the terms *de promissione suâ*. The same, *Madox* observed, was sometimes paid also by Laics, and therefore thinks, when it was paid by the Laity, it was a *Donum*; and when by Ecclesiasticks, *Donum Prælatorum*. When aid was collected, if it could not by some casual impediment, be rendered by the Tenant to his Lord, it might be

paid

paid to the King, though he was not his immediate Lord. The vacant Bishopricks and Abbeys of Royal foundation tendered aid, being reckoned among the Escheats. It was also paid by the Towns and Manors, or Lands, which the King held in demean, and was actually assessed by the Justices Itinerant, or with their approbation. King *Richard* I. levied an aid for the ransom of his person. It was paid by the Tenants *in Capite*, under the name of *Scutage*, at the rate of twenty shillings *per Fee*. Another part of this aid was answered at the *Exchequer*, by the name of Hidage, by which was meant the aid charged on lands holden by other service, than that of the shield. In *Edward* II's Reign, Hidage imported either Tenure in Socage, or other inferior Tenure, and was opposed to Tenure in Chivalry. This Hidage was assessed by the King's Justiciaries, and is expressly said to be raised in aid of the King's ransom. The Carucage paid for the same ransom, is likewise called an aid. King *Henry* III. had an aid to make his eldest son a Knight; forty shillings of every Knight's fee. This aid was paid to the King by his Tenants *in Capite*, and to the King's Tenants *in Capite*, by such persons as held of them *in Capite*; by Knight's service. When the King's Tenants *in Capite* paid aid to him, he used to grant them, that they might receive aid *pro rata* of their Tenants *in Capite*. It was usual (in and after *Henry* III's Reign) for the King's said Tenants to have a writ, commanding the Sheriff to assist them to levy the aid on the persons, that held of them *in Capite*. The aid to make a son a Knight, or for marrying a daughter, was not demandable from lands held either in *Frankalmoigne*, or *Socage*. Besides these three noted aids, there were also other aids, which appear to be of a different kind. In the fifth of *Stephen*, an aid was paid to the Crown by the Burghs or Towns. This aid seems to have been a yearly payment, and indeed, it is accounted for in the like formal words, wherein annual ferme are wont to be. In accounting for the aid of the present year, they said, *reddit compotum de medio*; for the year next before, *reddit compotum de præterito auxilio*; and for the third year, *reddit compotum de veteri auxilio*; which are the words used in accounting for ferme. An aid was rendered at this time also (as it seems) by the Counties of the like sort. These aids were assessed by the Justices Itinerant. King *Richard* I. took five shillings out of every *Carue*, or Hide of land, through all *England*. This aid is called *Tallagium*, by *Hoveden*. In process of time, the word aid came to be used in a large indefinite sense; and

there came into use a new word, *Subsidium*, which was not at all, or not frequently used in the more antient times. A Subsidy was granted to *Edward* II. for his war with *Scotland*. It is called a *Donum*. The city of *London* paid two thousand marks. Besides the general aids, or those which were *per communem Assisam Angliæ*, extending through the whole Kingdom, there were certain aids imposed upon the demeans, escheats, *&c.* of particular Counties or Places, for certain purposes relating to those Counties or places. An aid by way of Hidage, was laid on *Devon* and *Cornwal*, for the siege of the Isle of *William de Marisco*. Inferior Lords of Seigneuries had of their Tenants, the three notable aids, to make his eldest son a Knight, to marry his eldest daughter, and to ransom his person. They had also of their tenants upon occasion, other aids, as to enable them to pay their relief or seisin, or other fine to the King, and also to pay their debts. This was done by the King's letters patent, directed to the Tenants. But it may be noted, these were only Letters of Request. For it is provided by King *John*'s Charter, that the King should not for the future grant to any one leave to take an aid of his Freemen, save in the three cases above-mentioned. The Revenue arising from *Scutage* and *Tallage*, will be spoken of in the next Coin Note.



King *Richard* I. is represented as a Corrupter rather than a Refiner of the *English* Coins. And indeed his parade in the Holy Land, with his ransom, was so very chargeable, that it is no wonder to find him put to all imaginable shifts for multiplying his money at home. However, his money is very rare. His Penny, in *Speed*, is very remarkable, having two faces, inscribed RICUS R::: S REX. And on the reverse, AV::ON. N::NICO. And REX ANGL. Reverse, LONDON, three pellets, in each quarter of the Cross. In the 5th year of this Reign, *Bennet*, son of *Isaac* a *Jew*, stands charged on the Revenue Rolls with a hundred pounds and one mark of gold, *de Obol. Mursce* or *Murscii* for a fine. The words are: " Benedictus Filius " Isaac


K. IOHN.

"Isaac debet Cl & j marcam auri *de Obol. Muscæ* vel x. Marcas argenti, pro fine suo de cartis Aaron emptis a Cancellario." Mag. Rot. 5. R. I. Rot. 3. a. m. 1. a little before in the Roll it is written *Muscii*. But what was meant by *Oboli de Musce*, *Madox* says he cannot find.

The NOBILITY, in this Reign, were as follows, *Ann. C.*

John (Earl of *Gloucester*) afterwards King; Earl of *Mortain*, *Nottingham*, *Derby*, and *Lancaster*; *Devonshire*, *Derby*, and *Cornwal*. 1189.

Hugh de Pudsey (Bishop of *Durham*) Earl of *Northumberland*.

David le Scot, Earl of *Huntingdon*. 1190.

Otho (Duke of *Saxony*) Earl of *York*. *June* 24.

Baldwin de Betun, Earl of *Albemarle*. 1196.

William Longespée, Earl of *Salisbury*. 1197.

BOOK VIII.

The Reigns of King JOHN *and* HENRY III. *Containing the space of* 73 *years.*

7. JOHN *Lackland.*

JOHN, Earl of *Mortain*, takes measures to secure the Crown; and having gained *Hubert* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and *William le Mareschal* Earl of *Strigbul* to his interest, sends them to *England* to keep all things quiet there. 1199. *April.* 25.

He come to *Chinon*, where *Robert de Turnham* delivers up to him the late King's treasure, with the strong Castles of *Chinon* and *Saumur*.

In the mean time, the Provinces of *Anjou*, *Touraine*, and *Maine* declare for Prince *Arthur*; and his mother *Constance* puts him into the custody of *Philip* King of *France*, who possesses himself of all the Cities and Castles belonging to him.

John takes *Mans*, and razes the walls.

The Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and *William le Mareschal*, cause the inhabitants of the towns and cities, and the Earls, Barons, and Freeholders, in *England*, to swear fealty to *John*.

William

Ann. C. *William* King of *Scotland* sends to demand *Northumberland* and *Cumberland*, as belonging to him; but the Lords Justices put him off with a wise and dilatory answer.

April 25. The *Normans* submit to Prince *John*, and he is girt with the sword of that Duchy, the Archbishop of *Roan* putting on his head a golden coronet, adorned with roses of gold.

May 25. Prince *John* arrives in *England*, and comes to *London*, the next day.

May 27. He is elected, and crowned at *Westminster*, taking the usual oath.

The King of *Scotland* renews his demands of *Northumberland* and *Cumberland*, but King *John* finds means to put him off.

Philip King of *France* breaks the five years truce, and seizes *Evreux*, and the provinces of *Maine*.

June 19. Upon news of this, King *John* embarks at *Shoreham*, and passes over into *Normandy*, where he assembles a very considerable army together.

June 24. A truce is concluded between the two Kings, until the 16th of *August*.

King *Philip* receives *Arthur*'s homage for *Bretagne*, *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Poictou*, and *Touraine*.

Aug. 16. The Kings of *France* and *England* have an interview; wherein the former demanding *le Normand Vexin* for himself, and *Poictou*, *Anjou*, *Maine*, and *Touraine* for *Arthur*, King *John* goes away in great anger, and hostilities are renewed.

Sept. *Joanna* Countess of *Tholouse*, and Queen-Dowager of *Sicily*, dies.

King *Philip* takes and razes the Castle of *Belun*, and besieges *Lavardin*, both belonging to Prince *Arthur*, but King *John* raises the siege of *Lavardin*.

Arthur's friends, displeased at these proceedings, get him away from the Court of *France*, and have him and his mother reconciled to King *John*; but jealousies being infused into them about King *John*, they return again to the Court of *France*.

1200. A peace is concluded between the Kings of *England* and *France*.

King *John* comes to *England*, and takes 3 *s.* of every ploughland, in order to raise 30,000 marks, for a portion for his niece *Blanche* of *Castile*, that was to be married to Prince *Lewis*.

Reg. 2.

April. Then he goes again to *France*, and, at an interview with King *Philip*, puts the finishing hand to the treaty of peace.

July 2. The Emperor *Otho*, offended at this peace, sends to demand

ment of King *John* some jewels left him by King *Richard*, *Ann. C.* and the Earldoms of *York* and *Poitou*.

King *John* dispossesses Prince *Arthur* of all his Dominions except *Bretagne*.

He divorces his Queen *Avisa*, and marries *Isabella* of *Angoulême*, that was betrothed to *Hugh* Earl of *Marche*.

And, immediately after, returning to *England*, is crowned with his new Queen. *Oct. 8.*

A Parliament is held about the same time.

The Archbishop of *York* having opposed the levying of the late subsidy in his Diocese, is deprived of his Temporalities; but, upon his submission, he is restored to them.

A Parliament being held at *Lincoln*, the King of *Scots* comes there, and has an interview with King *John*, to whom he does homage; but demanding *Northumberland* and *Cumberland*, he is refused. *Nov. 21.*

Hubert Archbishop of *Canterbury* holds a synod at *Westminster*, notwithstanding the King's prohibition, by his Justiciary.

King *John* keeping his *Christmas* at *Guilford*, *Hubert* does the same at *Canterbury*, vying with, or rather surpassing, the King in magnificence. *1201.*

In order to put the Archbishop to a great expence, King *John* causes himself to be crowned again at *Canterbury*. *Easter.*

He takes a progress in the North, and fines those who had trespassed in his forests. And also debauches several persons wives and daughters. *Reg. 3.*

The *Poitevins* having revolted, King *John* summons the Earls and Barons to come with their arms at *Portsmouth*, and attend him into *France*; but they meet at *Leicester*, and send him word, They would not go over with him, unless he would restore to them their ancient privileges.

The King, provoked at this message, demands their Castles for pledges of their fidelity; and having taken *Beauvoir* Castle, forces them to submit, and to deliver their children to him a hostages.

So the Barons repairing to *Portsmouth*, the King dispenses with their attendance, upon their paying him two marks upon every Knight's fee. *June.*

And he sends *William* Earl of *Pembroke*, *Roger de Lacy*, and *Hubert de Burgh*, with 200 men at arms, and a 100 horse, to guard the frontiers of *Normandy*.

King *John* himself passes over into *Normandy*, and has an interview with the King of *France* near *Andeli*, where their former treaty is renewed and confirmed.

Ann. C. *Philip* invites *John* to *Paris*, caresses him extremely, and lodges him in his own Palace.

At the same time, he is contriving how to deprive him of his Dominions in *France*, and for that purpose stirs up the Earl of *Marche* against him, who causes the *Poitevins* to revolt.

Arthur Duke of *Bretagne* joins that Earl, and the King of *France*.

Constance Duchess of *Bretagne* dies.

This year, the brave *John de Courcy* Earl of *Ulster* was taken prisoner, brought over, and confined in the *Tower* of *London*.

This year also, a Parliament was held at *Lincoln* in *Lincolnshire*.

1202. King *Philip* demands for Prince *Arthur* all King *John*'s provinces in *France*, and, in case of refusal, summons
Reg. 4. *John* before the House of Peers: But he disdains that citation.

King *Philip* invades *Normandy*, and takes several places.

July 26. Queen *Eleanor*, mother of King *John*, dies.

July. Prince *Arthur* marries *Mary*, the King of *France*'s eldest daughter.

He goes to take upon him the command of the revolted *Poitevins*, but hearing by the way that Queen *Eleanor* was in *Mirabel*, he lays siege to that place.

Aug. 1. King *John* flies to its relief, vanquishes *Arthur*, and takes him prisoner with his sister *Eleanor*.

Arthur is sent to *Falaise*, and *Eleanor* to *Bristol* Castle, where she was confined forty years.

King *John* goes to *Falaise*, and endeavours to persuade *Arthur* to relinquish the King of *France*, but he returns a haughty answer, and remains inflexible.

He is conveyed to *Roan*, and not long after privately dispatched out of the way, either by King *John* himself, or at least by his order.

King *John* returns to *England*, and causes himself to be crowned the fourth time, at *Canterbury*, after which he repasses into *Normandy*.

The *Bretons*, exasperated by King *Philip*'s Emissaries, complain of their Duke's death, and apply to *Philip* for justice.

John is accordingly summoned before the Court of Peers, and, notwithstanding the interposition of his Ambassadors, is sentenced to forfeit all his Dominions in *France*.

1203. In pursuance of this arbitrary sentence, the King of
Reg. 5. *France*

France prepares to deprive King *John* of those Dominions; *Ann. C.*
and, invading *Normandy*, conquers the greatest part of it, while King *John*, instead of opposing him, minded only his diversions.

The *English* Barons, after having often entreated in vain King *John* to exert himself, leave him, and return home.

King *John* himself comes to *England*, and charging his *Dec.* 6.
Barons with deserting him, and thereby occasioning the loss of *Normandy*, he takes the seventh part of all the moveables both of the Clergy and Laity.

The *Normans* make a treaty with King *Philip*, wherein they oblige themselves to own him for their Sovereign, if they were not relieved in a year.

A Parliament is held at *Oxford*, which grants the King 1204.
2 marks and a half of every Knight's fee, and the Clergy *Reg.* 6.
promise the same.

Instead of using this aid in making war, the King sends Ambassadors to treat of a peace with King *Philip*, but he made such unreasonable demands as could not be accepted.

A *French* Champion comes to *England*, to challenge any one that should maintain, his Master was in the wrong for his proceedings with King *John*: But *John de Courcy* Earl of *Ulster* having accepted his challenge, the Champion shamefully withdraws into *Spain*.

Roan and the Castle of *Andeli* are taken; and thereby the Dukedom of *Normandy* is re-united to the Crown of *France*, after it had been parted from it, and governed by Dukes of its own, for 320 years.

Anjou, *Touraine*, and *Poictou* submit also to the King of *France*.

King *John* raises a great army, in order to carry the war 1205.
into *Poictou*, but is dissuaded from it by the Archbishop of *Reg.* 7.
Canterbury, and others. And so is contented with sending *June.*
over a large body of troops, under the command of the Earl of *Salisbury*.

Hubert Archbishop of *Canterbury* dies. *July.*

King *John* repenting of having dismissed his army, hires *July.*
several ships, and embarks on board one of them with a small retinue; but suddenly altering his mind, he turns back, and comes and lands at *Werham*.

And extorts large sums from all his subjects, upon pretence they had refused to attend him beyond sea.

The Monks of *Christ's-Church* in *Canterbury* privately chuse one *Ralph* their Sub-prior Archbishop; but the

Ann. G. King and the Pope disliking him, *John de Gray*, Bishop of *Norwich*, is elected in his room.

1206. Some Monks are sent to *Rome*, to get this last election confirmed; and, at the same time, the Suffragan Bishops, *Reg.* 8. who claimed a share in the Archbishop's election, send also Deputies: The Pope, upon hearing both sides, voids the two elections, and orders *Stephen Langton* to be chosen by the Monks alone.

June 25. King *John* embarks with a large army, and lands at *Rochel*, *July* 9, where being joined by the *Poictevins*, he subdues a considerable part of *Poictou*, and takes the Castle of *Mont-Auban*, *Aug.* 1.

Nov. 1. A two years truce is concluded between the two Kings, *Dec.* 12 and King *John* returns to *England*.

1207. A Parliament is held at *London*:

Jan. 8. And another at *Oxford*, which grants the King the 13th *Feb.* 9. part of the Laity's moveables; and he takes the same of the *Reg.* 9. Clergy by his own authority.

The Archbishop of *York* excommunicates the Collectors of that tax, and departs out of the Kingdom.

The Emperor *Otho* comes to *England* to sollicit King *John* to break the truce with *France*, but cannot prevail: However, the King makes him a present of 5000 marks.

The Pope, afraid that King *John* would resent his arbitrary proceedings with regard to *Langton's* election, sends a Nuncio to him, with a smoothing letter, and 4 rings.

He sends him, soon after, a brief, to exhort him to own *Langton* for Archbishop; and enjoins, by a letter, the Monks, and Suffragan Bishops, to receive him as such.

The King, highly incensed, causes the Monks of *St. Augustin's* Monastery to be driven out of the Kingdom; and writes a very sharp letter to the Pope, to which the Pope returns a mild answer.

Oct. 1. *Henry*, the King's eldest son, is born.

1208. The Bishops of *London*, *Ely*, and *Worcester*, exhort the King, by the Pope's direction, to submit to his Holiness's orders; and acquaint him, That, otherwise, they were commanded to interdict the whole Kingdom.

The King threatens them highly, and the whole Clergy, if they did so: But notwithstanding his threats, they soon *Mar.* 13. after publish the *Interdict*, and retire beyond sea.

King *John* thereupon confiscates the estates of all the Ecclesiastics who obeyed the Interdict, and orders them to be expelled the Kingdom.

He

He causes the Priests wives, or concubines, to be imprisoned, and not to be released without great fines. *Ann. C.*

Finding himself slighted by his subjects, he requires the great men of the Kingdom, whom he suspected, to deliver him hostages for their future fidelity. *Reg.* 10.

Richard, the King's second son, is born. 1209.

King *John* issues out a proclamation, forbidding the taking of all sorts of feathered fowl throughout *England*. *Jan.* 5.

He levies a great army, and marches against the King of *Scots*, who makes a peace with him; giving him 11,000 marks of silver, and his two daughters for hostages. *Reg.* 11.

In his return from this expedition, he orders the hedges to be cut down, and the ditches to be filled throughout all his forests.

The Prince of *Wales* comes and does him homage at *Northampton*.

The King makes all the Freeholders in *England*, from 12 years old, and upwards, to renew their homage.

The sentence of excommunication is pronounced against King *John*.

He sends some Commissioners to *Canterbury*, to treat with the Archbishop's friends about his reconciliation with him, and the rest of the Clergy.

But not succeeding, he sends orders to the Archbishop to come from *Pontigny* to *Dover*, where he treats with him by his Commissioners, but still nothing is concluded on.

A Parliament is held this year at *Windsor* at *Christmas*.

London began this year to be governed by a *Mayor*.

The Archbishops and great Men give the King an aid, for the defence of the Kingdom, and the recovery of his Dominions in *France*. 1210. *Reg.* 12.

Also about this time, the King extorted 60,000 marks from the *Jews* residing in the Kingdom; one of them having seven of his double teeth cruelly pulled out, because he refused to pay 10,000 marks.

Some commotions happening in *Ireland*, the King goes over thither with a large army; about 30 petty Princes come and swear fealty to him at *Dublin*, and the King of *Connaught*, author of the troubles, is reduced to obedience. *June.*

King *John* establishes in *Ireland* the *English* laws and customs; and *John de Grey*, his Justiciary there, causes money of the same weight and fineness as that in *England*, to be coined.

The King returns to *England*; and, for the mainte- *Aug.* 20.

Ann. C. mance of his army, lays a tax upon the Clergy, amounting to 100,000 *l.*

A Parliament was held this year at *York* at *Christmas*.

1211. The King marches into the furthermost parts of *Wales*
Reg. 13. with a large army, forces the *Welsh* petty Princes and No-
July. bles to submission, and takes of them 28 hostages.

Pandulph and *Durand*, two Nuncio's from the Pope,
August. come to *England*, and meet the King at *Northampton*; where a Parliament was held.

The King offers to let *Langton* take possession of the Archbishopric, and to permit the Monks and Bishops to return to their Sees and Monasteries; but refusing to make them satisfaction for their losses, the Negotiation is broken off.

The Nuncio's thereupon publish the sentence of excommunication against the King; and absolve, some time after, his subjects from their oath of allegiance.

Some of the Barons invite the King of *France* to come and war against King *John*.

1212. A Parliament is held this year at *Windsor*.

And another is held in *Lent* at *Clerkenwell*, near *London*.

Reg. 14. The *Welsh* having made some incursions, and committed several ravages, King *John* causes their 28 hostages to be hanged, and prepares to carry the war into *Wales*; but receiving notice of a Conspiracy formed against him, he dismisses his troops, shuts himself in *Nottingham* Castle, and afterwards returns to *London*.

He demands hostages of the Barons, which most of them accordingly send.

Peter, a Hermit of *Wakefield*, having prophesied, That by *Ascension-day* following King *John* should not be King; he is imprisoned.

The King banishes several great men, whom he suspected, or who had conspired against him, but treats the rest of his subjects with mildness.

The sentence of deposition against King *John* is pronounced by the Pope, who commissions *Philip* King of *France* to put that sentence in execution.

He also publishes a Bull, wherein he exhorts all persons to undertake the Cross against King *John*, as if he had been an Infidel.

Geoffrey, Archbishop of *York*, dies.

July 10. This year the greatest part of *London* was burnt down.

A Parliament was held at *Westminster* at *Christmas*.

1213. The King of *France* accepts of the Pope's Commission, and makes very great preparations for invading *England*.

King

King John also, on his part, prepares for his own de- *Ann. C.*
fence, ordering all the tenants by military service to meet *March.*
him at *Dover*, and all ships to be ready at *Portsmouth*.

The *English* fleet puts out to sea, and blocks up the *French* fleet.

The Bishop of *Norwich*, Justiciary of *Ireland*, brings *Reg.* 15.
the King an aid out of that Island.

Pandulph, the Pope's Legate, coming to *France*, forbids *Philip* to invade *England*, till he had gone over, and tried, whether he could not bring King *John* to terms.

He accordingly comes over, and has an interview with the King at *Dover*.

King *John* yields to the conditions proposed by the Le- *May* 13.
gate; and agrees to receive Cardinal *Langton* and the proscribed Bishops and Monks into favour, to make them restitution and satisfaction, *&c.*

Moreover, he is forced to resign his Crown and Scepter *May* 15.
to the Pope; and accordingly lays them at the Legate's feet, who keeps them three days.

He signs a Charter, whereby he resigned to the Pope *England* and *Ireland*; and in token of his being a vassal to the Holy See, engaged to pay the Pope the yearly rent of 700 marks for *England*, and 300 for *Ireland*.

Then he does homage to the Pope, in the person of his Legate *Pandulph*; who proudly treads under foot the money offered by the King, as an earnest of his subjection.

King *John* causes *Peter* the *Hermit* to be dragged at a horse's tail, and then to be hanged with his son.

Pandulph returns to *France*, with part of the 8,000 *l.* restitution-money for the Archbishops and Bishops, *&c.*

He endeavours to persuade King *Philip* to desist from his intended expedition against *England*, but *Philip* refuses to obey him; alledging, he had spent above 60,000 *l.* in his preparations.

So, he tries to engage the chief Lords of his Kingdom and the Princes his vassals, to stand by him, notwithstanding the Pope's threats and censures; but the Earl of *Flanders* opposing him, he prepares to chastise him, and deprive him of his Dominions.

King *John* sends his fleet to the Earl's assistance, which entirely destroys the *French* fleet, and obliges *Philip* to return to *Paris*.

Elated at this success, King *John* resolves to carry the war into *France*, and try to recover his lost Dominions; at the

Ann. C. same time, the Emperor and the Earl of *Flanders* promise to make a powerful diversion in his favour.

But, as he was ready to embark, the Barons send him word, they could not attend him, unless he was first absolved from his excommunication; and so he sends for *Langton* over to *England*, who, after having administred
July 16. an oath to him, gives him absolution.

King *John* resumes his design of carrying the war into *France*, but his Barons, chiefly those of the North, refuse to follow him, alledging all their money was spent; whereupon he sails to *Jersey*.

He returns to *England*, and prepares to chastise the Barons, but *Langton* opposes it, and threatens all those that should join him with excommunication.

Aug. 25. A Synod, or Parliament, is held at *London*, to compose the differences between the King and the Barons; in which *Langton* produces the charter of *Henry* I.

The Barons enter into a Confederacy, to obtain the establishment and confirmation of their antient privileges, contained in that charter.

The King being informed of it, implores the Pope's protection; who sends the Bishop of *Tusculum* as Legate, to
Sept. relax the interdict, and reconcile the King and Clergy.

King *John* publicly renews his subjection to the Pope, and confirms it by a charter sealed with gold.

The Legate fills up the vacant benefices.

Oct. 2. *Geoffrey Fitz-Peter*, Justiciary of *England*, dies.

Peter King of *Arragon*, the Protector of the *Albigenses*, is defeated and slain.

Besides the Council, or Parliament above-mentioned, there were others held, *viz.* one at *St. Albans*, one at *London*, one at *Reading* on *Dec.* 6, and another at *Windsor* at *Christmas*.

1214. Archbishop *Langton* appeals to the Pope, against the Legate's filling the vacant benefices.

Feb. 2. King *John* goes to *France*, subdues *Poictou*, and makes
Reg. 16. a great progress in *Anjou*, but Prince *Lewis* puts a stop to his arms.

28. The interdict is taken off, and 40,000 *l.* is granted to the Clergy by way of restitution.

July 27. The battle of *Bovines* is fought, wherein the Emperor *Otho* is entirely defeated by the King of *France*.

Sept. A five years truce is concluded between the Kings of *England* and *France*.

Oct. 20. King *John* returns to *England*.

The Barons enter into a League for the restoration of their liberties. *Ann. C.*

William King of *Scotland* dies. *Decemb.*

A Parliament was held this year at *London*. 1215.

The Barons come to the King to *London*, in a military apparel, and demand the confirmation of the laws of King *Edward*, with other rights and privileges. *January.*

The King, in order to gain time, desires them to stay for an answer till *Easter*; and in the mean time causes homage and fealty to be renewed; and takes upon him the *Cross*. *Feb. 2.*

He grants a charter for the freedom of elections to Bishoprics and Abbies, without letters of nomination from him.

Easter being come, almost all the Nobility repair to *Stanford* with a large army, and press the King for his answer. They also send him a long memorial of the antient laws and customs, but he absolutely refuses to confirm them, though they threatened him. *Reg. 17.*

The Barons chuse the Lord *Robert Fitzwalter* for their General, make themselves masters of *Bedford* Castle, and the City of *London*, on *May* 24, besiege the *Tower*, and commit great hostilities in several places.

The King being at last forced to yield to them, has a Conference with them, in *Runnemede*, between *Staines* and *Windsor*, where he signs *Magna Charta*, and *Charta de Forestâ*. *June* 15.

He soon repents of having signed those Charters, and endeavours to annul them.

For that purpose, he sends his agents to raise a large body of adventurers in *France*, *Germany*, and *Flanders*; and demands the Pope's assistance: In the mean time he retires to the Isle of *Wight*, where he waits three months for the return of his agents.

The Pope annuls *Magna Charta* by a bull, and threatens the Barons; who despising his threats, go, under the command of *William de Albiney*, and seize *Rochester* Castle.

The Bishops publish the sentence of excommunication against the disturbers of the peace of the King and Kingdom. *August.*

Great numbers of adventurers land at *Dover*, and King *John* heading them retakes *Rochester*, and ravages the Kingdom. *October.*

Langton refusing to publish the Bull of Excommunication against the Barons, is suspended, and sent for to *Rome*.

The Pope issues out another Bull, wherein all the Barons were

Ann. C. were excommunicated by name, and their lands, with the City of *London*, put under an interdict.

1216. The Barons despise the Pope's censures, and King *John* continues his ravages.

Alexander King of *Scotland* invades *England*.

The Barons reduced to extremity, offer the Crown to *Lewis*, son of *Philip* King of *France*, who accepts of the offer, and sends some troops to their assistance.

February. *Reg.* 18. The Pope sends a Legate, to forbid the King of *France* to carry his arms in *England*, but the Pope's message is not regarded.

May 21. Prince *Lewis* arrives in *England* with a fleet of 700 ships, and makes himself master of *Rochester*, and the rest of *Kent*: King *John* retires to *Winchester*. The Abbot of *St. Augustin's* in *Canterbury* declares *Lewis* excommunicated.

The Prince comes to *London*, where the Barons and Citizens swear fealty to him, and he takes an oath to restore their privileges.

Simon Langton is made his Chancellor, who persuades the Barons to be present at divine service, notwithstanding the interdict.

Lewis becomes master of the southern Counties, and of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*, and his adherents take *York*.

July. He besieges *Dover*, and the Barons *Windsor*.

Alexander I. King of *Scotland* having a little before taken *Carlisle*, comes and does him homage, for his territories in *England*.

King *John* is deserted by the *Flemish* and other foreign troops.

Prince *Lewis*'s Ambassadors vindicate his claim to *England* before the Pope.

King *John* ravages the Counties of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*, and then retires to an advantageous post near *Stamford*.

The Viscount of *Melun* discovers, upon his death-bed, That Prince *Lewis* intended to banish all the Barons that had taken arms against King *John*, which makes them think of returning to King *John*'s obedience.

May. *Sept.* The King not knowing whom to trust, keeps moving from one place to another, having his Head-quarters, and his Crown and Scepter at *Lynn*, to which place he grants great privileges.

Not thinking himself secure there, he removes into *Lincolnshire*, and comes to *Swinshead-Abbey*, but losing his

Oct. 14. carriages and baggage in the river *Well-stream*, his grief and vexation at it throws him into a violent fever.

He

He is removed to *Shefford* Castle, and the next day to *Ann. C.*
Newark, where he makes his will, appointing his son *Henry* his heir.

King *John* dies at *Newark*, in the 50th year of his age, *Oct.* 18.
after a Reign of 17 years, 6 months, and 13 days.

And was buried in *Worcester* Cathedral.

The Character *of King* JOHN.

If this Prince's character be drawn according to *Matthew Paris*, his chief Historian, he must be represented as one of the vilest wretches that ever lived. But, as I have elsewhere observed, the histories of Princes, who have had any contests with the Court of *Rome*, are to be read with great caution. It is better therefore, without regarding the particular sentiments and expressions of the Historians, solely to examine the actions of this Monarch, in order to discover his temper and inclinations. It is certain, one must frame a very disadvantageous idea of him, when his unjust proceedings with regard to his brother *Richard* are considered: The death of Prince *Arthur* his nephew, of which he never cleared himself thoroughly: The perpetual imprisonment of *Eleanor* of *Bretagne* his niece: His putting away *Avisa* of *Glocester*: His extreme indolence, when *Philip Augustus* was conquering his Dominions in *France*: His base resignation of his Crown to the Pope: His breach of faith with his Barons: And lastly, his bringing into the Kingdom an army of foreign mercenaries, to be revenged on his subjects. However, if one had a mind to undertake his vindication upon most of these articles, it would not perhaps be so difficult as it seems at first sight. But without meddling with a subject, which would lead me too far, I shall content my self with saying of this Prince, what I elsewhere said of *William Rufus*: That finding in King *John* scarce one valuable qualification, it is not worth while to stay to justify some particular actions, though it evidently appears, that the Writers of his life have drawn him in blacker colours than he deserved. This Prince had great failings, which would not have been so visible, or so aggravated by the Historians, had he been cotemporary with a King of *France* of less policy and ambition, with a Pope of less pride and more conscience, and with a Nobility of a less turbulent spirit. As for raising taxes, without the consent of the States, it may be said, it was not very unusual since *William the Conqueror*, as the Reader may have observed in

some

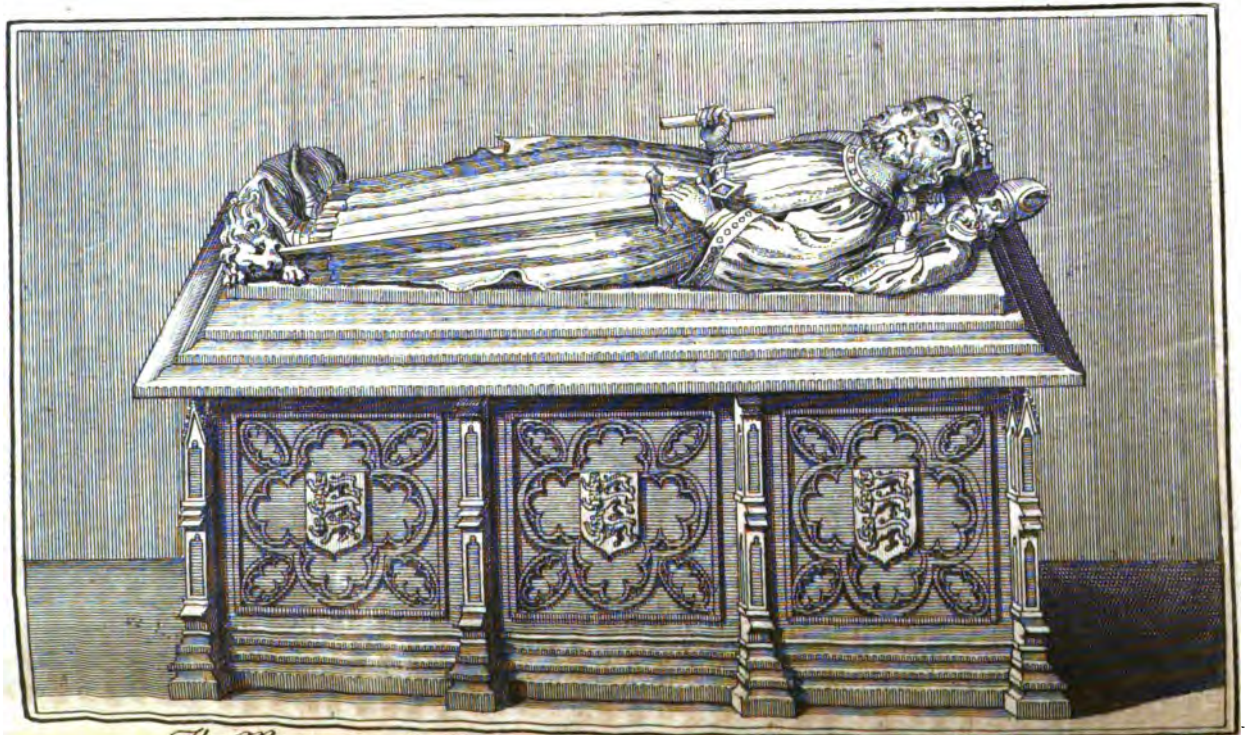
some former Reigns. And yet this is what several modern Historians bitterly exclaim against, as if in those days *England* enjoyed the same privileges as at present. It is easy to see things were then upon a different foot, when it is considered, that there was a necessity to recur to the time of the *Saxon* Kings, to find the foundations of these privileges.

King *John*'s fortune never agreed with his temper. He was a lover of ease and quiet, and his fortune was to be perpetually in action. He was fit neither for prosperity nor adversity. The former rendered him extremely insolent, and the latter surprisingly dejected. So that a middle fortune would doubtless have been most suitable to his temper.

M. Paris. Hemingford. He is accused of exceeding his Father *Henry* II. in lust, a failing which Princes are seldom very reproachfully taxed with, unless there is a settled design to defame them for other reasons. It cannot be denied, that the Monks have endeavoured to paint King *John* in the blackest colours, in order to excuse the Pope's proceedings against him. This evidently appears in the calumny cast on his memory, of sending Ambassadors to the *Miramolin* of *Africa*, with an offer of his Kingdom, and a promise to embrace the *Mahometan* Religion, which is altogether improbable. However, as unlikely as this charge is, there are modern Historians who scruple not to vent it for truth, in a belief that *Matthew Paris*, who wrote in the Reign of *Henry* III, son of *John*, would not have ventured to advance it, had it been groundless. But this argument seems of little weight, since that Historian dared to speak in very disrespectful terms of *Henry* III, himself, without any dread of his resentment, from which perhaps he was screened when he wrote. Add to this, that in those days, books were not immediately dispersed, but remained many times a long while concealed in the Monasteries, before they were published.

M. Paris. p. 243.

John was always unfortunate, and, if we may believe the Historians, always hated by his subjects. One cannot however reconcile this constant hatred of the *English*, with the great ease wherewith he levied armies when he wanted them, and even whilst under the sentence of Excommunication. We must therefore distinguish two periods in this Prince's Reign. The first includes the time from his Coronation, to his resignation of the Crown to the Pope. During this space, if he was not in great esteem, at least it does not appear he was so odious, as his ill conduct afterwards rendered him. The second period begins at his resignation, and ends with his life. It cannot be denied, that during



The Monument of K. JOHN in the Cathedral of Worcester

during this period, his subjects had a strong aversion to him. And yet, if his Government be considered separately from his personal qualities, it may be said to be none of the worst. He was the first or chiefest, that appointed those excellent [illegible] of civil Government in *London*, and most other Cities [illegible] the Kingdom. According to *Camden*, and others, [illegible] was the first that coined sterling money. The ceremonies observed in the creation of Earls, had him for their Author. "In fine, he established the *English* laws in *Ireland*, and gave the *Cinque-ports* the privileges they enjoy at this day." Knighton. p. 2424.

The *Legitimate issue* of King *John*, by *Isabel* of *Angoulême*, his third wife, were,

1. *Henry*. 2. *Richard* King of the *Romans*. 3. *Joan*, wife of *Alexander* II. King of *Scots*. 4. *Eleanor* married to *William Marischal* Earl of *Pembroke*. 5. *Isabel*, to *Frederick* II. Emperor of *Germany*.

His natural children were, 1. *Richard*. 2. *Geoffrey Fitz-Roy*. 3. *John Courcy*. 4. *Osbert Gifford*. 5. *Oliver*. 6. *Joan*, married to *Llewellen* Prince of *North Wales*.

The most remarkable foreign events during this Reign, were the taking of *Constantinople* by the arms of the *French* and *Venetians* in 1204, and the Crusade against the *Albigenses*, which gave birth to the Inquisition. M. Paris. p. 240.

A Description of the Monument *of King* JOHN.

His tomb is in the Cathedral Church of Worcester. It is of grey marble, and stands in the center between the great altar and the choir. The figure of the King as big as the life, with the effigies of the two famous bishops, St. Oswald and St. Wulstan in little, between whom he lies, are carved on one stone, which seems to be as antient as HENRY IIId's time. But the altar-tomb, on which it is laid, is of a more modern fabrick. This Monument has no Inscription.

An Account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

Having spoken of the Revenue arising from *Aids*, I proceed to *Scutages* and Tallages. Escuage or Scutage, was a duty or service, arising out of Baronies and Knights Fees. It denoted *Servitium Scuti*, the Service of the Shield; and was wont to be rendered thus, *viz.* for every Knight's Fee, the Service of one Knight; for every half Fee, the Service

of

of half a Knight; and so in proportion. Baronies were charged after the like manner, according to the number of the Knights Fees, whereof the Barony by its original enfeoffment, did consist. This Service of Scutage was performed, either personally in the King's army, or else by pecuniary commutation. Indeed the word *Scutagium*, in an extensive sense, did antiently signify any payment, assessed upon Knights Fees; whether for the King's army, or not. But here, it will be considered only as a duty, arising out of Baronies and Knights Fees, for the service of the King's army. The antient way of charging or answering it was, so much *De Scutagio Walliæ*, &c. or *pro Militibus*, for his Knight's Fees, or *de Exercitu Walliæ*, &c. These Escuages, *pro exercitu*, were wont to be paid by the King's *Tenants in Capite*, by Knight's Service. *Tenant in Capite*, signifies *immediate Tenant*. And here it may be observed, that a man might hold of the King *in Capite*, either by Barony, or by Knight's Service, or by Serjeanty, or by Socage, or by Fee-Farm; consequently it is a mistake, that some great men have been guilty of, that a Baron, and a *Tenant in Capite*, was all one. For though every Baron, properly so called, was a Tenant *in Capite*, yet every Tenant *in Capite*, (there being some of half, or quarter, or a tenth part of a Knight's Fee) was not a Baron. The phrase *in Capite*, was commonly used to signify *immediate*. *Alexander de Swereford*, whilst he resided at the *Exchequer*, collected out of the Revenue Rolls of the *Pipe*, many memorials concerning the Scutages, assessed in the Reigns of *Henry* II, *Richard* I, and *John*; till the 15th of *Henry* III: These he put together in the *Red Book*. He could, it seems, give no account of Scutages, older than *Henry* II, though it is more than probable, there were Scutages in the time of *Henry* I. The annual Rolls of his Reign are lost. The first Scutage (says *Alexander*) was assessed 2 *Henry* II. for the army of *Wales*, twenty shillings for each Knight's Fee, and was assessed only upon those Prelates who were bound to military Services. The second Scutage (says he) was for the same 5 *Henry* II, but assessed, not only upon the Prelates, but others, according to the number of their Fees: This Scutage is entitled, *De Dono*. And here he observes, that the *Donum* of the Prelates makes a sum answerable to the number of Fees, held of the King *in Capite*; and therefore by him supposed to be a real Scutage. This was two marks *per* Fee. In the 18th of *Henry* II, the Escuage of *Ireland* came to be put in charge. To this Escuage, several

persons are charged, under this title, *De Scutagio Militum qui non abierunt*, &c. *i. e.* The Escuage of Knights, who did not go into *Ireland*, nor send thither any Knights or Money. It has been before observed, (in the last Coin Note) that Charters or Certificates of Knight's Fees were sent in, when *Aid* for marrying *Henry* IId's daughter was levied; and it seems that in ancient times, whenever Scutages were to be levied, the Barons and Tenants *in Capite*, did send in certificates of their respective Fees, either *Titles quotas*, or at least most usually. This appears by the *Red Book* of the *Exchequer*, and *Testa de Nevil*. The Reader may see the certificate of *Robert de Beauchamp* of *Hatche*, for his Barony, in *Madox's Formulare*. N°. 11. As Escuage was rendered for Fees holden of the King *in Capite*, by Knight's Service, *ut de Corona*, so it was rendered for Fees holden of Honours and Escheats, which were in the King's hands, and for Fees holden of the lands purchased by the King, and for Fees holden of the King's Wards. For the Tenants holding of the King's Wardships and Escheats, were immediate Tenants of the King, whilst they rested in him. It is to be understood, that in general, Escuage was paid according to the sum that was assessed; suppose, at the rate of one, two, or three marks for each Fee. Nevertheless, many doubts arose about the payment of it. Sometimes the Service due from a Tenant by Knight's Service, was uncertain; that is, it was sometimes doubtful, of how many Knight's Fees a man or his ancestor was enfeoffed, consequently what sum he was to pay for Escuage. This frequently happened in the case of Ecclesiastical persons, by reason of the antiquity of their endowments, so that the form of their Enfeoffment could not be easily known in succeeding times; and because it was many times doubtful, whether they held some of their lands by Barony and Military Service, or in *Frankalmoigne*: Again, in the case of other persons, some honours or Baronies, consisted of more Knight's Fees than others did, and some Fees were much larger than others; insomuch that it was doubtful, whether a man held by Barony or Knight's Service, whether by the service of one Knight's Fee, or of more, or of how many Knight's Fees. On the other hand, some Knight's Fees were remarkably small; such, for instance, were the Fees of the Honour of *Moreton*, which were called *parva Feuda Moritonæ*, and paid less Escuage, than the generality of other Fees, about a third part less. As Escuage was paid out of Knight's Fees; so there were

also

also some Serjeanties paid the same. Perhaps these Serjeanties were holden by military Tenure. For sometimes Knight's Service was annexed to a Serjeanty; that is, lands were holden both by Serjeanty, and the Service of a Knight's Fee, or part of a Knight's Fee. And if the Tenure (either in whole or in part) was a Knight's Service, the Tenant paid Escuage. But land holden by Serjeanty only, paid no Escuage. Escuage Money was in lieu of personal Service. And therefore, the Barons and Knights were commonly charged with Escuage, or fines for Escuage, under the terms, *Pro exercitu, De his qui non abierunt cum rege nec denarios nec milites pro se miserunt, Fines pro Passagio*, or the like. But it is to be understood, that personal Service was required most strictly, if not solely, of the Tenants holding by Knight's Service *in Capite ut de Corona*. For if a man held his land of the King by Knight's Service, as of an Honour, then in the King's hands, and not of the Crown, such Tenant was not indispensably obliged to do personal Service in the King's army, but was to pay the King Escuage, when it was assessed: At least, this was alledged to be the Usage in the Reign of *Edward* II. When the King went forth with his army, he was wont to summon his Barons and Tenants *in Capite* by Knight's Service, to be ready to do their Service in his Army, according to the number of their Fees, and quantity of their Tenure. This was called *Summonce ad habendum servitium*. This *Summonce* ran thus: "Vicecomiti Kanciæ salutem. Præcipimus tibi quod sine dilatione Summoneri facias per totam ballivam tuam, Archiepiscopos, Episcopos, Abbates, Priores, Comites, Barones, Milites, & liberè tenentes & omnes alios qui servitium nobis debent sive servitium militare vel serjeantiæ: quodque similiter clamari facias per totam ballivam tuam quod sicut apud Wigorniam in Crastino St. Trinitatis, anno regni nostri Septimo omni dilatione & occasione postpositis, cum toto hujusmodi servitio quod nobis debent, parati cum equis & armis ad eundum in servitium nostrum quo eis præceperimus. T. H. &c. apud Westmon. 25 die Martii." Eodem modo scribitur omnibus Vicecomitibus. Cl. 7. *Hen.* 3. m. 10. *dorso*. When a man was to prove that he had done his Service in the King's Army, he commonly made his proof by Certificate or Testimony of the Commander in Chief, or of the Constable, Marshal, or their Lieutenant, or by the Rolls of the Marshalsy of the Army. If the Barons and Knights holding *in Capite*, did not go in person with the King in his Army, they sometimes sent

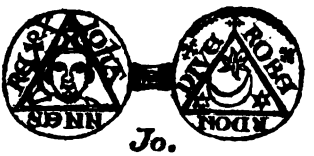
Knights

Knights in their stead, and sometimes made fine with the King, *ne transfretent*, or *pro remanendo ab exercitu*, or *quia non abierunt cum rege*, &c. When King *Edward* II. summoned his army to march into *Scotland*, he commanded the Treasurer and Barons of the *Exchequer* to accept of fines at the rate of 40 *l.* for each Knight's Fee, to be paid by Archbishops, Bishops, the Religious, Widows, and other Women who owed Service, and were desirous to make fines for the same. 15 *Ed.* 2. Rot. 65. Sometimes the Barons and Tenants by Knight's Service were amerced for not sending their Knights to serve for them in the King's army. When they did actual Service with their Knights for so many Fees as they were answerable for, or sent Knights in their stead, or made fine for the same, they were wont to be acquitted of Escuage. Escuage was not chargeable upon lands holden in *Frankalmoigne* of Royal Foundation. If a subject gave land to a Religious House in *Frankalmoigne*, such land was not to be distrained for Escuage, as long as the Donor or his Heirs had other lands in the same County on which the Escuage might be levied. Again, lands holden purely in Socage paid not Escuage, neither was it paid by persons to whom the King by Charter granted freedom from Escuage. As the Lord who held of the King *in Capite* by Knight's Service, paid Escuage to the King for his Knight's Fee; so the Tenants of such Lord, who held the same Fees, by Knight's Service, paid Escuage for the same to their Lord, according to the quantity of their Tenure; and then the Lord was said, *habere Scutagia sua*, to have his Escuage, to wit, of his Tenants. The Tenants paid Escuage to their Lord, to enable him to pay his Escuage to the King, or re-imburse him when he had paid it. When the Lord holding *in Capite* did personal Service in the King's army, or paid or became duly charged with his Escuage to the King, he was entitled to have Escuage of his Tenants, for the Fees which they held of him, and which he held of the King *in Capite*. In this case, the Lord might *justitiare Tenentes suos*, compel them by distress to pay him Escuage: Or if he could not compel them himself, he often had a writ of aid directed to the Sheriff to assist him. But sometimes the Lord was forced to make fine with the King, *pro habendo Scutagio suo*, to have his Scutage. In short, it seems that Escuage was due to the Lord from lands which were holden by Knight's Service, *ab antiquo*, but not from lands holden by Knight's Service newly created. For where a Manor passed by grant from the

King, with the Tenure of Knight's Service annexed to it, the Lord could not have Escuage of the Tenants of that Manor, if the Tenants were not wont to do any military Service to the King, whilst the Manor was vested in the King. In elder times, in case the Lord was entitled to receive Escuage of his Tenants, such Escuage was usually collected by the Lord, *per manum suam*, who used to justiciate or distrain his Tenants to pay it. Whether it was all along necessary for the Lord to have the King's leave to collect his Escuage *per manum suam* or no, such leave was sometimes granted by the King to particular Lords. But as, in process of time, it was very often doubtful, whether lands were holden by Knight's Service, or other Tenure; or if holden by Knight's Service, whether they were holden immediately of the King or some other Lord, or by how many Knight's Fees they were holden, or the like: I say, for these and other causes, it became almost necessary that Escuage should be collected by the Sheriffs of Counties, who might take Inquisition by the oath of Jurors, concerning these and the like articles. In the 19th of *Henry* III, the Earls, Barons, and all others of the Realm, granted to the King an *Efficax Auxilium* (called in the Writ a Scutage) *viz.* two marks of every Knight's Fee holden *in Capite*, and of his Wards: Hereupon, the Sheriff of *Somersetshire* was ordered by Writ, That at the instance of the Earls, *&c.* he should distrain all the Knights and Freeholders, who held of them by Knight's Service, to pay the said two marks *per* Fee. To conclude, several particulars relating to the manner of collecting the King's Escuage, may be observed from a Commission (in the 10th *Edw.* II.) made to certain persons. These Commissioners were appointed to levy the Escuages of the armies of *Scotland* of the 28th, 31st, and 34th years of *Edward* I, within the County of *York*, at the rate of forty shillings *per* Fee. In order thereto, they were to enquire by oath of lawful men of the County, what Fees were held *in Capite* of the King, at the time of those armies; and what of Escheats, Honours, and Purchases; what Heirs were under age, and in custody of King *Edward* I; and what Archbishopricks, Bishopricks, Abbies, Priories, and other Ecclesiastical dignities, or offices, then void, the Temporalities whereof did belong to the King; and who held the Knight's Fees belonging to such Heirs, Archbishopricks, *&c.* and for what portion of a Knight's Fee each one held, and where. And the Sheriff was commanded to summon lawful men to appear before the Commissioners, to make

make inquisition touching the matters aforesaid. And the Commissioners were to amerce severely such as they should find rebellious or disobedient. From what has been said, it appears, that Lord Chief Justice *Coke* was mistaken in speaking of Escuage, as if it was a Tenure. His words are: "Every Tenure by Escuage is a Tenure by Knight's "Service: but every Tenure that holds by Knight's Ser-"vice holdeth not by Escuage. For he that holdeth by "Castle-guard or Cornage, holdeth by Knight's Service, "and yet he shall pay no Escuage, because he holdeth not "to go to war." *Coke, Com.* p. 69. But the reason (as Mr. *Madox* observes) why Escuage was not paid by those that held by Castleguard, was, because when a military Tenant did actual service in an army, or in a castle, then he paid no Escuage. So that *Littleton*'s words, *quo tient sa terre per Escuage*, are to be understood as if he had said, *per le Service de Escuage*. Having thus largely treated of Escuage, before I proceed to *Tallage*, I will conclude this Note with briefly speaking of *Danegeld*, which was different from either *Aid*, *Escuage*, or *Tallage*. It was first set on foot in the *Anglo-Saxon* times: However, it continued many years after the Conquest. In the Reign of *Henry* I, in the year 1114, it was paid throughout the Kingdom. And in *Stephen*'s, it is accounted for in every County, as if it were a settled yearly Revenue; that is to say, in the like words which were then wont to be used in accounting for the yearly Revenue. *Danegeldum novum* for the first year, *præteritum Danegeldum* for the preceding year, and *vetus Danegeldum* for the third preceding year: However, it is not certain, that *Danegeld* was a settled yearly Revenue. The famous Author of the Dialogue concerning the *Exchequer* seems to have thought it a yearly Revenue before, but not after the Conquest. It may be traced by the Rolls to the Reign of *Henry* II, but it does not appear, that *Danegeld* was paid in the latter part of *Henry* II's Reign, nor in those of *Richard* I, and *John*. In all or most of the accounts of *Danegeld* in 2 *Henry* II, there is a large deduction made, under the terms *in Waste*, which is supposed to be by reason of the Realm being so wasted by the long intestine wars between *Stephen* and *Maud*. Hence it should seem that *Danegeld* was a sort of Hidage, or a Revenue arising from lands, as divided or measured by Hides. Again, it seems that *Danegeld* was charged upon land, because it is paid by the men of the Counties only, the Cities and Towns answering at the same time un-

der the name of an *Auxilium* or *Donum*. Tallage and Custom will be the subject of the next Coin Note.



Jo.

King *John* in his Coins, gives his face full, in a triangle, with a Sceptre in his right-hand, inscribed, JOHANNES REX. On the reverse, another triangle, with a half moon and a star, and this inscription: ROBERD. ON. DIVE. which last words shew the money was coined at *Dublin*, or *Divelin*. This King was the first that had the title of *Dominus Hiberniæ*, or *Lord of Ireland*; accordingly he is stiled on his Great Seal, JOANNES DEI GRATIA REX ANGLIE DOMINUS HIBERNIE; and on the counter Seal, IOANNES DUX NORMANNIE ET AQUITANIE COMES ANDEGAVIE. It is observable, that all the Pennies that have the head in a triangle were *Irish* Coins. The *Irish* Harp was antiently of that shape.

Ann. C. The NOBILITY created in this Reign, were as follows:

1199. *William Mareschal*, Earl of *Pembroke*.
May 27. *Geoffrey Fitz-Peers*, Earl of *Essex*.
1206. *Simon de Montfort*, Earl of *Leicester*.
1207. *Saer*, *Seger*, or *Serlo de Quincy*, Earl of *Winchester*.
May. *Geoffrey de Mandeville* (Earl of *Essex*) Earl of *Gloucester*.
1214.
1216. *Almeric de Evreux*, Earl of *Gloucester*.
Gilbert de Clare (Earl of *Hertford*) Earl of *Gloucester*.
Guy de Thouars (Duke of *Bretagne*) Earl of *Richmond*.

8. HENRY III. *Sirnamed of* Winchester.

1216. *HENRY* comes to the Crown, in the 10th year of
Oct. 19. his age.
Reg. 1. *William* Earl of *Pembroke* assembles the Barons that favoured


K. HENRY. III.
Verrue Sc.

voured *Henry*'s party, to *Gloucester*, where the young Prince *Ann. C.*
is chosen King.

His Coronation is solemnized there by the Bishops of *Oct.* 28.
Winchester, *Bath*, and *Worcester*, with *Gallo* the Legate;
and the usual oath is administred to him.

King *Henry* does homage to the See of *Rome*.

William Marescbal Earl of *Pembroke* is appointed Guardian of the King, and Regent of the Kingdom.

He notifies to the Barons of *Lewis*'s party the King's *Novemb.*
Coronation, exhorting them to return to their former allegiance.

Lewis, after having tried in vain to bribe *Hubert de Burgh*, Governor of *Dover*, with large promises, goes and makes himself master of the Castles of *Hertford* and *Berk-* *Decemb.*
hamstead.

The Barons are dissatisfied with *Lewis*, and the Pope orders him to be excommunicated again.

A truce is concluded between the two parties till *Jan.* 14.

King *Henry* holds a Council at *Oxford*, and *Lewis* and his 1217.
Adherents at *Cambridge*. *January.*

Lewis takes the Castles of *Odiam*, *Sleford*, *Norwich*, and *Colchester*.

King *Henry* grants *Ireland* the same Charter of Liberties as his father had granted to *England*.

A new truce being concluded till a month after *Easter*, *Lewis* goes to *France*.

In the mean time, the Regent reinforces his army, gains several of the Barons to his side, and the *Cinque-ports*, with other places, declare for *Henry*.

Lewis lands again at *Sandwich*, which he burns, in re- *April.*
venge for several of his ships that were taken, by a fleet set out by the *Cinque-ports*.

The *French* besiege *Dover* and *Lincoln* Castle, in vain;
and are totally defeated in a battle fought at *Lincoln*. *May* 19.

Lewis retires to *London*, and sends to *France* for fresh *Aug.* 24.
succours, which are entirely destroyed at sea.

Whereupon, being blocked up in *London*, he sues for peace, which is accordingly concluded, on *Septemb.* 11.

Lewis having received absolution from the Legate, returns to *France*.

King *Henry* makes his entry into *London*, and takes an *Reg.* 2.
oath to maintain the Nation in their privileges.

The Pope's Legate suspends, deprives, or fines, the Ecclesiastics that had adhered to *Lewis*, and despised the interdict.

Ann. C. Decemb. 1218. *Alexander* I. King of *Scotland* does homage to King *Henry*, for the fees held in *England*, and delivers up *Carlisle*.

Several of the Barons refusing to comply with the terms of the late treaty, the Regent brings them to reason by force of arms.

Feb. 18. He also obliges the excommunicated Ecclesiastics that had sided with *Lewis*, to depart the Kingdom, or make satisfaction to the Pope's Legate.

Mar. 16. A treaty is concluded between the King's Commissioners, and *Lewellyn* Prince of *North Wales*.

A Parliament is held at *London*; and orders are dispatched to all the Sheriffs, to see the two Charters of King *John* duly observed.

Guallo, the Pope's Legate, is recalled, and *Pandulph* appointed in his room.

May. *Reg.* 3. 1219. *Stephen Langton* Archbishop of *Canterbury* returns from *Rome* to *England*.

Itinerant Justices are sent through all Counties to revive the antient laws, and to cause the late Charter of King *John* to be observed.

Hubert de Burgh is made Justiciary of *England*.

May. *Reg.* 4. *William le Mareschal*, Earl of *Pembroke*, dies; and is succeeded in his office of Regent, by *Peter des Roches*, Bishop of *Winchester*.

Lewis Prince of *France* wars against the *Albigenses*, and besieges *Tholouse*.

1220. *May* 17. King *Henry* is crowned again at *Westminster*, by *Langton* Archbishop of *Canterbury*.

He takes a progress, and makes an alteration in the Governors of Castles, wherein he is opposed by no one but *William de Forz* Earl of *Albemarle*, Governor of *Rockingham* Castle.

Reg. 5. The new building of the Abbey-Church of *Westminster* is begun, the King laying the first stone.

1221. The Earl of *Albemarle*, discontented at the loss of *Rockingham* Castle, rebels against the King, and fortifies his Castles.

He is summoned to appear before a Parliament held about that time at *Westminster*, but not appearing, an army is sent against him; however, upon his submission, he is pardoned.

Reg. 6. *Joanna*, the King's sister, is married to *Alexander* I. King of *Scotland*; and *Hubert de Burgh* marries King *Alexander*'s sister, with the consent of both Kings, and the advice of each Kingdom.

Pandulph

Pandulph is chosen Bishop of *Norwich*, and resigns his Legateship. *Ann. C.*

William Earl of *Salisbury*, and *Ranulph* Earl of *Chester*, being suspected of an inclination to disturb the state, *Langton* summons a Council at *London*, and threatens to excommunicate them. 1222. *January.*

A great riot happening in *London*, one *Con-Fitz-Arnulph* and two other Ringleaders are hanged, the rest are fined and maimed, and all the Magistrates of the City are turned out. *May. Reg.* 7.

A Parliament meets at *London*, which petitions the King to cause the *Charter of Liberties* to be observed throughout the Kingdom. 1223. *Jan.* 13.

The King accordingly sends writs to all the Sheriffs, to enquire upon the oath of twelve men, in a full County-Court, what were the customs and liberties of *England* in his father's time.

This Parliament grants a *Poll-Tax* for the *Holy Land*.

Philip Augustus, King of *France*, dies, after a Reign of 44 years; and was succeeded by his son *Lewis* VIII. *July* 2.

King *Henry* sends to demand of *Lewis* the territories taken from King *John*; but *Lewis*, contrary to his oath, refuses to restore them.

Hubert de Burgh, in order to remove the Regent from his post, procures a bull from the Pope, declaring the King of full age: But the Barons refusing to comply with it, he endeavours to get their Castles from them by artifice. *Reg.* 8.

King *Lewis* confiscates all the territories held by the *English* in *France*, and makes himself master of *Saintonge*, *La Rochelle*, &c. 1224. *Apr.* &c.

A Parliament meets at *Northampton* upon this occasion. *June.*

Faulk de Brent, being fined for some violences by him committed, seizes one of the Judges, and breaks out into a Rebellion. *July.*

For reducing him, the Parliament grants the King 2 *s.* upon every plough-land. *Reg.* 9.

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, which grants the King a fifteenth for carrying on the war with *France*, upon condition he would confirm the Charters of Liberties; which is accordingly done. 1225. *January.*

Another Parliament is held at *Westminster*; in which *Faulk de Brent* is condemned to abjure the Kingdom for ever, and to lose all his estates. *March.*

Richard, the King's brother, is created Earl of *Cornwal* and *Poictou*, and sent with an army to recover *Guienne*. *Reg.* 10.

Aug. 8. King *Henry* falls ill at *Marlebergh*.

1226. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which declares the
Jan. 14. King (now recovered from his illness) of full age, though he was but 19 years old.

The Pope sends a Legate, to demand two Prebendaries out of every Cathedral, and two Monks portions out of every Monastery; but the Parliament returns him no answer.

Lewis VIII. King of *France* commands the Crusade against the *Albigenses*: And dying in that expedition, is succeeded by his son *Lewis* IX.

King *Henry* continues his preparations to carry the war into *France*, but is hindered from doing it by the Pope.

February. A Parliament is held at *Oxford*.

The King causes all Charters to be renewed, in order to raise money.

Mar. 7. *William Longespée*, Earl of *Salisbury*, dies, being sup-
Reg. 11. posed to be poisoned by *Hubert de Burgh*.

1227. This year also died, in *France*, *Faulk de Brent*.

King *Henry* extorts 5000 marks from the *Londoners*.

February. A Parliament is held at *Oxford*, to whom the King declares he intended to take the management of affairs into his own hands: And accordingly, by *Hubert de Burgh's* advice, he orders the Bishop of *Winchester*, the late Regent, to repair to his Diocese.

In this Parliament, and by the same man's advice, he annuls the two Charters of the King his father.

The Monks are forced to renew their Charters of privileges, and to pay great sums for them.

February. *Hubert de Burgh* is created Earl of *Kent*.

May. *Richard*, the King's brother, returns to *England*.

He has a great contest with the King, about a manor belonging to the Earldom of *Cornwal* that had been granted away to a *German*; and making a league with several Barons, they take up arms to oblige the King to restore the Charters.

Hubert breaks this Confederacy, by satisfying *Richard*,
Aug. 3. and settling upon him his mother's dower, by advice of the
Reg. 12. great men, which met at *Northampton*.

1228. The King, finding the old weights and measures to be false, orders new ones to be made.

July 9. *Stephen Langton*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, dies.

Walter de Hemesham is chosen Archbishop in his room, but his election being approved neither by the King nor the Suffragan Bishops, both sides send Deputies to the Pope.

The

The *Welsh* having attacked and killed several persons belonging to the garrison of *Montgomery*, King *Henry* marches against them, and concludes an inglorious peace with their King *Llewellyn*. *Ann. Chr. August.*

The Emperor *Frederic* II. is excommunicated by the Pope, for neglecting to carry his arms into the *Holy Land*. *Reg.* 13.

King *Henry* keeps his Court at *Christmas* at *Oxford*.

The *Gascons*, taking an advantage of the troubles in *France*, send to desire King *Henry* to come and expel the *French* out of *Guienne*, but he neglects that opportunity. 1229.

The Pope voids the election of *Walter de Hemesham*, and confers himself the Archiepiscopal dignity on *Richard le Grand*, Chancellor of *Lincoln*.

The King's Deputies at *Rome*, having (to gain the Pope) promised him the tenth of all moveables in *England* and *Wales*, the Pope sends one of his Chaplains to collect them.

A Parliament is summoned at *Westminster* upon that occasion, which opposes the levying of the tenths, but they are, notwithstanding, exacted with great rigour.

King *Henry* makes preparations for carrying the war into *France*, but transports being wanting for the troops, he had like to kill *Hubert de Burgh*. *Sept.*

The Emperor *Frederic* II, carrying his arms into *Palestine*, becomes master of *Jerusalem*. *Reg.* 14.

The Archbishops, Bishops, Abbots, and Priors, give the King a large sum for his expedition into *France*; and he also exacts from the City of *London* a great sum of money, and from the *Jews* the third part of their substance. 1230.

He embarks at *Portsmouth*, and lands at *St. Maloes*, *May* 3, where he is received by the Earl of *Bretagne*, who puts his castles and strong towns into his hands: And then he is joined by the *French* Malecontents. *Apr.* 30.

The *Normans* press him to march into their Country; but, instead of that, he goes to *Poictou*, and takes *Mirabel*; comes to *Guienne*, where he receives the fealty of the *Gascons*; and then returns to *Bretagne*, where he spends his time in diversions.

The Court of *France* having quieted the Malecontents, sends an army towards *Bretagne*, at the approach of which King *Henry* shamefully returns to *England*: Leaving his army under the command of the Earls of *Chester* and *Pembroke*. *Reg.* 15. *Oct.* 26.

The King of *Connaught* having invaded King *Henry's* territories, is defeated and taken prisoner.

A Parlia-

Ann. C. 1231. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King a Scutage of three marks of every Knight's fee.

Jan. 26. Prince *Richard* marries *Isabella*, Countess-Dowager of

April. the Earl of *Gloucester*, and sister to the Earl of *Pembroke*: Who dying soon after, leaves his estate to the Prince, but the King seizing it, the Prince departs to *Ireland*, and endeavouring to right himself by force, the King restores that inheritance to him.

May.— The *Welsh* making some incursions, King *Henry* marches

Octob. against them, and causes *Maud-Castle* to be rebuilt.

June. A three years truce is concluded between *England* and *France*.

Aug. 3. *Richard* Archbishop of *Canterbury* dies, in his return from *Rome*.

Sept. *Ralph Nevil*, Bishop of *Chichester*, and Chancellor of

Reg. 16. *England*, is chosen in his room, but the Pope refuses to confirm his election.

1232. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, of which the King

Mar. 7. demands a subsidy, but is refused.

A Confederacy is formed by several of the Nobility against the *Italian* Clergy beneficed in *England*, and their houses are plundered

The Monks of *St. Augustin's* in *Canterbury* proceeding to a second election, chuse *John*, their Sub-prior, Archbishop, but he is also set aside by the Pope.

June. The *Welsh* make inroads into *England*.

Peter des Roches Bishop of *Winchester* is recalled to Court, and made one of the King's Counsellors.

The Sheriffs, and other managers of the revenue, are called to an account, and *Peter de Rivaulx*, the Bishop of *Winton*'s nephew, is made Treasurer of the Chamber.

July 29. *Hubert de Burgh* is turned out, and *Stephen de Segrave* made Justiciary in his room: And other alterations are made at Court.

The King orders *Hubert* to give in his accounts, but he produces King *John*'s charter, and desires time, which is allowed him. In the mean time he takes sanctuary in *Merton* Priory, from whence the King orders him to be forced, but he recalls his order.

Sept. 14. A Parliament meets at *Lambeth*, which grants the King the fortieth part of all moveables in the Kingdom.

Hubert going to visit his wife at *St. Edmundsbury*, is dragged out of *Brentwood* Chapel in *Essex*, where he had

Reg. 17. taken refuge, and carried prisoner to the *Tower*.

The King relenting towards *Hubert*, the Bishop of *Winchester*

chester tries to exasperate afresh *Henry* against him, but through the intercession of some friends, he is left in possession of the best part of his estate, and confined to the Castle of the *Devizes*. *Ann. C.*

John Blund, Reader of Divinity in *Oxford*, is chosen Archbishop, but the Pope refuses also to confirm his election.

The Bishop of *Winchester* forms the project of governing absolutely, and, to support himself, invites over great numbers of *Poictevins* into *England*, who are put into the principal places. 1233.

Richard le Marescbal, Earl of *Pembroke*, makes a remonstrance to the King about it; but receiving an insolent answer from the Bishop of *Winchester*, he, and the rest of the Barons, withdraw from Court.

They are summoned to come to a Parliament to be held at *Oxford*, *June* 24. and twice to one that was to meet at *Westminster*, *July* 11, but they refuse to come.

And hearing that more *Poictevins* were landed in *England*, they send the King word, That if he removed not the Bishop of *Winchester*, and the *Poictevins* from his person, they would elect another King.

Henry, by that Bishop's advice, resolves to reduce them by force, and summons them to a Parliament at *London*, *August* 1, in order to have them condemned, but they come too well attended. Whereupon he proceeds to violence against them, and plunders their estates.

The Earl of *Pembroke* being informed of a design against his life, and withal deserted by his associates, retires into *Wales*, and leagues with *Llewellyn*.

A Parliament, that meets at *Westminster*, *October* 9, makes a remonstrance to the King; which the Bishop of *Winchester* returns such an imprudent answer to, that the rest of the Bishops threaten to excommunicate him. *Reg.* 18.

The Earl of *Pembroke* retakes a Castle, which the King had dishonourably taken from him; and the Bishops refusing to excommunicate him, the King marches against him, but his army is surprized, and routed. *Nov.* 12.

The Earl is taken prisoner at the siege of *Monmouth*, but is rescued again. *Nov.* 25.

Hubert de Burgh, being informed that his life was in danger, escapes from the *Devizes* Castle, and takes sanctuary in a Church, from whence he makes his escape into *Wales*, and joins the Earl of *Pembroke*.

Edmund, Canon of *Salisbury*, is at length chosen Archbishop of *Canterbury*, by the Pope's leave and direction.

The

Ann. C. 1234. *Febr.*— *Apr.* 16. The Earl of *Pembroke* ravages the lands of the King's Counsellors, and burns *Shrewsbury*; but his estates in *Ireland* being ravaged by the King's party, he goes over thither to secure them, and is treacherously slain, by the Bishop of *Winchester*'s contrivance.

Febr. A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, during which the Bishops advise the King to remove the Bishop of *Winchester* and the Foreigners from his person, and they are accordingly turned out.

Apr. 9. Another Parliament is held at *Westminster*.

A peace is concluded with *Llewellyn* King of *North Wales*.

May. *Hubert de Burgh*, *Gilbert Basset*, *Gilbert Mareschal*, and other Lords, are restored to the King's favour.

The Archbishop of *Canterbury* informs the King of the treachery committed against the Earl of *Pembroke*.

June 24. *July* 14. The late Ministers are prosecuted, and obliged to answer to articles exhibited against them.

Reg. 19. *Novemb.* The truce between *Bretagne* and *France* expiring, the King of *France* invades *Bretagne*, and King *Henry* neglecting to send thither sufficient succours, the Earl (*Peter Mauclerc*) is forced to surrender his Dominions to *Lewis*, and turns pirate.

1235. *Febr.* *Segrave* and *Passelew*, the King's late Ministers, make their peace with him, by a present of 1000 marks each.

Isabella, the King's sister, is married to the Emperor *Frederic* II. and the Parliament grants the King for this

Reg. 20. marriage, two marks on every plough-land.

Peter, Bishop of *Winchester*, is sent for by the Pope to *Rome*, in order to be screened from the King's prosecutions.

1236. *Jan.* 14. *Jun.* 20. King *Henry* is married, at *Canterbury*, to *Eleanor*, second daughter of *Raymond* Earl of *Provence*; and she is crowned Queen at *Westminster*.

Jan. 23. A Parliament meets at *Merton* in *Surrey*, where the *Statute of Merton* was enacted.

Apr. 28. Another Parliament is held at *London*, where complaints are made against a new favourite of the King's, *William*, Bishop of *Valence*, the Queen's uncle; whereupon the King makes some alterations in his Court, and among the Sheriffs, to satisfy the Barons.

The Bishop of *Chichester* refuses to resign the office of Chancellor into the King's hands.

The Emperor *Frederic* II. sends to demand his wife's portion, which was not yet paid.

May. *June* 10. *Peter de Rivaulx* and *Stephen Segrave* are restored to the King's favour; by whose pernicious advice, at a Parliament held

held in *June*, *Henry* attempts to annul some grants made before his marriage. *Ann. C.*

Alexander King of *Scotland* demands the County of *Northumberland*; and, so, to satisfy him, King *Henry* settles upon him a yearly pension of eighty marks. *Reg.* 21.

A Parliament is summoned at *London*, by the King's writs (the first mentioned in history) of whom the King demands the thirtieth part of all moveables; and which, upon his confirmation of the charters, is granted him. 1237. *Jan.* 14.

The King squandering that aid upon foreigners, and in useless expences, Prince *Richard* expostulates with him about it.

Simon de Montfort begins to be the King's favourite.

Llewellyn, Prince of *Wales*, puts Himself and his Dominions under the King of *England*'s protection, and does homage to him.

Otho the Pope's Legate comes to *England*, but is not suffered to set foot in *Scotland*.

A Parliament is held at *York*, where the King of *Scots* comes, and has an interview with King *Henry*. *Sept.* 14. *Reg.* 22.

John le Scot Earl of *Chester* dying without issue, that Earldom is annexed to the Crown.

Simon de Montfort marries *Eleanor*, the King's sister, and Countess Dowager of *Pembroke*; at which Prince *Richard* is very angry. 1238. *Jan.* 7.

The Barons being dissatisfied with the King, enter into a league with Prince *Richard*, and demand the redress of the grievances.

The King is forced to comply with them, and some regulations are signed on both sides.

Joanna Queen of *Scots*, and eldest sister of King *Henry*, dies. *Mar.* 4.

Otho the Pope's Legate is affronted at *Oxford*, whereupon the University is put under an interdict.

Peter des Roches, Bishop of *Winchester*, dies at *Farnham*. And King *Henry* endeavours in vain to have the Bishop of *Valence*, the Queen's uncle, chosen in his room. *June* 9.

A villain gets into the King's chamber, with a design to kill him. *Sept.* 8. *Reg.* 23.

Gilbert, Earl of *Pembroke*, being refused entrance into the King's Palace, without any cause, retires into the North. 1239.

The King takes again *Stephen de Segrave* into his Council.

He suffers the bull of excommunication against his brother-in-law, the Emperor *Otto*, to be published in *England*.

A Par-

Ann. C. A Parliament is held about *Easter*.

June 16. *Edward*, the King's son, is born at *Westminster*.

Otho the Pope's Legate commits great exactions upon the Clergy; but demanding an aid for the Pope, he is refused by the Bishops. He finds means at last to go into *Scotland*.

Reg. 24. *Hubert de Burgh* is prosecuted afresh for Misdemeanors during his Administration, but he appeases the King, by delivering into his hands four of his strongest Castles.

1240. The King and Pope oppress the *English* with grievous

Jan. 14. exactions; of which the Bishops complain in Parliament.

A great quarrel happens between the scholars and townsmen of *Oxford*.

Apr. 13. *Llewellyn* Prince of *North Wales* dies; and is succeeded by his son *David*, who does homage to King *Henry*.

The Pope demands the fifth part of the goods of the *English* Clergy, and at last accepts of the fifth part of their rents; at which exaction the Archbishop of *Canterbury* is so uneasy, that he retires to the Monastery of *Pontignac*, where he dies.

A Nuncio arrives in *England*, with orders to all patrons to prefer 300 *Italians* to vacant benefices; and, also to extort money from the Monasteries.

Reg. 25. The King sends Justices itinerant into the Counties, to extort money, under pretence of redressing grievances.

The Earls of *Leicester* and *Pembroke* are received into favour with the King.

1241. *Otho*, the Pope's Legate, being recalled, leaves *England*;

Jan. 7. and is robbed in his journey, by the Emperor's people, of great sums of money he was carrying to *Rome*.

The Pope's Nuncio's continue their exactions.

Thomas, Earl of *Savoy*, the Queen's uncle, coming to *England*, the King extorts 20,000 marks of the *Jews* to defray his expences upon that occasion.

April. *Boniface* of *Savoy*, the Queen's brother, is chosen Archbishop of *Canterbury*.

June 27. *Gilbert* Earl of *Pembroke*, and Earl-Marshal, being killed by a fall from his horse, is succeeded by his brother *Walter*.

Septemb. *David*, Prince of *Wales*, delivers up his brother *Griffin* to King *Henry*, who imprisons him, with several of the *Welsh* Nobility, in the *Tower* of *London*.

Isabella, Empress of *Germany*, King *Henry*'s eldest sister, dies.

Reg. 26. And also *Eleanor*, sister to *Arthur* Duke of *Bretagne*, in her confinement in *Bristol* Castle.

Richard, Earl of *Cornwal*, invests his brother King *Henry* with

with the Earldom of *Poictou*; and the King of *France* invests his brother *Alphonso* with the same. *Ann. C.*

The Earl of *Marche* refusing to do homage to *Alphonso*, engages King *Henry* to carry the war into *Poictou*. 1242.

King *Henry* thereupon summons a Parliament, and demands an aid, which is denied him; so that he is forced to raise money, by way of gift, or loan, and by taking a sum of money from each of the military tenants. *January*.

A marriage is concluded between his daughter *Margaret*, and the son of *Alexander* King of *Scotland*, to whom is committed the custody of the northern borders.

King *Henry* embarks at *Portsmouth*, with three hundred soldiers, and lands at *Saintonge*, where he is joined by the Earl of *Marche*, and some *Poictevin* Noblemen, and raises an army in *Poictou*. *May* 15.

He sends Ambassadors to King *Lewis*, to demand all that had been taken from the *English*, by *Philip Augustus*; and, in case of refusal, to declare war.

Lewis offers to renew the truce for six years, and to deliver to King *Henry* the greatest part of *Normandy* and *Poictou*; but *Henry*, through the advice of the *Poictevins*, rejects those advantageous offers, and sends to defy *Lewis*.

The *French* take *Fontenay*, and beat the *English*, so that *Henry* is forced to retire to *Bourdeaux*.

His Queen is there brought to bed of a daughter named *Beatrix*. *July* 25.

The Earl of *Marche* makes his peace with *Lewis*.

A five years truce is concluded between the Kings of *England* and *France*.

King *Henry* spends the rest of this year, and the best part of the next at *Bourdeaux*; where he lives in a very extravagant manner, and sends for a great deal of money from *England*. *Reg.* 27.

1243.

The Parliament grants the King a scutage of twenty shillings of every Knight's fee.

A great sum of money is extorted from the Citizens of *London*, by way of *Loan*.

King *Henry* ratifies the truce. *Mar.* 12.

He returns to *England*, and is received with extraordinary pomp in the places through which he passes. *Sept.* 25.

Soon after, he extorts sixty thousand marks from the *Jews*. *Reg.* 28.

Richard Earl of *Cornwal* marries *Cincia*, or *Sanchia*, sister to *Eleanor*, King *Henry*'s Queen. The wedding dinner consisted of 30,000 dishes. *Nov.* 23.

This year died the famous *Hubert de Burgh*.

A Par-

Ann. C. 1244. *January. February.* A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, which refuses to grant the King an aid he required, and even contrives a *new model of Government*; but at last they grant a scutage of twenty shillings on every Knight's fee, upon the King's promising to see the charters punctually observed.

Martin, the Pope's Nuncio, extorts money from the Clergy, but demanding an aid of them, he is refused. He suspends those Bishops that refused to prefer the Pope's relations.

Mar. 1. *Griffin* endeavouring to escape out of his confinement in the *Tower*, breaks his neck.

David, Prince of *Wales*, thereupon revolts against King *Henry*, and makes war upon Him and the Lords Marchers.

Alexander II, King of *Scotland*, sends King *Henry* word, he intended no longer to do him homage for the lands he *August.* held of the Crown of *England*; but King *Henry* marching against him, *Alexander* sues for peace.

Reg. 29. *David*, Prince of *Wales*, in order to free himself from his subjection to King *Henry*, offers to become the Pope's vassal, and pay him tribute.

Nov. 3. A Parliament is held, which refusing to grant the King an aid for the war with the *Welsh*, he extorts 1500 marks from the Citizens of *London*.

Lewis obliging the *English*, settled in his Dominions, to relinquish their estates either in *France* or *England*, King *Henry* thereupon seizes all the lands held by the *French* in *England*.

1245. *Edmund*, the King's second son, is born.

Jan. 16. *February.* The war is renewed with the *Welsh*, with equal success on both sides.

The Barons resolving to free the Kingdom from the tyranny of the Court of *Rome*, send orders to the Wardens of the Ports, to stop all persons bringing in any bulls or mandates from the Court of *Rome*.

Accordingly, a Messenger from the Pope is seized with bulls about him, and the King ordering him to be released, they lay before him the value of the income enjoyed by *Italian* Ecclesiastics in *England*, amounting to 60,000 marks a year.

July. The Barons send away *Martin*, the Pope's Legate.

They send a letter to the General Council at *Lyons*, wherein they lay open the Pope's oppressions. And their Ambassadors complain before the Council, of the tribute imposed by King *John*, and of the clause *Non-obstante*; and protest against the tribute.

The

The Pope pretends to give the *English* satisfaction; but he obliges the Bishops to confirm with their seals the Charter of Tribute granted by King *John*. *Ann. C.* *Reg.* 30.

King *Henry* marches against the *Welsh*, and builds *Ganoc* Castle.

Some *Irish* land, by the King's command, in the Isle of *Anglesey*, and ravage that place.

Walter, Earl of *Pembroke*, and *Anselm* his brother and heir, dying without issue-male, the noble family of *Strighel* became thereby extinct; in which the dignity of *Earl-Marshal* was hereditary. *Dec.* 4. *Dec.* 22.

King *Henry* began this year to pull down the old Abbey-Church at *Westminster*, and to rebuild it, as it now stands.

David Prince of *North Wales* dies, and is succeeded by his nephew *Llewellyn*, *Gruffydh*'s son. 1246. *March.*

A Parliament is held at *London*, wherein severe laws are made against the robbers of parks and warrens.

In this Parliament, the King, Bishops, Abbots, and Barons agree, to represent their grievances to the Pope in several letters, and to desire him to remove them.

Instead of removing them, the Pope accuses the Clergy of being the authors of those letters, and therefore loads them with new taxes, commands them to raise a certain number of men to fight against the Emperor, and claims the goods of intestate Clergymen.

But imposing a tallage of 6000 marks upon them, the King puts a stop to it. *Apr.* 1.

Upon the return of the persons sent to the Pope with the letters, a Parliament is held at *Winchester*. *July* 7.

Isabella, the King's Mother, and Countess of *Marche*, dies. *Reg.* 31.

Roger Bigod Earl of *Norfolk*, who had married *Maud*, eldest daughter of the late Earl of *Pembroke*, is created Earl-Marshal.

A Parliament is summoned at *London*, to consider of the Pope's exactions, from which the Bishops absent themselves. 1247. *January.*

The Parliament meets again, and sends letters to the Court of *Rome* against its exactions. *Febr.*

Another Parliament meets at *Oxford*, upon the same occasion.

Guy de Lusignan, *William de Valence*, and *Athelmar* the King's brothers-in-law, arrive in *England*, and he is forced to maintain them. *Reg.* 32.

A Parliament meets at *London*, which refuses the King an aid, and complains of his ill management; and so is 1248. *Feb.* 9.

Ann. C. prorogued till *June*. It meets again, but still refusing to
June. give the King an aid, it is dissolved.

To raise money, the King is forced to sell his jewels, and plate, which are purchased by the *Londoners*.

Oct. 13. Incensed at that, he proclaims a new fair at *Westminster*,
Reg. 33. to last a fortnight, during which all commerce is prohibited at *London*.

1249. To vex the *Londoners* the more, he keeps his *Christmas* in *London*, and compels the Citizens to present him with large New-year's gifts, and to pay him 2000 *l.*

He tries to borrow money from the great Men, and the Abbies, but the most part of them excuse themselves.

Nicolas Bishop of *Durham* resigning his Bishopric, the King endeavours in vain to have his brother-in-law *Athelmar* chosen for his Successor.

June. *Simon* Earl of *Leicester* reduces some Rebels in *Gascogne* to the King's obedience.

July. 3. *Alexander* II, King of *Scotland*, dies, and is succeeded
Reg. 34. by his son *Alexander* III.

1250. Prince *Richard* goes with a magnificent retinue to confer
January. with the Pope at *Lyons*, about his being made Emperor.

Mar. 17. King *Henry* undertakes the Crusade, in order to draw a large subsidy from the Parliament under that pretence.

He sends two Judges in all the Counties, to make inquisition concerning trespasses upon the royal forests, who scrape up together a large sum of money by fines and confiscations.

Athelmar, the King's brother-in-law, is, by his earnest sollicitations, chosen Bishop of *Winchester*.

Reg. 35. *Lewis* IX. King of *France*, having undertaken the Crusade, is taken prisoner by the *Saracens* near *Damietta*.

This year died the Emperor *Frederic* II.

The King begins to use the clause, *Non-obstante*, in his grants.

1251. *Simon* Earl of *Leicester* having reduced the rebellious *Gascons*, returns to *England*; but he goes back again to *Gascogne* soon after.

Feb. 17. A Parliament meets at *London*.

Part of *North Wales* is entirely subdued, and receives the *English* laws.

The King confirms the liberties of the City of *London*, and allows them to have their Mayor sworn before the Barons of the *Exchequer* at *Westminster*.

Reg. 36. He shews too great an affection for Foreigners, and loads them with presents, at which the Barons redouble their complaints.

Alexander

Alexander III, King of *Scotland*, marries *Margaret*, eldest daughter of King *Henry*, at *York*; and does him homage for the lands he held of the Crown of *England*, but refuses to do it for all *Scotland*. *Ann. C. Dec.* 26.

The Pope pressing King *Henry* to hasten his preparations for the *Holy Land*, he extorts money from the *Jews*, and his other subjects, under that pretence, but however does not go. 1252.

The *Gascons* send complaints against *Simon* Earl of *Leicester*, accusing him of unfaithfulness and treachery; but he comes over, and justifies himself so well, that he is sent back to *Gascogne*.

The Archbishop of *Bourdeaux* comes and renews the *Gascons* complaints against the Earl; whereupon the King, to secure their allegiance, has *Leicester* tried by his Peers; and, calling him *Traytor*, *Leicester* gives him the lye. However, he dares not apprehend him, but sends him Governor again to *Gascogne*; where he had like to be slain.

Prince *Edward* is invested with *Guienne*.

The King assembles the Bishops, and tries to obtain from them the tenths of all the Clergy's revenues for three years, towards the Crusade; but they refuse him. *Oct.* 13. *Reg.* 37.

He extorts 20 marks of gold from the Citizens of *London*, and makes them shut their shops during *Westminster* Fair.

The Pope offers (by his Nuncio) to Prince *Richard* the Kingdoms of *Apulia*, *Naples*, and *Sicily*, but the offer is not accepted by the Prince. *Nov.* 11.

The *Italian*, and other foreign Ecclesiastics, are found, by an exact account taken this year, to be possessed of 70,000 marks yearly income in *England*, whilst the King's revenues scarce amounted to a third part of that sum.

King *Henry* extorts 200 marks from the Citizens of *Winchester*. 1253.

Alphonso King of *Castile* endeavours to make himself master of *Guienne*, pretending a grant from King *Henry* II.

The King thereupon calls a Parliament, and demands an aid for his old pretence the Crusade: At last, after many debates, the Clergy grant him the tenths of their revenues for three years, and the Barons 3 marks of every Knight's fee, upon his promising solemnly to observe the two Charters. *April.*

A terrible curse is denounced by the Archbishop, against all that should oppose the observance of the two Charters, and against the violators of the laws of the Kingdom. *May.* 3.

Ann. C. The King contrives all possible means to break through his late solemn engagement, and resolves to apply to the Pope for a dispensation from his oath.

He sets out for *Guienne*, *August* 6, and arriving at *Bourdeaux* the 15th, soon makes himself master of all the places seized by *Alphonso*'s Adherents.

Reg. 38. In order to put a stop to the King of *Castile*'s ambitious projects, King *Henry* proposes a marriage between his son Prince *Edward*, and *Eleanor*, *Alphonso*'s sister; which being accordingly concluded, *Alphonso* resigns all his pretensions to *Guienne* to *Edward*.

Simon Earl of *Leicester*, who was retired into *France*, comes and offers his service to King *Henry*; and the *Gascons* return to their allegiance.

1254. *Jan.* 27. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, of which the King's Commissioners demand an aid for the war against the King of *Castile*; but the Parliament being informed of the treaty lately concluded with that King, refuse to grant any aid.

The King thus disappointed, orders so great a sum to be extorted from the *Jews*, that they desire leave to quit the Kingdom, but are not permitted.

May 29. The Queen, with her sons *Edward* and *Edmund*, sails from *Portsmouth* for *Bourdeaux*; and Prince *Edward* going to *Burgos*, is married to the Infanta *Eleonora*. After which the King his father confirms to him, by a new patent, the grant of *Guienne*, adding thereto *Wales* and *Ireland*.

Reg. 39. The Pope makes an offer of the Crown of the two *Sicilies* to King *Henry*, but he refuses it.

King *Henry* returns to *England* through *France*, and lands at *Dover*, *Decemb.* 27.

1255. The City of *London* makes him a present of 100*l.* and a piece of plate; and yet he fines it 3000 marks, for suffering a Priest accused of murder to escape out of *Newgate*.

The King demanding of the *Jews* 18,000 marks, upon pain of death, they desire leave to depart the Kingdom; but the King assigns them over to his brother Earl *Richard*.

A Parliament meets at *London*, of which the King demands an aid to pay his debts, that amounted to 150,000 marks, but it is not granted him, though he causes the Charters to be proclaimed a-new in all Counties.

The Pope offers King *Henry* the Crown of the two *Sicilies*, but he does not accept of it.

Conrade takes *Naples*, and murders his brother *Henry*, but he is poisoned by his bastard-brother *Manfred*, who makes himself master of the two *Sicilies*.

Pope

Pope *Innocent* IV. offers the Crown of *Sicily* to King *Henry*, for Prince *Edmund* his second son; which he accepts of, without consulting his Brother and the Parliament, and sends the Pope great sums upon that account. *Ann. C. October.*

The Parliament meets again at *Westminster*, but refusing to grant the King an aid, it is dissolved. *Oct.* 18. *Reg.* 40.

Rustand, the Pope's Nuncio, comes to *England*, with several bulls, to get money for the *Sicilian* expedition.

The Pope issues out several other bulls, to get money from *England*, upon the same score. 1256.

He borrows, in King *Henry*'s name, 135,540 marks; and, to discharge it, causes obligatory notes to be drawn on the Bishops and Abbots in *England*.

A Parliament meets in the Chapter-House at *Westminster*, of which the King demands an aid for placing his son *Edmund* on the Throne of *Sicily*; but they refuse it, and give reasons for their denial. *March.*

King *Henry*, after some struggle, gets the Clergy to be bound for the sums borrowed by the Pope in his name.

A proclamation is issued out, commanding all that were worth 15 *l.* to take the order of Knighthood, or to pay a certain sum.

The *Welsh*, being oppressed with taxes, take up arms, and invade the borders of *England*.

The sentence of excommunication is denounced against all the transgressors of *Magna Charta*.

King *Henry* remits 5000 marks to the Pope, and causes Prince *Edward* to ratify the contract relating to *Sicily*.

The Pope sends a Nuncio to *England*, with several bulls to get money to pay his pretended debt. *Reg.* 41.

Prince *Richard* is chosen King of the *Romans*, who going into *Germany*, carries over with him 700,000 *l.* sterling in ready money. 1257.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King an aid of 50,000 marks. *March.*

The war with the *Welsh* is carried on, but King *Henry*'s forces are defeated, and himself forced to return with disgrace.

He sends Ambassadors to the King of *France*, to demand *Normandy*, and the other Provinces taken from the *English*; but they return without success.

The Pope orders his Nuncio to excommunicate King *Henry*, if he did not speedily undertake the conquest of *Sicily*; whereupon, the King desires, that the terms on which it was granted to his son might be softened, and sends Ambas- *Reg.* 42.

Ann. C. sadors to *Rome*, to renounce in *Edmund*'s name that imaginary Crown; but the Pope, instead of receiving that renunciation, sends a Nuncio with fresh bulls to get money.

This year, the King coined a *Penny* of pure *Gold*, weighing two Sterlings, which was ordered to go for 20 shillings.

1258. The Barons begin to take measures against the King, and resolve to reform the Government.

April. A Parliament meets at *London*, of which the King demands an aid for the affair of *Sicily*; but, instead of granting him one, they complain of the breach of his promises, and of several other grievances.

At last, after several debates they promise to grant him an aid, provided he would reform the Government.

June 11. For that purpose the Parliament is adjourned to *Oxford*, and 24 Commissioners are chosen (half by the King, and half by the Commons) of which *Simon* Earl of *Leicester* was President; and they draw up articles for the reformation of the Government and Kingdom.

They chuse *Four* out of their own body, who were to appoint the King's Council.

And ordain, That the Justiciary, Chancellor, Treasurer, and other public Ministers, should be chosen yearly by the *Twenty-four*; That they should have the custody of the King's Castles; and, That there should be three Parliaments every year.

The Commons, or Community, chuse twelve persons, to represent them in these Parliaments.

Prince *Edward*, the Earl of *Warren*, *Henry* son of *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal*, the King's half-brothers, the Queen's relations, and other Foreigners, oppose the *Provisions of Oxford*.

July. The *Poictevins*, and other Foreigners, steal away privately, and go and shut themselves up in *Winchester* Castle, and having obtained a safe conduct return into their own Country.

The Barons enter into an *Association* to stand by the provisors of *Oxford*; and the City of *London* accedes to the same.

July. The Parliament, which had broke up at *Oxford* in confusion, meets again at *Winchester*, and passes an act for the perpetual banishment of the Foreigners; and the King, Prince, and Barons agree.

Reg. 43. The Barons write to the Pope to excuse and justify their proceedings.

The

The Pope continues to press the King on the business of *Sicily*. *Ann. C.*

Richard, King of the *Romans*, having given the Barons notice of his intentions to return to *England*, they send him word, They would not suffer him to enter the Kingdom, unless he swore to observe the *Oxford Provisions*; and so, upon his landing at *Dover*, he is constrained to swear to them. 1259. *January.*

A Parliament meets at *London*. *Feb.* 9.

The Barons conclude a disadvantageous treaty with *France*; in pursuance of which, King *Henry* goes to *Abbeville*, and publicly quits all claim to *Normandy* and *Anjou*. From which time the title of *Duke of Normandy and Anjou* was left out of the King's public instruments. *April.* *Novemb.*

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, wherein the sentence of excommunication is denounced against the violators of the *Oxford Provisions*. *October.* *Reg.* 44.

The *Twenty-four* forbid the sending to the *Italian* Ecclesiastics, the incomes of their benefices in *England*.

The Earl of *Leicester* assuming too much power, the Earl of *Gloucester*, and others, become jealous of him. 1260.

King *Henry* being come to *St. Omers* in his way to *England*, receives a false information of his son *Edward*'s aspiring to the Crown, and raises an army for his defence; but his fears are dispelled, by a submissive letter from the Prince and Barons, who met in a great Council at *London*, for that purpose.

The King returns to *England*; and summons an Assembly of the Nobility at *London*, before whom Prince *Edward* clears himself. *April.*

The Earl of *Gloucester* accuses the Earl of *Leicester* of great offences, but the former withdraws his accusation on the day of trial.

Richard King of the *Romans* goes to *Germany* in hopes of being owned for Emperor, but being disappointed, returns to *England*. *June.* *October.*

The King and Queen of *Scotland* come to visit King *Henry*. *Reg.* 45.

John de Dreux Duke of *Bretagne* comes to *England*, and marries *Beatrix* the King's second daughter.

A Parliament is held, where a new Justiciary, Chancellor, and Treasurer are appointed by the Barons.

King *Henry* invites over *Athelmar* Bishop of *Winchester* to *England*, but he dies on the road.

Ann. C. arbitration of the King of *France*; and *Henry* goes over to
Dec. 28. *France* for that purpose; and meets *Lewis* at *Amiens*,
1264. *January* 23.

Febr. 3. *Lewis* pronounces sentence in favour of King *Henry*, restoring him to his antient power, and annulling the *Oxford Provisions*.

The Barons refuse to stand to this award, and renewing the war, seize *London*, and other places.

Febr. King *Henry* returns to *England*, and holds a Parliament at *Oxford*, from whence he had driven out the Scholars.

April. He becomes master of *Northampton*, *Leicester*, and *Nottingham*.

And then advances towards *London*, but the Citizens marching out against him, he retires into *Kent*, and from thence to *Lewes* in *Sussex*.

The Barons assemble their forces, having a reinforcement of 15,000 *Londoners*, and go and encamp at *Flexning* in *Sussex*; from whence they send a respectful letter to the King, but he, and the Barons of his party, send a very
May 12. rough answer, and defy them.

The Barons send the Bishops of *London* and *Worcester* to mediate a peace, but the King rejects their offers, and defies them; whereupon they renounce their fealty to him.

May 14. The battle of *Lewes* is fought between the King and the Barons, wherein about 5,000 are slain, and King *Henry* and *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal*, with several others, are made prisoners. The King's standard was a Dragon.

Prince *Edward*, having at first beaten the *Londoners*, and pursuing them too far, is also taken prisoner.

Some articles, called the *Mise of Lewes*, are signed by the Prince and the Barons, and confirmed by the King.

The Earl of *Leicester* makes use of the King's name, to get all the Castles, and other places, in his hands.

Conservators of the peace are appointed in the several Counties.

The Barons form a new plan of Government, and order four Knights out of each County to be chosen by the assent of the County, and sent to the ensuing Parliament.

June 22. The Parliament meets at *London*, and confirms the Barons plan of Government; which appointed three persons, to chuse nine Counsellors, three whereof to be always at Court, and nothing to be done without their advice.

The King and Prince are forced to consent to this ordinance.

The Barons write to the King of *France*, and to the Pope's Legate who was there, to excuse their proceedings. *Ann. C.*

Queen *Eleanor* raises a large army in *France*, to deliver the King her husband, but is hindered from landing by contrary winds. *July.*

Some Barons in the Marches of *Wales* cause an insurrection, but are defeated by the Earl of *Leicester*. *Reg.* 49.

The Earl of *Leicester* being suspected of aspiring to the Crown, *Gilbert de Clare* Earl of *Gloucester* grows jealous of him, and declares against him. 1265.

A Parliament meets at *London*, in which *Robert de Ferrers*, Earl of *Derby*, is accused of great misdemeanors. *Jan.* 15.

Another Parliament meets at *Westminster*, to which were returned *two Knights* out of each Shire, and *two Citizens* and *Burgesses* out of each City and Borough. *Jan.* 22.

The writs of summons to these Knights and Burgesses, are the first of the kind that are extant upon record.

Prince *Edward* is released out of *Dover* Castle, and delivered to the King his father, who continues still a prisoner. *Mar.* 14.

The Earl of *Gloucester* joins with the Barons of the *Marches*, and declares openly against the Earl of *Leicester*, but the latter denounces them enemies to the State, and marches against them.

Prince *Edward*, by the Earl of *Gloucester*'s contrivance, escapes out of the Earl of *Leicester*'s hands, and joins the Earl of *Gloucester*, who makes him swear to redress the grievances, and then gives him the command of his troops. *May.*

The Earl of *Leicester* causes the King to write letters to several persons, enjoining them not to come in to the Prince. *May* 30. *June* 7.

Many Barons and Soldiers repairing to the Prince, he soon finds himself at the head of a considerable army, wherewith he takes *Gloucester*, and drives the Earl of *Leicester* into *Wales*.

Simon de Montfort, the Earl of *Leicester*'s son, is defeated near *Kennelworth* by Prince *Edward*. *Aug.* 1.

The battle of *Evesham* is fought, wherein Prince *Edward* gains the victory, and releases the King his Father; and *Simon de Montfort*, Earl of *Leicester*, with several other Noblemen, are slain. *Aug.* 4.

The Earl of *Leicester* passes for a Saint after his death, and several miracles are pretended to be wrought at his tomb.

King *Henry* comes to *Worcester*, where he revokes most of the grants and patents made during his captivity. *August.*

He

Ann. C. He comes to *Winchester*, where a Parliament is held,
Sept. 14. which grants him the estates of all the Rebels; and decrees, that the City of *London* should forfeit all her liberties, that the posts and chains thereof should be taken away, and the richest Citizens imprisoned.

The Parliament is adjourned to *Westminster*.

Llewellyn Prince of *Wales* invades *Cheshire*.

Reg. 50. The King seizes the liberties of the City of *London*, and makes it pay a fine of 20,000 marks.

He distributes the estates of the late Revolters amongst his Adherents.

Oct. 29. Queen *Eleanor* returns to *England*.

About this time, the custom of beginning the year at *Lady-Day* came to be in use.

The Pope revokes the grant of *Sicily* he had made to Prince *Edmund*.

Ottobon, the Pope's Legate, comes to *England*.

1266. *Simon de Montfort*, the Earl of *Leicester*'s son, and others that had seized the Isle of *Axholme*, are reduced to obedience; and a pension of 500 marks is allowed *Montfort*, but he soon after turns Pirate.

Prince *Edward* chastises the *Cinque-ports*, and forces them to submit to the King.

April. The King lays siege to *Kennelworth* Castle.

May. A fresh Rebellion breaks out in the North, headed by *Robert Ferrars* Earl of *Derby*, but the Rebels are defeated, and the Earl taken prisoner.

Septemb. Some of the Ring-leaders escaping, seize the Isle of *Ely*, from whence they make inroads into the neighbouring Counties.

Adam de Gurdun takes up arms in *Hampshire*, and is defeated in a single combat by Prince *Edward*.

Aug. 24. A Parliament is held at *Kennelworth*, wherein the King confirms the Charter of Liberties, and at the same time was the *Dictum de Kennelworth* enacted.

Reg. 51. Terms are offered to the Malecontents in the Isle of *Ely*, but they reject them, and plunder *Norwich* and *Cambridge*.

The Parliament is by adjournment removed to *Northampton*, where the statute of *Kennelworth* is confirmed.

Novemb. The garrison of *Kennelworth* Castle capitulates, and surrenders on the 13th of *December*.

1267. King *Henry* holds a Conference or Treaty with his Nobility at *London*.

Feb. The King and Prince neglecting to perform their engagements, the Earl of *Gloucester* takes measures against them,

leagues

leagues with *Llewellyn*, and some Barons, and refuses to *Ann. C.*
come to Parliament.

All the military tenants are summoned to meet at *St.* *Feb.* 10.
Edmundsbury, where a Parliament is held, which grants the King the tenths of the goods of Ecclesiastical persons for three years, for reducing the Rebels of *Ely*.

The King sends some Bishops to try to bring those Rebels to their duty, by gentle means; but not succeeding, he marches to *Cambridge*, and blocks them up.

The Earl of *Gloucester* makes himself master of *London*, and besieges the *Tower*.

The King and Prince advance towards *London*, and after *April.*
having relieved the Besieged in the *Tower*, go and incamp at *Stratford*.

The Earl's party plunders *Kent* and *Surrey*, and spoils the King's Palace at *Westminster*.

Peace is made between the King and the Earl of *Glou-* *June* 15.
cester.

The Rebels in the Isle of *Ely* surrender: which puts an *July* 25.
end to the Barons wars.

King *Henry* marches against *Llewellyn* Prince of *Wales*, who had committed several depredations during the late troubles; and *Llewellyn* suing for peace, it is granted him. *Sept.* 25.

A Parliament meets at *Marlebridge*, or *Marlborough*, *Nov.* 18.
where the *Statutes of Marlebridge* were enacted.

A Parliament is held at *Northampton*, where Prince *Ed-* *Reg.* 52.
ward, several Noblemen, and above 120 Knights, under- 1268.
take the Crusade. *June.*

Another Parliament is held at *Winchester*, wherein the *Reg.* 53.
King made Prince *Edward* Lord High Steward of *England*. *Nov.* 17.

The secular Clergy grant a twentieth part of their ecclesiastical livings, which is distributed among the disinherited Nobility and Gentry.

The King issues out a Proclamation, which made stealing of cattle capital.

A Parliament is held at *London*. 1269.

Richard, King of the *Romans*, returns to *England*, bring- *Aug.* 3.
ing over with him a new wife, *Beatrix* daughter of *Theodoric de Falkmorite*.

Prince *Edward* goes to *Paris*, and engages to accompany St. *Lewis* King of *France* to the *Holy Land*, who lends him 30,000 marks.

The body of *Edward the Confessor* is removed into the *Oct.* 13.
New Abbey Church at *Westminster*, which was now just *Reg.* 54.
finished.

A Par-

Ann. C. A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, which grants the King a twentieth part of the moveables of all persons, for the expedition to the *Holy Land*.

1270. Another Parliament is held at *Westminster*, which determines some differences and jealousies, still subsisting between
April. Prince *Edward* and the Earl of *Gloucester*.
June. The King, through Prince *Edward*'s intercession, restores the City of *London* to its antient privileges.

In a Parliament held at *Winchester*, the King delivers up the cross to his son *Edward*.

May. Prince *Edward* sails from *England* for *Bourdeaux*, in his way to the *Holy Land*, and winters in *Sicily*.

Aug. 25. *Lewis* IX. King of *France* taking *Tunis* in his way to
Reg. 55. *Palestine*, dies there; and is succeeded by his son *Philip* III: who, instead of pursuing his voyage, returns to *France*.

1271. A Parliament is held at *London*, wherein the *Disinherited*
January. are restored to their estates.

Henry, son of the King of the *Romans*, being sent back
Mar. 31. by Prince *Edward* to take care of *Guienne*, is murdered at *Viterbo*, by *Simon* and *Guido de Montfort*.

Prince *Edward* arrives in *Palestine*, relieves *Acon*, takes *Nazareth*, and performs other exploits.

June 17. He is wounded by an assassin, sent to murder him, but he kills him on the spot.

August. *John*, Prince *Edward*'s eldest son, dies during his absence.
Reg. 56. *Richard*, King of the *Romans*, and brother to King
1272. *Henry*, dies at his Castle of *Berkhamsted*, and was buried in
Apr. 2. the Abbey of *Hayles*.

Joanna, daughter of Prince *Edward*, is born at *Acon*.

Prince *Edward* having concluded a ten years truce with
August. the Sultan of *Egypt*, embarks for *England*, and lands at *Trepani* in *Sicily*, towards the end of *September*.

A quarrel happening between the Citizens and Monks of
August. *Norwich*, the Citizens reduce the Cathedral, and Monastery adjoining, to ashes.

The King thereupon summons all the Bishops and great Men to meet him at *St. Edmundsbury* on *September* 1, and, after consultation with them, goes in person to *Norwich*, and sees the rioters severely punished.

Sept. 29. In his return from thence, he is seized, at *St. Edmunds-*
Reg. 57. *bury*, with a languishing distemper; however he returns, by easy journies, to *London*.

Nov. 16. King *Henry* dies at *Westminster*, aged 66 years, one month, and sixteen days, after a Reign of 56 years, and 20 days.

And

And was buried in the Abbey-Church of *Westminster*, which he had rebuilt.

The Character *of* HENRY III.

This Prince's character so visibly appears in all the circumstances of his life, that it will be needless to draw it more fully. His narrow genius, his easiness to be governed by proud and self-interested Counsellors, his inconstant and capricious temper, and the notions of arbitrary power instilled into him from his very youth, were the real causes of the troubles which disturbed his Reign. Too weak when there was occasion for steddiness, and too haughty when it was necessary to stoop and accommodate himself to the times, he seemed to study incessantly to act contrary to his own interests. Nothing can be said of his courage, since he never gave any sensible proof of it. But he may be justly commended for his continence, and aversion to every thing that looked like cruelty, being always satisfied with punishing the Rebels in their purses, when he might have spilt their blood on the scaffold. He was exceeding greedy of money, but it was to squander it away so idly, that the vast sums he levied upon his subjects made him never the richer. How pressing soever his necessities were, he could not help lavishing his money upon his Favourites, not considering his great pains to obtain aids from his Parliament. This profuseness, and the immense sums fruitlessly employed in the unfortunate affair of *Sicily*, were the principal causes of the mortifications and disgraces he was exposed to during the whole course of his life.

The children of King *Henry* III. were,

1. *Edward*, who succeeded him. 2. *Edmund*, Earl of *Lancaster*. 3. *Richard*. 4. *John*. 5. *William*. 6. *Henry*. (These four last died young.)

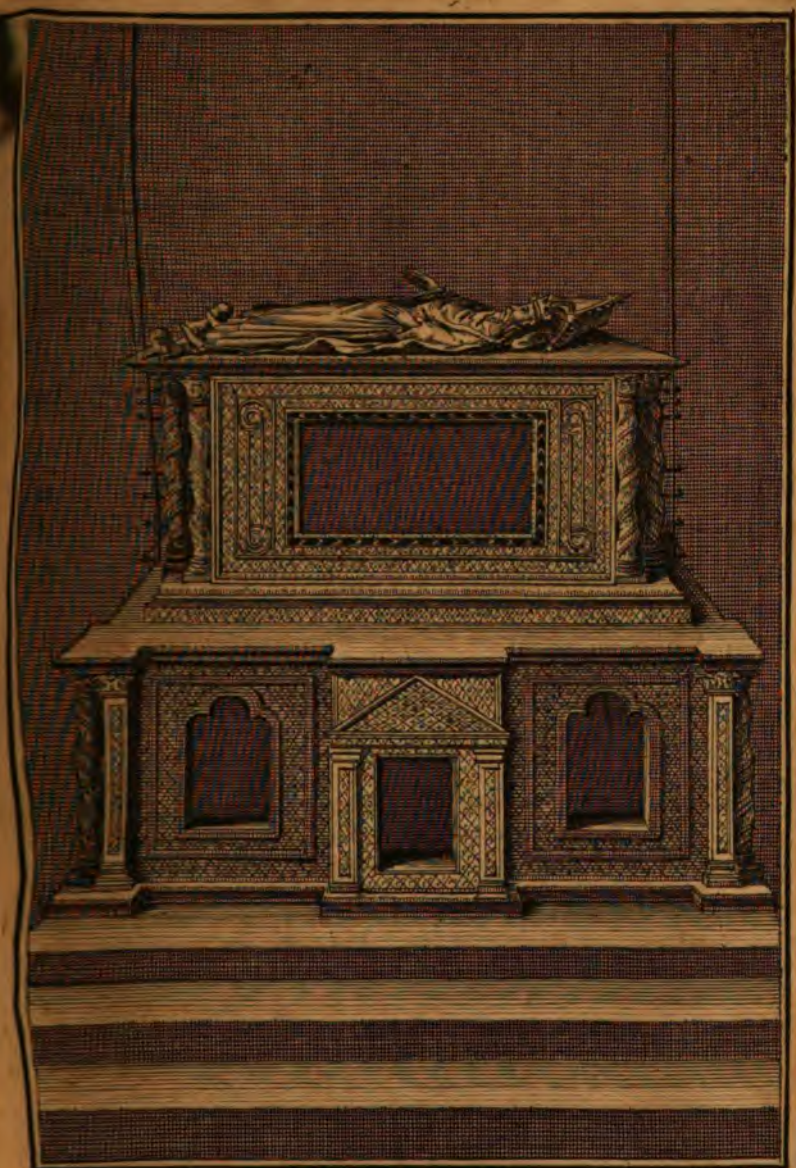
7. *Margaret*, wife of *Alexander* III. King of *Scotland*. 8. *Beatrix*, married to *John de Dreux* Duke of *Bretagne*. And 9. *Catharine*.

Four things especially render this Reign remarkable. The first is, the readiness wherewith the Barons in league against King *John* returned to the obedience of their young Sovereign, the moment they thought their privileges out of danger. The second is, the patience of the Barons, for above

above forty years; though the little regard *Henry* had for them, and the continual breaches of his oaths, gave them but too much cause to complain. In the third place it is to be observed, that to the troubles which distracted this Reign, the *English* are indebted for the liberties and privileges they still enjoy at this day. If the Barons of those days had been more passive, it may be very justly supposed that the two Charters of King *John* would have been buried in eternal oblivion. If their revolt proved in the end fatal to themselves, at least it was beneficial to their posterity, since the Kings, Successors of *Henry*, dreading to expose themselves to the like dangers, durst not any more venture to revoke these Charters, which are the basis and foundation of the liberty of the *English*. Accordingly, they had time to be so strongly established by degrees, that there was no annulling them. Let the Earl of *Leicester* be exclaimed against never so much, let him be called impious and wicked for daring to take up arms against his Sovereign, at least it must be confessed, that his ambition has produced happy effects for the whole *English* Nation. The fourth remarkable thing is, the tyranny of the *Roman* Pontiffs, who, abusing their power, treated the Clergy of *England* with inconceivable rigour.

A Description of the Monument *of* HENRY III.

Upon the north side of EDWARD the Confessor's Monument in Westminster-Abbey, King EDWARD, the Prince's son, erected a magnificent Monument for him. It is Mosaick work of grey marble, chequered with Gilpars and Opals, and other curious stones; in the midst of which are large oblong faces of Porphyry, and Serpentine stone, which he brought from France, when he returned from the Holy Land. Upon the superficies lies the figure of the King in his royal robes with his crown on his head, and his feet placed upon two lions; the whole of copper gilt, and carved *lozenge*; every lozenge containing a lion passant gardant. His globe and scepter, which were formerly in his hands, have been stolen. About the verge of this tomb is a French Inscription in Saxon capitals:



J. Mynde sc.

The Monument of K. HENRY III, in Westminster Abbey.

ICI : GIST ÞENRI : IADIS : REY : DE : ENGLETERE : SEYGNVR DE : ÞIRLAUNDE : DUC : DE : AQUITAYNE : LE : FILZ : LI : REY JOHAN : IADIS : REY : DE : ENGLETERE : A : KI DEU : FACE MERCY : AMEN.

In English:

Here lies HENRY, sometime King of England, Lord of Ireland, Duke of Aquitain, Son of King JOHN, also King of England; on whom may God have mercy, Amen.

On the north side of the same monument in gilt Saxon Capitals are the Latin words:

TERTIUS HENRICUS EST TEMPLI CONDITOR HUJUS. 1273.

DULCE BELLUM INEXPERTIS.

Their sense is:

HENRY the third the (*re*) builder of this Church, 1273. With this Motto:

War is grateful to the unexperienced.

Near the tomb also formerly hung a tablet on a pillar, with these three Latin lines in old English characters:

Tertius Henricus facet hic pietatis amicus,
Ecclesiam fravit istam, quam post renovavit
Reddet ei munus qui regnat trinus et unus.

The English of them in these words:

The friend of piety and alms-deeds,
HENRY the third whilome of England King,
Who this church brake, and after his meed,
Again renewed into this fair building:
Now resteth here, which did so great a thing.
He yield his meed, that Lord of Deitie,
That as one God raigns in persons three.

An Account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

Having largely treated of Scutage in the last Coin-Note, I proceed now to Tallage. There were two sorts of Tallage, one paid to the King, the other to a subordinate Lord. The Tallage rendered to the King, was raised upon his Demeans, Escheats, and Wardships; and upon the Burghs and Towns of the Realm. In elder times it was called *Donum* and *Assisa*. *Donum* was a general word, and used with great latitude. When it was paid out of Knight's fees, it was Scutage; when by Towns and Burghs, it was Tallage; when out of lands, which were not of military tenure, it signified *Hydage*. So that *Donum* signified in general, according as it was applied, either Aid, Scutage, or Tallage. In these senses, the word *Donum* seems to have been used in the Reign of King *Stephen*, and in the beginning of *Henry* II. In the succeeding times, *Donum* came to be used chiefly for Tallage. Tallage was also called *Assisa*. The word *Assisa*, signified among other things, an assessment. It is used for the common charge or assessment, made upon a County for Defaults, and other Amercements. The County of *Berks*, was charged with thirty one shillings and three pence *de communi Assisa*, of that county for Defaults. *Mag. Rot.* 19. *Hen.* I. Those Manors or Lands were, properly, talliable to the King, which he had in his own hands. Hence Tallages are commonly stiled, *Tallagia Maneriorum & terrarum Regis quæ tunc erant in manu ejus*, *Tallagia Dominicorum*, and the like. Under the terms *quæ erant in manu ejus*, were comprehended the King's Escheats and Wardships. For the King held them *tanquam in Dominico*. And in fact, the King's Escheats, and Wardships were wont to be tallaged, when Tallage was assessed upon his Demeans. Moreover, some Serjeanties, of an ignoble and inferior kind, and such as had no military service annexed to them, were wont to be tallaged with the king's Demeans. But it is to be understood, that the King's Serjeanties were not to be tallaged without a special precept. If men were not the King's immediate Tenants, they were tallageable, not to the King, but to their immediate Lord. The Tallages assessed upon the King's Demeans were more heavy than the Tallages upon other persons, living in the Counties at large. For which reason, men sometimes petitioned, that

 they

they might be tallaged with the Community of the County, and not with the Tenants in ancient Demean. When a town was tallaged, the Tallage was raised upon the men of the town, and they were properly the men of the town, who belonged to the Guild, and made Merchandize in the town. If the King granted away a Demean-Manor, or Town, (that was wont to be tallaged) *una cum Tallagiis hominum*, then such Manor or Town became tallageable to the Grantee. However, when the King demised any such Manor, or granted a temporary estate in it, he used to reserve the Tallage to himself and his Heirs. There was also in antient time, a Duty paid to the King, under the name of Carucage; to wit, so much for each Carue of land, holden by base or inferior Tenure. To the head of Tallage, (or else to that of Aid) may be referred the *None*, *Disme*, *Quinzime*, *Vintisme*, *Trentisme*: which were so called from the quantity or proportion of the payment, as their names import. The most antient instance of a Tallage, called by the name of *Decima*, is the sixth of *Richard* I. These quotas, and some others, were partly Seigneurial, and partly mixt. The form of taxing and levying the Nones, &c. with the oaths taken by the Taxors, and the Commissions of the Collectors, are to be seen upon the Revenue Rolls. In these cases, the goods of the chief Taxors were to be taxed by the Treasurer and Barons of the Exchequer, and the robes and *Jocalia* of the Citizens and Burgesses, were not usually taxed with their other goods and moveables. In the most antient times, the Tallages were usually imposed, and set by the King's Justiciers in their respective Iters: Afterwards by Commissioners appointed by the King for that purpose. Anciently, after the Tallages had been assessed, they were usually collected by the Sheriffs of the several Counties. But if a town happened to be let at Ferm to a particular person, not being Sheriff, then the Tallage was commonly collected and answered for by the Farmer, or Provost thereof. Tallage was wont to be assessed upon the men of the Demeans and Towns, sometimes in Gross, *in communi*; sometimes by Poll, *per Capita*, or *per Singulos*; at other times, partly one of those ways, and partly the other. If the Assessors of Tallage over-rated any man, he used to obtain a writ formed upon his case, directed to the Barons of the Exchequer, who by virtue thereof, would relieve him according to equity. Sometimes men were admitted to com-

pound for the Tallage imposed on them, by paying a fine to the King for the same. Tallage was not demandable from Lands holden in *Frankalmoigne*. Neither was Tallage chargeable upon lands holden by Knight's service. Moreover the King, if he pleased, granted to particular persons, a freedom from Tallage. For example, the Templers and Hospitallers of *Jerusalem*, by a very ancient grant from the Crown, had the privilege of having each one man, (called *Liber hospes*) in every Burgh in *England*, who was to be quit of common Assizes, or Tallages assessed within the Burgh. As the King had Tallage of his Demean-Men, so some subordinate or private Lords, had Tallage of theirs. Most of these latter Tallages were also Seigneurial. It appears by ancient Records, that many of the lands which were talliable to private Lords, were such as at one time or other moved from the King, and were wont to be tallaged to him, whilst they were vested in the Crown. As when the king granted to a subject a Demean-Manor, or Town, together with the Homages, Aids, Tallages, and other profits to hold to the Grantee, and his Heirs. In such case, the Grantee had power to tallage the men of such Manor or Town, to his own use, when the King tallaged his Demeans and Manors, throughout *England*; but not otherwise, nor oftener, or in other manner than the King raised Tallage in his own Demeans. For the Tenants were not by the King's grant tallageable to the private Lord, in any other manner than they would have been to the King, if the Seigneury had still rested in the Crown. And when such a private Lord went to raise Tallage, he used to have a writ, (*de habendo rationabili tallagio*) to the Sheriff of the County, to raise the same. As the King had divers ways of raising money upon his Demean-men, so inferior Lords dealt with their Demean-men, after the like manner. But though the Tallages, *&c.* paid to the King, do readily appear by the Revenue Rolls, and other Records; those formerly rendered to inferior Lords by their Demean-Men, are not so easily discovered at this day, having in great measure passed under privacy and silence, except that they are sometimes disclosed in pleas, moved between such Lords and their Men; and likewise in the Revenue Rolls, when the Seigneuries of those Lords happened to be in the King's hands, by escheat, vacancy, or wardship. Private Lords seem to have treated their talliable men with greater severity than the King treated his.

For

For sometimes the farmers have chosen to be talliable to the King, rather than to such Lords; and accordingly have come to the King's Court and alledged, they were talliable to the King. These are some of the notices relating to Tallage, which the ancient Records furnish us withal. In the succeeding times, a different law and usage were, by degrees, introduced. There is a piece published by *Tothill* and *Redman*, amongst the old statutes, under the title, *Statutum de Tallagio non concedendo*, consisting of four clauses: It begins *Nullum Tallagium*, and ends *Sint in perpetuum*. [Sir *Edward Coke* refers this statute (if it be one) to the 34 *Edw.* I. But Mr. *Madox* says he could not find this pretended statute in any Roll or Record. See *Pryn's Hist. of Papal Usurpation, temp. Ed.* I. p. 742——747. Tallage was paid in *Normandy*, in like manner as in *England*.——I proceed to the Revenue arising by Customs. The Custom paid to the King, was anciently wont to be called in *Latin*, *Consuetudo* and *Custuma*. *Consuetudo* was used in an extensive sense, for payments or duties of many kinds. In the 9 *Hen.* III. *Rot.* 6. an accompt was rendered to the Crown of certain yearly duties, *Consuetudines annuæ*, which accrued in the Manor of *Linlee*, and were turned into money. In the accompt of the Issues of the Bishopick of *Winchester*, during a voidance, there was answered to the Crown, the sum of xviil. viis. viiid. *ob.* arising out of a certain payment or duty, (*de quadam consuetudine*) called *Kirketh*, by sale of three thousand eighty seven Hens. *Mag. Rot.* 12. *Ed.* I. In short, *Consuetudines* signified Regal, Episcopal, and other Ecclesiastical dues or payments, and exactions of many kinds. There was a Custom or Duty, paid to the King for Wines, called *Prisa*, and *Recta Prisa*. The proportion was one *Dolium* before the mast and another behind the mast. It is true, *Prisa* was a word of equivocal meaning, properly signifying capture; and was sometimes used for captures taken in war; sometimes for purveyance, impost, or capture of other kinds. In ancient times, the duty for wines called *Prisa*, was received for the King's use by divers officers. In the Reigns of *Richard* I. *John*, and part of *Henry* the third's, it was usually accounted for at the Exchequer, by the Chamberlain of the King's wines, under the title of *Camberlangaria*, or *Cameraria Londoniæ*. From thence to *Ed.* II. it was accounted for by Officers stiled *Captores*, and *Emptores vinorum Regis*. Under *Ed.* III.

and afterwards, by the King's *Pincerna*, or Butler under the title of *Pincernaria Regis*. Besides the Customs paid the King for wines, there were other duties payable to him by Merchants or Traders, for their merchandizes imported or exported, and for commodities conveyed along the river *Thames*. The Duties paid by Merchants were anciently called *Disme*, *Quinzime*, &c. The Duty paid for trafficking along the *Thames*, at least one sort of that duty, was called *Avalagium Thamisiæ*. In the fifth of *John*, *Hugh Oisel*, profered one thousand Marks, to have the *Quinzime*, arising from Merchandizes throughout *England*, from year to year. In the sixth of King *John*, *William de Wrotham*, and others accounted for the *Quinzime* of Merchants at the several ports of *England*, except *Lon*. The *Quinzime* of *London*, was eight hundred thirty six pounds, *&c.* of *Boston*, seven hundred eighty pounds, *&c.* of *Lon*, six hundred fifty one pounds, *&c.* of *Southampton*, seven hundred and twelve pounds, *&c.* In the forty-first of *Henry* III. *William de la Lake* was in arrear six Marks and a half for the term of *Avalage* of the *Thames*. This *Avalage* was a sort of toll. To these may be added, the Duties paid to the King's Chamberlain of *London* for his use, the Duties arising at *Billingsgate*, and by Trouage, *&c.* In the third of *Rich.* I. *Stephen de Blund* accompted for the Ferm of the Troue and Sextury of *London*. In 19. *Ed.* II. the keepers of the Trouage appeared by the Rolls to be free from accounting for the same, though by what Grant, or other means is not known. In 9. *Hen.* III. *Andrew Buckerel*, and *John Trevers*, had *Ripa Reginæ*, or *Queen-Hith*, in Ferm, at forty pounds *per Annum*. In process of time, the King's Customs came to be most generally called *Customa*. In 26 *Ed.* I. there was payable to the King for Customs, for every sack of wool exported from *Lon*, half a Mark; for every three hundred *pelles lanutæ*, half a Mark; and for every last of leather, one Mark. A Writ was issued to the Sheriffs of ten Counties to make proclamation, that all Merchants should carry merchandizes of that sort to the said Port, when they exported them. The Customers of *Lon*, were *Hugh de Messingham*, and *Randph de Kou*. In like manner Customers were appointed for several other Ports, as *New-Castle*, *Kingston upon Hull*, *Bristol*, *London*, *&c.* If Merchants defrauded the King of his Customs, they forfeited their goods uncustomed.——The VIIth Branch of the Royal Revenue, was the casual Revenue,

venue, which accrued to the King several ways. Of this sort were Treasure, Trove, Waif, Wreck, Chattels of felons and fugitives, of out-laws, usurers, recreants, persons executed, &c. The King had, in some cases, the lands of persons condemned, for a year and a day after their condemnation; which was usually called the *year, day, and Waste*. In relation to the Chattels of Felons, if the party died after the felonious fact, and before conviction, his chattels were not by the common law forfeited to the King. Upon perusal of the ancient Revenue Rolls, it appears that in those times many branches of the King's fixed Revenue were charged with Alms, that is, some portion was generally allowed for pious uses. This was called *Eleemosynæ constitutæ, settled Alms*. To which may be added, the *Decimæ constitutæ*. These the Accomptant constantly paid out of the Revenue within his receipt, and had an allowance thereof upon his accompt, by the usage of the Exchequer, without being obliged to sue out a particular Writ of allowance in that behalf. Divers orders of Monks had these yearly Alms or *Decimæ*. Moreover several pensions were wont to be paid to certain of the King's servants, when disabled by age or sickness, *viz.* a penny, three half-pence, two pence a day. These were called, *denarius, diurnus, duo denarii diurni, &c.* and were usually charged on the Ferm of some Sheriff, or other Accomptant. When Persons made Fine with the King for several purposes, they paid to the Queen a Duty or Sum called *Aurum Reginæ*, over and above their fine to the King. Mr. *Prynne* has published a treatise expressly upon this Subject. In the thirteenth of King *John*, *James de novo Mercato*, was charged with five Marks and half of gold, of *Aurum Reginæ*, for his father's and brother's relief, and his own. When men were indebted to the Queen for the *Aurum Reginæ*, she herself sometimes respited or discharged the debt, as she thought fit. For every hundred Marks paid the King, the Queen had one Mark of of gold. In the sixteenth of King *John*, *William Morant*, fined fifty Marks, for Seisin of his land, and paid half a Mark of gold as *Aurum Reginæ*, with the said fine. *Mag. Rot.* 10. *Joh. Rot.* 5.

Having thus gone through the several branches of the Royal Revenue, I shall close all with an account of the Exchequer of the *Jews*. The King of *England*, was wont to draw a considerable Revenue from the *Jews* residing in this Realm; namely by Tallage and Fines relating

ting to law-proceedings, by Amerciaments for Misdemeanors, and by fines, ransoms, compositions, which they were forced to pay for having the King's benevolence; for protection, for licence to trade; for discharges, for imprisonment, and the like. He would tallage the whole community or body at pleasure, and make them answer the Tallages for one another. In short, the King seemed to be absolute Lord of their estates and effects, of their persons, their wives and children. They were a numerous body, (being settled in many, and especially the great towns of the Realm) and by traffick, usury, and Mortgages, they became very wealthy, both in money and land. But as they fleeced the Subjects, so the King fleeced them. The receit, or place appointed for the management of the Revenue of the *Judaism*, was called *Scaccarium Judæorum*, or *Judaismi*. It was a part or member of the great Exchequer. They had their Rolls or Records, wherein the Writs and Proceedings of the *Judaism* were entered. And Summonces issued out of the Exchequer of the *Jews* for the King's debts, like as out of the great Exchequer. In fine, there was also a wardrobe of the *Judaism* near the Exchequer of the *Jews*. In the forty fourth of *Henry* III. it was broke open, and several Rolls taken away. Certain persons were assigned to be Curators of this Revenue; they were usually stiled *Custodes* and *Justiciarii Judæorum*. In the most ancient times, they were commonly *Christians* and *Jews* appointed to act together. Afterwards they were, for the most part, *Christians* only. They were usually put into their Office by the King, by Letters of the Great-Seal. But sometimes the Treasurer and Barons appointed a Justice of the *Jews*, and other Clerks of the *Judaism*, by the King's direction. These Justices of the *Jews* exercised jurisdiction in the affairs of the *Judaism*; namely, in the Accompts of the Revenue; in pleas upon contracts made with the *Jews*; in causes and questions touching their Lands or Chattels, their Tallages, Fines, Forfeitures, and the like. They recorded in the Great Exchequer, as there was occasion, things within their cognizance, relating to the *Judaism*. They made their Record or Declaration before the Barons of the Exchequer, and the Barons adjudged thereupon. In fine, they were looked upon to be Members or Officers of the Great Exchequer, and entitled to the privileges belonging to persons resident there. The *Jewish* Charters (as the Charters of other men) were usually called *Chartæ* and *Chirographa*. Some of them were called

called *Starra*, *Stars*; a Name of *Hebraical* origin. Most of these *Stars* were releases or Acquittances, and written sometimes in *Hebrew*, sometimes in *Latin*, and sometimes in *French*. *Seldan* has published two in *Hebrew*. *Tit. Hon.* p. 644. The most ancient *Jewish* Charter to be met with, is that of *Aaron*, the *Jew of Lincoln*, in 22 *Hen.* II, the tenor whereof is entered in the great Roll of the ninth of *Rich.* I. It is a kind of release. When the *Jews* made any charter or contract, one part of it was to be laid up in a publick Chest provided for that purpose, called the *Chest of the Chirographi*, or of the *Chirographers*. This part of the *Chirograph* was called *Pes Chirographi*. Besides several Clerks, who were employed in writing the Rolls and *Memoranda* of the *Judaism*, there were certain Officers called *Chirographarii* and *Coffrarii*, who had custody of the chests, above-mentioned, and of the *Chirographi* and charters made between the *Jews*, or between them and *Christians*. It is likely they made lists or dockets in writing of all the *Chirographs* that were put in or taken out of the chests. In the archive of the Collegiate Church of *Westminster* there is a roll of these dockets. It begins at the 9th of *Henry* III. The Chirographers were commonly *Christians* and *Jews*, acting together, and were planted in towns, where there was a considerable number of *Jews* as at *Lincoln*, *Oxford*, &c. The chests of the Chirographers were kept with great care. At certain times, they were locked up, and not to be opened again, except at such Terms, or by precept from the King, or the Barons of the Exchequer, or Justices of the *Jews*. When the chests were opened, it was done publickly, in the presence of the Sheriff, (if in the County) and of the Chirographers and Cofferers, or (if in *London*) before the Barons of the Exchequer, or Justices of the *Jews*, or other principal Officers of the *Judaism*. The King, by Writ, ordered the Sheriff of *Wiltshire* to go to the chest of the Chirographers at *Wilton*, and take out, in their presence, all the *Pedes* whereby any debt was secured to *Solomon* the *Jew*, and bring them before the Barons of Exchequer, *Mem.* 42. *Hen.* III. *Rot.* 10. If a Charter made to a *Jew* was lost, or could not be found in the chest; it was usual for the *Jew* to whom it was made, when he was satisfied the Money was due upon it, to come and make an acknowledgment in the Exchequer, by way of release to the party. The having one part of the *Jewish* Chirographs laid up in the King's treasury,

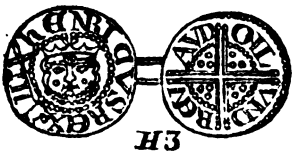
was

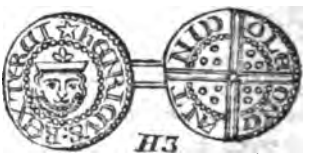
was chiefly to prevent the falsity of the *Jews*, and to enable the King to recover the estates and credits of the *Jews*, and to get them into his coffers, whenever they should become (as they often did) forfeited, or devolute to the Crown. Besides the Chirographers, the Justices of the *Jews* had Clerks under them. There was a *Custos Rotulorum*, and probably other Officers. The *Judaism* seems to have been guided in general by the use of the Exchequer except that in some cases there was a peculiar law or rule, called the law assize, or custom of *Judaism*. It appears that the *Jews* had certain chapters or meetings for affairs relating to themselves. In the reign of *Richard* I. certain rules entitled, *Capitula de Judæis*, were made and given in charge to the Justices errant. They are printed in *Hoveden*, P. II. p. 745. As to the assizes of the *Judaism*, where a contract was made by Chirograph between a Christian and a *Jew*, if a *Pes* (or Counterpart) of such Contract was not found in the chest of the King's Chirographers, the *Jew* was to lose his debt accruing upon such contract. If a *Jew* made a *Star* of release secretly, it was held invalid. By the Assize of the *Judaism*, the *Jews* might have a moiety of the lands, rents, and chattels of their Christian Creditors in execution, till they were satisfied for the debt due to them. The *Jews* paid *relief* for their lands and for their chattels, or money instead of or under the name of *Relief*. The King had the Wardship of a *Jew*'s Heir, and his lands and chattels. A *Jew*'s wife might have dower or thirds out of her husband's credits and chattels. In the 37th of *Henry* III, it was provided, that no *Jew* should remain in *England* without doing the King some service: That there should be no schools for *Jews* in *England*, except in places where such schools were wont to be in King *John*'s Reign: That all *Jews* in their Synagogues should celebrate with a low voice: That every *Jew* should be answerable to the Rector of his Parish for all Parochial dues chargeable on his house: That no Christian should suckle the child of a *Jew*, nor any Christian man or woman serve any *Jew* or *Jewess*, nor eat with them, or abide in their house: That no *Jew* should have secret familiarity with a Christian woman, nor any Christian man with a *Jewess*: That no *Jew* or *Jewess* should eat or buy flesh in *Lent*: That every *Jew* should wear a badge upon his breast: That no *Jew* should enter into any Church or Chapel, unless in passing to and fro: That no *Jew* should hinder another *Jew*, who

was

was willing to turn Christian: And that no *Jew* should be suffered to abide in any town, without the King's licence, except in towns where *Jews* were formerly wont to reside. These articles were to be observed by the *Jews*, under pain of forfeiting their goods. *Claus.* 77. *Hen.* III. m. 18. Though the Exchequer of the *Jews* was, to some purposes, distinct from the great Exchequer, yet both the Exchequer of the *Jews*, and the acts and proceedings of the Justices and Chirographers of the *Jews*, were subject to the controll of the Chief Justiciary, and Treasurer, and Barons of the Exchequer. The debts due from Christians to *Jews*, were subject to such orders as the King thought fit to make. Sometimes the King would grant respites for the payment of such debts, and sometimes would discharge the debts thereof. Again, the Justices of the *Jews* were wont to acompt before the Barons of the Exchequer, for the issues of *Judaism*. And if they misbehaved, they were answerable for the same before the Barons, who, if there was cause, annulled their acts or judgments, and punished them for misdemeanors in their office. In general, the King was wont to use the *Jews* with severity when refractory, and shewed them favour when obedient and compliant. King *John*, in the 2d year of his Reign, granted a Charter of Liberties to the *Jews* of *England* and *Normandy*, which the curious reader may see in *Madox's Hist. of the Exchequer*, p. 174. *Henry* III, for the support of such *Jews* as embraced the Christian Religion, and were destitute of livelihood, founded a House at *London* called *Domus Conversorum*, *The House for the Converts*, and endowed it with a competent Revenue. This House was usually committed by the King to the care and rule of some Clergyman of distinction, called *Custos Domus Conversorum*, and *Gardein des Converses*. It was situate in *Chancellor-Lane*, near the *New-Temple*, and hath been called in the modern times, *The Rolls*. Although the *Jews* were permitted to settle in several populous towns, it is likely they were not welcome to the Inhabitants. One of the liberties granted by *Henry* III. to the men of *Newcastle*, was, That no *Jew* should dwell or stay in the town, ch. 18. *Hen.* m. 16. There is frequent mention in records of an *Episcopus* and *Presbyter Judæorum*. What they mean may in some measure be learned from this case. *Henry* III. appointed the Justices of the *Jews*, to try *Elias the Bishop*, a *Jew* of *London*, for a trespass against the King and his Brother; *Elias* being convicted, was by the said Justices adjudged to be deprived of his *Priesthood of the Community*

Community of the *Jews* in *England*. Hereupon the King, for a fine of three marks of gold paid him on behalf of the Community of the *Jews*, granted them that *Elias* should never afterwards have the said Priesthood: That for the future, no man should be [Chief] Priest of the *Jews*, without being chosen by the consent of their Community; and that the said Community should have free power, after the decease of any Chief Priest, to elect another at their pleasure, and present him to the King for his approbation. In the year 1290, (18 *Edw.* I.) the growing or renewing Revenue of *Judaism* and the Exchequer of the *Jews* ceased; the *Jews* being about that time expelled out of *England*. But by the expulsion of the *Jews* (called then *exilium Judæorum*) many escheats, both of lands and chattels, came into the King's hands.


H3


H3

The Coins of *Henry* III. are sufficiently distinguished, by always having his Number (III.) added to his Title, as HENRICUS. REX III. or REX TERCI. His head is full-faced and crowned, whereof there are two sorts; one with a sceptre, the other without. The Crown (instead of the five points as formerly) consists of a thick line, raised at each end, with a Cross in the middle above the line, and three pearls below. Instead of the four pellets, on the reverse, in form of a Cross, are three in form of a triangle, and a large double line cross, continuing to the outer rim. This King was the first that coined half-pence and farthings round, (as appears by one in the possession of the Earl of *Pembroke*) before which time they used to break the penny into halves and quarters. The Manuscript Chronicle of the City of *London* says, this King, in 1258, coined a penny of pure gold of the weight of two *sterlings*, and commanded it should go for twenty shillings. If this be true, these were the first pieces of gold coined in *England*. But none of these are to be found. The Clippers made such havock of the money in this Reign, that there was hardly a penny to be seen, which had not lost the letters on both sides; so that

that the King was obliged to command all Traders to receive and pay money by weight. This was chiefly owing to the *Italian* Bankers, sent hither under the Pope's protection.

The NOBILITY in this Reign were as follows:

Randal de Meschines (of *Chester*) Earl of *Lincoln*. 1217.

Hubert de Burgh, Earl of *Kent*. 1226. *Feb.* 11.

Richard Plantagenet, Earl of *Cornwal*. 1227. *May* 30.

John le Scot (Earl of *Huntingdon*) Earl of *Chester*. 1232. *Oct.* 28.

John Lacy, Earl of *Lincoln*. *Nov.* 23.

Simon de Montfort, Earl of *Leicester*. 1239. *Feb.* 2.

Baldwin de Rivers (Earl of *Devon*) Earl of the Isle of *Wight*. 1240. *Dec.* 25.

Peter de Savoy, Earl of *Richmond*. 1241. *May*. 1.

John Mareschal, Earl of *Warwick*.

John Fitz-Alan, Earl of *Arundel*. 1243. *May* 7.

John Plantagenet (Earl of *Warwick*, and *Surrey*) Earl of *Sussex*.

John de Plessets, Earl of *Warwick*.

Edmund Plantagenet, Earl of *Chester*. 1253.

——— Earl of *Leicester*. 1264. *Oct.* 25.

——— Earl of *Derby*. 1266. *June* 20.

——— Earl of *Lancaster*. 1267. *June* 30.

William Mauduit, Earl of *Warwick*. 1263.

William de Valence, Earl of *Pembroke*.

William de Beauchamp, Earl of *Warwick*. 1268. *Mar.* 9.

The following Earls and Barons were also summoned to the Parliament of the 49th of *Henry* III.

The Earls of *Leicester*.	*Ralph de Camoys*.
——— *Gloucester*.	*Roger de St. John*.
——— *Norfolk*, Marshal.	*Hugh le de Spencer*, Justiciary.
——— *Oxford*.	*John Fitz-John*.
——— *Derby*.	*William de Munchensy*.

Ann. C.	*Nicolas de Segrave.*	*John de Eyvill.*
	W. de Valence.	*Adam de Newmarket.*
	Hugh Lord *Stanford.*	*Walter de Calevill.*
	John de Vescy.	*William Marmyun.*
	Ralph Basset, of *Drayton.*	*Roger Bertram.*
	Henry de Hastings.	*Ralph Basset*, of *Sapcote.*
	Geoffrey de Lucy.	*Gilbert de Gaunt.*
	Robert de Ros.	*Nicolas de Hastings.* *

State of the Church from 1154, *to* 1272.

THE papal power increases extremely within this period.

The principles on which the ecclesiastical power was founded, were. 1. That Jesus Christ committed the instruction of the Faithful to the care of the Ministers of his Church. 2. That he not only appointed Ministers for the instruction of the Faithful, but also to inspect their life and conversation. 3. That the Church of Jesus Christ ought to be pure and holy, and therefore it is necessary to prevent her being polluted either with sins or errors. 4. That in order to preserve her pure, it is necessary to cut off the rotten members.

---

* *N. B.* Before the 49th of *Henry* III. the antient *Parliaments* consisted of the *Archbishops*, *Bishops*, *Abbots*, *Earls*, and *Barons*. Of these *Barons* there were two sorts, *The greater Barons*, or the King's chief tenants, who held of him *in capite* by Barony: And the *lesser Barons*, who held of the first by military service, *in capite*. The former had summons to Parliament by several writs: And the latter (*i. e.* all those who were possessed of *Thirteen Knight's Fees and a Quarter*) had a general summons from the Sheriff in each County. Thus things continued till the 49th of *Henry* III. But then, instead of keeping to the old form, the prevailing powers thought fit to summon, not all, but only those of the *Greater Barons* who were of their party: And instead of the *Lesser Barons*, who came with large retinues, to send their precepts to the Sheriff in each County, to cause *Two Knights* in every *Shire* to be chosen, and *One* or *Two Burgesses* for each *Borough*, to represent the body of the people, residing in those Counties and Boroughs. Which method hath been kept to ever since.

Frequent

Frequent contests arise about the elections of Bishops and Abbots.

The Court of *Rome* grants large immunities to Churches and Monasteries, in prejudice of the Bishops.

The *Councils* and *Synods* within this period, were as follows:

At *London*.	1154.
One composed of Bishops and Barons.	1155.
At *Chichester*.	1157.
At *Oxford*, against the *Publicans*.	1160.
About *Becket*'s affair.	1166.
At *Armagh*.	1171.
And *Cashel*.	1172.
At *Westminster*.	1175. *May*. 18.
At *Northampton*.	1176.
At *Westminster*.	
XIth Council of *Lateran*.	1179.
At *Pipewell*.	1189.
At *York*.	1195.
At *London*, notwithstanding the *Justiciary*'s prohibition.	1200.
At *Reading*.	1206.
At *London*.	1214.
XIIth Council of *Lateran*.	
The orders of *Dominicans* and *Franciscans* are approved by the Pope.	1215. 1216.
A Council is held in *Osney* Monastery at *Oxford*, wherein three Impostors are condemned.	1222.
A Synod against the marriage of Priests.	1225.
A national Council, in *St. Paul*'s Cathedral.	1237.
A Synod at *Worcester*.	1240.
One called by *Othobon* the Pope's Legate.	1248.
One at *Merton*.	1258.
At *Lambeth*.	1261.
At *Reading*, and *Northampton*.	1266.
A national Council at *St. Paul's*, *London*.	1268. *Apr*. 8.

The most eminent Persons about this time, were,

Joannes Sarisburiensis; *Thomas Becket*, *Stephen Langton*, *Baldwin*, *Edmund*, and *Robert Kilwarby*, Archbishops of *Canterbury*; *Walter de Gray* and *Sewald*, Archbishops of *York*; *Hugh*, Bishop of *Lincoln*; *Robert Grosteste*, Bishop of the same See; *Richard Poor*, Bishop of *Salisbury*, who founded

Ann. C. founded the Cathedral there; *Alexander Cementarius*, and *Alexander Hales*, the irrefragable Doctor.

The most considerable Historians who lived within this period, were,

1153. *Henry*, Archdeacon of *Huntingdon*.
1164. *Simeon* of *Durham*.
1197. *William* of *Newburgh*.
1200. *Gervase* of *Canterbury*.
1203. *Roger de Hoveden*.
1210. *Ralph de Diceto*.
1217. *Walter* of *Coventry*.
Matthew Paris.

BOOK IX.

The Reigns of EDWARD I. *and* EDWARD II. *Containing the space of* 55 *years.*

9. EDWARD I. *surnamed Long-shanks.*

1272. *Nov.* 20. *Reg.* 1. As soon as King *Henry*'s obsequies were performed, the Clergy and Laity, then present, go to the High-Altar, and swear fealty to *Edward*.

Walter Giffard Archbishop of *York*, *Edmund* Earl of *Cornwal*, and *Gilbert de Clare* Earl of *Gloucester*, are appointed Regents of the Kingdom.

Edward is proclaimed King.

Walter de Merton is made Chancellor.

1273. *Jan.* 14. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, consisting of the Archbishops, Bishops, Earls, Barons, Abbots, and Priors, four Knights from every Shire, and four Citizens from each County.

King *Edward* receives at *Messina* the news of his father's death.

He comes to *Rome*, where the Pope grants him the tenths of all Ecclesiastical revenues in *England*, for three years.

Is present at a tournament at *Chalon* in *Burgundy*.

Reg. 2. Comes to *Paris*, where he does homage to King *Philip* for his territories in *France*; and then goes to *Guienne*, and receives the homage of his vassals in that Duchy.

A Tal-

Girtin sc.

A Tallage is assessed upon the City of *Bristol*, and other trading towns. *Ann. C.* 1274.

King *Edward* and his Queen *Eleanor* land in *England*. *July* 25.

They are both crowned at *Westminster*, by *Robert Kilwarby* Archbishop of *Canterbury*; *Alexander* King of *Scots*, and *John* Duke of *Bretagne*, being present. *Aug.* 19.

The King of *Scots* does homage to King *Edward*. *Aug.* 20.

King *Edward* issues out writs to two Commissioners in each County, to enquire, what were the royalties, liberties, and prerogatives of the Crown. *October. Reg.* 3.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, wherein was enacted the *Statute of Westminster the first*. 1275. *April.*

Llewellyn Prince of *Wales* having been summoned to the King's Coronation, and to his first Parliament, and not appearing, *Edward* goes as far as *Chester*, and summons him to come and do him homage, but *Llewellyn* returns a haughty answer; and seizes *Rhudhlan* Castle, and some others, which he demolishes.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, in which the King obtains a fifteenth from the Laity. *Oct.* 18. *Reg.* 4.

Another Parliament is held at *Winchester*, wherein the King confirms the two Charters. 1276. *January.*

Eleanor, daughter of *Simon* late Earl of *Montfort*, that was contracted to *Llewellyn* Prince of *Wales*, is taken, near *Scilly* Islands, in her passage to *Wales*, and brought to King *Edward*.

The Prince offers King *Edward* a great sum of money for her ransom, but it is rejected.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, wherein several persons disinherited for joining with *Montfort* are pardoned; and the Bishops grant an aid. *April.*

Llewellyn is summoned to this Parliament, but refuses to come, and invades the *English* territories.

King *Edward* marches against the *Welsh*, retakes *Rhudhlan* Castle, and sends some forces into *West* and *South-Wales*.

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, in which the Statute of *Bigamy* was made. *Oct.* 4. *Reg.* 5.

The King summons all the military tenants to prepare themselves for the war against *Wales*. *Dec.* 12.

Then he marches against the *Welsh*, and orders the Courts of Justice to be removed to *Shrewsbury*. 1277. *April.*

He causes a large way to be cut through a thick wood; repairs *Rhudhlan*, and new builds *Flint* Castle; and drives the *Welsh* to *Snowdon-Hill*. *June.* *August.*

Ann. C. At the same time, a fleet fitted out by the *Cinque-ports* lands part of his army in *Anglesey*, which conquers that
Reg. 6. Island; and *South Wales* submits to his General.
Novemb. *Llewellyn* sues for peace, which is grated him, upon hard terms.

King *Edward* having built *Lampader-Vaur* Castle, returns to *England*.

The Laity grant him a twentieth, for the charges of the war in *Wales*.

1278. A Parliament is held at *Gloucester*, wherein the *Statute of*
July. *Gloucester* was made.

The King issues out *Quo-Warranto*'s, for people to show their titles to their estates; but *John* Earl of *Warren* and *Surrey*, being cited among the rest, gives a very stout answer, which puts a stop to those writs.

August. King *Edward* goes to the Marches of *Wales*, and having restored *Llewellyn*'s hostages, and forgiven him the sums he was to pay by the late treaty, delivers to him the Lady *Eleanor Montfort*, and they are married at *Worcester*, *October* 3.

October. A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, in which the King
Reg. 7. of *Scots* was present.
Novemb. Two hundred and eighty *Jews* are executed at *London* for clipping, and many more in other parts of the Kingdom.

Joanna, mother of Queen *Eleanor*, dies; by whose death *Ponthieu* and *Montreuil* fall to King *Edward*.

1279. King *Edward* and his Queen go to *France*, where he does
May. homage to King *Philip* for *Guienne* and *Ponthieu*, resigning all right to *Normandy*.

All the money in the Kingdom is new coined, into *Round Pennies*.

October. A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, wherein was enact-
Novemb. ed the *Statute of Mortmain*.
Reg. 8. King *Edward* erects a noble Monument, in *Westminster-*
1280. *Abbey*, for his father King *Henry* III.
Reg. 9. Prince *Llewellyn*'s wife dying about this time, he com-
1281. plains of many very great grievances from the *English*, and taking up arms, defeats King *Edward*'s forces.
June. King *Edward* thereupon summons a great Council at *Worcester*, and orders all the military tenants to repair to him by the 29th of *August*; and then marching into *Wales*, relieves *Rhudblan* Castle that was besieged.
Novemb. He sends the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, to treat with
Reg. 10. *Llewellyn* about a peace, but it was to no purpose.
1282. The Clergy and Laity grant the King a *Fifteenth*, and after-

afterwards the *Thirtieth* part of all their goods. —— The *Ann. C.*
Statute of *Rutland* is made.

King *Edward* advances into *Wales*, and *Llewellyn* retiring to *Snowdon-Hill*, the King causes him to be blocked up there.

The *English* having subdued the Isle of *Anglesey*, some of *Nov. 6.*
them passing from thence into *Caernarvonshire*, over a bridge of boats, are cut off by the *Welsh*.

The Earl of *Gloucester* gains some advantages in *South* *Reg. 11.*
Wales, and *Llewellyn* ravages *Caerdiganshire*.

The *Welsh* are defeated at *Llanfair* in *Buelt*, and Prince *Dec. 11.*
Llewellyn slain.

His head is cut off, and set up on the *Tower* of *London*, crowned with ivy.

King *Edward* becomes master of all *Wales*, and builds 1283.
the Castles of *Aber-Conwey* and *Caernarvon*.

David, brother to the late Prince of *Wales*, is taken, and sent prisoner to *Chester* Castle.

King *Edward* summons a Parliament at *Shrewsbury* (con- *Septemb.*
sisting not only of the Nobility, but also of two Knights out of every Shire, and of the Representatives of Cities and Burroughs) to advise him what to do with Prince *David*.

In this Parliament, *David* is sentenced to be drawn, hanged, and quartered; which is accordingly put in execution.

Wales is united to *England*.

A Parliament is held at *Acton-Burnel*, wherein the Laity *October.*
grant a *Thirteenth*, and the Clergy a *Twentieth*, part of *Reg. 12.*
their goods, for the charges of the late war. In this Parliament was enacted the Statute of *Acton-Burnel*.

King *Edward* goes into *South Wales*, to settle affairs 1284.
there; and spends the rest of this year at *Bristol*, and in *Wales*.

Edward, the King's son, is born at *Caernarvon*. *Apr. 26.*

Alphonsus, his eldest son, dies, and was buried in *West-* *Aug. 19.*
minster-Abbey. *Reg. 13.*

The King holds a Parliament at *Bristol*. 1285.

He returns to *London*, and seizes all the liberties and *Jan. 25.*
franchises of the City, turning out the Mayor.

The King of *France* summons him, to come and assist him against the King of *Arragon*; but a truce being made between those two Princes, King *Edward* goes no farther than *Dover*.

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, wherein was enacted *April.*
the *Statute of Westminster the second*.

Ann. C. Another Parliament meets at *Winchester*, wherein some
Oct. 8. Statutes were enacted.

Reg. 14. The Abbey Church of *Westminster*, having been 66 years in building, was finished this year.

Oct. 6. *Philip* III. King of *France*, dies.

1286. *Alexander* III. King of *Scotland* is killed by a fall from his horse, and succeeded by his grandaughter *Margaret*.

Mar. 19. King *Edward*, intending to go into *France*, holds a
April. great Council at *London*, to consult concerning the Government of the Kingdom, in his absence.

Having constituted *Adomar de Valence* Earl of *Pembroke*
June 24. Regent of the Kingdom, he passes into *France*, where he stays above three years.

There he sollicits in vain the Court of *France*, for the restitution of the places taken from King *John*, and *Henry* III.

He concludes a new treaty with *Philip the Fair*, and does him homage.

Reg. 15. By his mediation, a peace was concluded between the Kings of *France* and *Arragon*.

He sends Ambassadors into *Scotland*, to propose a marriage between their young Queen *Margaret*, and his Son Prince *Edward*.

1287. *Rees ap Meredith* revolts in *South Wales*; but is defeated, and forced to fly into *Ireland*.

King *Edward* sends orders to have all the *Jews* in *England*
May 2. seized on one day; and they are obliged to pay 12,000 *l.*
Reg. 16. of silver.

1288. *John de Kirkby*, the Treasurer, summons a Parliament at
Febr. *London*, of which he demands an aid for the King; but it is not granted.

Reg. 17. This year, wheat was sold for twenty-pence, sixteen-pence, and twelve-pence, the quarter.

1289. King *Edward* returns to *England*, after having been ab-
Aug. 21. sent three years and three months.

He summons a Parliament at *Westminster*, wherein the *Judges*, who were found guilty of bribery and corruption, are severely fined, and have their estates confiscated, to the amount of 100,000 marks.

The Citizens and Burgesses grant him a *sixth* part, and the rest of the Kingdom a *tenth* of all their goods.

Nov. 6. A marriage is concluded between Prince *Edward* and
Reg. 18. *Margaret*, Queen of *Scotland*.

1290. *Joan* of *Acon*, the King's second daughter, is married to
May. *Gilbert de Clare*, Earl of *Gloucester*;

And

And *Margaret*, his third daughter, to *John*, the Duke of *Brabant*'s son. *Ann. C. July.*

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, wherein was enacted, *The Statute of Westminster the third.* The writs, returns, and indentures of this Parliament, and of most since (except from 17. *Edward* IV. to 1. *Edward* VI.) are extant.

The *Jews* are banished the Kingdom.

The articles of the marriage between Prince *Edward* and the Queen of *Scots* are agreed to by the Estates of *Scotland.* *July* 18.

She dies in the Isle of *Orkney*, in her voyage from *Norway* to *Scotland.* *Reg.* 19.

Queen *Eleanor* dies at *Herdeby*, and was buried in *Westminster-Abbey.* At every place where her body rested, King *Edward* caused Crosses to be erected. *Nov.* 27.

John Baliol, Lord of *Galloway*, *Robert Bruce*, Earl of *Annandale*, *Florence*, Earl of *Holland*, *Patric de Dunbar*, Earl of *March*, *William de Vescy*, *Robert de Pynkeny*, *Nicolas de Soules*, *Patric Galythly*, *Roger de Mandeville*, *John Hastings*, *Robert de Ros*, and *John Comyn*, pretend to the Crown of *Scotland.* 1291.

King *Edward*, being chosen Umpire, calls a Parliament of both Kingdoms at *Norham*, and requires the States of *Scotland* to own him for Sovereign. *May* 10.

He produces proofs of the King of *England*'s superiority and sovereign dominion over the Kingdom of *Scotland.* *June* 2.

King *Edward* is owned for Sovereign of *Scotland* by all the Claimants.

He is put in possession of the Kingdom and Castles of *Scotland.* *June* 4.

Eleanor, King *Edward*'s Mother, dies, and was buried in the Church of *Ambresbury.* *June* 25.

The Competitors to the Crown of *Scotland* put in their claims: But King *Edward* puts off the decision of the affair till *June* 2, 1292, and returns to *England.* *Aug.* 3. *Reg.* 20.

A Parliament is held at *Westminster.* 1292.

King *Edward* repairs to *Berwick*, and, after hearing the pleas of the several Competitors to the Crown, he moves that the titles of *John Baliol* and *Robert Bruce* should be first examined. *June* 12.

Then the business is adjourned to *October* 14.

A Parliament of both Kingdoms meeting on the day appointed, the claims and reasons of *Bruce* and *Baliol* are heard, and examined. *Oct.* 14.

Ann. C. *Nov.* 3. *Reg.* 25. A Parliament is held at *St. Edmundsbury*, wherein the Citizens and Burgesses grant the King the *eighth* part, and the rest of the Laity the *twelfth* part of their goods; but the Clergy refuse to give any thing.

1297. King *Edward* forms a league (with the Emperor, the Dukes of *Austria*, and *Brabant*, the Archbishop of *Cologne*, and the Earls of *Flanders*, *Holland*, *Juliers*, and *Luxemburgh*) against *France*.

Elizabeth, the King's seventh daughter, marries *John*, son of the Earl of *Holland*.

Jan. 14. A Parliament, or great Council, is held at *Westminster*; wherein the Clergy continuing to refuse the King an aid, *February.* he commands their lay-fees to be seized, and themselves *March.* to be put out of the protection of the laws: At last they day a fifth part of their estates.

Feb. 25. At a great Council at *Salisbury*, the Barons, and particularly *Humphrey de Bohun*, High-Constable, and *Hugh de Bigod*, Earl-Marshal, refuse to serve the King beyond sea.

Being disappointed of an aid, he seizes the wool and leather, without paying for them, and exacts provisions from each County, for the maintenance of his army.

The *High Constable* and the *Earl-Marshal* draw together about 1500 horse, and stand upon their defence: And will not suffer the King's Officers to take the *wool*, *leather*, or *provisions*.

The King turns them out of their places, for refusing to muster the Militia.

March. The Archbishop of *Canterbury* holding a Synod, the King issues out a prohibition against it.

April. King *Edward* writes to the *Cinque-ports*, and to the Sheriffs, to make all due preparations for his expedition into *Flanders*.

May. But a stop is put to it, by the revolt of *William Wallace* in *Scotland*.

July. The King is reconciled to the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and grants a general protection to the rest of the Clergy.

Aug. 1. A great Council is held at *London*, wherein the King causes the Nobility to swear fealty to his son Prince *Edward*.

August. King *Edward* goes to *Winchelsea*, in his way to *Flanders*, The High-Constable and Earl-Marshal send a remonstrance to him whilst he was there.

Aug. 12. He returns an answer to it, and appeases the people by a Proclamation.

— 22. King *Edward* embarks at *Winchelsea*, with 15,000 horse, and

and 50,000 foot; and goes and quarters in *Ghent* all the winter. *Ann. C.*

Philip, King of *France*, makes Alliances with the Kings of *Castile* and *Arragon*, corrupts King *Edward*'s Allies, and entering *Flanders*, defeats the Duke of *Juliers*, and takes *Lisle*, *Douay*, *Courtray*, and *Bruges*.

The *Scots*, under the conduct of *W. Wallace*, defeat the *English*, and drive them all out of *Scotland*; and also invade *Northumberland*, but they are beaten back. *August.*

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, wherein the *Charter of Forests*, and the *Great Charter*, with some additional articles, are confirmed; and the *High-Constable* and *Earl-Marshal* are pardoned. *Oct. 7.*

The Laity grant the King the eighth part of their goods, and the Clergy the tenth.

A truce is concluded between King *Philip* and King *Edward*. *Oct. 9.* *Reg. 26.* 1298.

Edward is like to be killed in a sedition at *Ghent*.

Pope *Boniface* VIII. undertakes to mediate a peace between the Kings of *England* and *France*.

A great Council or Parliament is held at *York*, wherein the King's Confirmation of the two Charters (done at *Ghent*, *Novemb.* 5.) is read, and published. *Jan. 22.*

The *English* army, consisting of 4500 horse, and above 100,000 foot, enters *Scotland*, and drives the *Scots* into the *Highlands*.

King *Edward* returns to *England*. *Mar. 14.*

He summons the Militia to meet him at *Carlisle* on *Whitsun-Eve*.

And a Parliament at *York*, wherein the two Charters are ratified a-new. The Laity grant him a ninth, and the Clergy a tenth. *June.*

The King marches into *Scotland*, and gains a compleat victory over the *Scots* at *Falkirk*. *July 22.*

The *Scotch* Lords growing jealous of *Wallace*, he lays down the Regency, and *John Comyn* is chosen in his room.

King *Edward* is forced, through the great scarcity of provisions in his army, to return into *England*.

He holds a great Council at *Durham*, and there dispose of the estates of those *Scottish* Noblemen, who had declared against him. *Septemb.*

Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of *Hereford* and *Essex*, and High-Constable of *England*, dies.

King *Edward* forsakes his Ally, the Earl of *Flanders*, who is conducted to *Paris*, and imprisoned. *Reg. 27.*

A Par-

Ann. 28. 1299. February. A Parliament is held at *London*, to which the King communicates the articles of the peace he had lately concluded with *France*.

Guienne is by that treaty restored to King *Edward*.

J. Baliol is delivered to the Pope's Nuncio, who commits him to the custody of some *French* Bishops; but he is soon after released.

April. A Parliament meets at *London*, 15 days after *Easter*, wherein the King confirms the two Charters, without a reserving clause.

A seven months truce is granted to *Scotland*, but *Comyn* exhorting the *Scots* to break it, they drive the *English* out of all *Scotland*, except the Castles of *Roxburgh* and *Berwick*.

August. King *Edward* makes preparations to go and chastise the *Scots*.

Sept. 10. He is married at *Canterbury*, to *Margaret*, sister of *Philip* IV. King of *France*.

Nov. 11, Reg. 28. Soon after he marches towards *Scotland*, and, in his way thither, holds a Parliament at *York*, to consult, how he might best carry on the *Scottish* war.

He goes and winters at *Berwick*.

1300. February. King *Edward* returns to *London*, and holds a Parliament at *Westminster*, wherein he confirms the two Charters: And the *Articuli super Chartas* were now enacted.

He summons all the military tenants to meet him at *York*, on *June* 24, and, after having held there a great Council, or Parliament, he marches into *Scotland*, and makes himself master of *Sterling* Castle, and other places, but is forced to return into *England*, for want of money and forage.

July.

The *Scots* intreat him to permit their King *J. Baliol* to return, and to restore them to their estates; but their request is rejected.

They make an offer of the Sovereignty of their Kingdom to Pope *Boniface* VIII, who thereupon writes a brief to King *Edward*, wherein he orders him to send Ambassadors to *Rome* within six months.

August. King *Edward* threatens the *Scots*, but however makes a truce with them, till the *Whitsuntide* following.

He causes Prince *Edward* to be imprisoned, for stealing the Bishop of *Lichfield*'s deer.

Oct. 1. Reg. 29. *Edmund* Earl of *Cornwal* dies without issue; whereupon that Earldom reverts to the Crown.

June 1. *Thomas*, the King's son, is born at *Brotherton*, *Yorkshire*.

Prince

Prince *Edward* is invested with the Principality of *Wales*, *Ann. Ci.*
and the Earldom of *Chester*. 1301.

A Parliament meets at *Lincoln*, wherein the King con- *Jan.* 21.
firms the two Charters; and the Laity grants him a fifteenth.

Another Parliament is held at *London* in *Lent*.

The Barons send a bold and sensible answer to the Pope's *Feb.* 12.
brief, concerning *Scotland*.

The King himself sends a letter to the Pope, with a me- *May* 17.
morial, proving his superiority over *Scotland*.

Edward marches into *Scotland*, and renewing the war, *June*.
winters there.

Edmund, the King's son, is born at *Woodstock*. *Aug.* 5.

The King of *France* procures a truce for the *Scots* from *Reg.* 30.
King *Edward*, until *November* 1. ensuing. 1302.

King *Edward* returns into *England*, and holds a Parlia- *March*.
ment, or great Council, at *Stanford*.

Roger Bigod, Earl of *Norfolk*, and Earl-Marshal, consti- *April*.
tutes King *Edward* heir of all his estate.

The King summons a Parliament at *Westminster*, which decrees, That he should not go over at the command or suggestion of the King of *France*.

Humphrey de Bohun, High-Constable of *England*, and *October*.
Earl of *Hereford*, grants all his estate to the King and his *Reg.* 31.
Heirs.

The truce with the *Scots* being expired, *John de Se-* *Novemb.*
grave is appointed Guardian of *Scotland*, and ordered to enter that Kingdom with an army.

He divides his army into three bodies, which are defeat- 1303.
ed one after another by the *Scots*. *Feb.* 24.

King *Edward* resolves to enter *Scotland*, with a greater army than ever; but is hindered, by a truce concluded with *France*, wherein the *Scots* were included till *June*.

A peace is concluded between *England* and *France*; *May* 20.
And *Guienne* is restored to King *Edward*.

Edward enters *Scotland* a fourth time, with a very nu- *June*.
merous army, cruelly ravages the Country, and penetrates to the furthest bounds of the Island.

He grants advantageous terms to such of the *Scots* as willingly submitted to him, which reduces many of them to his obedience.

Sterling Castle is besieged by the *English*; *Reg.* 32.

It holds out all the winter, and till the 20th of *July*, of 1304.
the next year.

King *Edward* having thus conquered *Scotland* a third time, returns to *England* before the winter.

John

Ann. C. *John de Segrave* is appointed Guardian or Lieutenant of
Reg. 33. *Scotland.*

1305. King *Edward* holds a great Council at *Lincoln*: And a
March. Parliament at *Westminster*, wherein he advises with the *Scottish* Nobility about holding a Parliament for *Scotland.*

Sept. 15. A Parliament meets accordingly, where appeared ten Commissioners from *Scotland*, and the affairs of that Kingdom are now settled, and Officers appointed.

Oct. 15. King *Edward* grants a pardon to the *Scottish* Noblemen that had been in arms against him.

Sir *William Wallace* being betrayed into the hands of King *Edward's* Officers, is sent to *London*, and there hanged, drawn, and quartered.

Reg. 34. *Clement* V. is chosen Pope.——He was the first that reserved to himself the *First-fruits* of all Ecclesiastical benefices in *England.*

King *Edward* obtains from him a dispensation from his oath concerning the forests, at which the people is very much discontented.

The Pope grants him also a tenth upon the Clergy, for three years.

1306. *Robert Bruce*, Earl of *Carric*, whom King *Edward* had promised to place on the Throne in *Baliol's* room, contrives with the Lord *Comyn*, how to free *Scotland* from the Dominion of the *English.*

Jan. 29. *Bruce* escapes to *Scotland*, and kills *Comyn*, who had betrayed him to King *Edward.*

Mar. 25. *Robert Bruce* is crowned King of *Scotland* at *Scone.*

King *Edward*, hearing of this, sends *Audemar de Va-*
July. *lence* Earl of *Pembroke* before with an army, whilst he assembles all his forces in *Carlisle.*

To augment his forces, he knights the Prince his son, and summons all that, either upon account of their birth or estates, were intitled to Knighthood, to come and take that order upon them, which 300 hundred did.

June. Upon the Prince's receiving the order of Knighthood, the Laity and Clergy grant the King a thirtieth, and the Merchants a twentieth.

July 20. *Robert Bruce* is defeated by the Earl of *Pembroke*, and the
October. *Comyns*, and forced to fly into the *Western Isles.*

August. King *Edward* arrives in *Scotland*, and severely punishes the Revolters; causing three of *Robert Bruce's* brothers,
Reg. 35. and the Earl of *Athol*, to be executed; sending *Robert's* Queen, and several others, prisoners to *England*; ordering the Countess of *Buquhan*, who had crowned *Robert Bruce*,

to be put in a wooden cage, on the walls of *Berwick*, &c. *Ann. C.*

A Parliament is held at *Carlisle*, wherein King *Edward* 1307.
endeavours to have *Scotland* united to *England*, but in vain. *Jan.* 28.

In this Parliament was enacted the statute, *de exportatis Religiosorum.*

Piers Gaveston is banished the Kingdom. *Feb.* 26.

Robert Bruce, coming out of his retreat, takes *Inverness* and several other places, and defeats the Earls of *Pembroke* and *Gloucester*.

King *Edward* resolves thereupon utterly to destroy *Scotland*; and his army being come to *Carlisle*, according to the summons, he sends part of it to relieve the Earl of *Gloucester*, who was besieged in the Castle of *Aire*.

King *Edward* is taken ill of a violent flux at *Carlisle*.

Notwithstanding, he marches towards *Scotland*, but is *July* 3.
forced to take his bed at *Burgh upon the Sands*.

He orders his bones to be carried about at the head of his army, till *Scotland* was reduced.

King *Edward* dies at *Burgh upon the Sands* in *Cumber-* *July* 7.
land, in the 68th year of his age, after a Reign of 34 years, 7 months, and 20 days:

And was buried in *Westminster-Abbey*. *Oct.* 28.

The Character *of* EDWARD I.

Thus lived and died *Edward*, the first of that name since the *Norman Conquest*, and the fourth since *Egbert*. This Prince had, doubtless, very noble qualities, and particularly great valour and prudence. He knew how to master his passions, and return to the right way when he had strayed from it; a quality never to be sufficiently commended in a Sovereign. When we compare him with his father, his grandfather, and his own son, his Successor, we shall find he far excelled them all. This comparison, which one can hardly help making, has been so much to his advantage, that the *English* Historians have used the strongest expressions in his encomium, and would have him pass for the greatest Prince of his age. A famous Writer has not scrupled to say, *That God had pitched his Tabernacle in the breast of that Monarch.* But his whole conduct, with regard to *Scotland*, does not give of him so advantageous an idea. However, without examining too closely the expressions used by the Historians in his praise, it may be said, he was a great King, and that *England* received considerable advantages from his Administration. The Kingdom, weak-

Camden in Cumberland.

ened

ened by the ill management of the two preceding Kings, was restored to its former splendor, by the abilities of this Prince, who knew how to make himself beloved and respected by his subjects, as well as dreaded by his neighbours. The conquest of *Wales*, in vain attempted by his Predecessors, added a great lustre to his Reign, and was very beneficial to his Kingdom. That of *Scotland* would no doubt have gained him more honour, had it been entirely finished, since the *Scotch* Historians would have spoken of him in different terms from what they have done, if, at the time of their writing, they had been *English*.

He was very personable, and taller than the generality of men by the head. His hair was black, and curled naturally, and his eyes of the same colour, sparkled with uncommon vivacity. He would have been perfectly well shaped, if his legs, which were a little too long, had been in proportion to the rest of his body. Hence he had the surname of *Long-shanks*. He joined to his bodily perfections a solid judgment, a great penetration, and a prudent conduct, which very rarely suffered him to make a false step. Besides this, he had principles of justice, honour and honesty, which restrained him from countenancing vice, not only in his most intimate Courtiers, but even in his own Son. Moreover, he was of an exemplary chastity, a virtue very seldom found in Sovereign Princes. All these noble qualities bred in the hearts of his subjects, a love and esteem, which did not a little contribute to the rendering his Reign peaceable at home, whilst his arms were employed abroad. As for the affair of *Scotland*, it may be said to procure more honour than real advantages to *England*, since, after torrents of blood spilt in that quarrel, the *English* were constrained in the end to relinquish their project.

The children of King *Edward* I. were:

I. By his first wife *Eleanor* of *Castile*,

1. *John*. 2. *Henry*. 3. *Alphonso*, who all died young. 4. *Edward*, who succeeded him. 5. *Eleanor*, married to *Henry* Earl of *Barr*. 6. *Joan* of *Acon*, to *Gilbert de Clare* Earl of *Gloucester*, and to *Ralph de Monthermer*. 7. *Margaret*, wife of *John* II. Duke of *Brabant*. 8. *Berengera*. 9. *Alice*, died young. 10. *Mary*, a Nun at *Ambresbury*. 11. *Elizabeth*, married to *John* I. Earl of *Holland*, and afterwards to *Humphrey de Bohun* Earl of *Hereford* and *Essex*, High-Constable of *England*. 12. *Beatrix* and 13. *Blanche*, died young.

II. By

The Monument of K. EDWARD I. in Westminster Abbey.

H. By his second wife *Margaret* of *France*,

14. *Thomas de Brotherton*, Earl of *Norfolk* and *Marshal*. 15. *Edmund* of *Woodstock*, Earl of *Kent*. 16. *Eleanor*, died young.

We have an uninterrupted series of all the Parliaments held in *England*, from the 22d year of this Reign. The Constitution of these Assemblies, such as it is at this day, was so well settled in this same Reign, that there was an additional law made to the Great Charter, whereby it was enacted, That no tax should be levied upon the people without the consent of the Commons. Stat. de Tallagio non concedendo.

It may be further observed, that in this Reign the title of Baron, which was common to all that held lands of the Crown, was confined to those whom the King summoned to Parliament.

A Description of the Monument *of* EDWARD I.

His Monument is in Westminster-abbey, on the north-side of EDWARD the Confessor's chapel, at the head of his father HENRY IIId's tomb. It is composed of five grey marble stones, two for the sides, two for the ends, and a fifth covers it, (a very plain monument for so great and glorious a Prince.) Upon the north-side of it are these Latin words:

EDWARDVS PRIMVS SCOTORVM MALLEVS
HIC EST, 1308. PACTVM SERVA.

In English:

EDWARD the first the scourge of the Scots is here, 1308. Observe Treaties.

And on a Tablet was formerly the epitaph in Latin and English, here annexed:

Mors est moesta nimis, magnos que jungit in imis,
Maxima mors minimis, confungens ultima primis;
Nullus in orbe fuit homo vivens, nec valet esse,
Qui non morte ruit; est hinc exire necesse.
Nobilis & fortis, tibi tu confidere noli,
Omnia sunt mortis, sibi subdit singula soli;
De mundi medio magnum mors impia mortis,
Anglia pre tedio lacrimis anxia plangere novit:

Corruit EDWARDUS vario veneratus honore,
Rex nuper ut Nardus fragrans virtutis odore,
Corde Leopardus, invictus & absque pavore,
Ad iram tardus, discretus & eucharis ore,
Viribus armorum quasi gigas ardua gessit,
Colla superborum prudens per prelia pressit.
Inter Flandrenses fortuna sibi bene favit,
Ut quoque Wallenses & Scotos suppedicavit.
Rex bonus absque pari strenue sua regna regebat:
Quod natura dare potuit bonitatis habebat,
Actio justitie, pax regni, sanctio legis,
Et fuga nequitie premunt precordia Regis:
Gloria tota ruit, Regem capit hec modo fossa,
Rex quandoque fuit, nunc nil nisi pulvis & ossa:
Filius ipse Dei quem corde colebat & ore,
Gaudia fecit et nullo permista dolore.

Dum virit Rex & valuit sua magna potestas,
Fraus latuit, pax magna fuit, regnavit honestas.

Death is too doleful which doth join
The highest estate full low:
Which coupleth greatest things with least,
And last with first also.
No man hath been in world alive,
Nor any may there be,
Which can escape the dint of death,
Needs hence depart must we.
O noble and victorious man,
Trust not unto thy strength,
For all are subject unto death,
And all must hence at length.
Most cruel fate from worldly stage
Hath wrest a worthy wight;
For whom all England mourned loud
To see his doleful plight.
EDWARD is dead, which was adorn'd
With divers graces here,
A King, or fragant Nardus height,
A gracious Princely Peer.
In heart the which was Lybard like,
Right puissant, void of fear:
Most slow to strife, discreet and wise,
And gracious every where.

In arms a giant fierce and fell,
Attempting famous facts,
Most prudent, did subdue the proud,
By feat of martial acts:
In Flanders fortune gave to him
By lot right good success;
In Wales he wan: the Scottish rout
With arms he did suppress.
This King without his like alive
Did firmly guide his land,
And what good nature could conceive
He had it plight at hand.
He was in justice, and in peace,
Excelling: laws took place,
Desire to chase all wicked works,
Did hold this King's good grace.
He now doth lie intombed here,
Which furthered each good thing:
Now nought he is but dust and bones,
Which was a worthy King.
The very Son of God, whom erst
This King did love right dear,
Hath given to him immortal bliss,
For his good living here.

Whilst liv'd this King, by him all things
Were in most goodly plight:
Fraud by him, great peace was kept,
And honesty had might.

An Account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

The reader is to observe, that the history of the Royal Revenue in the foregoing Coin-Notes, is all matter of fact, taken from the Revenue-Rolls and other Records, and confirmed by numberless instances by Mr. *Madox*, in his *History of the Exchequer*. These Rolls (which are kept in the *Pipe-Office*, and called the *Great Rolls*) of all the Records in the Exchequer, justly challenge the pre-eminence, not being inferior even to Domes-day itself. From the very first establishment of the Exchequer, it was usual every year to make a Great Roll, containing an exact account of all the foregoing branches of the Royal Revenue, as arising in each County. The Great Rolls of most of the years of

Henry II, *Richard* I, and *John*, are in being, and as appears by *Madox*, might be of admirable use to the *English* Historian and Antiquary. The most antient of these Records is the Great Roll (commonly said to be) of the fifth year of King *Stephen*. A famous monument of antiquity (says *Madox*) whether we consider the hand-writing, or the contents. This Great Roll (or rather bundle) consists of sixteen large Rolls, writ on both sides, of about four foot long (one with another, for they are not of an equal length) and a foot broad. This Great Roll, Mr. *Madox* proves to belong to some year of *Henry* I, *Pryn* says expressly the 18th. In order to see the nature of these Rolls in general, I shall add here a few instances, relating to the several branches of the Royal Revenue. N. B. r. c. signifies *reddit compotum* (*i. e.* accounts for). W. de Mandevill comes Essexæ debet C l, pro Relevio suo. *M. Rot.* 2 *Hen.* III. *Rot.* 7. Petrus de Brus r c de c l pro relevio suo de Baronia quæ fuit Patris sui. In th. l. et Q. e. (that is, *In thesauro liberavit et quietus est*) *Mag. Rot.* 6. *Hen.* III. *Rot.* 11. Odo de Damartin r c de D marcis pro habenda Custodia filii et terræ Hugonis Pincernæ: In thesauro c c marcas et debet c c c Marcas. *Mag. Rot.* 28. *Hen.* II. Ricardus Basset et Albericus de Ver r c de Firmo de Sudreia, et de Grentebrugescira et de Huntedonescira; In thesauro c c c c & xiiii *l.* & xii *d.* ad Pensum. *M. Rot.* 5 *Steph. Rot.* 4. Hamo de sancto Claro r c de Firma Civitatis Colecestræ. In thesauro xxxviii *l.* & xiv *s.* & ii *d.* et debet xxiii *s.* and x *d.* Bl. *M. Rot.* 5 *Steph. Rot.* 14. Burgenses de Carliolo r c de x Marcis pro Libertatibus suis habendis. *M. Rot.* 5 *Rich.* I. *Rot* 5. Felicia de Winterburn debet tertiam partem de perquisito de xv Marcis pro justiciando Willielmo de Winterburn quod reddat ei xv Marcas. *M. Rot.* 10 *Joh. Rot.* Walterus de Canceio r c d xv *l.* ut ducat ad velle suum. *M. Rot.* 5 *Steph. Rot.* 3. Lucia Comitissa Cestriæ debet D Marcas, ne capiat Virum infra v annos. *ibid. Rot.* 12. Uxor Hugonis de Nevill dat domino Regi ducentas gallinas, eoquod possit jacere una nocte cum Domino suo Hugone de Nevil. *Rot. Fin.* 6. *John. M.* 8. *d.* Adam de Tindal debet x Marcas pro habenda Seisina Bosi de Langel, qui appellatur Wineteleia cum pertinentiis. *Mag. Rot.* 10. *J. Rot.* 7. *Northumb.* Yvo vir Emmæ debet lx *s.* quia retraxit se de Duello suo die quo debuit pugnare. *M. Rot.* 31. *Hen.* II. *Rot.* 5.

I shall

I shall proceed now to show the state of the Exchequer, from the end of the Reign of King *John*, to the end of the Reign of King *Edward* II. called by Mr. *Madox* the second period; as from *William the Conqueror*, to King *John*'s signing the *Magna Charta*, is by him, called the first period. It may be observed that at the beginning of this second period, and for some time afterwards, the Exchequer continued in much the same state it was in during the first; bating the change made by the separation of Common Pleas, from the King's Court, and it. It was as before, a great and solemn Court, frequented by the King's great Officers, and guided for the most part by the antient rules, assizes and customs. But before the end of *Henry* III's Reign, it fell in great measure from its ancient grandeur, and from thenceforward, continued in a state of declension; insomuch that about the end of the second period, it was in many respects different from what it had been in former ages. This will appear, by comparing the state of the Exchequer, during the first period, with the state of it, during the latter part of the second. In the King's Exchequer there still remained the distinction of the two notable terms of the year, called the *Duo Scaccaria*, (See Coin-Note, p. 106.) Besides the principal Exchequer, there were several inferior Receipts or Treasuries, that were called by that name. There were Exchequers at *Durham*, *Chester*, *Carlisle*, *Berwick*, and *Caernarvon*, at which last, the King had his Chamberlain, and Treasurer; and the Writ of *Summonce* was there used for levying the King's Debts, arising in those parts. The principal Exchequer, when mentioned with any of these, was distinguished by *Scaccarium de Londonia*, *Westmonasterii*, and with reference to the Exchequer of the *Jews*, *Magnum Scaccarium*. The principal times of Session were the two terms of *Easter*, and St. *Michael*. At which times the process that issued *pro rege* was returnable, and many acts became necessary to be done there in consequence thereof. The Exchequer was also holden during the other two Law-terms of St. *Hilary*, and of the Trinity. But it seemeth, that the Treasurer and Barons sometimes sat, if there was occasion, at other times not comprised within the four terms, and sometimes on Sundays. The day of the *Liberate* was counted the time of their rising. In the archive of *Corpus Christi* College in *Cambridge*, there is a Manuscript calen-

dar for the use of the *Auditores Compotorum*, and others, residing at the Exchequer. It is in a hand of about the time of *Ed.* II. or III. Though the Exchequer was generally held at *Westminster*, during this second period, yet it was sometimes by the King's special command held elsewhere. As in the first, so also in the second period, the King, if he pleased, sat and acted in person at the Exchequer, King *Henry* III. did so frequently. From the most antient times, the Persons employed at the King's Exchequer, enjoyed several privileges. The Records of the first period, relating to this Subject, are not so clear and full as those of the second. These Records mention the privilege of impleading, and being impleaded in the Exchequer only: Freedom from toll, for things bought for their own use: Freedom from Suit to County-Courts, Hundred-Courts, *&c.* and other privileges. It is also to be understood, that several of the Residents at the Exchequer had privileges for their Clerks and Men. There was also a sort of Privilege allowed to persons, who were suitors or accomptants at the Exchequer; namely, if they were to appear in any inferiour Court or place, upon a certain day, in case they were that day attending at the Exchequer, they were not to be put in default below. The Exchequer was a Court greatly concerned in the conservation of the Prerogatives, as well as the Revenue of the Crown. It was the care of the Treasurer, and Barons, and the King's Council at the Exchequer, to see that the Rights of the Crown were not invaded by such as claimed liberties or exemptions; and to allow, or disallow, of such liberties as reason and justice should require. It is true, this had some relation to the regal Revenue, inasmuch as men were wont to be punished by Amerciaments, Seisures, Fines, for undue usurpations of liberties, and were obliged or induced to fine for confirmation or improvement of their liberties, if they desired the same. However many affairs of this nature were wont to be examined and regulated at the Exchequer, and therein great care was taken to preserve the rights of the Crown inviolate. Upon this ground, probably, it became the usual method for charters of liberties to be read and inrolled at the Exchequer. So that commonly, when the King granted or confirmed liberties by his Letters Patent, a close Writ directed to the Treasurer and Barons, was wont to issue, reciting the substance of such grant or confirmation, and commanding the

Barons

Barons to allow thereof. In a word, the authority and dignity of the Court of Exchequer was esteemed so great, that the Acts thereof were not to be examined or controlled in any other of the King's ordinary Courts of Justice. The Exchequer was a great repository of the King's Records. Thither the Records of the Court holden before the King, of the Court of Common Bench, and of the Justices in *Eyre* were brought, to be laid up in the Treasury; where they still remain, under the custody of the Treasurer and Chamberlains of the Exchequer. Secondly, of the persons that sat and acted in the Exchequer, during this second period. The King's chief Justiciary continued at first to preside and act as he had before used to do. Afterwards when he ceased to preside there, the power of the Treasury increased. Then, the affairs were guided by the Treasurer and Barons of the Exchequer. To them may be added the King's Council, whom we often find acting both in the superior Court, and in the Exchequer; and that men were sometimes summoned to appear before the King's Council there, on set days. The next person was the Treasurer. King *Henry* III. by his Charter, granted his Treasury of his Exchequer of *England*, to *Walter Mauclerc*, Bishop of *Carlisle*, to hold during life. Some persons have been inclined to think, the Office of the King's Treasurer, (or as we now call it Treasurer of *England*,) and that of Treasurer of the Exchequer, were two distinct offices. But in numberless instances, the Treasurers during the Reigns of *Henry* III, *Edward* I, and II. are stiled sometimes the King's Treasurer, and sometimes Treasurer of the Exchequer. It does not appear, what appointment the Treasurer in the most ancient times received of the King. In the Reign of *Henry* III. the yearly salary was c Marks. The same salary was paid to *John* Bishop of *Ely*, Treasurer 25 *Ed.* I. But at that time, the King used to make other provision for the Treasurers by some beneficial grant, or ecclesiastical preferment; and so likewise for the Chancellors, and other Officers, who were Ecclesiastical Persons. Sometimes there was at the Exchequer an Officer, called the Treasurer's Lieutenant. He acted in the Treasurer's absence, or if no Treasurer, executed the Treasurer's office, and was in effect the Treasurer's Deputy, or Vice-Treasurer; *Locum tenens*, signifying a deputy, or a person that acts in another's stead. There were Lieutenants to several other

Officers, as to the King's Chancellor, Earl Marshal, Sheriffs, &c. After the Treasurer, came the Chancellor, who seems to have been appointed to be a check upon the Treasurer. He took an oath upon entering into his Office, to this effect: "that he would well and truly serve the "King, in his office of Chancellor of the Exchequer: "That he would well and truly do what appertained to "his Office: That he would dispatch the King's business "before all other: And that he would seal with the Ex"chequer Seal, no judicial Writ of any other Court, be"side the Exchequer; whilst the Chancery, (or Chan"cellor) was within twenty miles of the place where the "Exchequer was holden." *Liber Rub. Scac.* p. 14. The rest of the persons that sat in the Exchequer, were the Barons, who were appointed by the King in the following manner: "Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Scitis nos con"cessisse dilecto & fideli nostro Magistro Alexandro de "Swereford Thesaurario Sancti Pauli Londoniæ, Quadra"ginta Marcas singulis annis percipiendas ad Scaccarium "nostrum ad se sustentandum in servitio nostro ad Scac"carium ubi residet per præceptum nostrum, donec "ei aliter providerimus. In cujus rei Testimonium, &c. "Teste Rege apud *Westm.* 21° *die octobris.*" *Pat.* 28 *Hen.* III. *M.* 2. Again, "Rex mandat Baronibus de "Scaccario suo quod constituit dilectum et fidelem suum "Johannem de *Cobham*, Baronem suum ejusdem Scac"carii; ita quod officium Baronis ibidem exerceat quam"diu sibi placuerit; & ideo mandat eisdem, quod ipsum "Johannem in Baronem ejusdem Scaccarii ad hoc admit"tant in forma predicta. T. Meipso apud *Westm.* 8 *die* "*Junii*, anno regni quarto." *Trin. Com.* 4 *Ed.* I. *Rot.* 8. *b.* The next Coin Note, (which concludes this Subject) will treat of, 1. The business. 2. The accompts. 3. The Officers of the Exchequer, during the second period.

Edward I. is supposed to be the first of our Kings that perfectly fixed the standard of our Coin. In the third year of his Reign, says an old leigerbook of the Abbey of St. *Edmunsbury*, the matter was thus ordered by *Gregory Rockley*, then Mayor of *London*, and Mint-Master: That in a pound of money there should be eleven ounces two-pence farthing, pure leaf Silver, and only seventeen pence half-penny farthing Allay; and this pound was to weigh twenty Shillings and three pence in account, each ounce, twenty pence, and every penny, twenty-four grains and a half.

shall. In 28 *Edw.* I. an indented Trial-piece of the goodness of old sterling, was lodged in the Exchequer, and every pound weight *Troy* of such silver was to be shorn at twenty shillings three pence, according to which the value of the silver in the coin was one Shilling eight pence farthing an ounce. This King sent for foreign Mint-Masters, (namely, *William de Furnentire* and others from *Marseilles*, and one *Frestobald*, and his companions from *Florence*,) in the eighteenth year of his Reign, to inform him of the manner of making and forging money, which is said to be thus: First, the silver was cast from the melting-pot into long bars; those bars were cut with sheers into square pieces of exact Weights; then with the tongs and hammer they were forged into a round shape, after which they were blanched or made white by boiling, and afterwards stamped with a hammer to make them perfect money. For the coining this money, (as it is reported in the additions to the Red Book of the Exchequer, which are not of equal credit with the Book itself) the Mint-Masters had thirty furnaces at *London*, eight at *Canterbury*, (besides three the Archbishop had there) twelve at *Bristol*, twelve at *York*, and more in other great towns, in all which places the same hammered money of silver, supplied by the King's Changers, who according to certain rates prescribed them, took in the clipped, rounded, and counterfeited moneys to be recoined, and bought gold and silver of the merchants to be fabricated into new monies; at the same time it was ordained, "Quod proclametur "per totum Regnum quod nulla fiat tonsura de nova Moneta "sub periculo Vitæ & membrorum, et amissionis omnium "Terrarum & Tenementorum, *&c.*" And this hammered money continued through all the Reigns of succeeding Kings and Queens, till about the year 1663. There are no indentures with the Mint-Masters, by which one can certainly judge of the proportion of the fineness and alloy, to be observed in the fabrication of the moneys till the Reign of *Edward* III, as will be seen hereafter. The size of the Coin was not probably, altered, by *Edward* I, the penny being supposed to have been the only current money of *England*. This Prince was the first that used *Dominus Hibernia* constantly upon his money, which was never wanting in his, nor in *Edward* II's, nor in *Edward* III's Coins, but was afterwards left out, nor is there any more mention of *Ireland* upon the silver money till

Henry VIII. He likewise left out the Scepter, which appears no more upon the small money till *Henry* VIII, nor upon the large till Queen *Elizabeth's* Crown and half Crown, and the name of the Mint Master on the reverse, instead of which he put the place of Mintage. He was likewise the first that forbid the use of broken money. But it is difficult to distinguish the money of this King from *Edward* II, because the face, style, weight and reverse, are alike. But a learned Antiquary, (the Archbishop of *York*) ascribes those with the three first letters, E.D W. to *Edward* I, because of the plenty thereof, for *Edward* I, is known to have coined much more money than his son, and also from the Mintage at *Dublin*, set up by this *Edward*, which has always EDW. From whence it is to be concluded, that all belong to him that have this Inscription EDW. R. ANG. DNS. HYB. The King full-faced, and crowned with an open Crown of three Fleurs-de-lis, with two rays, or lesser flowers, not raised so high; the cross composed of a single line, pretty broad, and continued to the outer rim; three pellets in each quarter, circumscribed with the place of coinage, *viz. London*, *Canterbury*, (See Fig. 1.) VILLA KINGESTON, *Durham*, *Newcastle*, *Berwick*, *Lincoln*, *Exeter*, *Bristol*, VILLA. SCI. EDMUNDI. Likewise his *Irish* Money, the head in a triangle, CIVITAS DUBLINIE. (See Fig. 2.) Also *Waterford* and *Cork*, which shews there was more than one mint in *Ireland*. He is reported, (but says *Nicolson* falsely,) to have ordered the minting of groats.

J. Speed pretends to give a cutt of one, but he is supposed to be mistaken. The most remarkable corruptions of the Coin are found in antient Records to be in this Reign, when there was imported a sort of light money, with a Mitre, another with a lion, a third of Copper blanched, to resemble the money of *England*, a fourth like that of

King


K. EDWARD II.

King Edward, a fifth plated, known by the names of [illegible]: *Pollards*, *Stablings*, *Eagles*, *Leonines*, and *Staff-*[illegible] And the Merchants to avoid the search at *Dover* [illegible] *Sandwich*, conceaded the parcels in balls of cloth, and [illegible] them in by other ports. *Les queux Choses si ellus* [illegible] *long tems soffertz*, (says the Red-Book,) *elles mettent* [illegible] *la Monye d' Angleterre, a rienk*. And the chiefest re-[illegible] were: 1. To cry down all money that was not of *England*, *Ireland*, or *Scotland*. 2. That such as arrived from beyond seas, should show the money they brought with them to the King's officers. 3. And not to hide it in fardels, upon pain of forfeiture. 4. That the light and clipt money, might be bored through without contradiction. 5. And that the same should be received and paid by weight, at a certain rate, and that the persons having such money, should bring it to the King's Changers, who as well as the Masters of the Mint, had several offices erected in divers parts of the Kingdom; whose principal business was to buy in the silver of the bad money, *que les Pollards et Crockards et les autres mauvaises, moneis contrefaits seront abatues*. And there was a Writ, then directed to the Sheriffs, to prohibit the importation of clipt or counterfeit moneys, and the use thereof in merchandizing or negotiating, under severe penalties, and commanding those that had such money to bore it thorough, and to bring it to the King's Change to be new coined.

The NOBILITY created in this Reign. *Ann. C.*

Hugh Courtney, Earl of *Devon*. 1293.

Ralph de Monthermer, Earl of *Gloucester* and *Hertford*. *Nov.* 4. 1297.

Humphrey de Bohun (Earl of *Hereford*) Earl of *Essex*. *Feb.* 6. 1303.

As for an account of those Peers that had *summons* to Parliament, without actual creation, in this and the following Reigns; see Sir *William Dugdale*'s perfect copy of all summons of the Nobility to the great Councils and Parliaments of this Realm, &c. *Lond.* 1685. *fol.*

10. EDWARD II. *of Caernarvon.*

EDWARD comes to the Crown, in the 23d year of his age. 1307. *Reg.* 1.

He goes into *Scotland*, and receives the homage of some of *August.*

Anno 6. of the *Scottish* Nobility. And then, having constituted the Earl of *Pembroke* Regent of that Kingdom, he returns to *England*.

August. The young King recalls *Piers Gaveston*, creates him Earl of *Cornwall*, gives him the lands fallen to the Crown by the late Earl's death, presents him with the Isle of *Man*, and loads him with favours.

Walter de Langton, Bishop of *Lichfield*, and Treasurer, is imprisoned in *Wallingford* Castle, for having been the promoter of *Gaveston's* banishment.

Oct. 13. A Parliament is held at *Northampton*, wherein the Clergy grant the King a fifteenth, and the Laity a twentieth part of all their moveables.

Piers Gaveston marries *Margaret de Clare*, the King's niece, and sister to the Earl of *Gloucester*.

Aymeric Earl of *Pembroke* resigning the Government of *Scotland*, it is conferred on *John* Earl of *Bretagne*, who obtains a victory over *Robert Bruce*, and obliges him to fly into the mountains.

1308. King *Edward* goes to *Boulogne*, and there marries *Isabella*,
Jan. 25. daughter of *Philip the Fair*, King of *France*.

He leaves *Gaveston* Guardian of the Realm during his absence, at which the Nobility are highly disgusted.

Feb. 24. They hold a consultation, and go and petition the King to remove *Gaveston*; which he refusing, they threaten to stop his coronation, whereupon he yields to their desires.

Feb. 25. King *Edward* is crowned at *Westminster*, with his Queen. *Gaveston* carried St. *Edward's* Crown.

The King forgetting to remove *Gaveston*, according to his promise to the Lords, they enter into a league to have him removed, and endeavour to seize him.

May. A Parliament is summoned by the King, wherein great complaints are made against *Gaveston's* imbezzling the Treasure, his using the Crown-Jewels, *&c.* And the King is forced to consent to his banishment for ever.

June. Instead of banishing him, *Edward* appoints him Governor of *Ireland*, and accompanies him as far as *Bristol*, in his way thither.

Reg. 2. The *Knights-Templars* are seized all over *England*.

A truce is concluded with the *Scots* till *November* 1. ensuing.

1309. A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, wherein the King
March. confirms the two Charters, and the Laity grant him the
Reg. 3. twenty-fifth Penny of their personal estates.

Another

Another is held at *Stamford*. *Anno 8.*

And a great Council at *York*. *July 26.*

Gaveston returns to *England*, and despises the Barons, insulting and nick-naming several of them. *Oct. 18.* *August.*

The Barons threaten the King, unless he would banish *Gaveston*; whereupon he sends to *Gascogne* for assistance, but the King of *France* destroys those succours.

A Parliament is held at *London*, wherein the Barons present a remonstrance to the King. 1310. *Feb. 2.*

He consents to a *New Regulation* of the Government, and that certain *Ordainers* should be chosen for that purpose. *Reg. 4.*

The King marches into *Scotland*, ravaging the Country, and stays at *Berwick* this winter, and the beginning of the next year. *August.*

The King returns to *London*; and holds a Parliament there, when the new Ordinances are read, and approved by the King; but he enters a private protestation against them. 1311. *Reg. 5.* *August.* *Oct. 5.*

The Parliament is prorogued till *November* 18.

Piers Gaveston, in pursuance of the sentence of banishment against him, goes into *France*, but returns again to *England* before *Christmas*. *Novemb.*

King *Edward* goes with him to *York*, and publishes two Declarations, one to justify his recalling him, and the other to restore him to his estate. 1312. *Jan. 18.* — 20.

The Barons stir up the people against the King, and *Gaveston*, who behaves insolently, particularly to the Queen.

Thomas Plantagenet Earl of *Lancaster*, and *Guy de Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwic*, enter into a Confederacy with the Earls of *Pembroke*, *Arundel*, *Hereford*, and *Warren*, &c. and resolving to take arms, they chuse the Earl of *Lancaster* for their General.

They send a petition to the King, desiring him, either to deliver up, or to banish, *Gaveston*.

But instead of minding them, he endeavours to reform the regulation of the Government.

The Barons rising, the King retires to *Newcastle*, and then to *Scarburgh* Castle; where he leaves *Gaveston*, and comes into *Yorkshire* and *Warwickshire*, to try to raise forces.

The Confederate Lords seize *Gaveston*'s goods at *Newcastle*, and besiege him in *Scarborough* Castle, which he is forced to surrender. *May.* — 19.

The King earnestly desiring to see *Gaveston*, the Earl of *Pembroke* undertakes to conduct him to him, but the Earl

of

Aug. 6. of *Warwick* comes one night and takes him away by force, carries him to *Warwick*, and, after a short trial, causes him
June 19. to be beheaded.

Reg. 6. The Barons demand the confirmation of the Ordinances,
August. which the King not caring to do, they march against him.

October. At last, through the mediation of the Earl of *Evreux*, the
Decemb. Earl of *Gloucester*, and the Pope's Nuncio's, a peace is concluded between the King and the Barons, and a pardon promised them.

Nov. 13. Prince *Edward*, the King's son, is born.

The last year, and this, *R. Bruce* ravages *Northumberland*; and the Bishopric of *Durham*.

1313. The King delays publishing the general pardon above a year.

May. He and his Queen go over into *France*.

Reg. 7. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which is dissolved
July 9. without doing any thing.

July. King *Edward* and his Queen return to *England*.

Sept. 21. A new Parliament meets at *Westminster*, during which, the Confederate Barons beg the King's pardon in *Westminster-Hall*: And thereupon the King grants them a general and particular indemnity and pardon.

This Parliament gives the King a *fifteenth*.

The *Scots* become masters of *Perth*, *Edinburgh*, *Sterling*, and the Isle of *Man*.

1314. They enter *Cumberland*, which they ravage; and lay siege to *Carlisle*, but cannot take it.

King *Edward* summons all the military tenants to meet him at *Newcastle*, three weeks after *Easter*; and having
June. thus gathered an army of 100,000 men together, he marches into *Scotland*.

June 25. A battle is fought between the *English* and *Scots* at *Bannock-burn*, in which the *English* are totally defeated, and *Gilbert de Clare* Earl of *Gloucester*, the Lord *Robert de Clifford*, with several thousands, are slain.

Reg. 8. King *Edward* escapes to *Dunbar*, and thence retires to *York*.

Aug. 15. Here he holds a Parliament, which continued sitting till *Michaelmas*.

The *Scots* improving their victory, enter *England*, and ravage *Northumberland*, *Durham*, and part of *Yorkshire*.

1315. King *Edward* removes *Gaveston*'s body from *Oxford*, where it was buried, to *King's Langley* in *Hertfordshire*, where the King had built a Religious House to pray for his soul.

A Par-

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the *Ann. C.*
King a *twentieth* part of their goods. *Jan.* 20.

Another Parliament meets, fifteen days after *Easter*.

There being now a great famine, the price of provisions was thus settled. The best ox to be sold for 16 *s.* A live fat cow 12 *s.* a fat hog 3 *s.* and 4 *d.* A fat weather unshorn 20 *d.* and shorn 14 *d.* a fat goose 2 *d.* ½. a fat capon 2 *d.* a fat hen, or two chickens 1 *d.* twenty-four eggs 1 *d.* *Reg.* 9.

The *Scots* besiege *Carlisle*, and endeavour to surprise *Berwick*, but in vain.

Philip the Fair King of *France* dies. *Nov.* 24.

A Parliament meets at *Lincoln*, to consider of means how to repress the violence of the *Scots*. And grants the King for that purpose one stout footman out of every town, and a *fifteenth* part of all moveables. 1316. *Jan.* 28.

An army is sent against the *Scots*, under the command of the Earl of *Lancaster*, but it performs nothing remarkable. *Reg.* 10.

The *Scots* invade again *England*, and waste *Yorkshire*.

R. Bruce passes over into *Ireland*, to assist his brother *Edward*, who had taken upon him the title of King of *Ireland*.

John the King's second son is born at *Eltham*. *Aug.* 15.

Sir *Richard de St. Martyn*, a deformed and crooked Knight, carries away *Alice* daughter of the late Earl of *Lincoln*, and wife of *Thomas* Earl of *Lancaster*; and claims the Earldoms of *Lincoln* and *Salisbury*. 1317. *June.* *Reg.* 11.

Pope *John* XXII. sends two Legates, to make peace between the Kings of *England* and *Scotland*.

Lewis X. or *Hutin*, King of *France*, dies.

The Legates, and the chief Prelates of the Kingdom, petition the King, to observe the articles he had lately granted. 1318.

A Parliament is held at *Leicester*, wherein the King confirms those articles in a general manner. *June* 24. *Reg.* 12.

King *Edward* is reconciled to the Earl of *Lancaster*, and to the rest of the Barons. *Aug.* 9.

This agreement is confirmed in a Parliament which meets soon after; and in which also it was ordained, That every City and Town in *England* should find a certain number of men for the war with *Scotland*. *Oct.* 2.

The *Scots* make themselves masters of *Berwick*, as also of *Wark*, *Harbottle*, and *Middleford* Castles.

Edward Bruce, who had caused himself to be crowned King of *Ireland*, is defeated by the *English*, and being taken prisoner, is beheaded.

The

Ann. C. The Popes Legates publish a two years truce between *England* and *Scotland*, which *R. Bruce* refusing to agree to, the Legates excommunicate him.

1319. A Parliament is held, in which the Clergy grant the King
Reg. 13. a *Tenth*.

August. King *Edward* raises an army, and goes and lays siege to *Berwick*; whilst the *Scots* in the mean time ravage the northern Counties.

Sept. 20. *William de Melton*, Archbishop of *York*, raises an army, with which he goes and encounters the plundering *Scots*, but he is defeated, with the loss of 3,000 of his men.

King *Edward* having obtained a two years truce from the *Scots*, returns to *York*.

October. A Parliament is held there, wherein it was agreed, That there should be a *standing Council*, consisting of two Bishops, one Earl, and one Baron, to advise the King upon all occasions.

The *Despensers* begin to be in the King's favour.

Hugh le Despenser, the son is made the King's *Chamberlain*, by the Barons interest, in order to be a spy upon him.

1320. *John Deguinis*, a Tanner's son of *Exeter*, pretends to be the true King *Edward*, and that he had been changed at nurse; but he is apprehended and hanged.

The *Scots* breaking the truce, invade *England*, burn the Suburbs of *York*, and take *John* Earl of *Richmond*, and others, prisoners.

June. King *Edward* goes to *France*, and does homage to
Reg. 14. *Philip* V. for the Earldom of *Ponthieu*.

1321. The *Despensers* wholly engross the King's favour, at which the rest of the Barons are highly discontented.

The Earls of *Lancaster* and *Hereford*, with other Barons, enter into a Confederacy to destroy the *Despensers*.

May. Taking up arms, and drawing together a body of 11,000 men, they plunder their lands, burn their houses, and do them, in a few days, sixty thousand pounds damage.

Then, coming to *St. Albans*, they send a petition to the King, desiring the removal of the *Despensers*.

Reg. 15. The King refers them to a Parliament, that was to meet soon.

July 15. A Parliament meeting accordingly at *Westminster*, the Barons repair thither, armed, and exhibit articles against the *Despensers*; who are banished the Kingdom, and ordered to depart before the 29th of *August*. *Hugh*, the son, turns Pirate.

The

The Confederate Barons obtain an indemnity for what they had done. *Ann. C.*

The Lord *Bartbol. de Badlesmere* refuses admittance to Queen *Isabella* into *Leeds* Castle in *Kent*; at which the King being highly incensed, goes and takes the Castle, and hangs *Thomas Colepepper*, the Governor. *Septemb.* 1

King *Edward* advances with a great army into the *Marches* of *Wales*, against the Barons of those parts.

Hugh le Despenser, the son, returns to *England*, and the sentence against him is reversed in a Synod held at *London*. *December*

Hugh le Despenser, the father, is recalled by the King. 1322.

Edward marches into the borders of *Wales*; where he takes several Barons prisoners, and the two *Roger de Mortimer's*, with several others, come and submit to him, but are notwithstanding imprisoned.

Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of *Hereford*, and the Lord *Gilbert Talbot*, go and join the Earl of *Lancaster* in the North, who was endeavouring to escape into *Scotland*.

The King pursues them, and overtaking them at *Burrow-bridge*, defeats their forces; the Earl of *Lancaster* is taken prisoner, and the Earl of *Hereford* slain. *Mar.* 16.

Thomas, Earl of *Lancaster*, is arraigned in the Hall of *Pontefract* Castle, and beheaded upon a hill near *Pontefract*. *Mar.* 21.

He passes for a *Saint*, after his death, and several miracles are reported to be performed at his tomb. Fourteen Barons are executed at *Pontefract*, and other parts of the Kingdom.

A Parliament is held at *York*, three weeks after *Easter*, wherein the sentence and judgment against the *Despensers* is revoked: The Lords and Commons grant the King the *tenth* part of their goods, and a *fifth* out of Cities, Boroughs, and ancient Demesnes.

There was another Parliament held at the same place about the middle of *November*.

King *Edward* marches into *Scotland*, but is forced to return for want of provisions; and being pursued into *England* by the *Scots*, loses his baggage, and is like to be taken prisoner. *July. Reg.* 16. *Septemb.*

Philip V. King of *France*, dies, and is succeeded by his Brother *Charles* IV.

King *Edward* repents of the death of the late Earl of *Lancaster*. 1323.

Andrew de Harcla, Earl of *Carlisle*, who had taken the Earl of *Lancaster* prisoner, is beheaded for holding a correspondence with the *Scots*. *February.*

He

Ann. C. He was, before his execution, degraded of his Knighthood, which is the first example of the kind.

The *Despensers* come now in great power, and persecute their enemies.

Robert, King of *Scotland*, sends Ambassadors to *Rome*, to obtain the Pope's absolution from the interdict which his Kingdom was under, and offers to make a truce with *England*.

Reg. 17. *Charles* IV. King of *France*, summons King *Edward* to come and do him homage for the lands he held in his Dominions; which he refusing to do, *Charles* seizes all his territories in *Guienne* and *Gascogne*.

Aug. 1. *Roger de Mortimer*, the younger, who was condemned to perpetual imprisonment, escapes out of the *Tower* into *France*.

1324. A Parliament is held at *London*, which refuses the King
March. an aid.

In this Parliament, *Adam de Orleton*, Bishop of *Hereford*, is arrested for high-treason.

The lands of the late *Knights-Templars* are bestowed on those of *St. John* of *Jerusalem*.

The *French* seize all the King of *England*'s territories in *France*, except *Bourdeaux*, *St. Severe*, and *Bayonne*.

Queen *Isabella*'s revenues, particularly the Earldom of *Cornwal*, are seized into the King her husband's hands.

The Bishops of *Hereford* and *Lincoln* take that opportunity to incense her against the *Despensers*.

May 13. A truce for thirteen years is concluded between *England*
Reg. 18. and *Scotland*.

1325. The Pope being chosen Mediator between the Kings of
January. *France* and *England*, sends Legates to treat of a peace, but without effect.

Jan. 21. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, to consider of the affairs of *Guienne*.

Queen *Isabella* is sent by the King her husband to *France*, in order to negotiate a peace.

May 31. By her means, a peace is concluded between *England*
Reg. 19. and *France*.

August. King *Edward* ratifies the treaty, and prepares to go over to *France*, and do homage for *Guienne*.

Sept. 2, At last, he consents to resign the Duchy of *Guienne* and
4, 10. the Earldom of *Ponthieu* to his son Prince *Edward*.

Sept. 12. The Prince accordingly embarks at *Dover* for *Paris*.

Sept. 21. And does homage to the King of *France*.

Queen *Isabella* falls in love with *Roger de Mortimer*; and

stays at *Paris* with her son, though the King writ to them to return to *England*. *Ann. C.* *October.*

The Bishop of *Exeter* informs King *Edward* of his Queen's scandalous familiarity with *Mortimer*, and of the plot that was contriving against his person. *Decemb.*

Whereupon, the King resolves to make preparations, and to stand upon his defence. 1326.

The Queen, in the mean time, gains a party in *England*, the heads of which were *Henry* of *Lancaster*, and the Bishops of *Lincoln* and *Hereford*.

King *Charles* resolves to assist his sister Queen *Isabella*; but being bribed by King *Edward*'s presents, and awed by the Pope's threats, he causes her to depart out of his Dominions.

She retires to the Earl of *Hainault*, who declares for her, and assists her with troops and money.

A marriage is agreed upon between Prince *Edward* and *Philippa*, daughter of the Earl of *Hainault*.

King *Edward* summons all the military tenants, and commands his Admirals, and the Warden of the *Cinque-ports*, to put themselves in a readiness to oppose his enemies landing. *February.* *March.* *Reg.* 20.

He declares war with the King of *France*.

Queen *Isabella* embarks at *Dort*, with about 3000 men, commanded by *John*, brother to the Earl of *Hainault*. *Septemb.*

She lands at *Orewell* in *Suffolk*, and is immediately joined by the Malecontents. *Sept.* 22.

Edmund, Earl of *Kent*, the King's own Brother, goes over to *Isabella*.

King *Edward* being deserted by all, publishes a Proclamation, commanding his subjects to fall upon the Foreigners, and sets 1000 *l.* price upon *Mortimer*'s head. *Sept.* 28.

He resolves to retire into the West, with the two *Despensers*, the Earl of *Arundel*, Chancellor *Baldoc*, *Simon de Redding*, &c.

The Queen publishes a Manifesto at *Wallingford*. *Oct.* 15.

She marches to *Oxford*, and from thence advances to *Gloucester*.

In the mean time, *London* declares for her, and the mob plunders the house of *Walter Stapleton*, Bishop of *Exeter*; and, seizing him, cut off his head. *Oct.* 15.

They take, moreover, the keys of the *Tower* from the Constable, and let out all the prisoners.

The King embarks for *Ireland*, leaving *Despenser*, the Father, in *Bristol*; but, being driven by contrary winds on

Ann. C. the coast of *Wales*, he goes and conceals himself in *Neath-Abbey*.

The Queen comes before *Bristol*, which surrenders to her, after a short siege; and *Hugh le Despenser* Earl of *Winchester*, the Governor of the place, is drawn and hanged,
Oct. 25. being about ninety years of age.

Oct. 26. Prince *Edward* is appointed Regent of the Kingdom.

The most considerable places in the Kingdom submit to the Queen.

The Queen returns to *Gloucester*, which opens its gates to her; and there she publishes a Proclamation, inviting the King to come and resume the Government.

Nov. 16. The King is discovered in his concealment in *Neath-*
— 20. *Abbey*, and conducted to *Monmouth* Castle, with *Hugh le Despenser*, *Baldoc*, *Reading*, &c.

The Bishop of *Hereford* is sent to demand the Great Seal from the King, which he delivers up accordingly.

The King is imprisoned in *Kenelworth* Castle in *Warwickshire*.

Nov. 24. *Hugh le Despenser*, the younger, and *Simon de Reading*, are hanged and quartered at *Hereford*.

Edmund Fitz-Alan, Earl of *Arundel*, is beheaded at the same place.

Robert Baldoc, the Chancellor, is unmercifully beaten by the *London* rabble, and carried to *Newgate*, where he dies of his wounds.

A Parliament is called, and prorogued to *January* 7.

1327. The Queen makes her entry into *London*, with a great deal of pomp and solemnity.

Jan. 7. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, wherein it was unanimously resolved, That the King should be deposed, and his son *Edward* chosen King in his room.

The Prince resolves not to accept the Crown, during his father's life, without his express consent.

Commissioners are therefore sent to the King at *Kenelworth*, to surrender, in the Nation's name, their homage and fealty to him; and to oblige him by threats and promises to resign the Crown.

The King resigns his Royal dignity to them, by delivering the Crown, Scepter, and other Ensigns of Royalty.

Thus ended the Reign of *Edward* II. in the 43d year of his age, after having lasted 19 years, 6 months, and 15 days.

The

The Character *of* EDWARD II.

This Prince had a very mean genius, which permitted him not to distinguish what was for his advantge, from what was hurtful to him. He followed his humour, without troubling himself about the consequences, and without being able to remedy the misfortunes he thereby drew on himself. Though he had many failings, he may be affirmed to be more weak than wicked. To sum up his character in a few words, he was exceeding like his grandfather, *Henry* III. *Edward* his Father, a much wiser Prince than he, and taught by the misfortunes of the two Kings, his immediate Predecessors, ever avoided, as a most dangerous rock, all occasion of quarrel with the Nobility; chusing rather to give way a little, than hazard his quiet to gratify his resentment. The son had not a sufficient capacity to follow so good an example, or to improve by his instructions. He gave up himself entirely to his favourites, and chose rather to forfeit the affection of his people, than deny himself the satisfaction of heaping favours on those he loved. His weakness and incapacity drew on him the contempt of his subjects, which was soon changed into hatred, when he was seen to sacrifice all to his passions. He had the misfortune to have a beautiful and amorous wife, who giving way to an infamous passion, compleated his ruin, for fear perhaps of being herself prevented. Certainly, he was treated too severely by his subjects, whose insolence increased in proportion to their Sovereign's weakness. One cannot observe, without wonder, that there was not a single person willing to draw his sword in his defence. I shall not undertake to determine how far, in those days, the rights of the people, with regard to the King, might extend. I shall only say, there was no precedent to follow; for this is the first instance, in the *English* History, of a King deposed by his subjects, at least since the Conquest. *Edward* II. is taxed with his being given to drink. Some speak of his fondness for *Gaveston*, so as to make it believed very criminal. Others, on the contrary, commend him for his continency. And indeed, we do not find he had any mistresses or bastards, like some of his Predecessors. He founded *Oriel-College* and *St. Mary-Hall* in *Oxford*, and built a Monastery for Friars on his estate at *Langley*. De la M.

The children of King *Edward* II. by his wife *Isabella*, daughter of *Philip* IV. King of *France*, were, 1. *Edward*,

who succeeded him. 2. *John*, Earl of *Cornwal*, born at *Eltham*, *Aug.* 15, 1316. 3. *Joan*, married to *David* II. King of *Scotland*. 4. *Eleanor*, second wife of *Reynald* II. Earl of *Gelders*.

There were two remarkable events in this Reign. The first was an earthquake, the most terrible that had ever been felt in *Great-Britain*. The second was the suppression of the order of the Knights-Templars, both in *England* and all other Christian States. This order was first instituted at *Jerusalem*, in the Reign of *Baldwin* IV, for the defence of the Holy Sepulchre, and protection of the Pilgrims that resorted thither from all parts. *Hugo de Paganis* and *Geoffrey de St. Ademar* were the Founders. The Knights of this Order were at first called, *The Poor of the Holy City*. Afterwards they had the name of *Templars*, because their first house was near the *Temple*. Hence it is that all their houses were stiled Temples. This order was confirmed in the Council of *Troye*, 1127, and its rule composed by St. *Bernard*.

M. Paris. p. 67. Walsing. p. 96.

After the downfal of the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, about the year 1186, this order was dispersed over all *Europe*, and increased prodigiously by the liberality of the Christians. Riches soon changed the manners of the Knights. In process of time their scandalous lives, joined to an insupportable pride, caused them to be as odious, as they were esteemed in the beginning of their Institution. *Philip the Fair*, King of *France*, being disobliged by those of his Kingdom, and not content with punishing the offenders, attempted the ruin of the whole Order, by means of Pope *Clement* V, whom he had artfully gained. In the first place, he ordered all the Templars in *France* to be seized, as well as the Grand Master of the Order, who resided in the Island of *Cyprus*, and, by the Pope's order, was come to *Paris*. Then upon a charge exhibited against them, that at their reception into the order, they denied Jesus Christ, and spit upon a crucifix, he caused fifty-seven to be burnt, among whom was the Grand Master. To this accusation was added others of heresy, sodomy, and other numberless crimes. To oblige the King of *France*, *Clement* V. earnestly pressed *Edward* II, to follow the example of *Philip* his Father-in-law. After much solicitation, he obtained at length, that all the Templars in *England* should be seized (as they were in *France*) in one day. *Edward* being prevailed with, in expectation of their estates, which were very considerable, held a National Synod at *London*, where they

Puteanus Hist. de la Condam. des Templ.

Act. Pub. III. *from* p. 30, *to* 292.

they were condemned. However, they were not treated so rigorously as in *France*. They were only dispersed in the Monasteries to do penance, with a moderate pension paid out of the revenues of the Order. The severities exercised upon them in *France* and *England*, would no doubt have sufficed, if the design had been only to chastise them: But their destruction was determined. *Clement* V, agreeing in this point with *Philip the Fair*, caused strict inquiry to be made, and many witnesses to be heard, who accused not some particular Knights only, but the whole Order, of the most enormous crimes. If these depositions were well attested, one can hardly conceive it possible, there could be so detestable a Society among Christians. But every body was not equally persuaded of the truth of these evidences, particularly as to what concerned the Order in general. These preparations being made, the Pope called at *Vienne* in *Dauphine* a general Council, where he presided in person; and where *Philip* was pleased also to be present, to promote the condemnation of the Order. But they did not find the Council disposed as they expected. The Bishops could not think of condemning men that were not convicted, or even summoned before the Council to answer for themselves. These proceedings of the Pope, without hearing what the Order could alledge in their defence, did not appear sufficient to the Council, who wished that things were done in a more legal manner. So the Pope was obliged to use the plenitude of his Apostolical power, in suspending this Order for ever, by a bull read in the second Session. As the Council was not prepared for it, no man ventured to oppose the bull; and their silence was taken for an approbation, according to the method now some time established. By the same bull, the Pope reserved to the Holy See, the disposal of the estates of the Templars; and, shortly after, *Clement* assigned them the Hospitallers or Knights of *St. John of Jerusalem*, called at this day, *Knights of Malta*. *Edward* II, who had taken possession of the estates of the condemned Order, in vain opposed the Pope's grant to the Hospitallers, and insisted on the prerogatives of his Crown, by which all confiscations were adjudged to him. The troubles in *England* during his Reign, would not permit him to keep possession. Thus the whole Order of the Templars were made to suffer the punishment deserved, doubtless, by some of their Members, but which, probably, was not due to all in general.

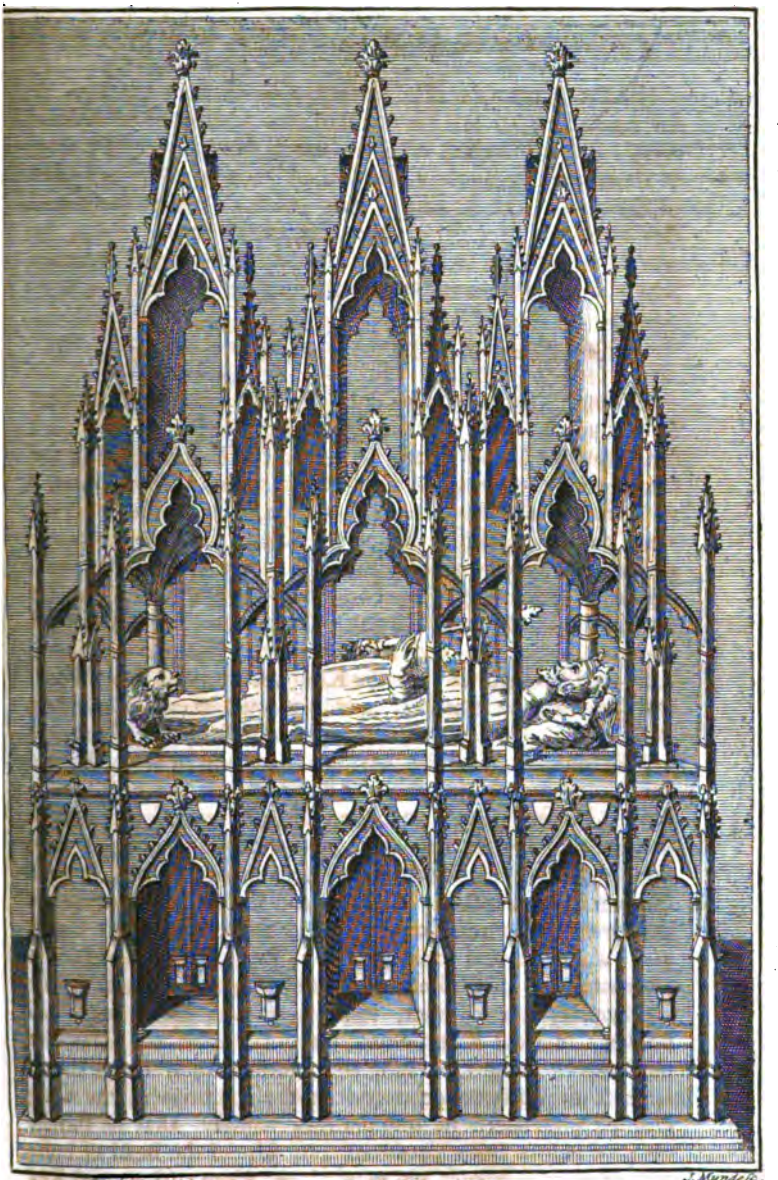
Act. Pub. III. p. 326, 956.

A description of the Monument *of* EDWARD II.

His son EDWARD III. erected a monument for him in the monastery of St. Peter, now the Cathedral of Gloucester. The materials of it are white stone; his effigies in of alabaster. It stands in the second arch on the north-side of the altar, betwixt two Tuscan pillars. About these pillars near the capitals are the figures of several stags, by which he was said to be drawn thither from Berkely castle. There is no inscription on this tomb.

An Account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

Having in the last Coin-Note spoken of the persons that sat and acted at the Exchequer during the second period, I shall consider II, the business of the Exchequer during the same, which may be ranked under three general heads: 1. Affairs of the Revenue. 2. Causes. 3. Business of various kinds. 1. There was in the Exchequer a great variety of business, springing from things incident to the Revenue. Fines of divers kinds were imposed, and amercements set by the Treasurer and Barons. They sometimes surveyed the King's manors, and committed or demised the same. They also committed (by the King's Command and Assent) the Counties to Sheriffs, and removed them from their Bailywicks. In fine, it was the business of the Treasurer and Barons, to speed the levying and getting in of the King's debts, and manage the Crown Revenue to the best advantage. Nevertheless if the King thought them remiss, or wanted money very urgently, he would send writs or messages to them, to hasten the getting in of money, in such manner as he directed. 2. Pleas and Causes: Though after the separation of the Common Pleas from the King's Court and Palace, it was forbidden, by the great Charter, and afterwards by an Ordinance, to hold Common Pleas in the Exchequer, yet in fact, some Common Pleas were still holden; and the King sometimes gave leave to particular persons, to bring their suits and recover their debts there. In suits moved between parties in the Exchequer, the King granted preference to one person; namely, that he should be paid before other creditors. 3. Under the head of business of various kinds, we may place, Conventions and Recognitions, which were frequently made in the Exchequer, and the presentation and admission of Officers of the Exchequer,



The Monument of K. EDWARD II.
in the Cathedral of Gloucester.

chequer, as will be seen hereafter. Several Officers of the exchange, and coinage of money, were from time to time presented and sworn in the Exchequer, as well as some others, who were Officers at large, as Customers and Commissioners of perambulation of forests. Particularly the Mayors and chief Officers of Towns, Escheators, *&c.* were presented at the Exchequer. The Citizens of *London*, after they had chosen a Mayor, used to present him yearly on the morrow of St. *Simon* and St. *Jude*, before the Treasurer and Barons, who swore and admitted him to his office; so likewise their Sheriffs on the morrow of St. *Michael*. Thus *Nicolas Batt* their Mayor (28 *Hen.* III.) was presented by the Citizens, and 9 *Edw.* II. the Mayor, *&c.* presented their Sheriffs *Hamon Godchep*, and *William Buddele*. If the Sheriff of *London*, did not come to the Exchequer at the King's command, to take upon him the office of Sheriff, he was to be amerced. Sometimes Sheriffs of Counties, Under-Sheriffs of hereditary ones, *&c.* were sworn in person at the Exchequer. Several of the King's tenants *in Capite*, by Knight's Service, did their fealty; and others, who held of the King *in Capite*, by Rent Service, paid their rent, at the Exchequer. *Walter le Brun*, Farrier at the *Strand* in *Middlesex*, was to have a piece of ground in the parish of St. *Clement*, to place a forge there, he rendering yearly six horseshoes. *Mag. Rot.* 19 *Hen.* III. This rent was antiently wont to be paid at the Exchequer. It is still tendered there to this day, by the Mayor and Citizens of *London*, to whom in process of time, the said piece of ground was granted. During this second period (as well as during the first) the chief Justiciary, the Treasurer, the Barons, and Council at the Exchequer, did sometimes act in affairs relating to the publick peace, and to the government and defence of the Realm. In general, the business and acts of the Court of Exchequer, were wont to be entered or recorded in several Rolls, the principal whereof were, *the Rotulus annalis*, or great Roll of the Pipe, of which I have spoken in the last Coin Note; and therefore shall only add here, that the Chancellor of the Exchequer (who seems to have been appointed to be a check upon the Treasurer) from antient time, called a Counter-Roll of the Treasurer's great Roll, to be made up every year. There are some of these *Rotuli Cancellarii* more antient than the Reign of *Henry* III. This observation may serve to resolve a doubt, which the Antiquaries have hitherto lain under. For example,

ample; There is in the Record-Office in the *Tower* of *London*, a duplicate Great Roll of 6 *Rich.* I. and another of 7 *Joh.* And there is another of the third of *John*, in the custody of the Treasurer and Chamberlains of the Exchequer. The Great Rolls of which several years are in the repository of the Pipe. And in the same repository, there are two Great Rolls of the fourth of *John*. Now all these duplicate Rolls, Mr. *Madox* takes to be *Rotuli Cancellarii*. The next Records were the *Memoranda*, or Remembrances. A Remembrance was antiently wont to be made for every year, in each of the Remembrancer's Offices. On the part of the Treasurer's Remembrancer, each yearly bundle contained several heads or titles, such as *Communia*, the common business; *Compota*, or Accounts; *Visus*, Views; *Adventus*, the Advents of the Accomptants; and other titles. So also the *Memoranda*, on the part of the King's Remembrancer have the like heads or titles. Of the originals of the Chancery, which were wont to be reposited in the Treasurer's Remembrancer's Office, I shall speak hereafter. In the *Memoranda* of the Exchequer, was entered great variety of business: For instance, the King's writs and precepts of many kinds relating to the Revenue, Tenures, &c. Commissions of Bailywicks, Custodies, Ferms, &c. Presentations and admissions of the Officers of the Exchequer, and other Officers; Pleadings and Allegations of Parties; Judgments and Awards of the Justiciary, the Treasurer and Barons, and the King's Council; Recognitions of Debts, and Conventions of divers kinds; Accompts, Views of Accompts, with several Acts relating to Accomptants; Inquisitions of Sheriffs, Escheators, &c. Advents of Sheriffs, Escheators and others, and in general, all those things which were comprised under the term, *Communia*, or common business. There were also *Memorandums* entered in these Rolls, *pro Commodo Regis*, to controll Accompts, or to save the King's Rights; either by way of *Memorandum pro Rege*, or of *Loquendum cum Rege*, or *cum Justiciario*, or *cum Concilio Regis*, &c. The Judgments and Awards of the chief Justiciary, and of the Treasurer and Barons, were commonly entered in the Rolls, in the terms, *Consideratum est*, or *Concordatum est*, *per Justiciarium*, or *per Thesaurarium et Barones*; and sometimes *Provisum est*, and *adjudicatum est*. But other words were also sometimes used, as *Ordinarunt*, *præceperunt*, &c. These and the like terms were also used in other Judicatures. In *Glanvil* it

is

is said, the Tenant, or Defendant, should be discharged by Judgment of the Court, *per Consideationem Curiæ*, l. 2. c. 18. In the business of the Exchequer (as to Pleas and Accompts) there were frequent use of Writs or Letters from the King to the Treasurer and Barons, signifying to them his pleasure, concerning matters depending before them. These passed under the Great, or the Privy Seal. Sometimes Messages were brought by living Messengers. The most frequent of these Writs or Messages were: To do justice or right to Parties: To shew favour to Parties: To give dispatch to Parties. In process of time, this correspondence between the Palace and the Judicial Courts, or the practice of sending Writs or other Messages to the Judges of the King's Courts, was, in many cases, forbidden by Statute. But this Restriction was not till after the second Period, or the Reign of *Edward* II. Thus much of the business. I come now, III. to the Accompts of the Exchequer. As the Sheriffs were the most considerable Accomptants to the Crown, the method of Accompts at the Exchequer will be best learnt from those of the Sheriffs. The Accompt of a Sheriff was divided into certain formal parts: The *Proser*; the *Visus Compoti*; the *Summa*, or making of the Sum. The *Proser* was a pre-payment out of the Sheriff's Ferm, and *Corpus Comitatus*, and out of his *Proficuum*, and the Summoncea. It was, probably, called *Profrum*, *a Proferendo*. If this *Proser* was was not paid, the Accomptants were amerced, or otherwise punished. The *Visus Compoti*, or view of Accompt, was the entrance, or fore-part of the Accompt, which stood *de bene esse*, whilst the Sheriff was purifying or liquidating his Account, by producing his *Warranta*, or Vouchers, by virtue whereof, he was to have an allowance or discharge of any sums charged on him. After the View was made, he proceeded to the *Summa*, to make, or cast his Sum, which was always at the end of his Accompt. Another way of considering the manner of a Sheriff's Accompt is, as it stands in the Great Roll. When he accompted as *Firmarius*, his Accompt consisted of several parts, the *Corpus Comitatus*, the *Remanens firmæ*, after *Terræ datæ*; the *Crementum*, if any; the *Proficuum* or *firma de proficuo*, the issues of Escheats and Purprestures, Fines, Oblatas, Amerciaments of divers sorts, Escuages, Aids, Tallages, and casual Profits; Ferms or Issues of Towns, Burghs, Gilds, or Lands, which were within the Sheriff's Charge, and the like. The *Corpus Comitatus* consisted of several Manors

and

and Lands, which being let or committed together to the Sheriff, made the Fund, out of which the annual Ferm to the Crown arose. These Manors or Lands lay within the Sheriff's County. But, by some accident, certain Manors in *Cornwal* belonged to the Ferm of *Devonshire*. *Mag. Rot.* 5 *Hen.* II. In time, the Kings charged the *Corpus Comitatus*, with certain payments of Alms and Liveries, called *Eleemosynæ*, and *Liberationis Constitutæ*, and also granted away part of the lands. Hence came the distinction of the *Terræ datæ*. For when some of the lands, out of which the Sheriff's Ferm arose, were granted away, it was fit he should have allowance for so much as the *Terræ datæ* bore in the *Corpus Comitatus*. The sum to be answered for, after that deduction, was called *Remanens Firmæ post Terras datas*. The lands thus granted away, were sometimes said to be *missæ extra Comitatum*. Besides these, there was a third settled Payment, *viz.* the *Tertius denarius*, wont to be paid by the Sheriff out of the *Corpus Comitatus*, to the Earl of the County. There was also casual Payments, such as occasional Provisions, or Disbursements of various sorts. There was a way of computing the value of the several things that made up the *Corpus Comitatus*, *viz.* such a Manor or Land, *portat in corpore Comitatus*, so much. When the Sheriff was not the Fermer, but *Custos* of a County, he did not answer in this manner, but was a kind of a *Proficuarius* or Bailiff, and was to account for the *Proficuum* of his County, and to be discharged of the Fermer. In entering the Sheriff's Accompts in the Great Roll, by a provision in the 54th of *Henry* III, the *Corpus Comitatus* was written first, then the settled Alms and Liveries, and the Warrants for the Sheriff's Disbursements, *&c.* But, 22 *Edw.* I, it was ordered, that the *Corpus Comitatus* should not be written every year afresh in the Great Roll, but in a particular Roll by itself, and out of that Roll should be read every year to the Sheriff, upon his Accompt. But that the *Remanens Firmæ*, after the *Teræ datæ*, should be written in the Great Roll. The Sheriffs generally accounted from *Michaelmas* to *Michaelmas*. *Edward* I. ordered, that the Sheriffs should be Escheators in their respective Counties. If a man held a Bailywick, and executed it by a Substitute, the immediate Bailee was to pay the Accompts of the Issues of the Bailywick. The stated Accompts was rendered regularly in course every year. In general, Accomptants were obliged to come in person to render their Accompts. If they made

an

an Attorney, it was usually by the King's leave, and afterwards by Warrant of the Treasurer, Chancellor, or Barons, or one of them. Accompts were to be rendered at the Exchequer, upon oath. In some Records, mention is made of the Accomptants answering *per Fidem*, or *per verum dictum*, which *Madox* imagined to be a *voire dire*, or a Declaration upon their Faith or Allegiance. Where one was indebted to the King, and likewise to another person, the King's debt was to be preferred in payment. If one was indebted to the Crown, such debtor could not make a will to dispose of his chattels, to the King's prejudice; nor could his Executors have administration of his chattels, without permission from the King, or the Justicier, or Barons of the Exchequer; and, if it was doubtful whether the deceased's effects would satisfy the debts due to the King, it was usual for the King to seize into his hands the chattels of the debtor. If the King's debtor was unable to satisfy the King's debt out of his own chattels, the King would betake himself to any third person who was indebted to the King's debtor; and upon recovery of such debt, the third person was acquitted against the King's debtor. The heir of the King's debtor was not to be distreined for the King's debt, in case the chattels of the King's debtor were sufficient to answer it. The widow of the King's debtor was not to be distreined by her dower, to answer the King's debt, in case the heir had sufficient to answer it: Neither were sureties to be distreined, so long as the principal debtor had wherewithal to answer the debt. By the antient usage of the Exchequer, the King's Debtors, or Accomptants were wont to have Writs of Aid, to recover their debts of such persons as were indebted to them, in order to enable them to answer the debts they owed to the King. When the Sheriff or other Officer, having the Summonce of the Exchequer, had levied or received the debt due from any person to the King, he was to give the debtor an acquittance or tally of discharge; and afterwards acquit the debtor of such debt at the Exchequer. In case of distress, it was the duty of the Sheriff to sell it at a reasonable price; and, to prevent frauds, by an antient Statute, 27 *Henry* III, certain persons were to be assigned to approve the same to the Sheriff. Sheriffs were to notify the time of their acompting, to Bailiffs of Liberties, and other persons concerned. The King's debtors found Sureties, if required. They were usually called *Plegii*, *Obsides*, and

Manu-

Manucaptores. Sometimes the Pledges were remarkably numerous. Writs of the Great and privy Seal were frequently used, both in reference to Accompts, and other business, at the Exchequer. Allowances or discounts were usually made *per Warrantum*, either by virtue of the King's Writ, or by Writ or Award of the Chief Justicier, or other Baron of the Treasury. Hence arose the great number of Writs of *Allocate* and *Computate*. Atterminations were given by the Treasurer and Barons to the King's debtors, by virtue of the King's Writs directed to them; and in like manner, Respites and Discharges. By Attermination, is meant, granting men several terms or days for payment of their debt, when they could not pay it at once. Sometimes men were discharged by the Chief Justiciary, or by the Treasurer and Barons, without any especial Writ. Sometimes both debts and Accompts were discharged by the King's pardon. If upon the Account viewed or stated the Crown was found indebted to the Accomptant, the sum in which the Crown was so indebted, was called *Superplus*, or *Superplusage*, probably, because it was *so much more*, than the Accomptant's Receipts. If an Accomptant did not come to render his Accompts, or did not pursue the same in due manner, he was punished by distress, and seizure of Land, and by Amercement. If he did not answer the debts or sums wherewith he was charged, he was committed to the *Marshal*, or *Fleet-Prison*, or the *Tower* of *London*. If Accomptants departed from the Exchequer, before their Accompts were speeded, they were, if Commoners, to be attached by their bodies. Lords, and others, who claimed to have Franchises within their Seigneury or Liberty, were to come yearly to the King's Exchequer, when the Sheriff of their County was passing his Accompt; and then they were to render an account there of the issue of their Franchise, and were allowed so much as they were rightfully intitled to by Charters from the Crown. But if the said Lords and others failed to appear, *&c.* it was usual for the King to seize their Franchise. The Accomptants at the time of passing their Accompts, did sometimes sit upon a bench in the Court of Exchequer. As money was sometimes paid in, so Accompts were sometimes rendered at the *Camera Regis*. Debts were put in charge many ways. By virtue of the King's writ: By the Writ or Testimony of the Justiciary or Baron: By Judgment or Award of the Justiciary, *&c.* in Court: By the Rolls, or Estreats of the Justiciers: By the acknowledgment

ment of the Parties: From the Original of the Chancery: And by other ways. The Chancery, in the most antient times, was usually holden at the Exchequer: Or, many or most of the Chancery Writs were then dispatched and sealed at the Exchequer, where the Great Seal was commonly kept. When therefore the Chancery was separated from the Exchequer, and the Charters, Writs, and Precepts of the Great Seal came to be entered by themselves in the *Rotuli Cancellariæ*, (such as Charter-Rolls, Patent-Rolls, *&c.*) at or about the beginning of King *John*'s Reign: Then, as it seems, commenced the method (which has been continued ever since) of sending Estreats from the Chancery to the Exchequer. In fact, from the beginning of King *John*'s Reign, they wrote every year the said *Rotuli Cancellariæ*, and afterwards made Estreats thereof; which Estreats were transmitted into the Exchequer, and were called *Originale*, or *Originalia*, and *Extractæ Cancellariæ*. They were written out of the Fine-Rolls, Patent-Rolls, and other Rolls of the Chancery. And out of them, Fines, Ferms, *&c.* were taken and put in charge at the Exchequer for the King's profit. Estreats were also made of the Fines, Amercements, and such like, from the Court holden *Coram Rege*, or from the *Common Bench*, and from the *Iters*, &c. These were called the foreign Estreats, and were sent out in another Summonce, than that which was awarded for the Debts, contained in the *Originals*. If these Estreats were not brought in, in due time, a Writ was issued to the Persons or Justices before whom they lay, to bring them in. Tallies were of a great and constant use in the Exchequer, coeval with the Exchequer itself in *England*. The word is *French*, and signifies *Cutting*. These Tallies were pieces of wood, cut in a peculiar manner of Correspondency. For example, a stick, or rod of hazel, or other wood, well seasoned, was cut square and uniform at each end, and in the Shaft. The sum of money which it bore was cut in notches in the wood, by the Cutter of the Tallies; and likewise written upon two sides of it, by the Writer of the Tallies. The Tally was cleft in the middle by the Deputy-Chamberlains, with a knife and mallet, through the shaft and the notches; whereby it made two halves, each half having a superscription, and a half-part of the notch or notches: A notch of such a largeness, signified M *l.* of another largeness C *l.* *&c.* It being thus divided, one part of it was called a Tally, the other a Counter-Tally, or a Tally, and a Foil,

Folium.

Folium. Sometimes the parts were called *Scuchia*, and *Contratallia*. However, these were in effect one Tally, or two parts of one thing. And if they were genuine, they fitted so exactly, that they appeared evidently to be parts the one of the other. Their use was to prevent fraud. Tallies had a superscription, importing of what nature they were, and for what purpose given. Counters were sometimes used at the Exchequer, in the way of Computation. In which case, the Counters were laid in rows upon the several Distinctures of the chequered Cloth, *viz.* one row or place for pounds, another for shillings, *&c.* In the 17th of King *John*, ten shillings of *Venetian* money (valued at xv *s.*) and two Besants (valued at III *s.* and VI *d.*) were used at the Exchequer for Counters. *Mag. Rot.* 17 *John. Rot.* 6.

I come now in the last place to the Officers or Ministers of the Exchequer. The principal Officers of the great or superior Exchequer were: The two Remembrancers, the Ingrosser of the great Roll, the Usher, the Constable, the Marshal, the Auditors, the Clerk of the Estreats. 1. There were antiently at the Exchequer two Remembrancers. They were sometimes called *Rememoratores Regis*. In time one came to be called the King's, the other the Treasurer's, Remembrancer. And their Offices were distinct, as appears by distinct bundles of *Memoranda*, which have been made up in their respective Offices, and remain there from very antient time to this day. In the 6th of *Edward* II, *Adam de Limbergh*, one of the Remembrancers, had XX*l.* yearly stipend allowed by the Crown for executing his Office, and *William de Everdon*, the other Remembrancer, XL marks a year for himself and Clerks. *Lib.* 6. *Edw.* II. 2. The Ingrosser of the great Roll, was a most antient and considerable Officer in the Exchequer. Though the name of this Office does not occur in most antient times next after the Conquest, yet it is doubtless as old as the Exchequer itself, that is, there was always some person or persons employed to write the great Rolls. In the 19th of *Edward* II, the Ingrosser, and the Treasurer's Remembrancers, were allowed two Clerks each, and were to receive an additional salary for their maintenance of twelve marks yearly. *Trin. Com.* 19 *Edw.* II. 3. The Office of Usher, was a very antient and hereditary Office. He had several that acted under him in the great Exchequer, in the Exchequer of the *Jews*, and in the common Bank. Many curious and uncommon Memoirs relating to this Office occur in Records.

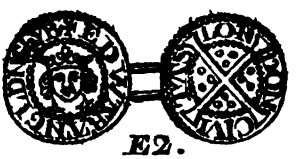
Vide

Vide *Madox's Hist. of Exchequer*. p. 718. It was the Usher's duty to keep the Exchequer safely, and to take care of the doors and avenues to it; so that the King's Records might be in safety. He likewise transmitted the Writs of Summonces, which issued out of the Exchequer for the King's debts; that is, caused them to be delivered to the respective Sheriffs, to whom they were directed. This Office was held of the King *in Capite*, by Serjeanty. 4. The Constable of the Exchequer, was Deputy to the Constable of *England*, and was nominated by him. There can be little said of his duty, only he seems to have had in some cases, a concurrent or like power with the Marshal. In antient time there was also a Constable in the Court of Common Bench, who enrolled Essoigns, and did other ministerial acts. 5. The Office of Marshal of the Exchequer is very antient. He was appointed by the Marshal of *England*. Whilst an account pended, he had the keeping of several sorts of Writs and Vouchers produced by Debtors or Accomptants. These he kept in Farules or Bins, or in Filets or Files, or in a Purse or bag. The *Farulus Marescalli*, is often mentioned in the Exchequer Records. When an Accomptant having been sworn to Account, did not do it or made default at any day prefixed to him: Or did not duly answer the Arrerages of his Account, he was committed in custody to the Marshal, to remain prisoner till the Court made a recess. The word Marshal seems to have been sometimes used with Latitude. The persons that were employed at the Exchequer, in arresting Accomptants or other Delinquents, were sometimes called by that name. 6. In process of time, there were Officers at the Exchequer, called *Auditores Computorum Scaccarii*. They seem to be first appointed in the Reign of *Edward* II. being then called *clerici nuper deputati*. The Accounts of some parts of the Revenue were before, usually audited either by some of the Justices, or Barons, or by Clerks, or Persons, assigned *hac vice* for that purpose, by the King, or the Treasurer, and Barons. 7. Little occurs within the time of the second Period, concerning the Clerk of the Estreats and foreign Summonces. In the 18th of *Edward* II. all the Estreats, which were in the custody of the Treasurer's Remembrancer, were by command of the Treasurer and Barons, delivered to *John de Chisenhale*, Clerk of the Summonces. 8. There was also a *Clericus Brevium de Scaccario*. He belonged to the Office of Chancellor of the Exchequer.

Amongst

Amongst the Officers of the Exchequer during the second Period, may be reckoned the Chamberlains. In the first Period, the Chamberlains in Fee, who were great Officers in the King's Court, sometimes sat and acted in person in the King's Exchequer, and are numbered amongst the Barons there. But afterwards, the Chamberlains in Fee usually deputed others to execute their Offices for them, both in the great Exchequer and at the receipt. The persons so deputed, were at first Knights. In such case, the Chamberlain in Fee was to come regularly in person, and present his Deputy to the Treasurer and Barons: And thereupon the Deputy used to be sworn and admitted. But sometimes he presented his Deputy by his Steward, or other Attorney; and sometimes by Letters Patent directed to the Treasurer and Barons. Sometimes also he presented his Deputy to the King himself, and then upon the King's Writ such Deputy was admitted. The Treasurer and Chamberlains had under them certain Clerks, who, during their attendance on the King's business, were at livery or allowance from the King. These Clerks were usually called, during the first period, *Clerici Thesaurarii et Camerariorum*, and *Clerici de Thesauro* or *de Recepta*, without distinguishing them from one another by particular names of Office. Hence hath arisen some obscurity. The *Clerici Thesaurarii* seem to have been the Officers afterwards called, *Clerk of the Pells*, *Writer of the Tallies*, &c. and induced all the Officers of the receipt, except those whose Offices were Serjeanties, or related immediately to the Chamberlain's Office. In the upper Exchequer, there are but few memorials concerning the Officers or Clerks of the receipt. The Clerkship of the Pells is probably antient. There is in the Treasury, at the receipt of Exchequer, a Pell, or it may be, a Counter-pell of 9 *Hen.* III. In the 35th of *Hen.* III, the Pell Roll is called *Magnus Rotulus de Recepta*. In the 28th of *Hen.* III, *Simon de Westminster* was chosen one of the Tellers of the Exchequer. At the receipt of Exchequer were also some Serjeanties or hereditary Officers; namely, a *Pesor* and *Fusor*. The Office of *Pesor*, *Ponderator*, or *Weigher*, was the Serjeanty, which, in the 4th of King *John*, was vested in *Thomas de Windesore*, and remained in that family for some time afterwards. Another Serjeanty was the *Fusorie*. By *Fusor* we are to understand Melter. One *William* was *Fusor* in the Reigns of King *Henry* II. and *Richard* I. Concerning the Usher of the Receipt,

Receipt, nothing remarkable occurs within this period. I shall conclude with a few instances of the allowance made to several Ministers of the Receipt of Exchequer, for their Liveries and Corrodies, and other necessaries. In 9 *Hen.* III, the Liveries of the Ministers of the Exchequer for fourscore days, from the Feast of *St. Michael*, till *Monday* next after the Feast of *St. Lucius*, were: To three Scribes c *s.* To the two Knights of the Chamberlains VIII marks. To *John de Windesore* IIII *l.* To *John* the *Fusor* II marks and a half. To *Simon Druel* II marks and a half. To the four Tellers IIII *l.* To the Vigil, and for light X *s.* For a hutch to lay up the *Memoranda* VII *d.* For Rodds for the Tallier V *s.* For parchment for the use of the Chamberlains, and the chief Justicier's Clerk IIII *s.* For ink, during the whole year, III *s.* For litter for the chamber of the Barons, and house of Receipt XII *d.* For necessaries for the said Chambers XX *d.* For ten dozen of hutches XX *s.* For wax II *s.* For leather for the Tallier IX *d.* For a hutch to lay the Inquisitions in II *d.* For the Marshal's hutch XII *d.* For a sack to put the allowed tallies in XIIII *d.* For carrying and re-carrying the hutches V *s.* For a tonell to put in the D marks, sent to the King at *Oxford*, by *R.* Bishop of *Chichester* XII *d.* For locks, bolts, and other small expences IIII *s.* Total, XXIIII *l.* XIII *s.* VIII *d.* *Ex Pelle* Receptæ de Anno 9 *Hen.* III. *Rot. vilt. indorso, penes Thes. et Camer.*



E2.

Edward II's Coin (if ever he coined any money, which *Nicolson* says cannot be certainly affirmed) are in all respects like his Father's, and distinguished from them only by name, *viz.* EDWA. EDWAR. or EDWARD. ANGL. DMS. HYB. On the reverse, the names of several Cities in *England* and *Ireland*, as CIVITAS LONDON. LINCOL. DUBLIN. WATERFORD, *&c.* The title of *Dominus Hyberniæ* is never wanting on his Coin. *Nicolson* observes, neither our Histories nor Laws afford us any light, as to this King's money.

Ann.C.

The NOBILITY created in this Reign.

1308. *Piers de Gaveston*, Earl of *Cornwal.*

1311. *Thomas Plantagenet* (Earl of *Chester*, *Lancaster*, *Leicester*, and *Derby*) Earl of *Lincoln.*

1312. *Dec.* 16. *Thomas Plantagenet* (of *Brotherton*) Earl of *Norfolk.*

1321. *July* 28. *Edmund Plantagenet* (of *Woodstock*) Earl of *Kent.*

1322. *Mar.* 25. *Andrew de Harcla*, Earl of *Carlisle.*

May 10. *Hugh le Despenser*, Earl of *Winchester.*

BOOK X.

The Reigns of EDWARD III. *and* RICHARD II. *Containing the space of* 73 *years.*

11. EDWARD III. *of* Windsor.

1327. *Reg.* 1. KING *Edward* begins his Reign in the 14th year of his age.

Jan. 20. He is crowned at *Westminster*, by *Walter* Archbishop of

Jan. 26. *Canterbury.*

Feb. 2. And receives the order of Knighthood from the hands of *Henry* Earl of *Lancaster.*

The Parliament appoints 12 Guardians to the King, consisting of 5 Bishops, 2 Earls, and 5 Barons; and *Henry* Earl of *Lancaster* is made Protector.

The Queen seizes the Government, and shares it only with her creatures, *Roger de Mortimer* being her Prime-Minister.

The Parliament grants her an excessive Dowry, exceeding two thirds of the Revenues of the Crown; and allows but 100 marks a month, for the maintenance of the late King.

February. In this Parliament, the banishment of the *Despensers* is confirmed; and it is enacted, That none should be impeached which took part with the King against his Father; and that all persons that came over with the Queen should be indemnified.

All the judgments passed in the late Reign are reversed.

Henry

G. Vertue sc.

Henry Earl of *Lancaster* is restored to his brother's inheritance; and the young King, and the Queen-mother, write to the Pope, to sollicit the late Earl's canonization. *Ann. C.*

The *Scots*, breaking the truce, endeavour to surprize the Castle of *Norham*, but are repulsed. *Feb.* 2.

A new treaty is concluded between *England* and *France*. *Mar.* 13.

Robert King of *Scotland* sends a defiance to King *Edward*.

About 20,000 *Scots* make an irruption into *England*, and ravage the borders.

King *Edward* sends over for 2,000 *Flemings*, and summons all the military tenants to meet him at *York*. *May.*

Then he advances towards *Scotland*, with an army of about 60,000 men, but cannot overtake the *Scots*.

He comes up with them, as they lay encamped near *Stanhope-Park*, but dares not venture to engage with them.

The Lord *Douglas* comes privately into the *English* camp, and had like to kill, or carry the King away prisoner.

The *Scots* retire by speedy marches into their own Country, and King *Edward* not being able to follow them, returns to *York*. *August.*

He disbands his army, and sends the Foreigners away back into *Flanders*.

The late King *Edward* is taken out of the hands of the Earl of *Lancaster*, and put into the custody of Sir *John Maltravers*, and Sir *Thomas Gurney*. *April.*

They remove him from *Kenelworth* to *Corfe* Castle, then to *Bristol*, and at last to *Berkley* Castle.

In the way thither, they shave his head and beard with cold water taken out of a ditch, crown him with hay, and endeavour to shorten his days by poison and ill usage.

At last, his two Keepers, with 15 other Ruffians, entering his chamber in the night, lay a heavy table upon his upper parts, and thrust a horn pipe up his body, through which they ran a red hot iron, and burnt his bowels. *Sept.* 22.

Thus died King *Edward* II. in the 43d year of his age, and was buried in the Abbey-Church at *Gloucester*, which is now the Cathedral.

A Parliament is held at *Lincoln*; *Sept.* 15.

And another at *Westminster*, in which the King restores *London* to its antient liberties that had been forfeited on account of the late insurrection, and grants it new ones. *Nov.* 13.

Southwark is thereby put under the Government of the City of *London*.

King *Edward* is married, at *York*, to *Philippa* of *Hainault*. 1328. *Jan.* 24.

Ann. C. *Charles* IV, King of *France*, dies.

Reg. 2. A Parliament is summoned at *York*, to treat of a peace
Feb. 1. between *England* and *Scotland*, and accordingly a peace is
February. concluded between those two Kingdoms.

March 1. King *Edward* quits all claim to *Scotland*, and restores the Regalia, Charters, and Instruments, that had been carried away from *Edinburgh* by King *Edward* I.

A marriage is agreed upon between *David*, Prince of *Scotland*, and *Joanna*, King *Edward*'s sister.

April. The peace with *Scotland* is approved of, in a Parliament held at *Northampton*; wherein also the two Charters are confirmed.

King *Edward* sends Ambassadors to *Paris*, to lay claim to the Kingdom of *France*, in opposition to *Philip de Valois*, who was newly crowned King of *France*.

April. *Philip* summons King *Edward*, to come and do him homage for *Guienne* and *Ponthieu*.

King *Edward*, after having privately protested against
May. the homage, sails from *Dover*, *May* 26, performs the
June. homage, in general terms, at *Amiens*, *June* 6, and returns to *Dover* *June* 11.

June 9. *Robert Bruce*, King of *Scotland*, dies, and is succeeded by his son, *David* II. who is, shortly after, married to the
July 12. Princess *Joanna*.

October. A Parliament is held at *York*, and another at *New Sarum*.

Henry, Earl of *Lancaster*, and some others, enter into a league against the Queen and *Mortimer*, and publish a manifesto.

They take up arms, but at last submit to the King mercy, and accept of a pardon.

1329. *Edmund*, Earl of *Kent*, being made believe, by the
Reg. 3. Queen's and *Mortimer*'s contrivance, that King *Edward* II. was still living, and confined in *Corfe* Castle, he forms a plot to restore him to the Throne.

He is apprehended at *Winchester*, during the Parliament,
March. which met there on *March* 13, and soon after condemned
— 19. and executed.

1330. King *Edward* neglecting to declare the homage he had
Reg. 4. done to the King of *France* to be full, the latter commits hostilities in *Guienne*.

April 4. *Edward* goes privately to *France*, under colour of per-
— 30. forming a vow, and has a conference with King *Philip*.

May 8. A new treaty of peace is concluded between the Crowns of *England* and *France*.

June 15. *Edward*, the King's eldest son, is born at *Woodstock*.

A great Council is held at *Osney* Abbey near *Oxford*. *Ann. C.*
And another at *Nottingham*. *August.*

The King consults with some of his trusty servants, about *October.*
seizing *Roger de Mortimer*, Earl of *March*.

He is accordingly seized one night in *Nottingham* Castle, *Oct.* 19.
and conveyed to the *Tower* of *London*.

The Queen-Mother, who had a strong passion for him, and had lived with him in a scandalous familiarity, intercedes for him, but in vain.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, wherein *Roger de* *Nov.* 25.
Mortimer, Earl of *March*, is condemned to be drawn and hanged.

That sentence is accordingly put in execution at *the Elms*, *Nov.* 29.
now called *Tyburn*.

Sir *John de Maltravers*, one of King *Edward* II.'s murderers, who had fled into *Germany*, is condemned to be drawn, hanged, and beheaded; but he was never taken.

Sir *Thomas Gurney*, another of the murderers, being taken at *Marseilles*, is put on board a ship in order to be brought to *England*, but is beheaded at sea, for fear he should tell tales.

Edward, Earl of *Kent*, and *Richard Fitz-Alan*, Earl of *Arundel*, are restored in blood.

The King takes the Government into his own hands, 1331.
and confines the Queen, his mother, to her house at *Reg.* 5.
Risings, near *London*, allowing her only three thousand pounds a year in land, and the Earldom of *Ponthieu* and *Montreuil*.

He forms the project of conquering *Scotland*, and makes use of *Edward Baliol*, son of the late King *John*, to compass his ends.

Edward Baliol comes to *England*, and treats privately *August.*
with King *Edward*; who, by the Lord *Beaumont*, stirs him up to assert his right to the Crown of *Scotland*, and promises him assistance.

This year, the art of weaving woollen-cloth is brought from *Flanders* to *England*, by *John Kempe*.

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, to consider of the affairs of *Guienne*. *Sept.* 30.

Another Parliament meets at *Westminster*, to advise 1332.
about the King's going to the *Holy-Land*; but they dis- *Reg.* 6.
approve of it. *March.*

Edward Baliol embarks at *Ravenspur*, with an army of *April.*
about 2,500 volunteers, and lands at *Kinghorn* near *Perth*, *March.*
from whence he sends back his ships.

Ann. C. *Aug.* 11, &c. He gains four battles over the *Scots* in a few days, and becomes master of *Perth*. The *Scotch* fleet is also destroyed by the *English*.

Sept. 10. A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, which grants the King a *fifteenth* of the personal estates of Prelates, Lords, and Knights of Shires; and a tenth of Cities and Boroughs.

Sept. 27. *Edward Baliol* is crowned King of *Scotland*, at *Scone*.

Nov. 23. He does homage to King *Edward* for that Kingdom, and resigns *Berwick* to him, in payment of the Supplies received from him.

Dec. 2. A Parliament meets at *York*.

Edward Baliol having granted a truce to the *Scottish* Lords his adversaries, and dismissed part of his forces, the *Scots* come upon him by surprize, and drive him out of the Kingdom.

1333. King *Edward* summons King *David* to come and do him homage, and complains that the *Scots* had broken the peace.

Jan. 22. He holds a Parliament at *York*, to treat about the affairs of *Scotland*.

Reg. 7. And then sends an army into *Scotland*, which ravages the Country, and goes and blocks up *Berwick*. At the same time some *Scots* plunder *Gillesland*.

April. King *Edward* enters *Scotland* with a powerful army, and goes and lays siege to *Berwick*, which surrenders to him on the 21st of *July*, and is annexed to the Crown of *England*.

July 19. The *Scots* attempting to raise the siege of that place, are defeated at the battle of *Halidown-hill*.

King *Edward* returns to *England*, leaving *Edward Baliol* at the head of 26,000 men to subdue the rest of *Scotland*.

King *David* retires into *France*, with his Queen.

Novemb. King *Edward* goes back to *Scotland*, and spends the rest of the winter in that Kingdom.

1334. *Reg.* 8. *Feb.* 10. — 12. — 21. *Edward Baliol* holds his first Parliament at *Edinburgh*, to which King *Edward* sends Commissioners, and repairing thither himself, receives *Baliol*'s homage for *Scotland*.

A Parliament is held at *York*, wherein the two Charters are ordered to be observed.

June 12. *Edward Baliol* grants to King *Edward* the Towns and Castles of *Roxburgh*, *Selkirk*, *Etrick*, *Jedworth*, with the forests thereunto belonging; and the Towns, Castles, and Counties of *Dunfrees*, and *Edinburgh*.

The *Scots* displeased at those exorbitant grants, rise up in arms,

arms, and drive *Edward Baliol* out of *Scotland*, who retires into *Yorkshire*. *Ann. C.*

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King a *fifteenth*, from the Lords and Knights of Shires; and a tenth from the Clergy and from the Citizens and Burgesses. *Sept.* 20.

King *Edward* and *Edward Baliol*, joining their forces, enter *Scotland*, and penetrate as far as *Caithness*; from whence King *Edward* returns, and keeps his *Christmas* at *Roxburgh*.

They enter *Scotland* again, and ravage the Country. 1335.

King *Edward* comes to *Nottingham*, where he holds a Council; and, soon after, a Parliament meets at *York*, to consider how to carry on the *Scottish* war. *Reg.* 9. *March.* *May.*

The Pope and King of *France* try to divert *Edward* from that war, by engaging him to carry his arms into *Palestine*.

King *Edward* grants the *Scots* a truce till Midsummer.

At the expiration of it, he and *Baliol* enter *Scotland* on two different sides. *July* 12.

The *Scots* surprize 500 archers, and take the Earl of *Namur* and his brother prisoners; but the Earl of *Murray*, Regent of *Scotland*, is also taken prisoner by a party of *English*.

John, Earl of *Cornwal*, ravages the *western* parts of *Scotland*.

Many of the *Scottish* Nobility of King *David*'s party, come and submit to King *Edward*. *Aug.* 18.

He orders *Perth*, *Edinburgh* and *Sterling*, to be re-fortified, and leaving the Government of *Scotland* to *David Strabolgi*, Earl of *Athol*, returns to *England*. *Septemb.*

The Earl of *Athol* and *Edward Baliol*, go and lay siege to *Kildrummey* Castle, but their forces are defeated, and the Earl slain. *Dec.* 1.

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, wherein the Clergy grant the King a tenth. 1336. *Reg.* 10.

Philip, King of *France*, sends the *Scots* considerable supplies of men, money, and ammunition. *March.*

King *Edward* receiving intelligence thereof, sends his forces before; and, after having held a great Council at *Northampton*, marches speedily into *Scotland*, and advances against the *Scots*; but they retire into the mountains. *June* 25.

The King of *France* invades King *Edward*'s territories in *Gascogne*; and sends out 26 gallies to cruize on the *English* coasts.

Ann. C. King *Edward* burns *Aberdeen*, and ravages the Country.

Septemb. King *Edward* returns to *England*, and holds a Parliament at *Nottingham*, wherein, for his wars in *Scotland* and *Gascogne*, the Nobility and Knights of Shires grant him a *twentieth*; the Citizens and Burgesses a *tenth*, and the Clergy a *sixth*. And *English* Merchants were to pay 40 *s.* a sack for wool exported, and Foreigners 3 *l.* *sterling*.

The King returns into *Scotland*.

Ambassadors are sent to King *Philip*, to demand of him the Castles and Towns he unjustly detained from King *Edward*.

October. *John* of *Eltham*, Earl of *Cornwal*, the King's Brother, dies, and was buried in *Westminster-Abbey*.

The Pope writes to the Kings of *England* and *France*, to persuade them to agree.

William, the King's second son, is born.

1337. King *Edward* makes alliances, with the Emperor of

Reg. 11. *Germany*, the Duke of *Brabant*, the Earls of *Gueldar* and *Hainault*, the Archbishop of *Cologne*, *James de Artevelle*, &c.

A Parliament is summoned to meet at *York* on *January* 14, but it is prorogued to the 9th of *February*, and then to *September*.

The Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and others, are sent Ambassadors to King *Philip*, to declare King *Edward*'s right to the Crown of *France*.

Prince *Edward* is created Duke of *Cornwal*, being the first Duke in *England*.

May. A great Council is held at *Stamford*; and a Parliament at *Westminster*, notwithstanding the above-mentioned prorogation.

July. King *Edward* sends part of his forces to the relief of the *Flemings*, besieged by their Earl; and they defeat *Guy*, the Earl's brother, who was posted in the Isle of *Cadsant*, and take him prisoner.

Edward writes to the Pope and Cardinals, to justify his enterprize against *France*.

Septemb. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, wherein the Community of the Kingdom, and the Clergy, grant the King a *tenth*, and the Citizens and Burgesses a *fifteenth*.

In this Parliament, it is made felony to carry wool out of the Realm; the wearing, or importing any clothes made beyond the seas, is forbidden, and Clothworkers are encouraged to come into *England*.

The King seizes the estates of all *Lombard* Merchants, and the revenues of the *Alien Priories*.

He

He takes, about this time, the title of King of *England* and *France*. *Ann. C.*

And constitutes *John*, Duke of *Brabant*, his Lieutenant-General, whom he commissions to demand the Crown of *France* in his name. *October.*

Pope *Benedict* XII. sends two Legates into *England*, to endeavour to make peace between the two Kings; and at their instance King *Edward* grants a truce till *March* ensuing. *Decemb.*

He prepares his army and fleet, and strengthens his league with new Allies, particularly the Earl of *Hainault*.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, in which the Laity give the King one half of all their wool for the next summer: And he takes the whole of the Clergy, making them pay nine marks for every sack of the best wool. 1338. *Reg.* 12. *Feb.* 3.

The *French* burn *Portsmouth*.

King *Edward* embarks at *Orwell*, with a fleet of 500 sail, and arrives at *Antwerp*. *July* 16. *July* 22.

His Allies being backward in their preparations, he hastens them as much as he can.

He goes and confers at *Cologne* with the Emperor, who makes him *Vicar of the Empire*.

And then goes to *Ghent*, to which he grants large privileges.

Prince *Edward*, Guardian of the Realm, holds a Parliament at *Northampton*, which grants, out of every town, a *twentieth* upon goods amounting to the value of 20*s*; as also all the wool of the Kingdom to be bought at a certain price. *July* 26.

The Clergy that held *in capite* grant likewise an aid, and afterwards a tenth for two years.

Another Parliament is held in *October*. *October.*

Lionel, the King's third son, is born at *Antwerp*. *Nov.* 29.

Lieutenants of Counties began to be appointed about this time.

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*. 1339.

King *Edward* borrows money on all hands, and even pawns his Crown to the Archbishop of *Triers*. *Jan.* 15. *Reg.* 13.

He sends Commissioners to treat of a peace with the King of *France*.

And writes to the Pope and Cardinals to justify his undertaking. *July* 16.

Then he begins his march with his whole army to *Villevort* in *Brabant*, where he stays from *July* 20, to the middle of *August*, waiting for the coming of his Allies. *July.*

They

Ann. C. They coming at last, he goes and lays siege to *Cambray*.
Sept. 1.
— 19. A *French* fleet burns *Southampton*, and insults the coasts of *Kent*, *Essex*, *Devonshire*, and *Cornwal*.
October 5, &c. A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, wherein the Lords
Oct. 13. grant the King the tenth sheaf of all their corn, the tenth fleece of wool, and the tenth lamb of their own stock, to be paid in two years.

King *Edward* finding *Cambray* too strong to be taken, quits the siege, and marches into the *French* territories, which he burns and spoils, and stays there five weeks.

King *Philip* offers King *Edward* battle on the 22d of *October*, which *Edward* accepts; but *Philip* thinks fit, in the mean time, to retire.——The *French* army consisted of above 100,000 men, and the *English* army of about 50,000.

Cannons are invented about this time.

King *Edward* winters at *Antwerp*.

1340. He takes the title of King of *France*, and quarters the
Reg. 14. *Flowers de Luces* with the arms of *England*, adding the
Jan. 23. motto, *Dieu et mon droit*.

A Parliament is held by commission at *Westminster*, which grants the King an aid of 20,000 sacks of wool.

Feb. 8. King *Edward* publishes a Manifesto against the King of *France*.

The *Flemings* acknowledge *Edward* for true and rightful King of *France*, and do him homage.

Feb. 21. He comes to *England*, and calls a Parliament.

Mar. 29. Which meeting soon after, the Lords and Knights grant him the *ninth* sheaf, fleece, and lamb; and the Citizens and Burgesses the *ninth* part of their goods, for two years. The Clergy also grant him a *tenth*.

John of *Ghent*, the King's fourth son, is born.

The King, having got together a fleet of 260 sail, embarks
June 22. at *Orewell* for *Flanders*.

A *French* fleet of 400 sail, that was stationed upon the coast of *Flanders* to intercept his passage, is destroyed by the *English*, so that not above 30 ships escaped; and the King safely lands at *Sluys*.

July 7. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King 20,000 sacks of wool, the best worth 6 *l.* the middling 5 *l.* and the worst 4 marks.

July. King *Edward*, having assembled together an army of 150,000 men, goes and lays siege to *Tournay*, but is forced to leave it, after a siege of nine weeks.

King

King *Philip* advances to relieve the place, but, though challenged by King *Edward*, refuses to fight. *Ann. C. July* 26.

Robert d'Artois, who had laid siege to *St. Omer's*, is defeated.

A truce is concluded, between the two Kings from *September* 20, to *June* 25, the next year; and prolonged afterwards till *Midsummer* 1342. *Septemb.*

Robert Stewart, being made Vice-roy of *Scotland*, recovers several places from the *English* during this year, and the two former.

The *Scots* make an irruption into *England*, and penetrate as far as *Durham*.

King *Edward* returns to *England*, and imprisons the Collectors of the late Subsidies, who had not acted honestly in their respective offices; and has a contest upon that account with the Archbishop of *Canterbury*. *Nov.* 30. 1341. *Reg.* 15.

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, which grants the King 30,000 sacks of wool, as a compensation for the *ninth* granted in one of the last Parliaments, that had been embezzled. *April* 9.

In this Parliament, it was enacted, That the Chancellor, Treasurer, Barons, and Chancellor of the Exchequer, the Justices of both Benches, and other great Officers of the Crown, shall swear to keep the two Charters, and other laws.

But the King thinking this Statute contrary to his Prerogative, and the laws of the land, repealed it by his Writ or Proclamation.

The Emperor, and Duke of *Brabant*, fall off from King *Edward*; and the Emperor revokes his Patent of *Vicar-General*. *June.*

Edmund of *Langley*, the King's fifth son, is born. — 5.

Negotiations are set on foot for a peace between the Kings of *England* and *France*.

King *Edward* espouses the cause of *John de Montfort* Duke of *Bretagne*, and sends a body of men to his assistance, under the command of the Lord *Walter Manny*.

The *Scots* having laid siege to *Stirling* Castle, King *Edward* advances into *Scotland*, and concludes a 6 months truce with the *Scots*. *June. Septemb. Decemb.*

The King holds a great Council at *Westminster*, to consider of what assistance he should give the Duchess of *Bretagne*. 1342. *Reg.* 16. *April.*

He sends *Robert d'Artois* into *Bretagne*, with several Noblemen,

Ann. C. blemen, and a body of troops, but *Robert* is wounded at the taking of *Vannes*, and dies soon after.

June 3. *David*, King of *Scotland*, returns into his own Kingdom, after a 9 years absence.

He invades *England* thrice this summer, and carries off a great booty; but, King *Edward* marching against him, he at last agrees to a truce for two years.

October. King *Edward* goes to *Bretagne*, and besieges at once *Nantes*, *Rennes*, *Vannes*, and *Guingamp*; but, the Duke of *Normandy* approaching with an army of 50,000 men, *Edward* raises the sieges, and draws his forces together.

Two great Councils are held, in his absence.

William de Montacute Earl of *Salisbury*, having conquered the Isle of *Man*, is crowned King thereof by King *Edward*.

1343. By the mediation of two Legates from the Pope, a
Jan. 19. truce is concluded between *England* and *France* from
Reg. 17. *February* till *Michaelmas*, and from that time for 3 years to come.

Mar. 2. King *Edward* returns to *England*.

April 23. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King 40 *s.* upon every sack of wool, above the old custom. The Statute of *Provisors* is enacted.

In this Parliament, Prince *Edward* was created Prince of *Wales*.

Another Parliament is held in *June* at *Westminster*.

June, The King sends Commissioners, to treat before the Pope about his right to the Crown of *France*.

He dispatches agents in the *Low-Countries*, and *Germany*, with power to treat with all sorts of persons, that were willing to supply him with men or money.

And then, causing a large circular Hall of boards to be run up at *Windsor*, he holds magnificent tournaments at that place, the beginning of this year.

1344. King *Philip*, being jealous of it, holds the like tourna-
Reg. 18. ments at *Paris*.

He causes *Oliver de Clisson*, and ten other Lords of *Bretagne*, to be apprehended, and brought to *Paris*, where they were beheaded without any form of law.

June 7. A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, wherein the Clergy grant the King a *tenth* for three years; the Commons two *fifteenths*, and afterwards another *fifteenth*; and two *tenths* of the Cities and Burghs.

1345. King *Edward* sends *Philip* word, That the truce was
Reg. 19. broken, and defies him.

He

He dispatches the Earl of *Derby* into *Guienne*, to begin hostilities; and sending for *John de Montfort*, who had escaped from *Paris*, receives his homage for *Bretagne*. *Ann. C. April. June.*

Then he appoints *William Bohun*, Earl of *Northampton*, Lieutenant of *Bretagne*, and sends him over thither with forces. *May* 20.

King *Edward*, hearing that *Philip* was tampering with the *Flemings*, goes over to *Flanders*, and returns to *England*, *July* 26. *July* 3.

Adam de Orlston, Bishop of *Winchester*, dies. As does also *John de Montfort* Duke of *Bretagne*. *July. September.*

The *English* make a great progress in *Guienne*, and defeat the Count *de Laille*, who had seven thousand of his men killed. Then, entering the *French* territories, they make themselves masters of several places.

James d'Artreville attempting to disinherit *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, and to put the Government into the hands of King *Edward* (who went over to *Flanders* for that purpose) is murdered by the mob.

The *Scots*, by the instigation of the *French* King, invade *Westmorland*, but are driven back into their Country; and conclude a fresh truce with *England*.

King *Edward*, deprived of the assistance of *James d'Artreville* in *Flanders*, resolves to carry the brunt of the war into *Guienne*. 1346.

John, Duke of *Normandy*, enters *Gascogne* at the head of 100,000 men, and makes himself master of *Angoulême*, and other places. *January. Reg.* 20.

He goes and lays siege to the Castle of *Aiguillon*, but cannot take it, though he kept it blocked up for several months.

King *Edward* holds a great Council at *Westminster*, by whose advice he seizes the revenues enjoyed in *England* by Alien Ecclesiastics. *May.*

He embarks at *Southampton* (his army consisting of 4,000 men at arms, 10,000 archers, 12,000 *Welsh* footmen, and 6,000 *Irish*; and his fleet of above 1,000 sail, small and great) with a design to land at *Bourdeaux*, but is driven by contrary winds on the coast of *Cornwal*. *July* 4.

By the persuasion of *Geoffrey de Harcourt*, he alters his design, and lands in *Normandy*; where he takes 30 *French* vessels, ravages the Country, and takes *La Hogue*, *Barfleur*, *Caen*, and many other places, most of which he reduces to ashes. *July* 11.

He

Ann. C. August. He comes to *Poisi*, where staying some days, he sends a defiance to King *Philip*.

King *Philip* tries to inclose *Edward* between the rivers *Seine* and *Oyse*, but the latter having forced the pass at *Blanchetaque*, guarded by 12,000 men, resolves to retire into *Ponthieu*.

Aug. 25. King *Edward* encamps in an advantageous ground near
— 26. *Cressy*, whilst the *French* go and pass the *Somme* at *Abbeville*.

The *English* army consisted of 30,000 men, compleat; and the *French* army of near 100,000 men.

— 26. The bloody battle of *Cressy* is fought, wherein the *English* obtain the victory; on the *French* side were slain eleven Princes, 80 Bannerets, 1200 Knights, and about 30,000 common Soldiers.

Edward, Prince of *Wales*, signalizes himself in that battle; and, *John*, King of *Bohemia* being slain in it, his arms (*three ostrich feathers*) were brought to the Prince, who used them; as his Successors have done ever since, with the motto *Ich-dien*.

Cannon is said to have been used first in this battle.

— 27. The next day, of straggling forces and country people, about four times as many as fell the day before, were slain by the *English*.

King *Edward* marches through *Le Boulonnois*, and, burning
Sept. 7. several towns in his way, comes and lays siege to *Calais*, whilst an *English* fleet of 738 vessels blocks it up by sea.

Sept. 11. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King two *fifteenths*.

The siege of *Aiguillon* is raised, by the King of *France*'s order.

October. By his advice and encouragement, *David*, King of *Scotland*, invades *England*, with an army of about 50,000 men; but Queen *Philippa* advances with an army of 16,000 men, commanded by the Lord *Henry Piercy*, to stop his progress.

Oct. 17. A battle is fought between the two armies, near *Durham*; wherein the *Scots* are defeated, with the loss of about 15,000 men, and King *David* is taken prisoner, by *John Copland*.

After which, the *English* enter *Scotland*, and ravage it with fire and sword.

Decemb. King *David* is brought prisoner to the *Tower* of *London*.

1347. *Philip*, King of *France*, raises an army of 150,000 men,
Reg. 21. in order to raise the siege of *Calais*, but cannot effect it.

July. He offers King *Edward* battle; makes him proposals of peace, and sends him a challenge; which are all rejected.

King *Edward*, having received from *England* a reinforcement

forcement of 17,000 men, offers *Philip* battle; but he retires. *Ann. C.*

Edward sends to all the Abbies and Priories in *England*, for an aid of their wools.

A *French* fleet, that was going to the relief of *Calais*, is defeated by the *English*.

Calais surrenders to the *English*, after near an eleven months siege. *Aug. 4.*

King *Edward* resolves to sacrifice six of the principal Burghers to his vengeance, but they are pardoned through Queen *Philippa*'s intercession.

He turns the *French* inhabitants out of *Calais*, and peoples it with *English*.

Charles of Blois is defeated by the *English* in *Bretagne*, and taken prisoner.

A truce is concluded between *France* and *England* from *September* 5, till the 8th of *July* following; and prolonged afterward till 1355. *Septemb.*

King *Edward* causes a Castle to be built at *Risbank* for the security of *Calais*.

And then returns to *England*. *Oct. 12.*

St. *Stephen*'s Chapel at *Westminster*, which is now the *House of Commons*, was finished this year.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, wherein is confirmed a new *Custom* lately set upon cloth; *viz.* Upon every cloth exported by *English* Merchants 1 *s.* 4 *d.* by Strangers 1 *s.* 9 *d.* Upon every worsted-cloth 1 *d.* by Strangers 1 *d.* ½: Of every Lit. 10 *d.* and of Strangers 1 *s.* 3 *d.* 1348. *Jan 14. Reg. 22.*

Another Parliament meets at the same place, which grants the King *three fifteenths*, to be levied in three years. He had had before twenty thousand sacks of wool, and a *tenth* from the Clergy. *May 17.*

King *Edward* is elected Emperor of *Germany*, but refuses to accept that dignity.

A great corruption of manners, and luxury, over-spread *England*.

The women ride about from one tournament to another, dressed like men, in party-coloured coats, with short hoods on their heads, and girdles, at which hung daggers, at their wastes.

A terrible plague breaks out in *England*, of which there died in *London*, in one year, above 50,000 persons.

The *French* bribe *Aymeri de Pavia*, Governor of *Calais* Castle, to deliver it to them; but King *Edward* receiving notice of it, goes over with 300 men at arms, and 600 archers, 1349.

Ann. C. chers, and defeats the *French*, who stood ready to enter
Jan. 1. the place.

Reg. 23. The Lord *John de Beauchamp* is made Governor of *Calais* Castle, in the room of *Aymeri de Pavia*.

Apr. 23. The *Order of the Garter* is instituted.

The *Scots* invade *England*, during the Plague; but, being infected with it, they carry it in their own Country.

Humbert, Dauphin of *Viennois*, sells his Principality to the King of *France*; upon condition, That the King of *France*'s eldest son should always bear the arms and title of *Dauphin*.

1350. Sir *Thomas Dagworth*, the *English* General in *Bretagne*,
Reg. 24. is defeated and slain.

Henry, Earl of *Lancaster*, the *English* Commander in *Guscogne*, marches into the *French* territories, and, after having taken above 40 Towns and Castles, concludes a truce.

Aug. 22. *Philip* VI. or *de Valois*, King of *France*, dies, and is succeded by his son, *John*, Duke of *Normandy*.

Some *Spanish* Corsairs infesting the *British* Seas, by the
Aug. 29. encouragement of the *French*, King *Edward* sets out a fleet, and going himself in person against them, totally defeats those Corsairs near *Winchelsea*.

1351. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, in which the statutes
Reg. 25. of labourers and provisors were enacted.

Feb. 7. *Henry*, Earl of *Lancaster*, is created Duke of the same, being the second Duke that was made.

The truce between *France* and *England* is ill observed on both sides, in *Bretagne*, *Gascogne*, and *Picardy*.

Henry, Duke of *Lancaster*, makes inroads into the *French* territories, and ravages the Country from *Calais* to *Teromenne*.

April. *Guy de Nesley*, Marshal of *France*, is taken prisoner in *Gascogne*.

1352. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King three tenths, and three fifteenths, to be paid in three
Jan. 13. years.

Reg. 26. The Lord *John Maltravers*, who was thought to have a hand in the murder of King *Edward* II, has his pardon confirmed in this Parliament.

Aug. 16. A *Great Council* is held at *Westminster*.

The Governor of *Calais* buys the Castle of *Guisnes* of the *French* Deputy-Governor.

1353. Pope *Innocent* VI. sends a legate to negotiate a peace be-
Reg. 27. tween *England* and *France*, but without success.

A Par-


EDWARD. P. of WALES
Son of K. EDWARD III.
G. Vertue Sc.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which continues the subsidy of wool, leather, and wool-fells. *Ann. C.* *Sept.* 23.

In this Parliament the *staple of wool*, which used to be kept at *Brobant*, is removed to some of the principal Cities in *England*, on account of the defection of the *Flemings* from King *Edward*.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, in which the Lords *Roger Mortimer*, and *Richard Fitz-Alan*, are restored in blood. 1354. *Reg.* 28. *April* 28.

A treaty is concluded for the King of *Scots* liberty; whereby *Edward* promises to release him for a ransom of 90,000 marks of silver; but this treaty is not executed. *July* 13.

King *Edward* sends Ambassadors to treat with those of *France* about a peace, before the Pope at *Avignon*; but nothing is obtained, except a prolongation of the truce.

A great quarrel happens between the scholars and townsmen of *Oxford*. 1355. *Reg.* 29.

Edward, Prince of *Wales*, is invested (in a great Council held about this time) with the Duchy of *Guienne*; and sent thither, some time after, to renew hostilities. *Feb.* 10. *April.* *June* 30.

Having drawn up together an army of about 60,000 men, he over-runs *Armagnac*, *Rovergue*, *Cominge*, *Tholouse*, &c. *Carcassonne*, and the other *French* territories. *August*,

King *Edward* goes to *Calais*, and ravages *le Boulonnois* and *Artois*. *Nov.* 2.

The *Scots* having received a strong body of *French* soldiers, and 400,000 crowns in gold, invade *England*, and take *Berwick* by surprize. — 6.

King *Edward* returns thereupon to *England*, having made a truce with the *French* King till *Easter*. — 17.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King the subsidy on leather, wool, and wool-fells, for six years, *viz.* fifty shillings on every sack of wool. — 25.

King *Edward*, having raised an army, marches towards *Scotland*, and keeps his *Christmas* at *Newcastle*. *Decemb.*

He retakes *Berwick*, and then, marching further into *Scotland*, ravages the Country, and burns *Edinburgh* and *Haddington*. 1356. *January.* *Reg.* 30.

Edward Baliol resigns up his right to the Crown of *Scotland* to King *Edward*, for a yearly pension of 2000 *l. sterling*. *February.* *Jan.* 20.

In a Synod now held, the Bishops grant the King a tenth for two years, and the inferior Clergy for one year. *May* 16.

Prince *Edward*, at the head of 12,000 choice men, marches from *Bourdeaux*; and, traversing *le Perigord* and *July* 6.

Ann. C. *le Limousin*, appears before the gates of *Bourges*; but the news of the King of *France*'s approach, at the head of 60,000 men, makes him resolve to take a compass, in order to retire to *Bourdeaux*.

King *John* overtakes the Prince at *Poictiers*, who is forced to intrench himself in the fields of *Beauvoir* and *Maupertuis*, about two leagues from *Poictiers*, having but 8000 men.

Sept. 19. There the battle of *Poictiers* is fought, wherein the *English* get the victory; about 6000 of the *French* being slain, and King *John* taken prisoner.

Prince *Edward* comes to *Bourdeaux*, bringing along with him there his prisoner King *John*, and his son *Philip*.

The Duke of *Lancaster* makes, in the mean time, a great progress in *Normandy*.

1357. *Reg.* 31. A two years truce is concluded between *England* and *France*.

Mar. 23. A Parliament meets at *Westminster* about *Easter*.

April. *April* 24. *May* 5. Prince *Edward* comes to *England*, and brings over with him his prisoners. K. *John* and his son *Philip* are lodged in the *Savoy*.

Henry, Duke of *Lancaster*, takes *Rennes*, the chief City of *Bretagne*.

Great troubles and commotions happen in *France*, upon their King's defeat and captivity.

Oct. 3. *Nov.* 1. A treaty being concluded for the King of *Scotland*'s liberty, *David* is accordingly released from his confinement in *Odiam* Castle, upon engaging to pay 100,000 marks, *sterling*. At the same time, a ten years truce is concluded between *England* and *Scotland*.

1358. *Reg.* 32. *April* 23. A Parliament is held about the beginning of *February*.

King *Edward* holds a magnificent tournament at *Windsor*, to solemnize the feast of St. *George*.

He summons all that had lands or rents to the value of 40 *l.* a year to receive the order of Knighthood, and those that refused are fined.

King *John* and King *Edward* treat about a peace, but without effect.

The Peasants in *France* being oppressed by the Nobility, take up arms, and cause disturbances, that were called The *Jaquery War*.

Novemb. *David* King of *Scotland* comes and pays a visit to King *Edward*.

Nov. 27. *Isabella*, the King's mother, dies in the 63d year of her age, after a 28 years confinement in the Castle of *Risings*.

Her eldest daughter, *Joanna*, Queen of *Scotland*, dies soon after

after at *London*; and they are both buried in the Choir of the *Grey-Friers* Church. *Ann. C.*

King *John* concludes a treaty with King *Edward* for his releaſe, but the States of *France* refuſe to ratify it. 1359. *Reg.* 33.

King *Edward*, highly diſpleaſed at this refuſal, reſolves to renew the war with *France*.

Sir *Robert Knolles*, having poſſeſſed himſelf of many ſtrong places in *Bretagne* and *Normandy*, ſurrenders them up to King *Edward*.

John of Ghent, the King's fourth ſon, marries *Blanche*, ſecond daughter to *Henry* Duke of *Lancaſter*. *May* 19.

Many perſons of quality coming to *Calais*, to ſerve the King as Voluntiers, the Duke of *Lancaſter* is ſent over to command them, who enters the *French* territories.

King *John* is ſecured in *Hereford* Caſtle, and afterwards in the *Tower*, and the reſt of the *French* priſoners are more cloſely confined.

King *Edward* embarks at *Sandwich*, and paſſes over to *Calais*, with an army of about 100,000 men. *Oct.* 28.

Dividing his army into three bodies, he enters *Artois* and *Cambreſis* without oppoſition; and then goes and lays ſiege to *Rheims*, but is forced to raiſe it, about two months after. *Nov.* 4.

A *French* fleet, manned with *Normans*, lands at *Rye*, *Haſtings*, and *Winchelſea*, which towns they plunder and burn, but the Militia coming upon them, they retire to their ſhips. 1360. *Reg.* 34. *Mar.* 15.

The Duke of *Burgundy* obtains a ſeparate truce from King *Edward*, upon promiſe of paying him 200,000 moutons or deniers of gold. *Le Nivernois* obtains the ſame, but *la Brie* and *le Gatinois* are ravaged.

King *Edward* marches towards *Paris*, and offers the *Dauphin* Battle, which he refuſes. *March.*

But the latter makes ſome overtures towards a treaty, which are rejected for the preſent. *Mar.* 31. *April* 10.

King *Edward* reſolves to raiſe the ſiege of *Paris*, and to return again before it in *July* or *Auguſt*; but in the mean time to go and reduce *Bretagne* under the young Earl of *Montfort*'s obedience. *April* 13.

In his way thither, he goes and incamps near *Chartres*, where being frightened by a terrible ſtorm of thunder and hail, which killed 1,000 of his men, and 6,000 horſes, he makes a vow to conſent to a peace upon equitable terms. *April.*

Accordingly a treaty of peace is negotiated at *Bretigny*, and ſworn to by Prince *Edward*, and *Charles* Regent of *France*. *May* 1. — 3. — 10.

Ann. C. A truce is agreed on till the *Michaelmas* following, and from that time for a year, until the treaty could be ratified.

As soon as King *Edward* received the news of the Dauphin's having sworn to the treaty, he raises his camp, and comes to *England*.

May 18. A Parliament is held at *Westminster*.

July 9. King *John* is conducted over to *Calais*, in order to ratify the treaty, and stays there near 4 months before he could raise 600,000 crowns, for the first payment of his ransom.

Oct. 9. King *Edward* comes to *Calais*, and, on the 24th of *October*, both Kings sign and swear to the treaty; whereupon King *John* is set at liberty; and King *Edward* quits the title of King of *France*.

— 24.

— 26. When King *John* arrives in *France*, he ratifies by his Letters Patents, and voluntarily swears to all the articles of the treaty of *Bretigny*.

— 31. King *Edward* returns to *England*, bringing the *French* hostages along with him.

Nov. 1.

1361. A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, to whom the King communicates the late treaty, which is approved by them.

Jan. 20.

Reg. 35. King *Edward* sends Commissioners to *France*, who take possession of most of the places surrendered to him by the late treaty.

The Lord *John Chandos* is appointed, by King *Edward*, his Lieutenant in *Aquitain*.

Sir *John Hawkwood*, and the rest of the companions, or soldiers of fortune, who had committed great ravages in *France*, are hired by the Marquiss of *Montferrat*, to war against the Viscount of *Milan*.

Mar. 24. *Henry*, Duke of *Lancaster*, dies of the plague, which raged about this time.

Edward, Prince of *Wales*, marries *Joanna*, daughter of *Edmund* Earl of *Kent*, and widow of *Thomas* Lord *Holland*.

Prince *Lionel* is made Lieutenant of *Ireland*.

King *Edward* restores to the Alien Priories the lands he had taken from them 23 years before,

1362. King *Edward* erects *Guienne* into a Principality, under the name of *the Principality of Aquitain*, and bestows it on his son Prince *Edward*.

Reg. 36.

July 19.

Oct. 13. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King 1 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* on every sack of wool, for three years, besides the former subsidy. And the staple of wool is removed to *Calais* for three years.

In this Parliament it was enacted, That a Parliament should be holden once in the year; and, That Pleas should be

be pleaded in the *English* tongue, and not in *French*, as they used to be. *Ann. C.*

Lionel, the King's third son, is declared in this Parliament Duke of *Clarence*; *John of Ghent*, the fourth son, Duke of *Lancaster*, and the fifth, *Edmund*, Earl of *Cambridge*.

The King, being now in his fiftieth year, grants a general pardon to his subjects.

The Prince of *Wales* goes to his Principality of *Aquitain*, and resides at *Bourdeaux*. 1363. *Reg.* 37.

King *Edward* permits the Dukes of *Orleans*, *Anjou*, *Berry*, and *Bourbon*, his hostages, to go over to *Calais*, to sollicit their ransom; but the Duke of *Anjou* makes his escape into *France*. *February.*

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, wherein the apparel of all sorts and degrees of persons is settled. *Oct.* 6. *Nov.* 3.

David, King of *Scotland*, and *Peter*, King of *Cyprus*, come to *England*. *Novemb.* *Decemb.*

Edward Baliol, late King of *Scotland*, dies at *Doncaster* in *Yorkshire*, without issue.

John, King of *France*, comes to *England*, and is honourably received by King *Edward*. 1364. *Jan.* 4.

Sir *Henry Picard*, Wine-merchant, and Citizen of *London*, entertains King *Edward*, with the Kings of *France*, *Scotland*, and *Cyprus*, at a feast at his own house. *Reg.* 38.

John, King of *France*, one of the most brave, liberal, and sincere Princes of his time, dies at *London*, at his residence in the *Savoy*; and was succeeded by his son *Charles* V. *April* 8.

The battle of *Avray* is fought, wherein *Charles de Blois* is slain; and his Competitor, *John de Montfort*, thereby remaining in quiet possession of *Bretagne*, does homage for it to the King of *France*. *Sept.* 29.

He that brought King *Edward* the news of this victory, is by him created *Windsor* Herald.

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, wherein the second statute against citations and provisions from *Rome* was made. And the Staple is removed from *Calais* to *Malcomb Regis* in *Dorsetshire*, and *Ipswich* in *Suffolk*. 1365. *Jan.* 20. *Reg.* 39.

Sir *Henry Green* Chief-Justice, and Sir *William Skipwith*, another of the Justices, are imprisoned, fined, and removed for extortion, and other enormities.

Isabella, the King's eldest daughter, marries *Ingelram de Guisnes*, Baron of *Coucy*, who is created Earl of *Bedford*.

Edward, the Prince of *Wales*'s eldest son, is born.

Ann. C. Pope *Urban* IV. demands 30 years arrears of the tribute granted to the Holy See by King *John*.

1366. *Reg.* 40. *May.* But the next Parliament which meets at *Westminster*, in answer thereto, declares, That neither King *John*, nor any other, could bring Himself, his Realm, or his People in subjection to the Pope, without their assent; and this tribute is never again demanded.

Simon Islip Archbishop of *Canterbury* dying, *William Edington* is chosen in his room, but he declines the dignity, saying, That *Canterbury* was the higher rack, but *Winchester* the better manger.

Peter the Cruel, King of *Castile*, being expelled his Dominions by his subjects, comes to the Prince of *Wales* at *Bourdeaux*, and implores his assistance, who undertakes to restore him, in consideration of which, *Peter* gives him the Province of *Biscay*.

1367. *Jan.* 6. *Richard*, second son of *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, is born at *Bourdeaux*.

Reg. 41. *April* 3. Prince *Edward* marches into *Castile*, at the head of an army of 30,000 men, and defeats *Henry* Earl of *Trestamare*, *Peter*'s competitor, at the battle of *Nejara*, wherein *Bertrand du Guesclin* and the Marshal *d'Endreghen* are taken prisoners.

Peter perfidiously disappointing Prince *Edward* of the money he had promised him for the payment of his troops, he returns to *Bourdeaux* extremely dissatisfied; and is forced to sell his plate, to provide for the pressing occasions of his army.

Prince *Edward*, during his stay in *Spain*, contracts a distemper, which turns to a dropsy.

1368. *Reg.* 42. *May* 1. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King, for two years, on every sack of wool, and every 270 wool-fells, 30 *s.* and 8 *d.* above the old custom of 6*s.* and 8 *d.* and 4 *l.* on every last of skins, above the old custom of 13 *s.* and 4 *d.*

May 29. *Lionel*, third son of King *Edward*, espouses *Violanta*, second daughter to *Galeazzo* Viscount of *Milan*; but he dying in *Italy* about 5 months after, was buried in the Monastery of *Clare* in *Suffolk*.

Charles V, King of *France*, forms the design of breaking the treaty of *Bretigny*; neglecting to do King *Edward* justice upon the Duke of *Anjou*'s escape; not delivering up the Earldom of *Gaure*; nor paying King *John*'s ransom.

The *French* hostages get out, one after another, out of King *Edward*'s hands.

Edward,

Edward, Prince of *Wales*, having laid a tax, called *Feuage*, on *Guienne*, for the payment of the arrears due to the troops he had employed in the *Spanish* war, several *Gascon* Lords refuse to comply with it; and appeal to the King of *France*, as if he had been still Sovereign Lord of *Guienne*. *Ann. C.*

Charles accordingly summons Prince *Edward* to appear before the Parliament of *Paris*, who refusing to appear, *Charles* proclaims war, and confiscates all the lands held by the *English* in *France*. 1369. *Jan.* 25. *Reg.* 43.

The Earl of *Armagnac*, the Viscount of *Carmaing*, the Lords of *Albret*, *Cominges*, and others who had embraced the *French* interest, begin the war in *Guienne*.

The *French* make themselves masters of *Ponthieu*.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King, for 3 years, 43 *s.* and 4 *d.* for every sack of wool, and every 20 dozen of fells; but of Aliens, 53 *s.* and 4 *d.* Of every last of skins, 4 *l.* and of Aliens, 5 *l.* 6 *s.* and 8 *d.* above the old custom. *May* 27.

King *Edward* resumes the title of King of *France*, and issues out an order for arming all Clergymen.

Hearing that King *David* was engaged in a new league with *France*, he sends forces to secure the frontiers of *Scotland*.

And also sends troops into *Ireland*, under the command of the Lord *William Windsor*, who was appointed Lieutenant of that Kingdom.

Edmund Earl of *Cambridge*, and *John Hastings* Earl of *Pembroke*, carry a reinforcement of 500 lances, and 1,000 archers, to the Prince of *Wales*.

The war is carried on between the *English* and the *French*, but rather to the advantage of the latter.

Charles King of *France* makes great preparations to invade *England*; whereupon King *Edward* fortifies the ports, and sends *John* Duke of *Lancaster*, who ravages the adjacent Country, and defeats the King of *France*'s designs.

Queen *Philippa* dies, after having been married 42 years, and was buried in *Westminster-Abbey*. She founded *Queen*'s College, *Oxon*. *Aug.* 15.

This year also died *Thomas Beauchamp*, Earl of *Warwick*. *Nov.* 13.

Sir *John Chandos* dies of a wound he received in a rencounter with a small party of *French*. 1370. *Reg.* 44.

King *Charles* declares the Duchy of *Aquitain* forfeited by King *Edward*. *May* 14.

David Bruce, King of *Scotland*, dies, and is succeeded by *Robert Steuart*. *June* 7.

Ann. C. Sir *Robert Knolles* is appointed General of the *English*
July. army, and, being dispatched into *Picardy*, ravages *Artois*, *Vermandois*, &c. and approaches *Paris*.

John, Duke of *Lancaster*, goes into *Aquitain*, as King *Edward*'s Lieutenant-General, to oppose the Dukes of *Anjou* and *Berry*.

Prince *Edward* retakes *Limoges*, which had lately surrendered to the *French*, and puts all the inhabitants to the sword.

October. *Bertrand du Guesclin*, newly made Constable of *France*, routs the Lords *Grandison* and *Fitzwalter*, and takes them prisoners.

Sir *Robert Knolles* dismisses his forces, and retires into *Bretagne*.

King *Edward* borrows great sums of money from Merchants and Persons of estate.

1371. *Edward*, the Prince of *Wales*'s eldest son, dies.

January. Prince *Edward*'s distemper increasing, he appoints the
January. Duke of *Lancaster* his Lieutenant, and returns to *England*.

Reg. 45. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, wherein the Lords
Feb. 24. grant the King 50,000*l.* to be levied out of each parish;
June. which was afterwards, in a great Council held at *Winchester*, settled at the rate of 116 shillings out of each parish, the larger to contribute to those of less value. The Clergy also grant the King 50,000*l.* for one year.

The *English* fleet, under the command of the Lord *Bryan*, meets with a *Flemish* fleet near *Bretagne*, and totally routs it.

A peace is concluded between *England* and *Flanders*.

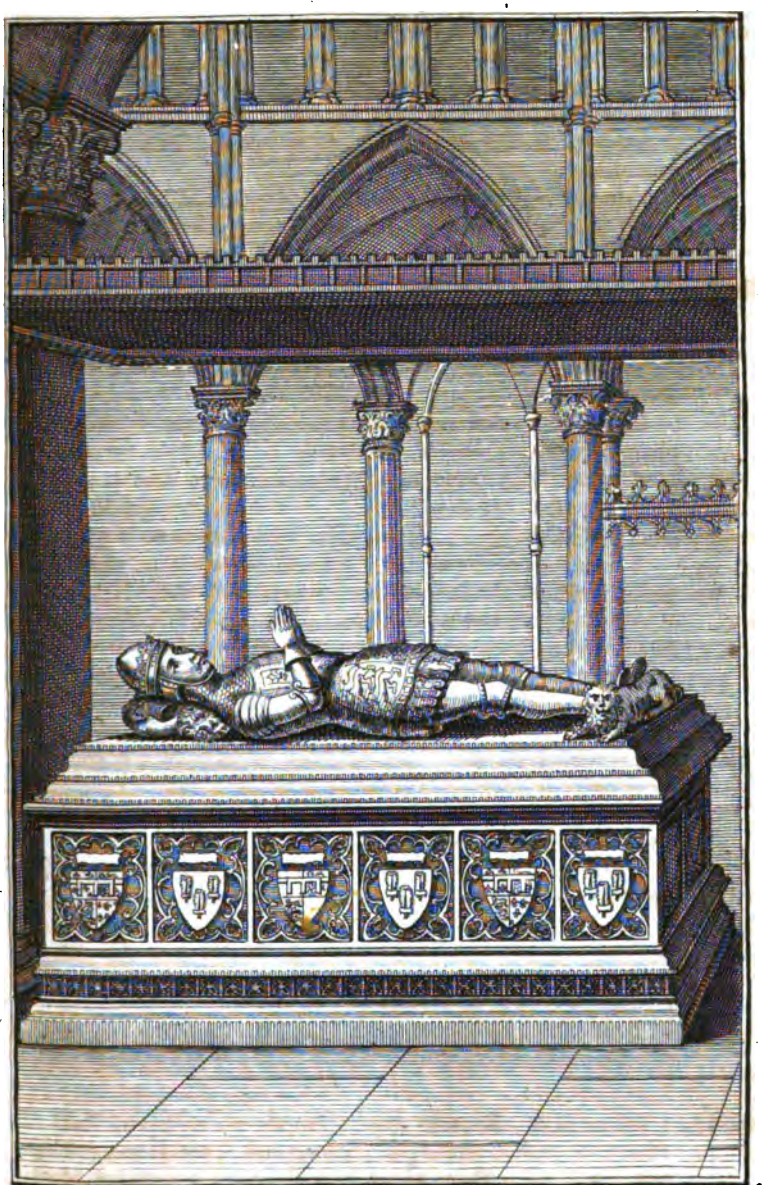
The war continues in *Guienne* and *Poitou*, and *Du Guesclin* makes himself master of *Rovergue*, &c.

John, Duke of *Lancaster*, marries *Constantia*, and his brother *Edmund*, Earl of *Cambridge*, *Isabella*, both daughters of the late *Peter*, King of *Castile*.

The Duke of *Lancaster*, who had now taken the title of King of *Castile*, appoints *John de Greilles*, Capital of *Buche*, his Deputy, and returns to *England*.

1372. *Walter*, Lord *Manny*, a renowned *English* Officer, dies,
Jan. 15. leaving only one daughter, *Ann*, married to *John de Hastings*, Earl of *Pembroke*.

Jan. 16. The next day also died *Humphrey de Bohun*, Earl of
Reg. 46. *Hereford*, *Essex*, and *Northampton*, and Constable of *England*; and left only two daughters, *Eleanor*, married afterwards to *Thomas* of *Woodstock*, Duke of *Gloucester*, and *Mary* to *Henry* of *Bullinbroke*, who became King, by the name of *Henry* IV.



The Monument of Edward Prince of Wales Son of K. EDWARD III in ye Cathedral of Canterbury

King *Edward* makes very great preparations, in order to *Ann. C.* send two armies into *France*; the one to act in *Aquitain*, and the other to march through *Picardy* into *France*.

Du Guesclin drives the *English* out of *le Limosin*, *Perigord*, and *Rovergue*, and lays siege to *Rochelle*; whilst a fleet sent by the King of *Castile*, blocks it up by sea.

The Earl of *Pembroke*, who was appointed King *Edward*'s Lieutenant in *Aquitain*, attempting to land at *Rochelle*, is defeated by the said *Castilian* fleet, and taken prisoner; and *Rochelle* capitulates, through the Mayor's treachery.

Owen, a *Welch* Nobleman, takes the Isle of *Guernsey*.

Poictiers, *St. John d'Angely*, *Angoulesme*, *Saintes*, and other places, surrender to the *French*.

Du Guesclin besieges *Thouars*, where the principal Lords of *Poictou* were retired. They send to King *Edward* for *Aug.* 31. assistance, who accordingly sets sail with his son, the *Black-Prince*, and a fleet of 400 ships; but, after having been hindered for six weeks, by contrary winds, from landing in *Poictou*, he is forced to return to *England*, and *Thouars* surrenders. *October.*

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the *Nov.* 3. King the former subsidy of wool, fells, and leather, for two years longer: As also a fifteenth for one year. And the Citizens and Burgesses grant, for the safe conveying of their ships, 2 *s.* tunnage on every tun of wine; and 6 *d.* in the pound, of goods and merchandize, for one year.

All *Poictou*, *Saintonge*, and *le Rochellois*, are entirely 1373. reduced to the obedience of the *French*. *Reg.* 47.

Some Noblemen of *Bretagne* joining with the *French*, go and lay siege to some places in *Normandy*, belonging to the *English*.

Upon a report of *Owen*'s intending to invade *England*, *William Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, is appointed Admiral; who, sailing with a fleet to *St. Malo's*, burns there seven large *Spanish* ships.

The King of *France* sends *Du Guesclin* to seize upon the Duchy of *Bretagne*; whereupon, *John de Montfort* comes to *England*, and desires assistance of King *Edward*, who sends him back with fair promises only.

John, Duke of *Lancaster*, is appointed the King his Father's Lieutenant in *France*, with a very extensive power. *June* 12.

He goes over to *Calais*, with an army of above 30,000 *July* 24. men, and marches from thence, through the heart of *France*, *Novemb.* into *Guienne*, without any resistance.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the *Nov.* 21.

King

Ann. C. King two fifteenths, to be paid in two years; 6 *d.* upon every pound's worth of merchandize, imported or exported, except wool and skins; and the subsidy of wool, for two years.

1374. *Reg.* 48. The Duke of *Anjou* marches into *Upper Gascogne*, and makes himself master of several places; the Duke of *Lancaster* not being able to hinder him.

A truce is concluded between *England* and *France* from *April* 19, to *August* 31, and prolonged afterwards till *April*, 1377.

July. The Dukes of *Lancaster*, and *Bretagne*, with several others of the Nobility, return to *England*.

King *Edward* issues out a Commission of Enquiry into the value of Ecclesiastical Benefices held by Strangers.

He falls in love with *Alice Perrers*, one of the Ladies of the Bed-Chamber to his late Queen, holds a magnificent tournament in *Smithfield* upon her account, and otherwise wastes the public money upon her, at which the Nation is disgusted.

1375. *Reg.* 49. *John* Duke of *Bretagne* having obtained of King *Edward* an aid of 3,000 archers, and 2,000 men at arms, sails to *Bretagne*, and recovers several of his Towns and Castles that had been seized by the *French*.

June. A treaty of peace is held at *Bruges* between Commissioners from *France* and *England*, but it ends only in a confirmation and prolongation of the truce above-mentioned.

1376. *Reg.* 50. *April.* A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King, for 3 years, the same subsidy of wool, skins, and wool-fells, as had been granted in the last Parliament.

The Commons, in this Parliament petition the King, That 10 or 12 persons might be added to his Council, who should always be near his person, so as that no affair of consequence might pass without the advice and consent of 6, or 4 of them, at least.

They impeach several persons for embezzling the King's treasure; and desire, that no women, particularly *Alice Perrers*, should sollicit any business in the Courts at *Westminster*.

King *Edward*, being now in the 50th year of his Reign, causes a general pardon to be published.

June 8. *Edward*, Prince of *Wales*, dies of a fever, at *Westminster*, and was buried in *Canterbury* Cathedral. His legitimate issue was, 1. *Edward*, born in 1365, and who died before him. 2. *Richard*, born in 1366. And his natural children were, 3. Sir *John Saunder*. 4. Sir *Roger de Clarendon*.

Richard,

Richard, the surviving legitimate son of Prince *Edward*, is created Prince of *Wales*, Duke of *Cornwal*, and Earl of *Chester*. *Ann. C. Nov.* 20.

Alice Perrers, the Duke of *Lancaster*, and others, who had been removed from the King's person, at the request of the last Parliament, are recalled to Court; and the Duke of *Lancaster* is made Regent of the Kingdom.

The King of *France* prepares to invade *England*, and makes a fresh alliance with *Castile* and *Scotland* for that purpose.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King a poll-tax of 4 *d.* upon every person in the Kingdom, male and female, above fourteen years of age, except beggars. 1377. *Reg.* 51. *Jan.* 27.

The *French* fleet puts to sea, and does much damage upon the *English* coast: Then, going to *Outwick*, near *Calais*, they besiege that fort, which is surrendered to them; but it is soon after retaken by Sir *Hugh Calverly*.

John Wiclef, Warden of *Canterbury* College in *Oxford*, having published some opinions contrary to the received doctrines, is cited to appear before the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, at *St. Paul's*; which he accordingly doth, but is supported by the Duke of *Lancaster*, and the Lord *Percy*.

The *London* mob, being stirred up on this account, breaks open the Lord *Percy*'s house, and spoils the furniture; and also attacks the *Savoy*, belonging to the Duke of *Lancaster*; for which the Mayor and Aldermen are turned out, and others put in their room.

King *Edward* falls ill, and sees himself deserted by all, even by *Alice Perrers*.

He dies of the shingles, at *Shene* (now *Richmond*) in the 65th year of his age, after a reign of 50 years, 4 months, and 28 days: *June* 21.

And was buried in *Westminster-Abbey*.

The Character *of* EDWARD III.

After relating the principal actions of *Edward* III, in the History of his Reign, it will be necessary, in order to compleat the Character of this famous Prince, to give some account of his person, and accomplishments of body and mind. He was very tall, but well-shaped, and of so noble and majestick an aspect, that his very looks commanded respect and veneration: Affable and obliging to the good, but inexorable to the bad: There are few Princes to be met with

with in History, in whom were so well mixed the duties of a Sovereign with those of an honest Man, and a good Christian; though, in this last respect, his conduct was not altogether blameless. His conversation was easy, and always accompanied with gravity and discretion. Friend of the poor, the fatherless, the widow, and all who were unhappily fallen into misfortune, he made it his business to procure them some comfort in their affliction. Never had King, before him, bestowed honours and rewards with more judgment, and greater regard to true merit. Though his valour was acknowledged and admired by all the world, it never made him proud. Never did he show greater signs of humanity, than in the course of his victories, which he constantly ascribed to the sole protection of Heaven. He knew how to maintain the prerogatives of the Crown, without incroaching on the privileges of the people. In all the former Reigns, there had not been so many advantagious Statutes to the Nation, as in this. *Edward* always agreeing with the august body of the Nation's Representatives, made that harmony instrumental to curb the designs of the Court of *Rome*, which never dared to quarrel with him. The glory of the Prince of *Wales*, his son, added a new lustre to his own; and his constant union with his Queen increased his happiness. As he was never too elate in prosperity, so in adversity he was never too much dejected. His moderation appeared no less in his loss of the Provinces, that had cost him so much toil and treasure, than in his victories, which had gained him the possession. In a word, he might be reckoned an accomplished Prince, if his ambition had not caused him to break, in a dishonourable manner, the peace made with *Scotland*, in order to dispossess a minor King, who, besides, was his brother-in-law. Some add likewise the rupture with *France*, and his pretensions to the Crown of that Kingdom, which they term extravagant, and wholly ascribe to an ambitious motive. As to his weakness in falling in love, in his old age, with *Alice Pierce*, that blemish is much lessened by the many noble qualities, which rendered him so praiseworthy. One might in some measure excuse him, by saying, he considered this passion, at first, as an amusement only, to divert him in his troubles, and knowing little of love in his youthful days, took not sufficient care to keep himself from it in his old age.

The

The Monument of K. EDWARD III.
in Westminster Abbey

The children of King *Edward* III, by his Queen, *Philippa*, of *Hainault*, were,

I. 1. *Edward*, Prince of *Wales*, born *June* 15, 1330. 2. *William* of *Hatfield*, born 1336. 3. *Lionel*, Duke of *Clarence*, born *November* 29, 1338. 4. *John* of *Ghent*, Duke of *Lancaster*, born in 1340. 5. *Edmund*, Earl of *Cambridge*, and Duke of *York*, born 1341. 6. *William* of *Windsor*. 7. *Thomas* of *Woodstock*, Duke of *Buckingham* and *Gloucester*, born *Jan*, 7, 1355.

II. 8. *Isabella*, married to *Ingelram de Coucy*, Earl of *Soissons* and *Bedford*. 9. *Joanna de la Tour*, born 1335, espoused to *Peter the Cruel*, King of *Castile*. 10. *Blanche de la Tour*. 11. *Mary*, wife of *John de Montfort*, Duke of *Bretagne*. 12. *Margaret*, born *July* 30, 1346, and married to *John de Hastings*, Earl of *Pembroke*.

A Description of the Monument *of* EDWARD III.

On the south side of EDWARD the Confessor's chapel, between two pillars, and parallel with the tomb of that King, EDWARD III. has a monument of grey marble, upon which lies his portraiture of copper gilt. On the verge of this tomb are these barbarous monkish verses:

Hic decus Anglorum, flos regum preteritorum,
Forma futurorum, rex clemens, par populorum,
Tertius Edwardus regni complens jubileum,
Invictus parvus, bellis pollens machabeum,
Prospere dum vixit regnum pietate revixit,
Armipotens rexit: jam celo celice rex sit.

Near to it was a tablet with the epitaph Englished in no unequal strain:

Of English Kings here lies the beautiful flower
Of all before passed, and a mirror to them shall sue:
A merciful King, of peace conservator,
The III EDWARD, the death of whom may rue
All English men, for he by knighthood due,
Was Libarde invict, and by feate Martiall
To worthy Maccabe in vertue peregall.

On the sides of this monument are the figures of all this Prince's sons and daughters on solid brass. On the south-side, in several niches are EDWARD Prince of Wales,

JOAN

JOAN DE LA TOWER, entituled, Queen of Spain, LIONEL Duke of Clarence, EDMOND Duke of York, MARY Dutchess of Bretagne, and WILLIAM of Hatfield; under whom their several coats of arms are enamelled, and beneath those escutcheons are four large shields of the arms of St. George and King EDWARD.

On the verge between these large shields, and the figures of the Princes are the Latin words:

TERTIUS EDWARDUS FAMA SUPER ÆTHERA NOTUS.
PUGNA PRO PATRIA, 1377.

In English:

EDWARD the third known by his fame above the skies.
Fight for your country, 1377.

On the north-side were the statues, and still continue the arms of ISABEL Lady of Coucy, WILLIAM of Windsor, JOHN Duke of Lancaster, BLANCH DE LA TOWER, MARGARET Countess of Pembroke, and THOMAS Duke of Gloucester. Near this tomb stands the sword, which this King is said to have used in the conquest of France. It is seven foot long, and weighs eighteen pounds.

A Description of the Monument *of* EDWARD *the* BLACK PRINCE, *Son of King* EDWARD III.

His Monument is in the Cathedral of Canterbury, on the south-side, near the chapel of Thomas a Becket. It is a stately fabrick of grey marble, upon which lies his effigies of copper gilt. The end and sides of this tomb are adorned with escutcheons of copper, enamelled with his arms and devices, and over-written with the words, HOUMONT, and ICH DIEN. On an iron bar over the tomb are placed the helmet, crest, coat of mail, gauntlets, and on an adjacent pillar the shield of arms richly adorned with gold, which he is said to have used in battle. Upon a fillet of brass is circumscribed the epitaph in old French:

Cy gist le noble Prince Monsieur Edward, aisnez filz du treshoble Roy Edward tiers: jadis Prince d'Aquitane & de Gales, Duc de Cornwaille & Comte de Cestre, qi morust, en la feste de la Trinite, qestoit le

viii

viii jour de Jupn, l'an de grace mil trois cenz septante ussne, Lalme de qi Dieu eit mercy Amen.

On the south-side of the tomb:

Tu qi passez oue bouche close
Par la ou ce corps repose,
Entent ce qe te dirai,
Sycome te dire le say.
Tiel come tu es au tiel fu,
Tu seras tiel come je su.
De la mort ne pensai je mye,
Tant come savoi la vie:
En tre avoi grand richesse;
Dont je y fis grand noblesse
Terre, Mesons, grand tresor,
Draps, chivaux, argent, & or.

At the foot of the tomb:

Pes dre su jeo poures & chetifs
Perfond en la tre gis.
Pa grand beaute est tout alee:
Pa char est tout gastee;

On the north-side of the tomb:

Moule est estroit ma meson;
En moy na si verite non.
Et si ore me veissez
Je ne quide pas qe vous deissez,
Ne je eusse onques home este
Si su je ore de tant changee.
Pour dieu priez au celestien Roy,
De mercy ait de l'ame de moy.
Tous ceulx qi pur moy prieront,
Du a Dieu macorderont,
Dieu les mette en son Paradis,
Du nul ne poet estre chetifs.

Weaver, in his Monuments, gives the following translation:

Here lieth the noble Prince Monsieur EDWARD, the eldest son of the most noble King EDWARD the Third, in former time Prince of Aquitain and of Wales, Duke of Cornwall and Earl of Chester, who died on the feast of Trinity, which was the eighth day of June in the year of Grace 1376. To the soul of whom God grant mercy, Amen.

Whoso thou be that passeth by
Where these Corps interred lie,
Understand what I shall say,
As at this time speak I may,
Such as thou art, sometime was I,
Such as I am, such shalt thou be.
I little thought on the hour of death,
So long as I enjoyed breath;
Great riches here I did possess,
Whereof I made great noblenes;
I had gold, silver, wardrobes, and
Great treasures, horses, houses, land;
But now a caitife poor am I,
Deep in the ground, lo here I lie:
My beauty great is all quite gone;
My flesh is wasted to the bone.
My house is narrow now, and throng,
Nothing but truth comes from my tongue,
And if ye should see me this day,
I do not think but ye would say,
That I had never been a man,
So much altered now I am.
For God sake pray to the heavenly King,
That he my soul to Heaven would bring:
All they that pray and make accord
For me unto my God and Lord,
God place them in his paradise,
Wherein no wretched caitife lies.

An Account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

By a Charter-Mint to the Abbot of *Reading*, it seems that there was not any greater piece coined, till after the 12th year of *Edward* III, then a penny. For the Charter runs thus: "Rex dilecto sibi *Johanni de Flete*, custodi "Cambii nostri *Londini*: Cum per Cartam nostram con-"cesserimus dilectis nobis in Christo——Abbati & Mo-"nachis de *Radyng*, quod & ipsi & Successores in perpe-"tuum habeant unum Monetarium & unum Cuneum, &c. "——Vobis Mandamus quod tres Cuneos de duro & "competenti Metallo, unum, *viz.* pro *Sterlingis*, alium "pro *Obolis*, & tertium pro *Ferlingis*, pro monetâ apud "dictum Locum de *Radyng* faciendâ, de Impressione & "Circumscripturâ quas dictus——Abbas declarabat, &c.— "T. I. de *Shardiche* apud *Westm.* xvii. *die Nov. Regni* "*nostri*

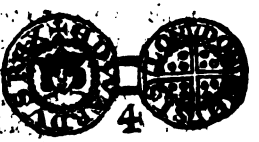
"*nostri* xli." But in the 18th of his Reign, we find the standard of gold coins, was the old standard or sterling of twenty-three carats, three grains and a half fine, and half a grain allay. And for the silver coins, the old sterling of eleven ounces, two-penny weight fine, and eighteen-penny weight allay. The same in 20th, 23d, 27th, 30th, 46th of his Reign. In the 18th year, every pound weight of gold of this standard, was to be coined into fifty Florences, at six shillings a-piece, which made in tale fifteen pounds, or into a proportionable number of half and quarter Florences. This was by indenture between the King, and *Walter de Dunflower*, Master and Worker. These Florences were so called from the *Florentines*, who (in the year 1252.) first minted such pieces; so that *Florenus* was generally used all over *Europe*, for the chief gold coins, as it is now for the silver. *Fabian* calls the Floren, a penny; the half Floren, a half-penny; and the quarter, a farthing, of gold. And these words are often met with in old histories and accompts, applied to several coins, as Reals, Angels, &c. where is to be understood by *Denarius*, the whole; by *Obolus*, the half; and by *Quadrans*, the fourth part of a farthing. In the same 18th year, a pound weight of gold of old standard, was to contain thirty-nine Nobles and a half, at six shillings and eight-pence a piece, amounting in the whole to thirteen pounds, three shillings and four-pence in tale, or a proportionable number of half and quarter Nobles. Which was by indenture between the King and *Percival de Perche*. By this indenture the trial of the *Pix* was established. These were indisputably the first gold coins, and are so beautiful and rare, that they merit the esteem of medals, being inscribed, EDWARD. DEI GRA. REX. ANGL. The Arms of *France* and *England* quarterly within a Rose (whence called Rose-Nobles) the Arms *Semé-delis*, and not stinted to three (as in *Edward* IV.) Reverse, a Cross *Fleuri Lioneux*, the four Lions are passant, with the words, EXALTABITUR IN GLORIA. (*Fig.* 1.) The Rose-Noble described by Mr. *Evelyn*, is of *Edward* IV. For the *French Flowers-de lis* were not stinted till *Henry* V's time, nor had they a Sun, but only a cross on the reverse. The Author of *Num. Brit. Hist.* saw a half Noble of this Prince, which answers the description. The King standing in a ship crowned, holding a sword upright in his right-hand, and a shield on his left, with the Arms of *France* and *England* quarterly, the Arms of *France Semé-de-lis*, three Lions passant, and three *Fleurs-de-lis* upon the

side of the ship. EDWAR. DEI. GRA. REX. ANGL. Z. FRANC. DNS. H. Reverse, in a large Rose, a Cross Fleuri, with a *Fleur-de-lis* at each point, and a Lion passant under a Crown in each quarter, the letter E in a Rose in the center. DOMINE. IN FVRORE. TVO. ARGVAS. ME. (*Fig.* 5.) It is to be observed from these famous Rose-Nobles, every imaginary half-mark, was afterwards called a Noble, the most early use of the word in that sense being in the *French* King's parole of ransom, in the 34th year of this Reign. The Florens did not much differ from the Rose-Nobles in weight, and whether they differed at all in the impression is uncertain.—In 20 *Edw.* 3. a pound weight of gold of the old standard, was to make by tale forty-two Nobles, at six shillings and eight-pence a-piece, amounting to fourteen pounds; and a pound of silver of the old sterling, was to make twenty-two shillings and six-pence; and *Percival de Perche* was Master.——27 *Edw.* 3. A pound weight of gold, of the same sterling, was to make by tale forty-five Nobles, amounting to fifteen pounds: And a pound weight of silver of the old sterling, to make by tale seventy-five grosses (*i. e.* groats) amounting to twenty-five shillings; or a hundred and fifty half grosses at two-pence a piece; or three hundred sterlings at a penny a-piece: *Henry Brissel* was Master and Worker. These groats (so called because they were the greatest monies then used) exhibit the King full-faced, crowned like the preceding, and inscribed, EDWARD. D. G. REX. ANGL. Z. FRANC. D. HYB. which last title is never wanting on the King's groats. On the reverse, in a large circle, POSVI. DEVM. ADIVTOREM. MEVM. (a motto continued by all his Successors to the Union of the two Kingdoms) in the lesser circle the place of mintage, viz. *London*, *York*, or *Calais*. (*Fig.* 2.) One has CIVITAS DVNELMIE. There are some coins before he assumed the title of *France*, EDWARD. DEI. G. REX. ANGL. DNS. HYB. Z. AQUIT. *Thoresby* describes one of the pieces, called *Lusbury*, cried down by act of Parliament, inscribed, EIWANNES. DNS. Z. REVB. Reverse, the cross and pellets, as the *English* money, LVCEBGENSIS. Likewise, another piece, inscribed, EDWARD. REX. ANGL. Under the King's head a Lion passant; Reverse, DVX. AQUITANIE. A Crown in each quarter of the Cross, a most rare piece, and to be ascribed to this *Edward*, who was not only created Duke of *Aquitain* in his Father's lifetime, but also crowned King of *England* (*Fig.* 3.) His

penny

penny, and half-penny (called sometimes *Males*) and farthings, were like those of his Predecessors, but distinguished by the name EDWARDVS. (*Fig.* 4.) Those of *Ireland* in a triangle. It is remarkable, what Bishop *Tonstal* observed of the gold of this Reign, that it came nearest to that of


1


4


2


3


5

the antient *Romans*, or, that four Rose-Nobles weighed an ounce, and were equivalent to the *Roman Aurei* both in weight and fineness; and six Noble-Angels made an ounce,

which were answerable in all points to the old *Roman Solidus Aureus*. Likewise in silver coins, that an old sterling groat was equivalent to the *Roman Denarius*, the half groat to the *Quinarius*, and the old sterling penny to the *Sestertius Nummus*; *Sestertium* (in the neuter gender) a thousand *Sestertii*, to five pounds sterling, when three shillings and four-pence went to the ounce; but now to seven pounds ten shillings, according to Sir *Thomas Smith*'s account, when five shillings goes to the ounce.

Ann. C. The NOBILITY created in this Reign.

1328. *John Plantagenet* (of *Eltham*) Earl of *Cornwal*.
Roger Mortimer, Earl of *March*.
1330. *Eubule le Strange*, Earl of *Lincoln*.
1335. *Edward Plantagenet* (the Black-Prince) Duke of *Cornwal*.
1344. ——— Earl of *Chester*.
1336. *William de Mountague*, Earl of *Salisbury*.
Mar. 16. *Robert de Ufford*, Earl of *Suffolk*.
Hugh de Audley, Earl of *Gloucester*.
1337. *William de Clinton*, Earl of *Huntingdon*.
Mar. 16. *Humphrey de Bohun*, Earl of *Northampton*.
Mar. 17. *Laurence Hastings*, Earl of *Pembroke*.
1339. *William de Juliers*, Earl of *Cambridge*.
1340. *John de Dreux*, Earl of *Richmond*, *pro termino*.
1341. *Sept.* 24. *John Plantagenet* (of *Ghent*) Earl of *Richmond*.
1341. *Sept.* 20. ——— Earl of *Lancaster*, *Leicester*, *Lincoln*, and *Darby*.
1361. *Mar.* 24. ——— Duke of *Lancaster*.
1362. *Nov.* 13. *Richard Fitz-Alan* (Earl of *Arundel*) Earl of *Warren* and *Surrey*.
1347. *Ralph Stafford*, Earl of *Stafford*.
1350. *March* 5. *Henry Plantagenet*, Duke of *Lancaster*.
1359. *John Holland*, Earl of *Kent*.
1361. *July* 16. *William* of *Bavaria*, Earl of *Leicester*.
1362. *Sept.* 15. *Lionel Plantagenet*, Duke of *Clarence*.

Edmund

	Ann. C.
Edmund Plantagenet, Earl of *Cambridge*.	*Nov.* 13. 1366.
Ingelram de Coucy, Earl of *Bedford*.	*May* 11. 1372.
John de Montfort, Earl of *Richmond*.	*June* 25.

An Historical account of the Knights of the most noble order of the Garter, instituted by King *Edward* III.

This most noble and illustrious order, (if we consider either its antiquity, or the nobleness of the personages that have been enrolled therein) excells and outvies all other institutions of honour in the whole world, and owes its original to the great Hero of that age, *Edward* III. who conquered *France* and *Scotland*, and brought their Kings prisoners to *England*.

It began in 1350, the 24th of his Reign, viz. 119 years before the foundation of the order of St. *Michael*, by *Lewis* XI. King of *France*, 1469; 80 years before the institution of the order of the Golden Fleece, by *Philip* II. the second Duke of *Burgundy*, 1430; and 190 before King *James* V. of *Scotland* restored the order of St *Andrew*, or the Thistle; and 209 years before the order of the Elephant was instituted in *Denmark*.

King *Edward*, upon a view of recovering of *France*, (which descended to him by right of his Mother) made it his business to draw the best Soldiers of *Europe* into his interest, and thereupon projecting and setting up King *Arthur*'s Round Table, he proclaimed a solemn tilting, to invite Foreigners of quality and courage to the exercise.

The place for the solemnity being fixed at *Windsor*, he upon New-Year's Day, in 1344, published his Royal Letters of protection for the safe coming and return of such foreign Knights as had a mind to venture their reputation at those justs and tournaments, which were to be held on the 19th of *January* ensuing.

Moreover, he provided a great supper, to begin the solemnity; and then ordaining this feast to be annually kept at Whitsontide, he for that purpose erected a particular building in the Castle, wherein he placed a round table of 200 foot diameter, in imitation of King *Arthur*'s at *Winchester*; and thereat entertained the Knights at his own expence of 100*l*. *per* week.

This mighty and invincible Prince *Edward*, being endowed with great piety commended himself and his companions to the protection of St *George* of *Cappadocia*; whose parents being Christians, afforded him the advantage of being educated in that religion; and he taking upon him the profession of a Soldier, was made a Tribune or Colonel (in *Palestine*, his mother's country) in which post he behaving himself with great courage and conduct, he was preferred to higher stations in the army, by the Emperor *Diocletian*; but the said St *George* afterwards complaining of the said Emperor for his severities against the Christians, and arguing in their defence, he was thereupon imprisoned and cruelly treated; and the Emperor perceiving his constancy to the Christians was not to be shaken, he was on the 23d of *April*, *Anno* 290, drawn through the city and beheaded; and thus he received the crown of martyrdom. And that his memory might be still continued, King *Edward* gave his companions, for part of their daily habit, the image of the said Saint, (sitting on horseback, encountering the dragon with a tilting spear) appendant to a blue ribband, continually to be worn about their necks.

In 1347, the said King issuing out his Garter for the signal of a battle that was crowned with success (which is supposed to be the battle of *Cressy*,) where he took *John* the *French* King prisoner, and brought him to *England*; at which time he had also prisoner *David* King of *Scots*, as before-mentioned; and *Edward* his son the Black Prince, expelling the Rebels of *Castile*, and enthroning *Don Pedro*, their lawful King; he upon these mighty and glorious exploits, instituted this order, giving the Garter preheminence amongst its ensigns, whence the select number, whom he incorporated into a fraternity, were stiled *Equites Aureæ Periscelidis*, *viz.* Knights of the Golden Garter, and the habit and ensigns of the order, together with the forms of investiture, are as follow, *viz.*

Garter, Surcoat, Mantle, Hood, George, Collar, Cap, and Feather; the four first whereof were assigned by the Founder, and the rest by King *Henry* VIII. And all these together, are called the whole habit or ensigns of the order, which we shall treat of succinctly, beginning with the Garter.

The Royal Garter, which, as aforesaid, challengeth the pre-eminence, by reason the noble order from thence is denominated, is the first part of the habit presented to foreign Princes and absent Knights, who, and all other

Knights elect, are therewith first adorned; and is of so great honour and grandeur, that by the bare investiture with this noble ensign, the Knights are esteemed Companions of the greatest military order in the world.

This noble ensign, the Garter, which is worn on the left leg, between the knee and calf, was so instituted by the founder at the erection of the Order; and was to put the companions in mind, That as by their order they were joined in a firm league of amity and concord; so by their Garter, as by a fast tie of affection, they were obliged to love one another.

He also caused to be enamelled on it this motto, HONI SOIT QUI MAL Y PENSE, signifying that the magnanimity and bravery of those Knights whom he had elected into this order, was such as would impower and enable them to maintain the quarrel against all who thought ill of it.

The materials whereof the Garter was composed for King *Charles* II. were blue velvet, bordered with fine gold wire, the letters of the motto, and stops, rose and table diamonds, (the whole containing 250) and the hinge of the buckle was pure gold, whereon was the Sovereign's picture to the breast, crowned with a laurel (the military garb of the first *Roman* Emperors) and on the back-side of the pendant, which was also of gold, was engraved St. *George* on horseback, encountering the dragon.

When the Sovereign designs to elect a companion into this most illustrious order, the Chancellor belonging to the said order, draws up the letters, which passing both under the Sovereign's sign manual and the signet of the order, are sent to the person by Garter Principal King of Arms, and are to this effect:

"We, with the companions of our most noble order of "the Garter, assembled in Chapter holden this present day "at our Castle at *Windsor*, considering the virtuous fide-"lity you have shown, and the honourable exploits, you "have done in our service, by vindicating and maintain-"ing our just right, *&c.* have elected and chosen you one "of the companions of our order. Therefore we require "you to make your speedy repair unto us, to receive the "ensigns thereof, and be ready for your installation upon the " day of this present month, *&c.*"

The Garter, which (as aforesaid) is of blue velvet, bordered with fine gold wire, (having commonly the letters

of the motto of the same) is buckled upon the leg at the time of the election, with this Ceremony:

"To the honour of God omnipotent, and in memorial "of the blessed martyr St. *George*, tie about thy leg for "thy renown, this noble Garter; wear it as the symbol "of the most illustrious order, never to be forgotten or "laid aside; that there by thou may'st be admonished to be "couragious; and having undertaken a just war, in which "thou shalt be engaged, thou may'st stand firm, valiant-"ly fight, and successfully conquer.

The Princely Garter being thus buckled on, and the words of its signification pronounced, the elect Knight is brought before the Sovereign, who puts about his neck a sky coloured ribband, whereunto is appendant, (wrought in gold within the Garter) the image of St. *George* on horseback, with his drawn sword, encountering with the dragon, the admonition being thus;

"Wear this ribband about thy neck, adorned with the "image of the blessed martyr and soldier of Christ, St. "*George*, by whose imitation provoked, thou may'st so "overpass both prosperous and adverse adventures, that "having stoutly vanquished thy enemies, both of body "and soul, thou may'st not only receive the praise of this "transient combat, but be crowned with the palm of eter-"nal victory."

Having thus far spoken of the Garter and *George*, wherewith a Knight Companion is adorned at the time of his election, we shall describe the remains of his habit, together with his installation, which is always performed at the Castle of *Windsor*.

His stockings and breeches (being the same) are of pearl-coloured silk, and called pantaloons. On the outside of the right knee, is fixed a knot of open silver lace and ribbands intermixed, in form of a large rose, and a little below the knee is placed the Garter. His shoes which are of white shammy, with red heels, have each a knot (as the former) on the exterior side. His doublet is cloth of silver, adorned before and behind, and down the sleeves, with several guards, or rows of open silver lace, each lace having a row of small buttons set down the middle.

The

The cuffs are open, and adorned with the aforementioned lace and ribbands set in small loops. At the bottom of the upper seam of each cuff, is fixed a knot of silver ribbands that fall over his gloves which are of kid, laced at the top with silver, and adorned at the opening with a knot, as that on the cuff. Then his trowsers, which are of tissue, the same of his doublet, and adorned with two rows or bars of lace and ribbands, as beforemention'd, intermixed and set at a small distance, that the ground appears between them, being buckled round his waist, are in form of a pair of puff'd breeches, reaching to the middle of his thighs. And in this habit (having a blue ribband spread over the left shoulder, and brought under the right arm, with the *George* appendant) he proceeds from his lodgings in the castle, to the Chapter-House, where disrobing himself of his upper garment, he is invested with a surcoat of crimson velvet, lined with white taffata, during which time, the admonition is given him as follows:

"Take this robe of crimson, to the increase of your "honour, and in token or sign of the most noble order you "have received, wherewith you being defended, may "be bold, not only strong to fight, but also to offer your-"self to shed your blood, for Christ's faith, the liberties "of the Church, and the just and necessary defence of "them that are oppressed and needy."

After this, his sword is close girt about him over his surcoat, with a belt the same as the coat, and then bearing his cap in his hand, which is of black velvet, adorned with a diamond band, and a plume of white feathers, with a heron sprig in the middle, he proceeds to his installation in St. *George*'s Chapel, being conducted between two Knights companions of the order, to the seat below his stall, where he (Garter King of Arms having on a crimson velvet cushion, laced and tasseled with gold, brought the mantle, collar, hood, and the book of statutes) laying his right hand on the New Testament, the oath is administered to him in the following manner:

YOU being chosen to be one of the honourable company of this most noble order of the Garter, shall promise and swear by the Holy Evangelists, by you here touched, that wittingly or willingly you shall not break any

any statute of the said order, or any articles in them contained, the same being agreeable, and not repugnant to the laws of Almighty God, and the laws of this realm, as far forth as to you belongeth and appertaineth: So help you God and his holy word.

As soon as the Knight elect hath taken the oath, he is conducted to his appointed stall, where he is invested in manner following:

The mantle which is lined as the surcoat, is of sky-coloured velvet, adorned on the left shoulder with St. *George*'s cross, encircled with the Garter wreathed on the edges with blue and gold; and the said mantle being put on him by the two Knights that led him into the choir, is fastened about his neck with a cordan or robe-string, made of the same coloured silk and venice gold twisted, the ends whereof are made into large knobs or buttons enriched with a caul, and fringe. And whilst the ceremony of investiture with the mantle (which is tied upon the right shoulder) is performing, the words of admonition proper thereto, are thus pronounced by the Register:

"Receive this robe of heavenly colour, the livery of "this most excellent order, in augmentation of thy ho-"nour, enobled with the shield and red cross of our Lord; "by whose power thou may'st safely pierce troops of thy "enemies, and be over them ever victorious; and being "in this temporal warfare glorious in egregious and he-"roic actions, thou may'st obtain eternal and triumphant "joy."

Next, the hood, which is made of crimson velvet, and lined with white taffata, was formerly worn upon the head; but now the cap taking place, it is laid upon the right shoulder over the mantle, and fastened by the tippet, which comes athwart his breast, and tucks under his girdle; but this having no ceremony, we proceed to the collar.

The collar, which weighs 30 ounces troy, of pure gold, was brought in by *Henry* VIII. and contains 26 Garters enamelled, and as many knots, alluding to the Sovereign of the order, and his 25 companions, and with the roses and mottos, is exactly formed and joined, whereunto St. *George* on horseback, in armour, is appendant, encountering the dragon with a tilting spear; which medal being also of gold, may be enriched with jewels at the pleasure of the possessor. And this collar, with the *George*, being

being part of the habit, is put over the mantle and hood (being fastened on each shoulder by a silver ribband) with the following ceremony:

"Wear this collar about thy neck, adorned with the "image of the blessed martyr and soldier of Christ, St. "*George*, by whose imitation provoked, thou may'st so "overpass both prosperous and adverse encounters, that "having stoutly vanquished thy enemies both of body and "soul, thou may'st not only receive the praise of this "transient combat, but also at the last, the endless and "everlasting reward of victory."

Then the cap and feather being put on the head of the elect Knight, his investiture is compleated; and after divine service, and several religious ceremonies, and offerings at the high altar, they with trumpets sounding, march to dinner.

About the latter end of the Reign of King *James* I. it was decreed, that the lesser *George*, which heretofore was daily worn before the breast, in a gold chain, should for the more conveniency of riding or action, be worn appendant at a blue ribband, spread over the left shoulder, and brought under the right arm, as before mentioned; which method has so continued to this day, and even in the time of mourning. And this medal, which represents St *George* in a riding posture, with his sword drawn, encountering the dragon, is likewise of pure gold, and may be enriched as the former; but is always encompassed with the garter, which that is not.

In the Reign of King *Charles* II. it was ordained, That the Sovereign and Knights companions, as also of the Prelate and Chancellor, should at all times, and in all places and assemblies, when they were not adorned with their robes, wear upon the left side of their coats, cloaks, or riding cassocks, the cross of the order, encompassed with the garter, (as has been observed) to shew the world, what height of honour they arrived to, from the said most noble order, instituted for persons of the greatest merit and worth. And to the said Cross and Garter, the said King *Charles* added a silver star of eight points, and for the greater convenience of travelling, the companions of the order were permitted to wear the blue ribband under their boot, instead of the Garter; but without that and their lesser *George*, and Star, *&c.* they by the statutes of the order, are never to appear in publick, except upon the principal and solemn feasts of

the

the year, when they wear their collars, and then the ribband and *George* is laid aside.

At the great solemnity of the installation of a Knight of the Garter, his helmet, creft, sword, banner, and plate are to be set over his stall in the chapel of St. *George* at *Windsor*, as a mark of honour, and are there to remain during his being of that order, the plate containing the inscription of his name, titles, *&c.*

The Royal Founder having established rules and statutes for its government, he next resolved to elect from among those who had distinguished themselves by their heroick actions, 25 of the most celebrated Knights, who, together with himself, should make up the number 26, for of so many does the order consist, and never (at once) has exceeded that number.

Of this most noble and illustrious order of the Garter, there have been eight Emperors of *Germany*, five Kings of *France*, three Kings of *Spain*, one King of *Arragon*, seven Kings of *Portugal*, one King of *Poland*, two Kings of *Sweden*, six Kings of *Denmark*, two Kings of *Naples*, one King of *Sicily* and *Jerusalem*, and one King of *Bohemia*; four Princes of *Orange*, seven Counts *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, one Duke of *Savoy*, one Elector of *Bavaria*, one Elector of *Saxony*, two Electors of *Brandenburgh*, three Dukes of *Brunswick-Lunenburgh*, two Dukes of *Holstein*, two Dukes of *Burgundy*, two Dukes of *Urbin*, one Duke of *Guelderland*, one Duke of *Holland*, one Duke of *Milan*, one Duke of *Wirtemberg*, one Duke of *Ferrara*, and one Marquiss of *Brandenburg*.

So that there is no Royal or Princely Family in *Europe*, but who at one time or other has thought it an honour to wear this most illustrious Order.

The first twenty-six were as follows:

The Sovereign King *Edward* III.
Edward Prince of *Wales* (called the *Black Prince*.)
Henry Duke of *Lancaster*.
Thomas Beauchamp, Earl of *Warwick*.
Piers, Captain *de Beauch*.
Ralph Stafford, Earl of *Stafford*.
William Montacute, Earl of *Salisbury*.
Roger Mortimer, Earl of *March*.

Sir

Sir *John Lisle.*
Sir *Bartholomew Burgherſh.*
Sir *John Beauchamp.*
Sir *John Mohun.*
Sir *Hugh Courtenay.*
Sir *Thomas Holland.*
Sir *John Grey.*
Sir *Richard Fitz-Simon.*
Sir *Miles Stapleton.*
Sir *Thomas Wale.*
Sir *Hugh Wroteſley.*
Sir *Nele Lorin.*
Sir *John Chandos.*
Sir *James Audley.*
Sir *Otho Holland.*
Sir *Henry Eam.*
Sir *Sanchet Daubrichcourt.*
Sir *Walter Pavely.*

Their Succeſſors, or the Knights afterwards elected, were as follows:

In the Reign of King *Edward* III.

Richard of *Bourdeaux* (ſon to the Black Prince) afterwards King *Richard* II.
Lionel of *Antwerp*, Earl of *Ulſter*, and Duke of *Clarence.*
John of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*, afterwards created Duke of *Aquitain.*
Edmund of *Langley*, Earl of *Cambridge*, afterwards Duke of *York.*
John de Montford, Duke of *Bretagne*, and Earl of *Richmond.*
William de Bohun, Earl of *Hereford.*
William de Bohun, Earl of *Northampton.*
John Haſtings, Earl of *Pembroke.*
Thomas Beauchamp, Earl of *Warwick.*
Richard Fitz-Alan, Earl of *Arundel* and *Surrey.*
Robert Ufford, Earl of *Suffolk*
Hugh Strafford, Earl of *Strafford.*
Ingelram de Coucy, Earl of *Bedford.*
Guiſcard de Angouleſme, Earl of *Huntingdon.*
Edward Spencer, Lord *Spencer.*
William Latimer, Lord *Latimer.*
Reynold Cobham, Lord *Cobham* of *Scarborough.*
John Nevil, Lord *Nevil* of *Raby.*
Ralph Baſſet, Lord *Baſſet* of *Drayton.*

Sir

Sir *Walter Manny*, Banneret.
Sir *William Fitz-Warrin*, Knight.
Sir *Thomas Ufford*, Knight.
Sir *Thomas Felton*, Knight.
Sir *Francis Van Hale*, Knight.
Sir *Fulk Fitz-Warrin*, Knight.
Sir *Allen Bokhull*, Knight.
Sir *Richard Pembruge*, Knight.
Sir *Thomas Wright*, Knight.
Sir *Thomas Banester*, Knight.
Sir *Richard de la Vache*, Knight.
Sir *Guy de Bryan*, Knight.

12. RICHARD II. *surnamed of* Bourdeaux.

Ann. C. 1377. *Reg.* 1. *July* 16.

RICHARD II. succeeds his grandfather, in the eleventh year of his age.

He is crowned at *Westminster*. And at this Coronation it is, that a Champion is first mentioned in History.

Upon the expiration of the truce with *France*, *Charles* V. raises five armies; and sends the 1st into *Guienne*, the 2d into *Auvergne*, the 3d into *Bretagne*, the 4th into *Artois*, and the 5th he keeps by him.

June. *July.* *August.*

A *French* fleet ravages the coasts of *England*; plunders the Isle of *Wight*; and burns *Rye*, *Hastings*, *Portsmouth*, *Dartmouth*, and *Plymouth*.

The Earls of *Cambridge* and *Buckingham* are sent to *Dover* with forces, and the Earl of *Salisbury* to *Southampton*.

John Duke of *Lancaster*, *Edmund* Earl of *Cambridge*, with others of the Nobility, and some Bishops, are appointed Governors of the King and Kingdom.

The Duke of *Lancaster* takes leave of the Court, and retires to *Kenneluworth* Castle.

The *Scots* burn *Roxborough*, and surprize the Castle of *Berwick*, but it is soon after retaken by the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Nottingham*, who enter and ravage *Scotland*.

Ardres, and the Castle of *Merch*, are betrayed to the *French*; but Sir *Hugh Calverly*, marching out of *Calais*, burns *Boulogne*, and recovers the Castle of *Merch*.

Oct. 13.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King two fifteenths, without Cities and Burghs; and two tenths, within Cities and Burghs, for two years. The Clergy also grant a tenth.

Three

G. Vertue sc.

Three Bishops, two Earls, two Knights Bannerets, and *Ann. C.*
two Knights Batchellors, are, in this Parliament, appointed the young King's Counsellors.

Alice Perrers, being prosecuted in this Parliament, is condemned to banishment, and to forfeit all her lands and goods: But she soon after marries Sir *William de Windsore*, and the sentence against her is reversed in the next Parliament.

Sir *Thomas Percy*, putting to sea with 7 ships, defeats a 1378.
fleet of *Spaniards* and *Flemings*, and takes 22 of their vessels.

The Duke of *Lancaster* gets into his hands the money *March.*
granted by the last Parliament, and which had been deposited, by the same Parliament's order, into the custody of *Philpot* and *Walworth*, two Aldermen of *London*.

He promises with that to set out a great fleet for the defence of the coasts, and hires nine ships from *Bayonne*, which in their passage to *England* take 14 *French* vessels.

John Philpot, Alderman of *London*, fitting out some ships *Rog.* 2.
at his own expence, defeats, and takes prisoner, one *Mercer*, a *Scotch* Pirate, who did great damage to the *English* Merchants.

The King of *Navarre*, falling out with his brother King *Charles* V, delivers up *Cherbourg* to the *English*.

A Parliament meets at *Gloucester*, which grants the King *Oct.* 20.
for three years the usual subsidy of wool, wool-fells, and leather; with the addition of 13 *s.* 4 *d.* for every sack of wool, and every 240 wool-fells; and 1 *l.* 6 *s* 8 *d.* for every last of leather; and also 6 *d.* for every pound's-worth of merchandize imported and exported, for one year.

The Duke of *Lancaster* fits out a fleet, wherewith he undertakes to restore the Duke of *Bretagne*, deprived of his Dominions by the King of *France*, but he cannot effect it.

John Duke of *Bretagne* repairs to *England*, and, upon his
offering to deliver up *Brest* to the *English*, the Court con- 1379.
cludes a treaty with him, and resolves to assist him. *March* 1.

Sir *Hugh Calverly* and Sir *Thomas Percy*, being constituted Admirals, put out to sea with a fleet, and take many *French* and *Spanish* vessels.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which takes off the *April* 25.
mark upon wool, and the 6 *d.* poundage, given by the last Parliament; but grants, in the room of it, the subsidies of wools for one year longer, and a poll-tax. All this for the war in *Bretagne*. *Reg.* 3.

The King of *France*, having confiscated *Bretagne*, the
Bretons

Aug. 6. *Bretons* recal their Duke *John de Montfort*, who is convoyed
Aug. 4. to his Dominions by Sir *Thomas Percy* and Sir *Hugh Calverly*.

Dec. 6. King *Richard* sends a fleet to the Duke of *Bretagne's* assistance, but it is destroyed by a storm, 26 vessels, and above 1000 men being lost.

The war continues between *France* and *England*, with various success on each side.

1380. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the
Jan. 17. King a fifteenth and a half to be taken out of the Cities and Towns, and a tenth and a half within them: As also the subsidy of wools.

The King's Counsellors are removed, and *Thomas de Beauchamp*, Earl of *Warwick*, is appointed the King's sole Governor.

Feb. 4. In this Parliament an act is made against Alien Ecclesiastics, and foreign Monks are expelled the Kingdom.

June 19. *Thomas of Woodstock*, Earl of *Buckingham*, leads a body
March. of 8000 men, from *Calais* through *France*, without any
1381. opposition, to the Duke of *Bretagne's* assistance. But the Duke, not being able to prevail with his Nobility to join cordially with the *English*, concludes a treaty with *France*, and the *English* return to *England* in *April*, the next year.

August. The *Scots* invade *Cumberland* and *Westmoreland*, and drive away about 40,000 head of cattle. But, the Duke of *Lancaster* advancing with an army to call them to account for those depredations, a truce is soon after concluded
Septemb. between them and the *English*, till the *Easter* following.

Some *French* gallies ravage the *English* coasts, and burn *Winchelsea*.

Sept 16. *Charles* V, King of *France*, dies, and is succeeded by his son *Charles* VI.

Nov. 2. A Parliament meets at *Northampton*, which grants the King a poll-tax of three groats upon every person in the Kingdom, that was 15 years of age, except beggars. And also the subsidy of wools.

England preposterously resolves to assist *Portugal* against the King of *Castile*; and all, by the Duke of *Lancaster's* management, who, in right of his wife *Constantia*, had some pretensions to *Castile*.

That this armament might meet with no obstructions from *Scotland*, he goes and prolongs the truce with that Kingdom for two years longer.

1381. In the mean time, a dangerous insurrection happens in
May. *Essex* and *Kent*, occasioned by the over-severe collection of

the poll-tax granted by the last Parliament, and headed by one *Thomas* a baker of *Fobbing*, and *Walter Helier* a tyler of *Deptford*. *Ann. C. June. Reg. 5.*

The seditious, soon amounting to a 100,000 men, break open the gaols, behead the Nobility, Judges, and Lawyers, and commit other outrages.

They march to *London*, burn the *Savoy* (belonging to the Duke of *Lancaster*) the *Temple*, the Priory of *St. John's* of *Jerusalem*, and several other houses. But, the King having granted them a Charter, whereing villainage was abolished, and which also contained a general pardon, most of the *Essex* people return to their homes. *June* 12. — 13. — 14.

But *Wat Tyler* and his mob, not satisfied with this, seize the *Tower*, behead *Simon Sudbury*, Chancellor, and Archbishop of *Canterbury*; Sir *Robert Hales*, High-Treasurer; with several *Flemings*, and others. — 15.

The King sends to *Tyler* to come and treat with him in *Smithfield*, which, whilst he was doing, *William Walworth* Mayor of *London*, *John Philpot*, and another, kill him on the spot.

Sir *Robert Knolles* advancing with 1000 men against the Rioters, they throw down their arms, and submit to the King.

The like Insurrection happens in *Suffolk*, headed by *John Wrau*: And another at *Norwich*, led by *John Littister* a dyer; both of which commit great ravages, and behead Sir *John Cavendish*, Chief-Justice, and other Lawyers; but they are defeated and dispersed by *Henry Spencer*, Bishop of *Norwich*, who makes a great slaughter of them. — 13.

The King having revoked the Charter and Pardon granted to the *Essex* Rebels, great numbers of them assemble together again near *Billericay* and *Hatfield*, but they are dispersed by the Earl of *Buckingham*, and the Lord *Thomas Percy*. *July* 2.

The commotions being thus appeased, the King grants a Commission to Sir *Robert Trefilian*, to go and try the Rebels, 1500 whereof are said to have been executed.

John Duke of *Lancaster*, hearing of these troubles, concludes a truce with *Scotland* from *July* 18, 1381, to *February* 2, 1383, and retires, during the riots, to *Edinburgh*.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which continues the subsidy of wool, wool-fells, and leather; and repeals the grant of Manumission made by the King to the late Rebels. *Nov.* 2.

Ann. C. A marriage having been concluded, on *May* 2, this year, between King *Richard* and *Ann* of *Luxemburgh*, Decemb. sister to the Emperor *Wenceslaus*, she arrives in *England* in 1382. *Bartholby*, and is married in the Chapel Royal at *Westminster*, on *January* 14. Soon after which she is crowned.

John, Duke of *Lancaster*, sends a body of *English* to the King of *Portugal*'s assistance, commanded by *Edmund* Earl of *Cambridge*.

January. The Parliament, that had (on *Decemb.* 15.) been prorogued till this time, on account of the King's marriage, meets again at *Westminster*, and continues the subsidy of wool, leather, and wool-fells, for four years longer. In this Parliament an act against Heretics is passed by the King and Prelates, without the assent of the Commons.

February. *Edmund*, Earl of *March*, Lord Lieutenant of *Ireland*, dies.

May. A great Council being held at *London*, *John Wickliff* presents to them a summary of his doctrine, contained in seven articles.

King *Richard* minds only his pleasures, and gives himself up to his Favourites, who were *Alexander Nevil*, Archbishop of *York*, *Robert de Vere*, Earl of *Oxford*, *Michael de la Pole*, and Judge *Tresilian*.

Reg. 6. *Richard le Scrope*, Lord Chancellor, refusing to put the Great Seal to a grant made to one of these Favourites, the King takes it from him, and delivers it to *Robert Braybrooke*, Sept. 20. Bishop of *London*.

Oct. 6. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, wherein the Lords and Commons grant the King a fifteenth, and a tenth out of the Cities and Towns. In this Parliament, the late act against Heretics is repealed.

Edmund, Earl of *Cambridge*, returns to *England* from his *Portugal* expedition, with great losses, and highly dissatisfied.

Clement, the Antipope, having granted a Croisade against King *Richard* and his Adherents, Pope *Urban* VI. publishes another, in opposition to it; of which *Henry Spencer*, Bishop of *Norwich*, is appointed General.

1383. Having raised a great deal of money by Papal indulgences, and also (by consent of a Parliament, which met at *Westminster*, *Febr.* 24.) having obtained the fifteenth and tenth, Feb. 24. April 23. &c. granted by the last Parliament, the Bishop goes over Reg. 7. to *Calais* with 50,000 foot, and 2000 horse; and, instead of invading *France*, as his instructions were, attacks *Flanders*, October. where he takes several places; but they are soon re-

taken

taken by the *French*, and he returns to *England*, full of disgrace, where he is imprisoned. *Ann. C.*

The *French*, in the mean time, make frequent descents, and the *Scots* several incursions, in *England*.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King a fifteenth, six-pence for every pound's-worth of merchandize, and 2 s. of every tun of wine. *Oct. 25.*

A truce for about nine months is concluded between *England* and *France*, in which *Scotland* is also included. 1384.

The Duke of *Lancaster* and Earl of *Buckingham* march into *Scotland*, and commit several ravages; but, after their return, the *Scots* invade also, and plunder the northern parts.

A Parliament meets at *Salisbury*, which grants the King the moiety of a tenth and a fifteenth. *April 26.*

During this Parliament, a Carmelite Frier accuses the Duke of *Lancaster*, of a design to destroy the King, and usurp the Crown; but the Duke clears himself, and the Frier is found murdered in prison.

The King's Favourites, having formed a resolution of impeaching the Duke of *Lancaster* of treason, in order to destroy him, he retires to his Castle of *Pontefract*, and stands upon the defensive; but the King is reconciled to him, through the intercession of the Princess of *Wales*. *Reg. 8.*

The truce between *England* and *France* is prolonged till the *May* following.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King two fifteenths. In this Parliament the sentence against *Alice Perrers* is reversed. *Nov. 13.*

Berwick, being betrayed to the *Scots* by the Deputy-Governor, is recovered again by the Earl of *Northumberland*, who was Governor of it.

John Wicleff dies of the palsy, and was buried at *Lutterworth* in *Leicestershire*, of which he was Rector. 1385.

France prepares to invade *England*, by the way of *Scotland*, and at the same time to make a descent on the southern coasts. *Reg. 9.*

For that purpose, they send 1000 men at arms into *Scotland*; but King *Richard*, having raised an army of 300,000 men, sends 60,000 into *Scotland*: And an insurrection happens, about the same time, in *Flanders*, which prevents the descent of the *French*: So that all their projects are defeated. *June. July.*

King *Richard* marches into *Scotland*, and burns *Edinburgh*; soon after which, the *Scots* make a diversion in *August.*

Ann. C. *Cumberland*, but King *Richard*, instead of pursuing them, is advised by his ill Counsellors to let them alone, and returns to *England*.

John de Holland, the King's half-brother, having killed *Ralph*, son to the Earl of *Stafford*, the King refuses to pardon him, notwithstanding his mother's entreaties; which sat so heavy upon her mind, that she died soon after.

October. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King a tenth and a half: And a fifteenth and a half to the Duke of *Lancaster*, to enable him to assert his right to the Crown of *Castile*.

In this Parliament, *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, son of *Philippa*, daughter to *Lionel*, Duke of *Clarence*, is declared presumptive heir of the Crown.

1386. *Reg.* 10. *July* 9. *Aug.* 9. *John*, Duke of *Lancaster*, and titular King of *Castile*, sets sail for *Spain*, with his Queen *Constantia*, and about 20,000 men; and, in his way, relieving *Brest*, that was besieged by the Duke of *Bretagne*, he arrives soon after at *Corunna*, where he lands his troops; and, making himself master of several places in *Galicia*, and, among the rest, of *Compostella*, he winters there.

A marriage is concluded between his eldest daughter, *Philippa*, and *John*, King of *Portugal*.

Charles VI, King of *France*, makes prodigious preparations to conquer *England*, having got together about 1300 vessels, and 60,000 men, for that purpose.

King *Richard* assembles together about 200,000 men, for the defence of the Kingdom.

Oct. 1. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which petitions the King to remove the Chancellor and Treasurer: But he returns a rough answer, and keeps away from the Parliament. However, upon the Duke of *Gloucester*'s, and Bishop of *Ely*'s, application, *Michael de la Pole*, Earl of *Suffolk*, and High-Chancellor, and the Bishop of *Durham*, Treasurer, are removed.

Fourteen Commissioners are appointed to take care of the public affairs, jointly with the King.

Robert de Vere, Marquis of *Dublin*, and Duke of *Ireland*, has his estate confiscated, and is sent into *Ireland*.

The Parliament grants the King half a tenth, and half a fifteenth; 3 *s.* of every tun of wine imported or exported; and 1 *s.* upon every pound's-worth of merchandize, except wool, and wool-fells.

The *French* fleet, that was coming to invade *England*, is dispersed by a storm, and a great part of it lost.

King

King *Richard* recalls his Favourites, *Vere*, and *De la Pole*, who form a plot to have the Duke of *Gloucester*, and other Patriots, murdered, at an entertainment in *London*; but the thing is discovered. *Ann. C.*

Richard Fitz-Alan, Earl of *Arundel*, and *Thomas Mowbray*, Earl of *Nottingham*, Admirals, putting out to sea, take above 100 *French*, *Spanish*, and *Flemish* ships; and then go and relieve *Brest*. 1387. *March.* — 24.

Robert de Vere, Duke of *Ireland*, divorces his wife, *Philippa*, daughter of *Ingelram de Coucy*, Earl of *Bedford*, and marries *Lancerona*, a mean *Bohemian*; which the Duke of *Gloucester*, uncle to the divorced Lady, threatens to revenge.

King *Richard* goes, with his Favourites, into *Wales*, as if it had only been to accompany *De Vere* in his way to *Ireland*, but it was, in reality, to contrive means how to render himself absolute, and to destroy the Duke of *Gloucester*, and the Earls of *Arundel*, *Derby*, *Warwick*, and *Nottingham*.

For that purpose, he endeavours to pack a Parliament, and to raise an Army; but the Sheriffs refuse to execute his orders. *Reg.* 11.

However, the Judges, being asked their opinion, decide, That the King is above the Laws, *&c.*

The Confederate Lords, *viz. Thomas* of *Woodstock*, Duke of *Gloucester*, *Richard Fitz-Alan*, Earl of *Arundel*, *Thomas Beauchamp*, Earl of *Warwick*, *Henry de Bullingbroke*, Earl of *Derby*, and *Thomas Mowbray*, Earl of *Nottingham*, draw together an army of 40,000 men, and incamp near *London*.

King *Richard*, in order to screen himself against them, resolves to procure a powerful aid of men and money from *France*, by delivering up *Calais* and *Cherbourg* to *Charles* VI; but his designs are discovered.

The Duke of *Gloucester*, and the rest of the Confederate Lords, come to the King in *Westminster-Hall*, in a very suppliant posture, and present to him an account of their grievances, and articles against the Favourites; but he refers them to the next Parliament. *Novemb.*

Robert de Vere, Duke of *Ireland*, having levied an army in *Wales* and *Cheshire*, advances towards *London*, but is defeated, near *Burford*, by *Henry*, Earl of *Derby*, and escapes into *Holland*.

Michael de la Pole, Earl of *Suffolk*, flies also into *Calais*, but is sent back prisoner to *England*, by the Lord *William Beauchamp*, the Governor.

Ann. C. The King, finding all his ill designs discovered, withdraws to the *Tower*.

Dec. 26. The Lords march with their whole army from *St. Albans* to *London*, and desire a Conference with the King.

1388. The King consents to it, though with some reluctance; and, upon the representation they give him of his late arbitrary designs, he melts into tears; and agrees to meet them the next day at *Westminster*, to settle the affairs of the Kingdom.

But, altering his mind, and sending them word, He would not come, they expresly tell him, They would chuse another King: Whereby, being forced to a compliance, he consents to the banishment of *Robert de Vere*, *Michael de la Pole*, and several others of his Favourites.

The Judges are also committed to the *Tower*.

Feb. 3. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King half a tenth, and half a fifteenth; and a subsidy of wool, skins, and wool fells, above the old custom; *viz.* of Denizens, 2*l.* 6*s.* 8*d.* of every sack of wool 4*l.* 6*s.* 8*d.* of every last of skins; and, of Aliens, 4*l.* 13*s.* 4*d.*

Articles are exhibited in this Parliament against *Alexander Nevil*, Archbishop of *York*, *Robert de Vere*, Duke of *Ireland*, and *Michael de la Pole*, Earl of *Suffolk*; and they are condemned to suffer the death of traitors.

Feb. 19, 20. Sir *Robert Tresilian*, and Sir *Nicolas Brembre*, are executed at *Tyburn*; — *Simon Burley*, *John Beauchamp*, *John Salisbury*, and *James Berners*, Knights, are beheaded: — And *Thomas*, Bishop of *Chichester*, with the rest of the Judges, are banished to *Ireland*.

Mar. 12. The King grants a general pardon:

June 3. And renews his Coronation-oath, when all the Lords did homage, and swore fealty to him.

Reg. 12. The *Scots* invade *Northumberland* and *Cumberland*; and, defeating the *English*, take the Lord *Henry Percy*, *Hotspur*, prisoner; but Sir *William Douglas*, one of their chief Commanders, is slain.

Richard Fitz-Alan, Earl of *Arundel*, assists the Duke of *Bretagne*, besieged by the *French*, takes or destroys 80 of their ships, and plunders the Isles of *Ree* and *Oleron*.

Sept. 9. A Parliament meets at *Cambridge*, in which the Laity grant a fifteenth, and the Clergy a tenth.

1389. A three years truce is concluded between *England* and *France*, wherein the *Scots* are included.

The King, being now full 20 years of age, takes upon him the Government; makes *William of Wickham* Bishop

of *Winchester*, Chancellor; turns out the Bishop of *Hereford* from being Treasurer, and removes the Duke of *Gloucester*, the Earl of *Warwick*, and others, from the Council-board. *An. C. Reg. 13.*

John, Duke of *Lancaster*, returns to *England*, having concluded a peace with *John*, King of *Castile*, and given *Catharine*, his eldest daughter by his wife *Constantia*, in marriage to *Henry*, Prince of *Castile*. *Novemb.*

Thomas, Duke of *Gloucester*, is accused, by the new Favourites, of ill designs upon the King's person; but he clears himself; and the King is reconciled to him, by the Duke of *Lancaster*'s mediation.

Michael de la Pole, Earl of *Suffolk*, dies in *France*.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King 2 *l.* on every sack of wool, above the old custom. 1390. *Jan. 16.*

John, Duke of *Lancaster*, is invested with the Duchy of *Aquitain*. *Reg. 14.*

Henry, Earl of *Derby*, goes with 1000 Knights, and bears arms into *Prussia*; or, according to others, in *Africa*.

A Proclamation is issued out, requiring all that had benefices in *England*, to come and live upon them. 1391. *Reg. 15.*

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King half a tenth, and half a fifteenth.—In this Parliament, the staple is ordered to be removed from *Calais* to *England*. *Nov. 12.*

A treaty is set on foot for a peace between *England* and *France*, but it ends only in a prolongation of the truce. 1392. *February.*

The *Londoners*, having refused to lend the King 1000 *l.* he takes advantage of a small tumult that happened in the City, to deprive it of all its liberties and privileges; but they are soon after restored, upon the Citizens presenting him with 10,000 *l.* two gold crowns, &c. *March. May 25.*

Thomas of *Woodstock*, Duke of *Gloucester*, is created Duke of *Ireland*, and raises forces for an expedition into that Kingdom; but the King, being jealous of him, will not permit him to go. *Reg. 16. July 23.*

Charles VI, King of *France*, falls into a frenzy, occasioned by a sudden fright.

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, which grants the King one tenth and a half, and one fifteenth and a half. *Nov. 3.*

Another Parliament is held at *Winchester*, wherein the Lords and Commons grant a fifteenth, and the Clergy a tenth. 1393. *Jan. 21.*

The Lord *William Scrope* buys the Isle of *Man* of *William Montague* Earl of *Salisbury*. *Reg. 17.*

A 24-years truce is made between *England* and *France*.

Frequent Insurrections having lately happened in *Ireland*, 1394.

Ann. C. King *Richard* resolves to go in person, and chastise the Rebels.

Jan. 28. For that purpose, he holds a Parliament at *Westminster*, which grants him, for 3 years, a subsidy upon wool, leathers, and wool-fells; 3*s.* on every tun of wine; and 12*d.* on every pound's-worth of merchandise. The Clergy also grant a tenth.

June 7. Queen *Anne* of *Luxemburgh*, dies at *Shene*, and was buri-
Reg. 18. ed at *Westminster*. She was a favourer of the *Wicliffites*.

Aug. 3. This year also, died *Constantia* second wife to *John* Duke of *Lancaster*.

And her sister *Isabella*, first wife to *Edmund* Duke of *York*.

Septemb. King *Richard* sets sail for *Ireland*, with about 30,000 men, and lands at *Waterford*, *October* 2.

He reduces the *Irish* to obedience, and 4 of their Kings come in and submit to him.

1395. *Edmund* Duke of *York*, Regent of the Kingdom, holds a
Jan. 28. Parliament at *Westminster*, wherein the Lords and Commons grant the King a fifteenth, and the Clergy a tenth.

Sir *Thomas Latimer* and Sir *Richard Story* present to this Parliament some conclusions and articles of the *Wicliffites* against the Clergy, and the received doctrines; and some of the same kind are affixed to the doors of St. *Paul's* Church.

The Clergy, alarmed at this, send the Archbishop of *York* and the Bishop of *London* to the King, to desire him to hasten his return.

May. The King accordingly returns to *England*, and handles severely some of the Nobility and Gentry, that favoured the *Wicliffites*, or *Lollards*; causing Sir *Richard Story* to
Reg. 19. abjure.

July. The *Gascons* refuse to acknowledge *John* Duke of *Lancaster* for their Governor, and send Deputies to *England*, to desire he might be recalled.

Robert de Vere, late Duke of *Ireland*, dying at *Louvain*,
Novemb. in 1392, his corpse is brought this year to *England*, and solemnly buried at *Earl's-Colne* in *Essex*; the King himself, and several of the Bishops attending the funeral.

1396. *John* Duke of *Lancaster* returns to *England*, and resigns *Aquitain* to King *Richard*. Soon after, he marries *Catharine Rouet*, widow of Sir *Thomas Swinford*, by whom he had had several natural children, who are afterwards naturalized by the name of *Beaufort*.

January. A marriage is treated, and agreed on, between King
March. *Richard* and *Isabella*, daughter of *Charles* VI. King of

France.

France. And a 28 years truce is concluded at the same time between the two Crowns. *Ann. C. Reg.* 20.

The Duke of *Gloucester* blames the King for this marriage and truce.

King *Richard* and *Charles* VI. have an interview under tents, between *Ardres* and *Calais*, where the treaty is signed. *Oct.* 27.

The nuptials are solemnized in *St. Nicolas*'s Church, at *Calais*; the ceremony being performed by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*. *Oct.* 31.

King *Richard* returns to *London*, with his new Queen: And she is soon after crowned at *Westminster*. *Nov.* 23. 1397.

A Parliament meets at the same place, which grants the same subsidy as was given by the Parliament, held *Febr.* 3. 1388. And also 12 *d.* in the pound of all merchandize imported, and 3 *s.* of every tun of wine. The Clergy grant likewise a tenth. *Jan.* 7. — 22.

The late Judges, banished to *Ireland*, have leave to return home.

A bill is brought in, to regulate the extravagant expences of the King's Houshold.

The subsidies granted by the Parliament not answering the King's extravagance, he raises money by loans, and other illegal methods.

And moreover restores *Cherbourg* to the King of *Navarre*, and *Brest* to the Duke of *Bretagne*, for an inconsiderable sum of money; at which the people murmurs, and the Duke of *Gloucester* reproves the King for it. *Reg.* 21.

Richard, who did not love to be controuled, resolves to get rid of the Duke of *Gloucester*; and so, coming to him at his Country-seat at *Plesbey*, desired him to accompany him to *London*, pretending he wanted his advice; but the Duke is seized at *Stratford*, and hurried to *Calais*, where he was soon after smothered between two feather-beds. His body was brought to *England*, and buried in *Westminster-Abbey*. *Septemb.*

Richard Fitz-Alan Earl of *Arundel*, and *Thomas de Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*, the Lord *Cobham*, and others, are committed to the *Tower*. *October.*

A great Council of Peers meets at *Nottingham*, where the imprisoned Lords are impeached of treason. *Aug.* 1.

The King, by changing the Sheriffs, and influencing the Elections, gets a Parliament at his devotion.

This packed Parliament meets at *Westminster*, and at the *Sept.* 17.

Ann. 8. the opening of it, the Chancellor, *Edmund Stafford*, Bishop of *Exeter*, makes a speech in favour of arbitrary power.

This Parliament repeals the Statute and Commission made in the Parliament held in *October* 1386, and annuls the pardons granted then to the Duke of *Glouceſter*, and to the Earls of *Arundel* and *Warwick*.

Sept. 20. *Thomas Fitz-Alan de Arundel*, Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, is impeached of treaſon, has all his goods confiſcated, and is baniſhed, for acting in the foreſaid Commiſſion.

—21. *Richard Fitz-Alan*, Earl of *Arundel*, being impeached and condemned of treaſon upon the ſame account, is executed, and buried in the Church of the *Auguſtin* Friers in *London*. He was ſo beloved by the people, that he paſſed for a martyr, and ſeveral miracles were ſaid to be wrought at his tomb.

Thomas de Beauchamp, Earl of *Warwick*, is impeached and condemned for the ſame crime, but is only baniſhed to the Iſle of *Man*, during life. And the Lord *Cobham* is baniſhed to *Jerſey*.

1398. The King confers ſeveral honours concerning which,
Jan. 27. ſee the end of this Reign.

This Parliament is adjourned to *January* 27, at *Shrewſbury*.

The Parliament meets again, according to its adjournment, at *Shrewsbury*; and grants the King the ſubſidy of wool, leather, and wool-fells for life; and moreover a fifteenth and a half, and a tenth and a half.

The judgment paſſed againſt the *Deſpencers*, in the Reign of *Edward* II. is now reverſed.

The Lords and Commons ſwear to obſerve all the ſtatutes and ordinances made in this Parliament. And the Pope confirms them by a bull.

Jan. 31. The King grants a general pardon, on the laſt day of the Parliament.

The County of *Cheſter* is erected into a Principality.

Several petitions remaining unanſwered, on account of the ſhortneſs of this Seſſion, an unprecedented authority is given to 12 Peers, and 6 of the Commons to anſwer them.

And King *Richard*, having thus aſſumed a deſpotic power, lives in a deceitful ſecurity.

Jan. 30. *Henry* Duke of *Hereford* having accuſed *Thomas Mowbray* Duke of *Norfolk*, of ſpeaking diſreſpectful and ſlanderous words of the King,
April. the affair is ordered to be de-
Reg. 22. cided by a ſingle combat at *Coventry*; but, juſt as the two Dukes were entering the liſts, the King orders them to deſiſt,

desist, and banishes them both, the first for 10 years, and *Ann. Ca.* the latter for life.

The Duke of *Hereford*, goes to *France*, where he is well received; and the Duke of *Norfolk* to *Venice*, where he dies soon after. *October.*

The former is offered in marriage the only daughter of the Duke of *Berry*, uncle to King *Charles* VI, but King *Richard* puts a stop to it.

John of *Ghent*, Duke of *Lancaster*, dies, and was buried in St. *Paul's* Cathedral. 1399. *Feb.* 2.

The King decrees the banishment of his son, *Henry* Duke of *Hereford*, to be perpetual, and confiscates all his estate.

There being now hardly a person of credit and authority in the Kingdom to oppose the King's arbitrary power, he gives himself up to a soft and effeminate life, whilst *William le Scrope*, Earl of *Wiltshire*, and the rest of the Ministers, raise money by unlawful means.

The *Scots* make frequent incursions upon the borders; the *English* possessions in *France*, are almost reduced to nothing; and the Merchant-ships are daily plundered by the Corsairs of *France* and the *Low-Countries*.

Seventeen whole Counties are charged with High-Treason, for having taken part in 1386. with the Duke of *Gloucester*, &c. and the estates of all the Inhabitants are adjudged to the King; so that, to redeem them, they are forced to sign *Ragmans*, or blank obligations to pay great sums of money.

The Sheriffs are also forced to take the following oath, That they would obey all the King's commands, whether under the Broad-Seal, Privy-Seal, or Signet; and would imprison any person that should speak scandalous or disrespectful words of the King.

Roger Mortimer, Earl of *March*, and Lord-Lieutenant of *Ireland*, being slain *July* 20, 1398, in a battle with the wild *Irish*, King *Richard* resolves to go in person, and chastise the Rebels.

For that purpose, he levies a numerous army; and in doing it oppresses his subjects, not only in raising money by unlawful means, but also by taking carriages, victuals, and other necessaries, without paying for them.

As he was at *Bristol*, ready to put to sea, some jealousies being infused into him of *Henry Percy* Earl of *Northumberland*, he orders him to come to him, with what forces he could

Ann. C. could raise; but the Earl excusing himself, the King proclaims him a Traitor, and banishes him.

May. King *Richard*, having constituted *Edmund* Duke of *York* Regent of the Kingdom, embarks for *Ireland*, carrying the Duke of *Lancaster's* and the Duke of *Gloucester's* sons along with him, with the Crown-Jewels, and arrives at *Waterford*, *June* 1.

He gains some advantages over the *Irish*, and defeats them in several encounters, wherein he gives proof of his valour.

In the mean time, a Conspiracy is formed in *England* to deprive him of his Crown, and the Malecontents invite over *Henry* Duke of *Lancaster* and *Hereford*.

June. *Henry* repairs to *Bretagne*, and hiring three ships of the Duke, embarks for *England*, with about 80 men, among the rest the late Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the Lord *Cobham*, &c. and 20 lances; and after having cruised about for some time, lands at *Ravenspur* in *Yorkshire*.

Reg. 23.

July 24. He is joined by the Lords *Willoughby*, *Ross*, *Darcy*, *Beaumont*; by the Earl of *Northumberland* and *Westmoreland*; and by so many others, that his army soon amounts to 60,000 men.

The Duke of *York*, Regent, and the rest of the Ministers, leave *London*, and go to *St. Albans*, where they endeavour to raise forces; but very few being willing to fight against the Duke of *Lancaster*, the Duke of *York* retires to his own house, and the Ministers to *Bristol*, intending to pass into *Ireland*.

The Duke of *Lancaster* comes to *London*, where he is gladly received; and having secured that important place, posts to *Bristol*, whose Castle being fortified by *Richard's* Favourites, he soon takes it, and causes *William le Scrope* Earl of *Wiltshire*, Sir *John Bushey*, and Sir *Henry Greene*, to be beheaded.

Sir *William Bagot*, another of the Favourites, escapes to *Ireland*, and informs the King of all that had passed.

King *Richard* prepares to come over to *England*, and in the mean time sends before *John de Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury* to raise forces who accordingly gets together about 30,000 men out of *Wales* and *Cheshire*, but the King being detained in *Ireland* by contrary winds, those troops disperse and return home.

The King lands at *Milford-Haven* with a few attendants, from whence he goes to *Caermarthen*, and then withdraws privately to *Conway* Castle.

In the mean time, the Duke of *Lancaster* marches to *Gloucester*,

Gloucester, to *Hereford* and *Chester*; where *John Holland* Duke of *Exeter*, and *Thomas Holland* Duke of *Surrey*, come to treat with him on the King's behalf, but are detained prisoners; and *Henry* sends the Earl of *Northumberland* to the King, to persuade him to surrender. *Ann. C.*

The King, coming to the Duke of *Lancaster*, is treacherously taken prisoner by the Earl of *Northumberland*, and conducted to *Rhudblan*, and then to *Flint* Castle. *Aug.* 19.

The Duke marches with his whole army from *Chester* to *Flint*, to take the King's person into his power; and sends the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and two others, to prepare the King for his coming. The same day he is conducted to *Chester*, and lodged in the Castle. *Aug.* 20.

Then the King is conveyed to *London*, and confined in the *Tower*. *August.*

Edmund Duke of *York* proposes, That King *Richard* should voluntarily resign the Crown, and also be solemnly deposed by the Estates of the Realm.

Accordingly *Richard* signs a solemn renunciation of the Crown, and desires that the Duke of *Lancaster* should succeed him. *Sept.* 29.

The next day, a Parliament meets at *Westminster*, in which the King's renunciation being produced, and 33 articles exhibited against him he is deposed, and *Henry* Duke of *Lancaster* claims the Crown, which is accordingly adjudged to him. — 30.

Thus ended the Reign of King *Richard* II, after it had lasted 22 years, 3 months, and 9 days.

The Character *of* RICHARD II.

Richard II. was a Prince, who, in his younger years, seemed to have noble and generous inclinations, but unfortunately suffered himself to be corrupted by flattery. He had the advantage of being descended from a Father and Grandfather so universally esteemed, that had he never so little answered the nobleness of his birth, he might have been one of the most glorious Kings that ever wore the *English* Crown. But, like *Edward* II. his great-grandfather, he had the weakness to give himself up to the guidance of his favourites. Accordingly he underwent the same fate with that Prince, whom he did too much resemble in every other respect. The chief difference to be observed between them is, that *Richard* was of a more cruel and inflexible temper, and usurped a more absolute power

than

than *Edward*, which rendered him more odious, and less lamented. It is to be observed, That in a Government like that of *England*, all the King's endeavours to usurp an arbitrary power, are so many steps towards his destruction.

He left no issue by either of his Queens, 1. *Ann* of *Bohemia*, and 2. *Isabella*, the latter of which he never bedded.

King *Richard* rebuilt *Westminster-Hall*, as it now stands. And, in his Reign, Ladies first began to ride on Side-saddles, which custom was brought in by the Queen, *Ann* of *Bohemia*; for, before that time, women used to ride astride like men.

A Description of the Monument *of* RICHARD II.

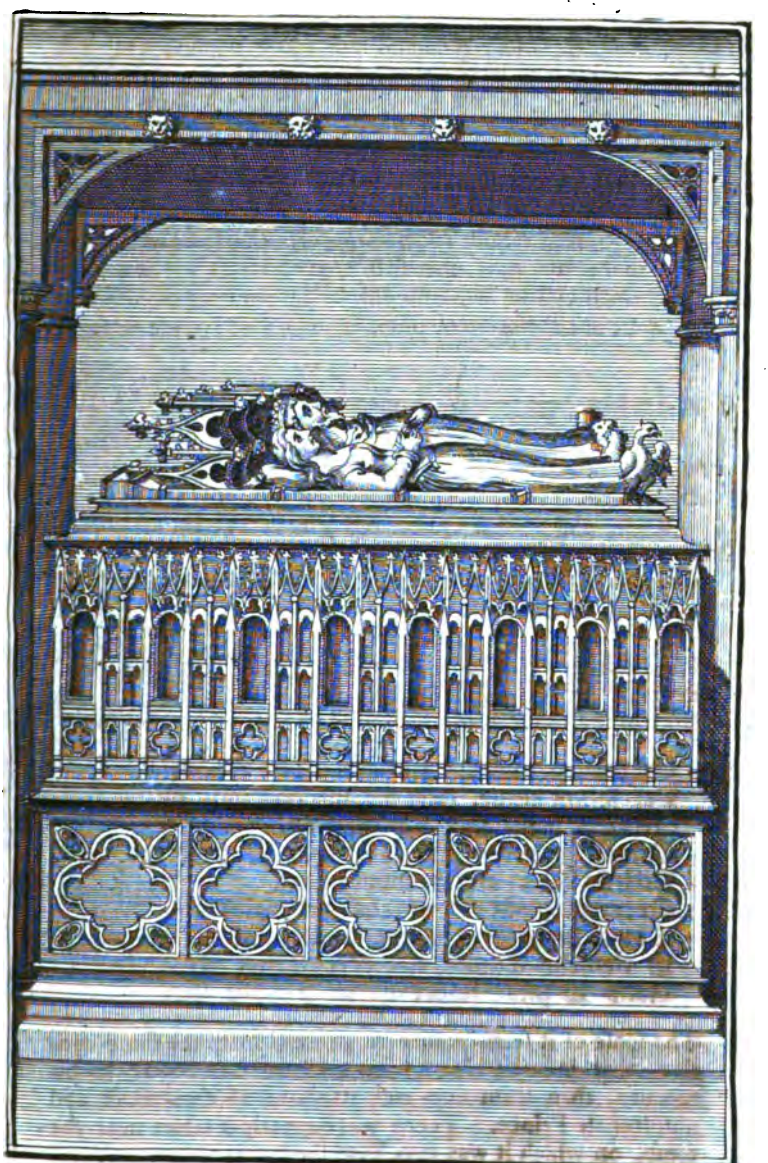
HENRY V. removed the body of this Prince from Langley in Hertfordshire, where it had been privately interred, into a magnificent monument, prepared for it by his order, and his first Queen ANNE in Westminster-Abbey. It is on the south side of the royal chapel of EDWARD the Confessor, at the head of EDWARD III.'s tomb. The materials are grey marble, upon which lie the effigies of RICHARD and his Queen ANNE of gilt copper. The Latin epitaph, as here inserted, describing the lineaments of his body and qualities of his mind, is upon the verge of the tomb, beginning on the north-side at the feet.

Dignus & mundus Richardus jure secundus,
Per fatum victus, jacet hic sub marmore pictus.
Literat sermone fuit, & plenus ratione:
Corpore pulcrum, animo prudens ac Dominus.
Ecclesiæ favit, elatos supprimitavit,
Quemque moestavit regalia qui violavit,
Dilexit heroicos & eorum strabat animos:
O clemens Christe, cui devotus fuit iste.
Mortis Baptiste salvos quem protulit iste.

The sense of it seems rather to proceed from the same motive, that induced HENRY V. to shew such regard to his remains, than from any real attributes of that weak and unfortunate Prince. There was formerly a tablet near the tomb, on which it was thus Englished:

Perfect and prudent,
RICHARD by right the second,
Vanquished by fortune,
Lies here now graven on stone:

True



J. Mynde sc.

The Monument of K. RICHARD II. & ANN *his* QUEEN *in Westminster Abbey.*

True of his word,
And thereto well resound;
Seemly in person,
And like to Homer, as one
In worldly prudence,
And ever the church in one
Upheld and favoured,
And casting the proud to ground,
And all that would
His royal state confound.

On the base is a Latin verse and motto:

RICHARDUS SECUNDUS HIC JACET IMMITI CONSUMPTUS MORTE RICHARDUS 1399.
FUISSE FELICEM MISERRIMUM.

In English:

RICHARD the second destroyed by a cruel death, 1399.
To have been happy and most miserable.

An Account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

In the 18th of *Richard* II, a pound weight of gold of the old standard was to make by tale forty-five Nobles, amounting to fifteen pounds, or a proportionable number of half or quarter Nobles: And a pound weight of silver, of the old sterling, to make by tale seventy-five grosses, or

R 2.

groats, amounting to twenty-five shillings, or a hundred and fifty half grosses, at two-pence a-piece, or three hundred sterlings at a penny a-piece, or six hundred half sterlings: And *Nicholas Makakine*, a *Florentine*, was Master and Worker. These Rose Nobles (if that in *Speed* be genuine, for it wants both the Rose and the constant Legend of *Jesus autem*, &c.) gives his portraiture in a sedentary posture, with a sword in right hand, and RICAR. D. GRA.

GRA. AGLIE. FRANCIE REX. D. AQVIT. On the reverse, AVXILIVM. MEVM. A. DOMINO. His Crown is Fleurie, as in those of his Predecessors, but no Rays betwixt the Flowers. We ought, perhaps, to read HYB for AQVIT. since it is hard to imagine, why *Aquitain* should be so much as mentioned after *France*; and AGLIE instead of ANGLIE, makes it probable, that this was rather coined by *Richard* III. (in whose Reign that way of writing was in use) than by the IId. His other Coins were exactly like his Grandfather's. RICARDVS. REX. ANGLIÆ. Reverse, CIVITAS. EBORACI.

The NOBILITY, created in this Reign, was as follows:

Ann. C.

1377. *June* 21. *Thomas Plantagenet* (of *Woodstock*) Earl of *Buckingham* and *Essex*.

1386. ——Earl of *Hereford* and *Northampton*.

1385. *Nov.* 12. ——Duke of *Gloucester* and *Albemarle*.

1377. *June* 22. *Henry Percy*, Earl of *Northumberland*.

Thomas Mowbray, Earl of *Nottingham*.

1397. *Sept.* 29. ——Duke of *Norfolk*.

1377. *July* 16. *Guiscard d'Angle*, Earl of *Huntingdon*.

1385. *Aug.* 6. *Edmund Plantagenet*, Duke of *York*.

Michael de la Pole, Earl of *Suffolk*.

Robert de Vere, Earl of *Oxford*, MARQUISS of *Dublin*, and Duke of *Ireland*.

1387. *Oct.* 10. *John de Beauchamp*, BARON *Beauchamp*, by Patent.

1388. *June* 2. *John Holland*, Earl of *Huntingdon*.

1397. *Sept.* 29. Duke of *Exeter*.

1389. *Feb.* 25. *Edmund Plantagenet*, Earl of *Rutland*.

1396. *John Beaufort*, Earl of *Somerset*.

1397. *Sept.* 29. ——Marquiss of *Dorset* and *Somerset*.

Henry Plantagenet, Duke of *Hereford*.

Edward Plantagenet, Duke of *Albemarle*.

Mary Plantagenet, Duchess of *Norfolk*.

Thomas

Mary Plantagenet, Duchess of *Norfolk*. *Ann. C.*
Thomas Holland, Duke of *Surrey*.
William le Scrope, Earl of *Wiltshire*.
Thomas Percy, Earl of *Worcester*.
Ralph de Nevil (Baron *Nevil* of *Raby*) Earl of *Westmoreland*. 1398. *Jan.* 21.
Thomas le Despenser (Baron *le Despenser*) Earl of *Gloucester*.

Knights of the Garter elected in the Reign of King RICHARD II.

Thomas of *Woodstock*, Earl of *Buckingham*, afterwards Duke of *Gloucester*.
Henry of *Lancaster* (or *Bolingbroke*) Earl of *Derby*, afterwards King of *England*; of that name the IVth.
William, Duke of *Gelderland*.
William of *Bavaria*, Earl of *Ostrevant*, afterwards Earl of *Holland*, *Hainault*, and *Zealand*.
Thomas Holland, Earl of *Kent*, afterwards Duke of *Surrey*.
John Holland, Earl of *Huntingdon*, afterwards Duke of *Exeter*.
Thomas Mowbray, Earl of *Northampton*, afterwards Duke of *Norfolk*.
Edward, Earl of *Rutland*, afterwards Duke of *Albemarle*.
Michael de la Pole, Earl of *Suffolk*.
William Scroop, Lord *Scroop*, afterwards Earl of *Wiltshire*, and Lord-Treasurer of *England*.
William Beauchamp, Lord *Bargavenny*.
John Beaumont, Lord *Beaumont*.
William VVilloughby, Lord *VVilloughby*.
Richard Grey, Lord *Grey*.
Sir *Nicholas Sarnsfield*, Knight.
Sir *Philip de la Vache*, Knight.
Sir *Robert Knolles*, Knight.
Sir *John Sulby*, Knight.
Sir *Lewis Clifford*, Knight.
Sir *Simon Burley*, Knight.
Sir *John de Evereux*, Knight.
Sir *Richard Burley*, Knight.
Sir *Brian Stapleton*, Knight.
Sir *Peter Courtney*, Knight.
Sir *John Burley*, Knight.

Ann. C. Sir *John Bourchier*, Knight.
Sir *T. Granston*, Knight.
Sir *Robert Dunstavil*, Knight.
Sir *Robert de Namur*, Knight.
Sir *Sandich de Frane*, Knight, alias *Sanchet la Tour*.

The State of the Church, from 1272, *to* 1399.

AFTER King *John*'s resignation of his Crown to the Holy See, the Court of *Rome* exercises a grievous tyranny over *England*, with respect to the disposal of preferments; which our Kings attempting to restrain, it occasions mutual complaints and great disputes between the *English*, and the Popes.

In order to restrain the Papal power, the Statutes of Mortmain, Provisors, and Præmunire, are made.

1376. And a Memorial is presented to the Parliament against the encroachments of the See of *Rome*.

But, notwithstanding all these statutes and representations, the Pope does not desist from his pretensions; but endeavours to extend his authority over temporals as well as spirituals.

1287. *Richard Knapwell* maintaining some uncommon opinions, is censured by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*.

John Wiclef publishes some opinions, different from the received ones; and has many followers.

Pope *Gregory* XI. sends an order to the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and the Bishop of *London*, to apprehend and examine *Wiclef*; but he being supported by the Duke of *Lancaster*, and the Lord *Percy*, they are contented with summoning him before them, at St. *Paul*'s.

They summon him a second time before them at *Lambeth*; and his doctrine is afterwards condemned in a Synod held by Archbishop *Courtney*; but however his followers increase.

1389. The *Wiclefites*, or *Lollards*, separate from the Church o *Rome*.

1395. They present a remonstrance to the House of Commons.

Some *Bohemian* Students, that were at *Oxford* when *Wiclef* began to publish his doctrine, carry it into their Country.

The

Ann. C.

The Councils, and Synods, within this period, were those of

—— *Lyons.*	1274.
—— *Reading.*	1279. *July* 28.
—— at *Lambeth.*	1280.
—— of *Exeter.*	1281.
—— at *Chichester.*	1287.
—— at *London.*	1289.
—— at *Rippon.*	1297.
—— at *Winchester.*	1306.
—— at *London.*	1308.
—— of *York.*	1309.
—— at *London.*	1311. *July* 18.
—— at *Magfield.*	1328. *February.*
—— at *London.*	1332. *July.*
—— of *York.*	1342. *Oct.* 10.
John Wiclef, and the *Lollards*, are questioned, and proceeded against, for their opinions.	1360.
From the year 1272, to 1399, there were Schisms in the Church of *Rome.*	1377, &c.

The most eminent Ecclesiastics, and Writers, within this period, were,

Robert Kilwarby, *John Peckham*, *Robert Winchelsey*, *John Stratford*, *Thomas Bradwardin*, *Simon Sudbury*, and *Thomas Arundel*, Archbishops of *Canterbury.*

John Britton, Bishop of *Hereford*, who writ a treatise, *de Juribus Anglicanis.*

Walter de Merton, Bishop of *Rochester*, Founder of *Merton* College.

Walter Stapleton, Bishop of *Exeter*, Founder of *Exeter* College.

Robert Eglesfield, Confessor to Queen *Philippa*, Founder of *Queen's College.*

William of Wickham, Bishop of *Winchester*, Founder of *New College.* All in *Oxford.*

Joannes Duns Scotus, head of the *Realists.* He died in 1309.

Ann. C. *William Occam*, head of the *Nominalists*.

Richard Fitz-Ralph, Archbishop of *Armagh*, who translated the Bible into *English*.

John de Trevisa, who also translated the Bible, and several other books, into *English*.

The *English* HISTORIANS, who writ within this period, were,

Thomas Wikes, who reaches from 1066, to 1304.

John Brampton, from 588, to 1199.

Ranulph Higden, Author of the *Polychronicon*, died in 1377.

Matthew of *Westminster* begins at the creation, and ends at 1307.

Adam Merimuth begins at 1302, and reaches to 1380.

Sir *John Froissart*, flourished in the Reigns of King *Edward* III. and *Richard* II.

BOOK XI.

The Reigns of HENRY IV. *and* HENRY V. *Containing the space of* 22 *years, and* 10 *months.*

13. HENRY IV. *Sirnamed of* Bullingbroke.

1399. Reg. 1. Sept. 30. HENRY, Earl of *Derby*, *Leicester*, and *Lincoln*, and Duke of *Lancaster* and *Hereford*, is proclaimed King, being the first of the House of *Lancaster*. He was, at his coming to the Crown, 33 years of age

Oct. 5. The Parliament, that had been called in the last Reign, is continued by this King, and, meeting at *Westminster*, is adjourned to *Octob.* 14.

Henry Percy, Earl of *Northumberland*, is made High-Constable of *England*; and the King gives him the Isle of *Man*, that came to the Crown by the death of *William le Scrope*, late Earl of *Wiltshire*.

Ralph Nevile, Earl of *Westmoreland*, is constituted Earl-Marshal.

Oct. 13. King *Henry* is crowned at *Westminster*, by *Thomas de Arundel*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, who was now restored to his See, and anointed with an extraordinary oil.

On his Coronation-day, he issues out a Proclamation to shew his title to the Crown; and grounds it on conquest; on

Vertue Sculp.

on King *Richard*'s resignation; and upon his being his next male-heir. *Ann. C.*

The Parliament meets again, and confirms the Parliament holden in 1388, and repeals, at the same time, the whole Parliament holden in 1397. *Oct.* 14.

They also enact, That nothing shall be accounted treason, but what was made treason in the time of King *Edward* III.

King *Richard*'s Favourites and Ministers are prosecuted, and those, or the heirs of them, that were attainted in 1397, are restored, particularly the Earls of *Arundel* and *Warwick*.

Henry, the King's eldest son, is created Prince of *Wales*, Duke of *Aquitan*, *Lancaster*, and *Cornwal*, and Earl of *Chester*; which is done, by setting a circle on his head, putting a golden ring on his finger, and delivering a rod of gold into his hand, and kissing him. And he is also appointed his Father's Successor, and Heir apparent. 15.

The Lords consult what is to be done with the late King *Richard*, and he is adjudged to perpetual imprisonment. 16. 28.

Thomas Mercks, Bishop of *Carlisle*, makes a warm speech in his behalf, for which he is deprived of his See, and confined in the Abbey of St. *Albans*.

The Parliament grants the King, for three years, the subsidy of wools, skins, and wool-fells; *viz.* 2*l*, 10*s*. for every sack, from Denizens, and 4*l*. from Strangers; and one tenth, and one fifteenth.

The King sends to the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Westmoreland*, to assure the Convocation of the Clergy, of his protection, and to promise them to extirpate Heresy.

John Hall, one of the late Duke of *Gloucester*'s murderers, is executed *Nov.* 28.

The *Scots* take *Werk* Castle, and raze it to the ground: But reparations are afterwards made on both sides, and the truce is continued between *England* and *Scotland*.

King *Henry* sends Ambassadors to the Courts of *Rome*, *France*, *Germany*, *Spain*, &c. to justify the deposition of the late King *Richard*.

He proposes to the Court of *France* a perpetual League and Alliance, and a double Marriage, between his eldest son *Henry*, and his daughter, and a daughter and son, or nearest relation of *Charles* VI.

The *Gascons*, being ready to revolt, are appeased by the prudent management of Sir *Robert Knolles*, and *Thomas Percy*, Earl of *Worcester*.

King *Richard* is removed from the *Tower* to the Castle

Ann. C. of *Leeds* in *Kent*, and afterwards to *Pontefract* Castle in *Yorkshire*.

A conspiracy is formed against the King by *John* and *Thomas Holland*, late Dukes of *Exeter* and *Surrey*, *Edward Plantagenet*, late Duke of *Albemarle*, *John Montacute*, late Earl of *Salisbury* (deprived of their honours and estates by the Parliament, but continued in them, through the King's favour) the Bishop of *Carlisle*, the Abbot of *Westminster*, &c.

Their design was, to invite the King to a tournament at *Oxford*, between the Duke of *Exeter* and the Earl of *Salisbury*, and there to murder him.

1400. The plot is discovered to the King by *Edward Plantagenet*, late Duke of *Albemarle*, and by his Father, *Edmund*, Duke of *York*.

The Conspirators, being disappointed in their design, take up arms, and, dressing in Royal apparel one *Maudelen*, a Priest, who resembled *Richard*, give out, that he had escaped out of prison: And also send to the King of *France* for assistance.

In two or three days, they assemble together an army of
Jan. 4. 40,000 men, with which they advance to *Windsor*, in order to surprize the King; but he was gone, a few hours before, to *London*; where, raising 20,000 men, he goes and incamps upon *Hounslow-Heath*, to wait for the enemies coming.

But they, resolving to avoid a battle, take the way of *Pontefract*, with design to go and release *Richard*: And, incamping one night at *Cirencester*, in their way thither, the Duke of *Surrey*, and the Earl of *Salisbury*, are taken in an inn, by the townsmen, and beheaded; whereupon the Conspirators army disperses itself.

John Holland, Duke of *Exeter*, attempts several times to escape out of the Kingdom, but he is taken, and im-
Jan. 15. prisoned in *Plesby* Castle, where he was beheaded.

Thomas le Despenser, Earl of *Gloucester*, is taken, and beheaded at *Bristol*: And *Maudelen*, being apprehended as he was flying into *Scotland*, is executed.

The Abbot of *Westminster*, and *Thomas Merck*, late Bishop of *Carlisle*, die with fear.

Some others are executed at *Oxford*, and other places; so that there were 16, in all, put to death on account of this conspiracy.

Feb. 14. King *Richard* is murdered in *Pontefract* Castle, by Sir *Piers Exton*, and eight other Ruffians. He was buried, at first,

first, in the Church of the Friers-Preachers at *King's Langley*, *Ann. C.* in *Hertfordshire*, and removed afterwards to *Westminster-Abbey*, by King *Henry* V.

King *Henry* causes the Ragmans, extorted by the late King *Richard*, to be burnt in *Cheapside*. *Feb.* 6.

A 28 years truce between *England* and *France* is confirmed. *May.*

George Dunbar, Earl of *March*, having received a great affront from *Robert* III, King of *Scotland*, seeks to be revenged, and flies to King *Henry*; who, refusing to deliver him up, on *Robert*'s demand, *Robert* proclaims war against *England*.

King *Henry* thereupon prepares to carry the war into *Scotland*, and summons *Robert* to come and do him homage at *Newcastle*; which he refusing, *Henry* enters *Scotland*, and lays siege to *Edinburgh* Castle: but he raises it, and returns to *England*, being recalled by some disturbances in *Wales*. *Septemb.* *Reg.* 2.

The *Scots*, in the mean time, invade and plunder *England*, but they are defeated, and stripped of their booty, by *Henry*, Earl of *Northumberland*; which victory procures a truce between the two Nations.

Owen Glendourdy causes an insurrection in *Wales*, on account of a law-suit he had lost with the Lord *Grey* of *Ruthen*; and takes the title of Prince of *Wales*.

Manuel Palæologus, Emperor of *Constantinople*, comes to *England*, to desire assistance against *Bajazet*, Emperor of the *Turks*.

This year died the famous *Geoffrey Chaucer*, and soon after died also *John Gower*, another eminent Poet.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King a tenth and a fifteenth, 2 *s.* of every tun of wine, and 8 *d.* of every pound's-worth of merchandize. 1401. *Jan.* 20.

In this Parliament, the cruel statute for burning Heretics was made: And also another, against exporting money out of the Kingdom.

William Lawtre, Parish-Priest of St. *Osith*, in *London*, is burnt for being a *Lollard*. He was the first that was put to death, upon the forementioned statute. *February.*

Thomas de Beauchamp, Earl of *Warwick*, dies. *April* 8.

Negotiations are set on foot, for sending back to *France* *Isabella*, the late King *Richard*'s betrothed wife. King *Henry* endeavours to get her for his son, the Prince of *Wales*; but, that not being obtained, he sends her back: *July* 25.

Ann. C. And she is afterwards married to *Charles*, son of *Lewis*, Duke of *Orleans*.

Reg. 3. *Blanch*, eldest daughter of King *Henry*, is married to *Lewis*, Duke of *Bavaria*. Her portion was 40,000 nobles.

October. The *Welch* continuing their ravages, King *Henry* marches against them; but, they retiring to their mountains, *Henry* can do no more than plunder the Country.

The King, at his return to *London*, had like to have been killed, by a calthrop put into his bed; but it was discovered before he lay down.

1402. A Parliament is held at *Westminster*.

January. *Glendourdy* wastes the lands of the Lord *Grey*, and, taking
March. him prisoner, makes him marry his daughter.

Some time after, he defeats *Edmund Martimer*, Earl of *March*, who had levied an army to oppose him, and takes him prisoner; at which King *Henry* is glad, because the Earl of *March* was intitled to the Crown.

June. A rumour is spread, That King *Richard* was alive, and had levied an army in *Scotland*, to expel King *Henry*; for which Sir *Roger de Clarendon*, the Black Prince's natural son, *Walter Baldock*, Dr. *Frisby*, and eight Grey Fryers, are executed.

King *Henry* makes a second expedition into *Wales*, but *Glendourdy* retiring to *Snowdon-hill*, and very bad weather happening, *Henry* is forced to return, without success.

June. In the mean time, the *Scots* invade *England*, in two
July, bodies, one after another, under the command of *Patrick*
June 22. *Hepburne*, and the Earl of *Douglas*; but they are totally
Sept. 14. defeated at *Nisbet*, and *Halidown-hill*, by the Earl of *Northumberland*, and his son, *Henry Hotspur*.

Aug. 1. *Edmund* of *Langley*, Duke of *York*, dies, leaving two sons, *Edmund*, Duke of *Albemarle*, and *Richard*, Earl of *Cambridge*.

The truce between *England* and *France* is violated, by some incusions of the *French* in *Guienne*: Both sides blame one another for breaking the truce, but it is soon after confirmed again.

The *French* demand *Isabella*'s portion; but, to put them off, *Henry*'s Ambassadors offer to deduct it out of the mil-
Reg. 4. lion and a half of Crowns, still due to *England*, for King *John*'s ransom.

Sept. 30. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King the subsidy of wool, wool-fells, and skins; 3 *s.* of every tun of wine, 1 *s.* of every pound's-worth of merchandize,

chandize, one tenth, and one fifteenth. The Clergy also *Ann. C.*
grant a tenth and a half.

A marriage is concluded between *Philippa*, King *Henry*'s second daughter, and *Eric* X, King of *Denmark*.

King *Henry* is married, at *Winchester*, to *Joanna* of *Navarre*, widow of *John de Montfort*, Duke of *Bretagne*. 1403. *Feb.* 7.
She is crowned, soon after, at *Westminster*. 16.

His first wife was *Mary de Bohun*, second daughter, and one of the coheiresses of *Humphrey de Bohun*, Earl of *Hereford*, *Essex*, and *Northampton*.

The Court of *France* get into their power the late Duke of *Bretagne*'s three sons, which is a great disappointment to King *Henry*.

Waleran, Earl of St. *Pol*, who had married a half-sister of the late King *Richard*, makes a descent into the Isle of *Wight*, with a body of *French*, pretending it was to revenge King *Richard*'s death; but, the inhabitants rising, he is dishonourably forced to re-imbark.

The Duke of *Orleans* sends a challenge to King *Henry*; who, though he complains of it to the Court of *France*, can receive no satisfaction.

Henry Percy, Earl of *Northumberland*, being dissatisfied with the King, because he demanded of him the prisoners taken at the battle of *Halidown-hill*, forms the project of dethroning him, and placing the Crown on the head of *Edmund Mortimer*, Earl of *March*; and, for that purpose, he enters into a league with him and *Owen Glendourdy*.

He sollicits the King to redeem the Earl of *March* out of *Glendourdy*'s hands, which the King refuses.

The Malecontents take up arms, and the Earl of *Worcester*, and *Henry Hotspur*, come and join the *Welsh* in *Shropshire*; where they publish a Manifesto, and spread a report, That King *Richard* was alive, and at *Chester*.

King *Henry*, having an army ready, designed against the *Welsh*, marches against the Rebels, who were incamped at *Shrewsbury*, to the number of 14,000; and, coming to an *July* 22.
engagement with them, gains an entire victory; *Henry Hotspur*, and 5000 more of the Rebels, being slain, and about 1600 of the King's side.

Thomas Percy, Earl of *Worcester*, who was taken prisoner, 24.
is beheaded, and his head is set up over *London-bridge*, and *Hotspur*'s body is quartered, and fixed on poles in the high-ways.

The King, after his victory, proceeds to *York*, and takes all

Ann. 6. all proper care to secure the fidelity of the northern Counties.

Henry Percy, Earl of *Northumberland*, who had been detained by sickness, advances with a body of troops to the Malecontents assistance, but hearing, by the way, of his son's and brother's misfortunes, dismisses his forces, and

Aug. 11. retires to *Warkworth* Castle. The King having summoned him to come to him, he repairs to *York*, and throws himself at the King's feet, who pardons him, and leaves him all his estate, except the Isle of *Man*.

Reg. 5. The King resolves to march into *North Wales*, to chastise the *Welsh* for their late invasion; but, before he proceeds, he obtains a tenth from the Clergy, for his charges.

He receives advice of a descent, which the Duke of *Orleans* intended to make in *England*, whilst the Duke of *Burgundy* was to besiege *Calais*.

The *Bretons* land in the West of *England*, and burn *Plymouth*; but the *English*, fitting out a fleet, under the command of *William Wilford*, take and burn 80 of the *Bretons* ships, and plunder their Country for 20 miles together.

1404. A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, which grants the

Jan. 14. King 20 *s.* of every Knight's fee; 1 *s.* 8 *d.* of every one that had 20 *l.* a year in land; and 1 *s.* in the pound for money and goods, *&c.* The records relating to this subsidy were ordered to be burnt.

The King grants a general pardon.

William Serle, Gentleman of the Bed-chamber to the late King *Richard*, spreads a report, that the said King was alive in *Scotland*; which is countenanced by the Countess of *Oxford*; but, she being imprisoned, and *Serle* hanged at *London*, the report dies away by degrees.

Reg. 6. The *Bretons* land at *Dartmouth*, and places adjacent, which the King connives at; but the Country, rising upon them, kill 400 of the *Bretons*, and take 200 prisoners.

A truce is concluded with *Scotland*, from *July* 20, to the *Easter* following.

October 6. A Parliament meets at *Coventry*, which grants the King the subsidy of wool, wool-fells, and skins; *viz.* of Denizens, for every sack of wool, and for 240 wool-fells, 2 *l.* 3 *s.* 4 *d.* for every last of skins 5 *l.* And 10 *s.* more of Aliens, upon each of these articles. 3 *s.* of every tun of wine, and 1 *s.* of every pound's-worth of merchandise.

They

They also grant two tenths and two fifteenths, for two years: And the Clergy a tenth and a half. *Ann. C.*

The Commons petition the King to seize the temporal possessions of the Clergy, for the charges of his wars; and a bill is accordingly brought in for that purpose, but is thrown out by the Lords.

This was called the Lack-learning Parliament.

This year died *William* of *Wickham* Bishop of *Winchester*, and Founder of *New-College* in *Oxford*, and of the College in *Winchester*. He was succeeded by *Henry de Beaufort*, one of *John* of *Ghent*'s natural sons.

The children of *Edmund Mortimer* Earl of *March*, which King *Henry* kept in custody at *Windsor*, are carried away thence; but they are found again, and brought back to *Windsor*. 1405.

The Lady *le Despenser*, and the Duke of *York*, being suspected to have had a hand in this escape, are imprisoned.

King *Henry* assembles the Nobility at *London*, and then at St. *Albans*, in order to obtain from them an aid of money for the war with *Wales*; but they refuse to grant him any. *February.*

Prince *Henry* is sent into *Wales* with an army, by whom the *Welsh* are defeated in two battles, and *Glendurdy*'s son taken prisoner. *Mar.* 11. *May* 14.

The Duke of *Orleans* besieges *Bourg* and *Blay* in *Guienne*; and the Duke of *Burgundy* prepares to lay siege to *Calais*; whilst the Earl of St. *Pol* attempts to seize the Castle of *March*, though the truce with *France* had been newly confirmed. *May.* *July* 15.

Richard Scrope, Archbishop of *York*, *Henry Percy*, Earl of *Northumberland*, *Thomas Mowbray*, Earl-Marshal, the Lords *Bardolf*, *Hastings*, *Falconbridge*, and several others, form a conspiracy against the King; and, levying troops, repair to *York*, where they publish a manifesto.

Ralph Nevil, Earl of *Westmoreland*, who was marching towards *Scotland* with a body of troops, seizes the Archbishop, and the Lord *Mowbray*, by fraud; and, carrying them to the King, who was at *Pontefract*, they are both brought back, and beheaded at *York*; as are, soon after, the Lords *Hastings* and *Falconbridge*, at *Durham* *June.*

The King seizes all the liberties and privileges of the City of *York*, and, marching against the Earl of *Northumberland* with 37,000 men, makes himself master of *Berwick*, and other Castles belonging to that Earl.

The Earl of *Northumberland*, Lord *Bardolf*, and others, withdraw

Ann. C. withdraw into *Scotland*, at the King's approach, and are received by *David*, Lord *Fleming*.

August. Whilst the King was in the North, the *French* arrive in *Wales*, with a fleet of 140 sail, and 12,000 men, who, joining *Glendourdy*, take *Caermardhyn*, plunder *Worcester*, and other places. King *Henry* marches against them, but can do nothing, by reason of the bad weather.

The Lord *Berkeley*, and some others, burn 14 of the *French* ships in *Milford-haven*; and take 14 others, that were bringing provisions and ammunition.

Reg. 7. Notwithstanding so notorious a breach of faith, yet the *French* Court assures King *Henry*, That their intent was always to keep the truce.

Oct. 3. King *Henry* grants the Isle of *Man* to Sir *John Stanley*.

1406. *March* 1. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which refusing to grant the King money, he keeps them assembled till they comply with his desire, that is, by several adjournments, till *December* 22. At last, they grant him a tenth, and a fifteenth, and the duties on wool, as in the last Parliament. And the Clergy grant 3 *s.* and 4 *d.* on every Stipendiary and Chantry-Priest, and on every Mendicant Frier.

This Parliament gives a Commission to Merchants and Owners of ships, to guard the seas, from *May* 1, till *Michaelmas*; for which they were to have 3 *s.* on every tun of wine, 1 *s.* in the pound of merchandizes, and the fourth part of the subsidy of wools.

An act is passed in this Parliament, limiting the Succession of the Crown to the King's male-issue, exclusive of the female; but it is repealed a few months after.

King *Henry* sends an offer to some *Scotch* Lords, whose friends or relations were prisoners in *England*, to release them without ransom, if they would but deliver up to him the Earl of *Northumberland*, and the Lord *Bardolf*: But those two Lords, having information of it from the Lord *Fleming*, retire into *Wales*.

Robert III, King of *Scotland*, sending his youngest son, *James*, by sea, into *France*, for education, the ship, in *Mar.* 30. which he was, is taken on the coast of *Norfolk*, and the Prince brought to King *Henry*, who is so cruel as to imprison him in the *Tower* of *London*.

Reg. 8. Upon this sad news *Robert* dies, and is succeeded by this same *James*; but his uncle, the Duke of *Albany*, assumes the Regency.

The *French* come upon the coast of *Wales*, with 38 ships, to

to assist *Glendourdy*, but some are taken, and others destroyed by a storm. *Ann. C.*

Bills are posted up in several places of *London*, importing, That King *Richard* was alive, and preparing to enter the Kingdom with a powerful army; but the contriver of it is taken and hanged. 1407.

A plague being in *London*, whereof there died above 30,000 people; the King, who was, in the mean time, at his Castle of *Leeds*, in *Kent*, wanting to remove to his seat of *Plesbey*, in *Essex*, without coming near *London*, crosses from *Queenborough* to *Lee*; but is like to be taken by Pirates, lying at the *Thames* mouth, who seize four of his ships, with his Vice-Chamberlain, and furniture.

The Duke of *Orleans*, notwithstanding the truce, endeavours to take *Bourg* and *Blaye*; and the Duke of *Burgundy* prepares again to besiege *Calais*; but they are both disappointed in their designs.

A truce is concluded between *England* and *Bretagne*, for one year.

The famous warrior, Sir *Robert Knowles*, dies at *Scane-Thorp*, in *Norfolk*. *Aug.* 15. *Reg.* 9.

A Parliament meets at *Gloucester* (adjourned afterwards to *Westminster*) which grants the King one tenth and a half, and the like subsidy of wool, *&c.* for two years, as was granted in 1404. *Oct.* 20.

The Duke of *Burgundy* causes the Duke of *Orleans* to be assassinated.

Henry Percy, Earl of *Northumberland*, and *Thomas*, Lord *Bardolf*, having been in *Wales*, *France*, and *Flanders*, to procure aid against King *Henry*, and then come back into *Scotland*, where they had now been a year; they invade *England* about this time, with a few *Scotch* troops, and, being joined by the Malecontents in the North, have, in a few days, a very considerable army, and make a great progress. 1408.

The Earl publishes a manifesto, containing the motives of his taking up arms.

Sir *Thomas Rokeby*, Sheriff of *Yorkshire*, levies some troops to obstruct the progress of the Rebels; the Earl of *Northumberland* coming to an engagement with him, at *Bramham-more*, near *Horselwood*, is slain on the spot; and the Lord *Bardolf* dies of his wounds, a few days after. Their heads are carried to *London*, and set up over *London-bridge*. *Feb.* 19.

The King proceeds to *York*, and punishes the Rebels, some being executed, and others put to large fines.

Edmund

Ann. C. *Edmund Holland*, Earl of *Kent*, is sent with a fleet against
some *French* Rovers, who had infested the coasts of *England*,
March. and taken shelter in the Isle of *Brehat*, where they are all
put to the sword; but the Earl receives a wound in his
Reg. 10. head, of which he dies.

A truce is concluded between *England* and *France*, for *Picardy* and *Guienne*, from *June* 15, this year, to *June* 15, 1411, in which *Poitou* is included.

1409. A Council meets at *Pisa*, on account of the schism be-
Mar. 25. tween Pope *Gregory* XII. and *Benedict* XIII; to which King *Henry* sends *Robert Holam*, Bishop of *Salisbury*, *Henry Chichely*, Bishop of St. *David's*, and *Thomas Chillingham*, Prior of *Christ's Church*, *Canterbury*.

John Wiclif's books, *De Sermone in Monte*, *Triologorum*
Reg. 11. *de Simonia*. *De perfectione Statuum*, *De ordine Christiano*, *De gradibus cleri ecclesiæ*, are condemned at *Oxford*.

The truce with *Bretagne* is prolonged to *July*, 1411.

1410. The war, which is kindled in *France*, between the Houses of *Burgundy* and *Orleans*, proves very beneficial to *England*.

Jan. 7. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which refusing to grant the King a subsidy, he uses the same unwarrantable method to extort one from them as he had done in a former Parliament; that is, by keeping them assembled till the middle of *May*; and then they grant him a fifteenth, and continue the duties on wool, *&c.*

The King, having intrenched upon the freedom of elections of Parliament-men, an act is now passed, laying 100 *l.* penalty upon a Sheriff, for making an untrue return.

Reg. 12. The Commons petition the King, To seize some of the Clergy's revenues; To repeal, or qualify the statute passed against the *Lollards* in 1401; and, To cause Clerks convict not to be delivered to the Bishops Prisons: But the King rejects these demands, and causes *Thomas Badby*, a *Lollard*, to be burnt.

The Duke of *Burgundy* prepares to besiege *Calais*, but without success.

Sir *Robert Umfreville*, Vice-Admiral of *England*, ravages the coasts of *Scotland*, and brings away a great deal of corn.

1411. The truce with *France* is prolonged for five years; with *Castile*, till *February*, 1413; and with *Bretagne*, for ten years.

Great disturbances arising in *France*, between the *Orleans* and *Burgundian* factions, the Duke of *Burgundy* strengthens himself

himself by an alliance with King *Henry*, who sends him a *Ann. C.*
body of 1200 Archers, under the command of *Thomas Reg. 13.*
Fitz-Alan, Earl of *Arundel*, *John Oldcastle*, Lord *Cobham*, &c.
They return home about the end of the year.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which continues, for *Nov. 3.*
one year longer, the duties on wool, wool-fells, and leather;
and tunnage and poundage: And, moreover, grants 6*s.* 8*d.*
from every person that had 20*l.* a year in land.

The King grants a general pardon, out of which *Glen-* *Dec. 22.*
dourdy and his Adherents are excepted.

King *Henry* thinks of taking advantage of the continu- 1412.
ation of the troubles in *France*.

The *Orleans* faction finds means to detach him from his
Alliance with the Duke of *Burgundy*, and concludes a
treaty with him. *May 18.*

In pursuance of which, King *Henry* sends 1000 men at *August.*
arms, and 3000 archers, into *France*, under the conduct
of his second son, *Thomas*, Duke of *Clarence*, to aid the
Duke of *Orleans*; but, a peace having, before their arrival,
been concluded between the contending Parties at *Bourges*,
the *English* ravage the Country in their march, and retire
to *Guienne*, where they recover several places.

The Duke of *Orleans* gives them his brother, the Earl
of *Angoulême*, in hostage, for 320,000 crowns of gold, he
owed to the *English*. *Reg. 14.*

King *Henry*, being now in profound peace, renders him-
self popular.

The Prince of *Wales*, in the mean time, lived in a riotous
and extravagant manner, robbing, in disguise, his Father's
Receivers; and his Court was the receptacle of libertines,
debauchees, buffoons, parasites, and the like.

One of his Favourites being arraigned at the King's-
Bench-bar for felony, he comes there in a rage, and en-
deavours to release him by force; but the Chief Justice,
William Gascoigne, commits him to the King's-Bench, which
he quietly submits to.

The King, his Father, grows jealous of him, as if he
aspired to the Crown; but the Prince vindicates himself.

King *Henry* is seized with an apoplexy, which, after se- 1413.
veral fits, brings him to his end.

Not thinking himself so near death, he takes the Cross,
and orders preparations to be made for a voyage to *Jerusalem*.

His last fit coming upon him, as he was worshipping at
St. *Edward*'s shrine in *Westminster-Abbey*, he is carried into
the

Ann. C. the *Jerusalem* Chamber, belonging to the *Abbot*, where he
Mar. 20. expires.

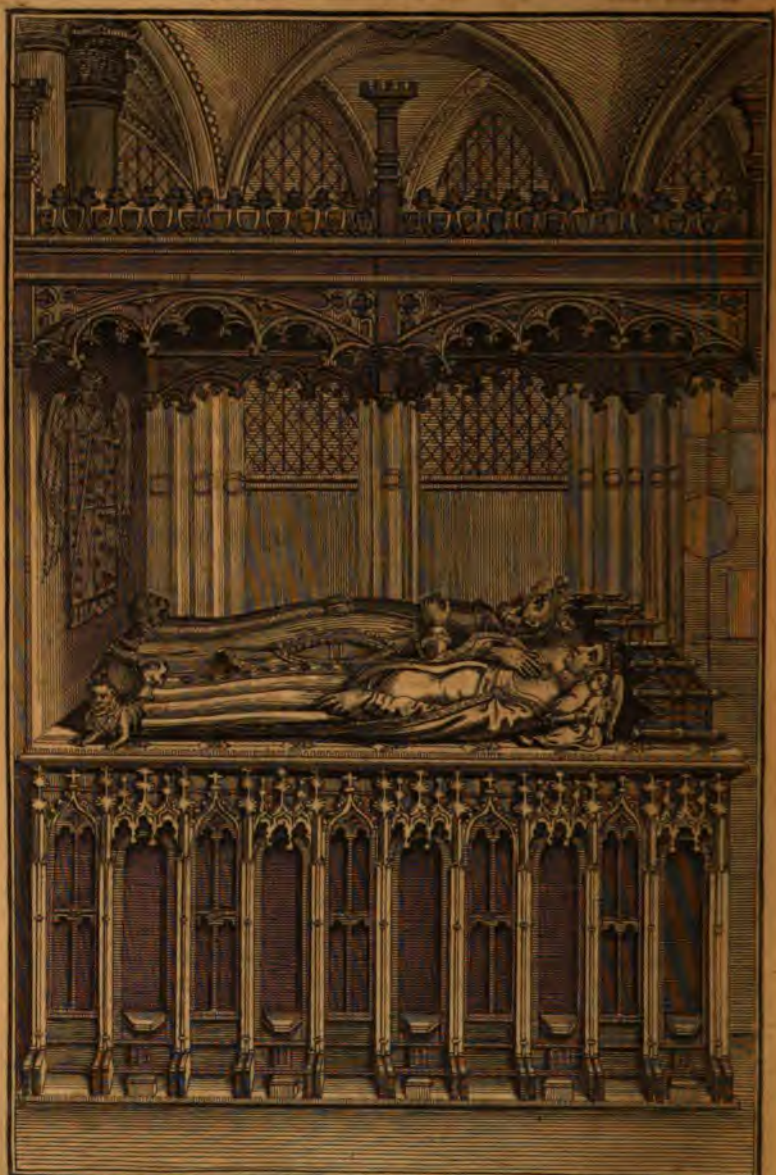
Thus died King *Henry* IV, in the 46th year of his age, after a Reign of 13 years, 5 months, and 21 days:

June. And was buried in *Canterbury* Cathedral.

The Character *of* HENRY IV.

Most of the Historians have endeavoured to give, in my opinion (says *Rapin*) a very unsuitable idea of this Prince. They speak with praise of his mildness, clemency, generosity, valour, and many other virtues, which appear more in their writings than in his actions. If he had some reputation, whilst a private person, he does not seem to have increased or maintained it, after his Accession to the Throne. His distinguishing character was an extreme jealousy of a Crown, acquired by ways not universally approved, and preserved by shedding a torrent of noble blood. The death of *Richard* II. will be an indelible stain to his memory, though his usurpation of the Throne could be justified. In short, he performed nothing remarkable to afford matter for panegyric. His expeditions into *Scotland* and *Wales* have nothing to distinguish him with Honour. If he happily freed himself from all the Conspiracies against him, he was chiefly indebted to the Mayor of *Cirencester*, the Sheriff of *Yorkshire*, and the Earl of *Westmoreland*. The battle of *Shrewsbury*, wherein he vanquished young *Percy*, is the only notable action in his whole Reign. His continual fear of insurrections, caused him to neglect several opportunities of humbling *France*, and recovering the Provinces lost by his Predecessors. He even suffered many insults from the *French*, *Scots*, *Welsh* and *Bretons*, without shewing much resentment. In fine, he employed all his thoughts in preserving his Crown, and avoiding all occasions by which it might be endangered. This prudent policy ought to be the chief if not the sole subject of his encomium, as it was the sole motive of his actions, wherein nothing appears to render him eminent. Though he had caused *Richard* II. to be deposed, for usurping an absolute power, he did not seem, by his conduct, to have so great an aversion for that crime, as he pretended, when it was his interest to expose it. It is true, towards the end of his life, he seemed to have formed a design, to follow maxims more conformable to the Nation's liberties. But God was

not



The Monument of K. HENRY IV. in the Cathedral of Canterbury

J. Byrne sc.

not pleased to allow him time to shew the effects of this resolution.

When I consider the excessive commendations bestowed on this Prince, I cannot help suspecting, that the glory of being the first burner of Heretics, and of protecting the Clergy against the attempts of the House of Commons, were the main springs of all these encomiums. It is well known, the Ecclesiastics are as zealous in praising their Benefactors, as in blackening their Opposers.

The children of King *Henry* IV, by his first wife, *Mary de Bohun*, which died in 1394, were,

1. *Henry*, born *Dec.* 25, 1388, who succeeded him. 2. *Thomas*, Duke of *Clarence*. 3. *John*, Duke of *Bedford*. 4. *Humphrey*, Duke of *Gloucester*. 5. *Blanch*, married, successively, to *Lewis Barbatus*, Elector *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*; to the King of *Arragon*; and to the Duke of *Bar*. 6. *Philippa*, wife of *Eric* X, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*.

By *Joanna* of *Navarre* King *Henry* had no issue.

A Description of the Monument *of* HENRY IV.

His tomb is in the Cathedral at Canterbury of Alabaster partly gilt, and seems to have been erected by his second wife Queen JOAN of Navarre, whose effigies lies upon the right hand of his. It is situated between two pillars on the north side of the chapel of St. Thomas a Becket, opposite to the monument of EDWARD the Black Prince. At the head of the tomb stands an angel supporting a long escutcheon of the arms of France and England, impaling quarterly Evereux and Navarre. On the inside of the canopy are three other escutcheons; in the first are the arms of France and England quarterly, in the second the arms of France and England quarterly impaling Evereux and Navarre, in the third Evereux and Navarre quarterly. The canopy is diapered with eagles volant and chained, subscribed with the motto, A TEMPERANCE. The Cornish is garnished with the arms of several of the nobility of that age, underwritten on the border with the word SOVERAYNE. It does not appear that this tomb had any inscription.

An Account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

Henry IV, by the Indenture of his third year, contracted, That a pound weight of gold of the old Standard was to

make by tale forty-five Nobles, amounting to fifteen pounds, or a proportionable number of half or quarter Nobles: And a pound weight of silver of the old *sterling*, to make by tale seventy-five Grosses (*i. e.* Groats) amounting to twenty-five shillings; or a hundred and fifty half Grosses, going for two-pence a-piece; or three hundred Sterlings, going for pence a-piece; or six hundred Half-Sterlings, or half-pence, called here *Mailes*. His Groats and Half-Groats have his head crowned within a Rose, which the lesser pieces have not. HENRIC. DI. GRA. REX. ANGL. Z. FRANC. Reverse, POSUI. DEUM. ADIVTORE. MEUM. VILLA. CALISIE. (See *Fig.* 1.) The Half-penny, HENRICUS. REX. ANGL. Reverse, VILLA. CALISIE.

1

2.

(See *Fig.* 2.) In the fourth year of his Reign, it was enacted, That foreign Money be sent out of the Kingdom, or re-coined; that a third of the Bullion be coined in Half-pence and Farthings; and that *Galley Half-pence* be not payable, as formerly, *in great deceit of the People*. Of these Farthings, the Author of *Num. Brit. Historia*, says, he has one inscribed, H. D. G. ROSA. SIE. SPI. Reverse, CIVITAS. LONDON.

Ann. C. 1399. 1403.

The NOBILITY, created in this Reign, was as follows:

Ralph de Nevill (Earl of *Westmoreland*) Earl of *Richmond*.

Humphrey Stafford (Earl of *Stafford* and *Bucks*) Earl of *Hereford* and *Northampton*.

Thomas

Pirone sculp.

Ann. C.

Thomas Plantagenet, Earl of *Albemarle*. 1411.
——— Duke of *Clarence*. *July* 9.
1412.
Thomas Beaufort, Earl of *Dorset*. *July* 5.

Knights of the Garter elected in the Reign of King HENRY IV.

Henry Prince of *Wales*, afterwards King of *England*; of that name the Vth.

Thomas of *Lancaster*, Earl of *Albemarle*, and Duke of *Clarence*, brother to Prince *Henry*.

John Earl of *Kendal*, and Duke of *Bedford*, afterwards Regent of *France*; another brother to Prince *Henry*.

Humphry Earl of *Pembroke*, and afterwards Duke of *Exeter*.

Thomas Beaufort, Earl of *Dorset*, and afterwards Duke of *Exeter*.

Robert, Count *Palatine*, Duke of *Bavaria*, afterwards Emperor of *Germany*.

John Beaufort, Earl of *Somerset*, and Marquiss of *Dorset*.

Thomas Fitz-Alan, Earl of *Arundel*.

Edmund Stafford, Earl of *Strafford*.

Edmund Holland, Earl of *Kent*.

Ralph Nevil, Earl of *Westmoreland*.

Gilbert Roos, Lord *Roos*.

Gilbert Talbot, Lord *Talbot*.

John Lovel, Lord *Lovel*.

Hugh Burnell, Lord *Burnell*.

Thomas Morley, Lord *Morley*.

Edward Charlton, Lord *Powis*.

Sir *John Cornwall*, Knight, afterwards Lord *Stanhope*.

Sir *Thomas Piercy*, Knight.

Sir *William Arundel*, Knight of the House of *Fitz-Alan*.

Sir *John Stanley*, Knight.

Sir *Robert de Umfreville*, Knight.

Sir *Thomas Ramston*, Knight.

Sir *Thomas Erpingham*, Knight.

14. HENRY V. *of* Monmouth.

HENRY is proclaimed King, being 25 years old. 1413.
Reg. 1.

His subjects offer to take the oath of allegiance to him before he was crowned, but he declines it. *Mar.* 21.

Ann. C. *April 9.* King *Henry* is crowned at *Westminster*, and grants a general pardon.

Calling before him the companions of his former riots, he exhorts them to leave off their lewd life, and dismisses them with liberal presents; but charges them not to come within 10 miles of the Court.

He chuses a Council, consisting of the wisest men in the Kingdom, and fills all places with persons of the greatest abilities and integrity.

The late King *Richard*'s body is removed, by the King's order, from *Langley* to *Westminster-Abbey*.

May 15. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King for 4 years the like subsidies of staple-ware, tunnage, and poundage, as had been granted to his Father in 1404.

In this Parliament it was enacted, That Knights of Shires, and their Electors, shall be resident within the Counties where the election shall be made.

June. *John* the Intrepid, Duke of *Burgundy*, sends an Ambassy to *England*, to propose an alliance with King *Henry*.

July. King *Henry* sends Ambassadors to *Paris*, to confirm or renew the truce, and to adjust all differences between *England* and *France*.

August. The *Orleans* faction become masters of *Paris*, and the Duke of *Burgundy* retires into *Flanders*.

Sept. 26. A truce is concluded between *England* and *France*, till *June* 1, 1414. And the *English* Ambassadors demand whatever was taken since the treaty of *Bretigny*.

The Clergy assembled in Convocation consult how to extirpate the *Lollards*, and resolve to prosecute the head of them, Sir *John Oldcastle* Baron of *Cobham*.

The King forbids the *Lollards*, by a Proclamation, to hold any meetings; and, finding *Oldcastle* immoveable in his opinions, suffers him to be prosecuted by the Bishops: Accordingly he is committed to the *Tower*, and condemned, but he escapes into *Wales*.

Septemb. *Oct. 28.*

October. Ambassadors come from *France* to *London*, in order to conclude a peace between the two Crowns, but they can only obtain a prolongation of the truce, till *Feb.* 2, 1415.

1414. *January.* Sir *Roger Acton*, and other *Lollards*, assembling in *Ficket*-field near *London*, with a traiterous intent as was surmised, the King comes privately upon them at midnight, and takes above 80 of them in armour, who are imprisoned.

— 18. Sixty-nine of them are condemned of treason; and, the next day, 37 of them are hanged in *Ficket's* field.

— 19. Shortly after some of their ring-leaders are drawn and hanged;

hanged; and Sir *Roger Acton* himself being taken is likewise executed. *Ann. C. Feb.* 10.

Thomas Arundel, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, dies, and is — 20. succeeded by *Henry Chichely*, Bishop of St. *David's*.

King *Henry* demands of the *French* Ambassadors, at *London*, whatever had been taken from *England* since the treaty of *Bretigny*; but they, waving that demand, offer him in marriage *Catherine*, youngest daughter of *Charles* VI.

After the departure of the *French* Ambassadors, King *Henry* sends five Ambassadors to *France*, to continue the Negotiation begun at *London*, concerning the restitution and marriage: And after several Conferences, they reduce their demands to the treaty of *Bretigny*, and a million of crowns for the Princess's portion. *Reg.* 2.

A Parliament meets at *Leicester*, which grants the King two tenths, and two fifteenths. *April* 30.

In this Parliament, an act was passed, enjoining Magistrates to assist the Ordinaries in extirpating *Lollardy*, and punishing *Lollards*.

And it was moreover enacted, That whoever read the Scriptures, in *English*, should forfeit land, cattle, body, life, and goods.

The Commons present an address to the King, praying him to seize the Clergy's revenues. Whereupon, the Clergy, to divert that blow, offer him the Alien Priories (being 110 in number, and amounting to 32,000 marks *per Ann.*) and also persuade him to make war upon *France*.

This Parliament is prorogued to *Westminster*, where it meets again about the middle of *November*.

Henry Percy, son of *Henry Hotspur*, is restored to the Earldom of *Northumberland*.

The *Dauphin* becomes Regent of *France*, and grants the Duke of *Burgundy* a peace.

King *Henry*, having sent to demand the Crown of *France*, the Dauphin sends him, in derision, a tun of tennis-balls; whereupon a war with *France* is resolved upon.

In order to strengthen his interest, King *Henry* has private negotiations with the Duke of *Burgundy*.

The Court of *France*, alarmed at the great preparations in *England* for war, sends 12 Ambassadors to divert the impending storm, but they can only obtain a prolongation of the truce till *July* 15. 1415 *Reg.* 3.

King *Henry* comes to *Southampton*, where he embarks his army, consisting of 6000 men at arms, 50,000 archers, besides pioneers, labourers, *&c.* *August*.

Ann. C. *Richard*, Earl of *Cambridge*, *Henry Scrope*, Lord-Treasurer, Sir *Thomas Grey*, and others, conspire to revolt against King *Henry*, and set at their head *Edmund*, Earl of *March*; but, the plot being discovered, the Conspirators are executed.

Aug. 18. King *Henry* sets sail from *Southampton*, and, landing at
— 21. *Havre-de-Grace*, marches to *Harfleur*, of which he becomes master; and, turning out the inhabitants, plants there an *English* Colony, and strongly fortifies the place.

Sept. 16. From this place, he sends a written challenge to the Dauphin, who returns no answer.

The flux, being got among the *English* troops, where it committed great ravages; and, the *French* drawing together a large army, King *Henry* resolves to retire, by land, to *Calais*.

The *French* break down the bridges and causeways, destroy or remove all provisions, and use other means to distress the *English* in their march.

King *Henry*, not being able to pass the river *Somme*, at the ford of *Blanchataque*, determines to march higher up that river, even to its source; but he meets, in his march, with grievous obstacles, and his army is reduced to great extremities.

Oct. 19. At last, he passes the *Somme*, between *St. Quintin* and *Peronne*.

— 22. The *French*, meeting King *Henry*, offer him battle, which he accepts of.

Both sides prepare for battle, the *French* army consisting of 150,000 men, and the *English* only of 9000.

Oct. 25. The battle of *Azincourt* is fought between the *French* and the *English*, wherein the *English* obtain a compleat victory; there being slain of the *French* 10,000, of whom 7 or 8000 were Noble, and above 100 of them Princes: Of the *English* were slain about 1700.

King *Henry* orders all his prisoners to be killed, mistaking a party of the *French*, who had been plundering his camp, for the rallying of the enemies.

Oct. 26. The *English* continue their march to *Calais*, during which the Duke of *Burgundy* sends a challenge to King *Henry*, who refuses to accept it.

Nov. 16. King *Henry* returns to *England*, where he is received with very great acclamations.

Lewis, Dauphin of *France*, is poisoned.

The *Orleans* and *Burgundian* Factions treat with King *Henry*,

Henry, and earnestly seek his Alliance: But the King aims chiefly at getting the Duke of *Burgundy* on his side. *Ann. C.* 1416.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, wherein clipping, washing, or filing money, was made treason. *Reg.* 4. *Mar.* 16.

John, Dauphin of *France*, is poisoned. *April* 16.

The Emperor, *Sigismund*, comes to *England*, and concludes a perpetual alliance with King *Henry*, and a league against *France*. *April* 29. *August.*

A three years truce is agreed upon between *England* and *France*, but the *French* fall off from it.

The *French* lay siege to *Harfleur*, but, their fleet, that lay before that place, being defeated by *John*, Duke of *Bedford*, they are forced to raise the siege. *July.* *August.*

After several negotiations, the Duke of *Burgundy*, finding himself and his party severely persecuted by the Court of *France*, he concludes a truce with King *Henry*, and engages to acknowledge him King of *France*, and do him Liege-homage.

King *Henry* goes to *Calais*, where the Duke of *Burgundy* repairs to him; and a league, offensive and defensive, is secretly concluded between these two Princes. *Sept.* 4. *October.*

A truce is also concluded between *England* and *France*, from *Octob.* 9, till the 2d of *February* following. *Oct.* 3.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, wherein the Commons grant two whole tenths, and two fifteenths, to be levied on the Laity; and the Clergy two tenths, to be raised from their own body. But, this aid not being proportionable to the King's wants, he is forced to pawn his Crown to his Uncle, the Bishop of *Winchester*, for 100,000 marks, and part of his jewels to the City of *London* for 10,000 *l.* *Oct.* 19.

King *Henry* resolves to renew the war with *France*, and raises an army for that purpose.

The Court of *France*, alarmed at his great preparations, endeavours to amuse him by some sham proposals made to him, by the Duke of *Orleans*, and others of his prisoners; but he was too wary to be imposed upon.

The Earl of *Armagnac*, Constable of *France*, causes *Isabella* of *Bavaria*, Queen of *France*, to be sent away to *Tours*, and kept there as a prisoner, for fear she should deprive him of his authority. 1417. *Reg.* 5.

Incensed at this violence, the Duke of *Burgundy* takes up arms, publishes a manifesto, and approaches *Paris*, in order to make a diversion in favour of his Ally, King *Henry*.

King *Henry*, improving this juncture, sails to *Normandy*, *July* 27.

Ann. C. with an army of 25,500 men, and makes himself master
August. of *Touque*, *Dambilliers*, *Caen*, *Bayeux*, *Argentan*, *Alençon*, &c.
Septemb. 1.

Queen *Isabella* joins with the Duke of *Burgundy*, who carries her away to *Troyes*; and there she assumes the title of Regent.

The *Scots*, sollicited thereunto by the *French*, invade *England*, with a numerous army.

Nov. 16. A year's truce is concluded between *England* and *Bretagne*.

Nov. 16. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King a tenth, and a fifteenth. The Clergy gave then two tenths.

Joanna of *Navarre*, widow of King *Henry* IV, is accused of conspiring against the King, and imprisoned.

Falaise is taken by the *English*.

Dec. 25. Sir *John Oldcastle*, Lord *Cobham*, being apprehended in *Wales* by the Lord *Powis*, is brought up to *London*, where he is hung up by the middle with a chain, and burnt alive.

1418. King *Henry* carries on his conquests in *France*, and, di-
February. viding his army into several bodies, makes himself master of
Decemb. *St. Lo*, *Carentan*, *Evreux*, *Cherbourg*, *Roan*, &c.
Rg. 6.

Pope *Martin* V. tries to unite the *Burgundian* and *Orleans* Faction, but the agreement is broken by the Earl of *Armagnac*.

May 18. The *Burgundians* become masters of *Paris*, and murder the *Armagnacs*; the Earl himself, being taken, is massacred, and dragged through the streets.

July 14. Queen *Isabella*, and the Duke of *Burgundy*, enter *Paris*, in triumph, and govern in the King's name: On the other hand, the Dauphin, assuming the title of Regent, threatens all that should obey the Duke of *Burgundy*.

The new Earl of *Armagnac*, and other *Gascon* Lords, having raised war in *Guienne*, King *Henry* makes a truce
July 27. with them.

The Dauphin offers to make an Alliance with King
Nov. 10. *Henry*, in order to divert him from the siege of *Rouen*; accordingly, a Congress is held at *Alençon*, and another at
Decemb. *Pont-de-l'Arche*, but without any effect.

1419. The Clergy grant the King half a tenth.

Jan. 13. *Roan* surrenders to King *Henry*; and so, by the reduction
Jan. 19. of that, and a few other places, he becomes master of all *Normandy*, 215 years after it had been severed from the Crown of *England*, in King *John*'s Reign.

February. A Conference is held at *Louviers* between King *Henry*'s and

and the *Dauphin*'s Ambassadors, about an interview between *Ann. C.*
those two Princes; but nothing is concluded, by reason of the Dauphin's taking other measures; however, King *Henry* grants the Dauphin a truce from *Febr.* 12, till *Easter*. *Reg.* 7.

The Duke of *Burgundy* endeavours to be reconciled to the Dauphin, but the Dauphin refuses that good offer, notwithstanding all the persuasions of his friends.

Hereupon, the Duke of *Burgundy* proposes a peace to King *Henry*; who accepting of the proposal, a Conference *May* 29.
is held at *Meulant* between the *English* and *French* Courts; *June* 30.
but nothing could be agreed upon.

And this was owing to the Duke of *Burgundy*, who being, during the Conference, reconciled to the Dauphin, embraces *July* 11,
his interest, and relinquishes that of *England*. — 29.

King *Henry* takes *Pontoise* by storm, where he finds a — 28.
very rich booty.

The *Castilians* and *Arragonians* declare for the Dauphin, and, fitting out a fleet, come and ravage the Country about *Bayonne*.

Charles the Dauphin, causes *John the Intrepid*, Duke of *Aug.* 18.
Burgundy, to be murdered on the bridge of *Montereau Faut-Yonne*, whilst he was conferring with him.

His son *Philip*, transported with a desire of revenge, makes a League with Queen *Isabella*, and King *Henry*, against the Dauphin, and his Adherents.

The *English* making continual inroads to the very gates of *Paris*, the *Parisians* apply to King *Henry*, who grants them a truce from *Novemb.* 20, to *Decemb.* 4.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the *Oct.* 16.
King a fifteenth and a half, and one tenth and a half.

King *Henry*, finding himself courted by Queen *Isabella*, and the new Duke of *Burgundy*, resumes his pretensions to the Crown. Accordingly, preliminary articles are signed, wherein it was agreed, That, after the death of King *Charles*, the Crown of *France* should descend to King *Henry* and his heirs; and that he should be Regent of the Kingdom, during the life of King *Charles*.

These articles are approved by the Duke of *Burgundy*; *Dec.* 2.
and a general truce is published from *Decemb.* 24, to the 1st of *March* next: After which, a private treaty of Alliance is signed between King *Henry* and the Duke of *Burgundy*.

The Ambassadors of the two Crowns are employed in 1420.
drawing up the treaty at *Troye*, during which time, the *Reg.* 8.
truce is frequently prolonged.

King

Ann. C. King *Charles* confirms all the preliminary articles by his
April 9. letters patents.

April 18. King *Henry* orders new money to be coined in *Normandy*, on which he takes the title of King of *France*.

May 20. He comes to *Troye* in *Champagne*, where, on the next
— 21. day, the treaty of *Troye* is signed; and being affianced, at the same time, to the Princess *Catharine*, the marriage is
— 30. solemnized between them, on *May* 30, and consummated
June 2. *June* 2.

The Parliament of *Scotland* sends 7000 men in *France*, to the Dauphin's assistance, commanded by *John* Earl of *Buchan*.

June. The *English* make themselves masters of *Sens*, *Montereau*,
July. and *Melun*; the last of which places holds out from the mid-
Novemb. dle of *July* to the middle of *November*.

After the surrender of *Melun*, the *English* and *French* Courts return to *Paris*, where the two Kings make their entry together, and the Queen the next day.

Dec. 6. The States-General of *France* meet at *Paris*, and confirm the peace of *Troye*.

— 23. The Duke of *Burgundy* demanding justice against his father's murderers, sentence is pronounced against them, and particularly against the Dauphin, who appeals to God and his sword from that sentence; and assuming the title of Regent, removes the Parliament and University of *Paris* to *Poictiers*.

1421. The houses of *Armagnoc* and *Albert* do homage to King
Jan. 16. *Henry*; who grants them a pardon, upon their renouncing the appeal made by their ancestors, in the Reign of *Edward* III, to the Court of the Peers of *France*.

King *Henry* having settled his affairs in *France*, and left the command of his troops to his brother the Duke of *Clarence*, returns to *England*, with his new Queen, who is
Feb. 2. crowned at *Westminster*.
— 14.

Feb. 9. The King takes a progress through several parts of the Kingdom, with his Queen, and reforms a great many abuses.

April 3. The *English* are defeated at *Baugé in Anjou*, by a body of *Scots*, and the Duke of *Clarence* slain.

May 2. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which confirms the peace of *Troye*, and grants the King a fifteenth; as the Clergy doth a tenth. But the Commons present a stinging petition, concerning the expences of the war with *France*.

There was a Parliament held the year foregoing, which met at *Westminster*, *December* 2.

James

James I, King of *Scotland*, is released by King *Henry*, and permitted to return into his Kingdom, after a 15 years captivity. *Ann. C.*

King *Henry* returns to *France*, with a new army of 4000 men at arms, and 24,000 archers, with part of which he takes several places, and relieves others, besieged by the Dauphin; and marches himself, with the rest, to *Paris*. *June* 10.

The Dauphin besieging *Chartres*, King *Henry* marches against him; but not being able to overtake him, he makes himself master of *Dreux*; and then his army being seized with the flux, he sends it into summer-quarters, and goes and refreshes himself at *Paris*. *August.* — 20.

He re-assembles it again, in order to besiege *Meaux*, the Castle of which place was not taken till the *May* following. *October.*

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King a fifteenth; as the Clergy had done a tenth, before, in *September*. *Dec.* 1.

Prince *Henry*, afterwards King by the name of King *Henry* VI, was born at *Windsor*. *Dec.* 6.

Queen *Catharine* goes to *France*; and the two Courts keep the *Whitsun* holy-days at *Paris*, with great magnificence. 1422. *Reg.* 10.

The Dauphin, in the mean time, takes *la Charité*, and lays siege to *Cosne*; but the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Bedford*, joining their forces, raise the siege. *April.* *May.* *June.*

King *Henry* intending to go and head his army, is taken ill, and forced to retire to *Vincennes*. *August.* *Aug.* 31.

Here he dies of a pleurisy, in the 34th year of his age, after a Reign of 9 years, 5 months, and 11 days:

And was buried in *Westminster-Abbey*.

The Character *of* HENRY V.

If, to know this Monarch's Character, we follow, without examination, the praises bestowed on him by the Authors of his Nation, we must imagine him the most accomplished Prince that ever appeared in the World before him. Not an *English* Historian ascribes to him the least defect, but all unanimously speak of him as a perfect Heroe. On the other hand, the *French* have endeavoured to shade his Portraiture with certain strokes, that sully the lustre. It will be necessary therefore, in order to form a just idea of him, to consider his actions with their circumstances, independently of the admiration of the one, and the envy of the other. Walsing.

In

In the first place, with respect to the government of his own Kingdom, he ought not to be denied his due praise; for, avoiding to tread in the steps of *Richard* II, and even of his own Father, he constantly forbore to incroach on the liberties and privileges of the people. His readiness at all times to give the Royal assent to such acts, as the Parliament judged necessary for the welfare of the Kingdom, was a clear evidence of his regard for the good and happiness of his people. Nevertheless, in this very thing he was guilty of excess, since, contrary to his own inclination, and the dictates of his reason, he consented to the persecution of the *Lollards*, out of pure condescension to the Clergy. Indeed, it was almost impossible, that, being endued with an excellent judgment, he should not perceive the groundlessness of the accusations against them, in the beginning of his Reign: And yet, rather than publicly retract, he still feigned to believe it true, at the very time when he pardoned some condemned persons, who persisted in a denial of the pretended crime.

But it is not chiefly for what he acted in *England*, that Historians have been so lavish of their praises; his warlike exploits are the principal subject of his Panegyric: And yet, to speak without aggravation, he was, perhaps, in no respect less remarkable, notwithstanding the glorious success that attended his arms. The conquest of *France*, considered in itself, has something grand and marvellous. But the description of the affairs of that Kingdom, renders it, doubtless, not so wonderful, as it appears, when abstracted from all its circumstances. *Lewis* VIII, Father of St. *Lewis*, conquered *England* in a like juncture, and yet no one ever thought solely to ascribe the conquest to his wisdom or valour. *Henry* projected his enterprize, at a time when the civil dissensions of the *French* rendered them unable to defend themselves. The towns he took, were defended only by the besieged themselves, without any army ever appearing to relieve them. However, some of these places stopped him several months, and were surrendered only by famine.

The battle of *Azincourt* is then the great, and almost sole warlike exploit, which can justly afford matter for panegyric. In this famous action, he gave proofs of an uncommon conduct, resolution, and bravery. But this very battle, the success whereof was so glorious, gives likewise occasion to tax him with imprudence. It may be said, that, if he was victorious, it was, because he had reduced

reduced himself to an absolute necessity, of vanquishing, or dying; to which a General never exposes himself, whatever the event may be, without causing his conduct to be severely censured. His undertaking to retire to *Calais*, without foreseeing the difficulties of the march, and without being secure of a passage over the *Somme*; his wilfulness in resolving to pass that river, in order to force his way though an army, so superior in number to his own, seem excusable, only by the success of the battle of *Azincourt*, which was a sort of miracle. Had he been vanquished, as he should naturally have been, he would have been infallibly charged with indiscretion or rashness. The necessity he was reduced to, during his march, if we may believe the *French* Historians, of offering to restore *Harfleur*, and repair the damages he had caused to *France*, shews, how much he himself was convinced of his error. This battle therefore was more glorious for him, on account of his personal valour, than with regard to his military capacity. It must be confessed, never did Prince expose himself more in a battle, and give more signal proofs of true valour, than did *Henry* in that action.

As for his other conquests in *France*, I do not know, (says *Rapin*) whether his greatest admirers have reason to wish he had met with more opposition. What might have happened in that case, is beyond human knowledge. It cannot however be denied, that the victory of *Azincourt* prepossesses us in his favour. But what may be extolled in him, without danger of being deceived, is the excellency of his genius, and the solidity of his judgment. He knew how to manage the great undertaking he had formed, with wonderful address, wisely improving the several Revolutions in *France*, and making them all turn to his advantage. Few Princes would have stopped, like him, after so glorious a victory as that of *Azincourt*, and preferred a repose, which, though seemingly less glorious than the continuation of the war, was in reality to him more advantagious. This policy, in my opinion, is one of the brightest passages of his life, and best shews the soundness of his judgment. His negotiations with the Dauphin, and the Duke of *Burgundy*, at the same time, and his instructions to the Ambassadors, are plain indications of his abilities, and how difficult it was to deceive him.

It is not very strange, that the prosperous success of his undertakings, should gain him extraordinary praises from the Nation, especially, as it cannot be denied, that,

this ſucceſs was no leſs owing to his prudent conduct, than to favourable junctures. In general, he forced the *French* to own him for Regent and Heir of their Kingdom. And this is one of thoſe actions, which ſeldom fail of being praiſed beyond meaſure. Accordingly, Hiſtorians have not been ſatisfied with comparing him to *David*, *Alexander*, and *Cæſar*, but have ranked him above theſe great men. But however, without going ſo far for compariſons, which, after all, ſeem not very juſt, methinks he might, with more reaſon, be put in parallel with *Edward* III, his Great Grandfather. However, I ſhould hardly ſcruple to give the preference to *Edward*. *Edward* had to deal with all *France* united againſt him, and the difficulties he encountered in his conquſts, were incomparably greater, and required an abler head to ſurmount them, than thoſe which oppoſed the progreſs of *Henry* V.

What I have been ſaying of this Prince, properly relates only to his principal action, namely, his war with *France*. I ſhall now deſcribe his other qualifications; which, though not ſo glaring, are no leſs worthy of admiration, than the glorious ſucceſſes, which have almoſt wholly engroſſed the attention of the public. It is certain, he had all the endowments of body and mind requiſite to form a great man. His ſtature was tall and majeſtic, though a little too ſlender, and long-necked. His hair was black, and his eyes, of the ſame colour, were exceeding lively. He was ſtrong and robuſt, very expert in all bodily exerciſes, chaſte, temperate, at leaſt after he came to the Crown, inured to hardſhips, and patient of hunger and thirſt, heat and cold. In all this he was a ſtanding example to his troops, of moderation and conſtancy. He was a great lover of juſtice, following it himſelf, and cauſing it to be punctually obſerved. Religious, without diſguiſe; perſevering in piety, and conſtant in his private, as well as public devotions; a great Protector of the Church and Clergy; he won by theſe qualities, the eſteem and affection of the Eccleſiaſtics, who did not a little contribute to heighten the luſtre of his glory. He was prudent in Council, bold in undertaking, and reſolute in executing. As for his valour, he gave continual proofs of it through the whole courſe of his life. There is another thing likewiſe, for which he ought to be praiſed. He cauſed military diſcipline to re-flouriſh, which was almoſt entirely neglected

in

in *England*, since the Reign of *Edward* III. Never did the *English* Nation shine with such lustre, as under this renowned Prince. To this may be added, he was so fortunate, as to end his days in the midst of his prosperity, and not see, with *Edward* III, the fruits of all his labours destroyed.

Having related what is said by the *English*, to this Prince's advantage, the faithfulness of an Historian requires, that some failings, cast upon him by the *French*, and aggravated perhaps by malice and envy, are not passed over in silence. In the first place, they tax him with cruelty, and making war in a barbarous manner. They ground this charge, not only upon the slaughter of the prisoners at the battle of *Azincourt*, but also upon his putting to death several officers, after the taking of *Caen*, *Melun*, and *Meaux*. But as to the prisoners of *Azincourt*, there is no doubt, but the maxims of war, and the necessity of providing for his own safety, will justify his orders upon that account, supposing they were not too hasty. As for his treatment of the Burghers and Garrisons of the conquered places, I confess, it is not impossible, but he might be something swayed by revenge, by reason of the time these brave men made him lose; but this can only be said by conjecture. That he used severity towards some is certain, but his motives are unknown. To discuss such facts, more circumstances are required, than are come to our knowledge. However, with regard to those of *Meaux*, they are known to have incurred the guilt of several murders, for which, doubtless, they deserved to be punished. It was neither unjust nor barbarous, to hang the *Bastard of Vaurus*, on the same tree, whereon he himself had hanged all the Duke of *Burgundy*'s Adherents, that fell into his hands. For the other three, executed at the same time, I know not the reason; but it is to be presumed, they were not capriciously chosen from all the rest of the garrison, to be instances of the severity of the Conquerors. As for the *English* and *Irish*, who were in the service of his enemies, their being excepted in the capitulation, needs no apology. It were to be wished, for *Henry*'s Reputation, that he could be as easily justified, in refusing to give quarter to the *Scots*, on pretence, they would not obey their King, who was actually his prisoner.

The *French* accuse moreover this Prince of excessive pride, even to the causing, as they assure us, the Marshal *de l'Isle-Adam* to be committed to the *Bastile*, for daring Monstrelet. P. de Fenin.

Ann. C. to look in his face when speaking to him. It is true, if he had no other reason, this was a high strain of haughtiness, and rigour. But can it be denied, that a look, a bare gesture, may be sometimes very offensive? And who knows but the Marshal, as he spoke, used some aggravating circumstance, or rash expression, which rendered him worthy of chastisement, and which has been industriously concealed, to make the King's action appear the more odious?

Avarice is another failing, wherewith he is confidently reproached. It is pretended, that after he was declared Regent and Heir of *France*, he was never bountiful, either to any of the *Burgundian* party, who had served him, or to those of the Dauphin's, who voluntarily submitted to him. I shall not undertake to clear him from this charge, as it does not appear that he was very liberal to the *English* themselves, who served him, whether by reason of his great expence, or, because he was otherwise inclined. Though he had many good Officers, and excellent Generals, we do not find, that he rewarded them according to their merit and services. We must however, except the Earl of *Dorset*, to whom he assigned a pension of a thousand pounds a year, when he created him Earl of *Exeter*; *Fastolff*, to whom he gave a considerable estate near *Harfleur*; the Captal of *Buch*, of the House of *Foix*, who had the Lordship of *Longueville*; and the Earl of *Salisbury*, to whom he gave the Earldom of *Perche*. But after all, very possibly, *Henry*'s want of liberality was the effect of his prudence. I have observed, that the revenue of the Crown amounted but to fifty-six thousand pounds, and that he was forced to pawn his jewels, to supply what the sums, granted him by Parliament, wanted to defray the charges of the war. Was it proper to appear liberal in such circumstances? Upon many occasions, it were to be wished, Sovereigns would moderate their bounties, which are, but too often, at the expence of the poor people.

Act. Pub. IX. p. 329. p. 765. p. 739.

Lastly, An unbounded ambition is a failing, which the *French* think may justly be laid to his charge. To know whether this accusation be well-grounded, it should be examined, whether he was in the right to renew, or rather to continue, a war against *France*, occasioned by her breach of the treaty of *Bretigny*, and begun by herself. But this enquiry would be needless, after what has been said upon this subject in the Reign of *Edward* III, to which recourse may be had. However it cannot be denied, that *Henry* was

The CHAPPEL of K. HENRY V. in Westminster Abbey

The Monument of K. HENRY V. in Westminster Abbey.

The Monument of K. HENRY V, in Westminster Abbey.

was very ambitious. His first project was only to restore the peace of *Bretigny*. But when he saw a possibility of mounting the Throne of *France*, his ambition carried him beyond the bounds prescribed by himself in the beginning of the war. I have taken notice of his intent, to make one of his brothers King of *Naples*, and the other of *Sicily*, and of his using, certainly no very honorable means to procure the Duke of *Glocester* four Provinces of the *Low-Countries*. We find in the *Collection of the public acts*, he had a design to purchase the Duchy of *Luxemburgh* of the Emperor *Sigismund*, and to treat with him concerning his pretended claim to *Dauphiné*. In fine, it farther appears, he would have paid the ransom of a Lord of the House of *Blois*, prisoner to the Marquis of *Baden*, probably to assert one day the pretensions of that House to the Duchy of *Bretagne*. Act. Pub. X. p. 143, 144, 145.

By his Queen *Catharine*, daughter of *Charles* VI. King of *France*, King *Henry* left only one son, who succeeded him by the name of *Henry* VI.

A Description of the Monument *of* HENRY V.

He is interred in the abbey of Westminster, at the feet of EDWARD the Confessor in a small chapel, much improved, and beautified with several statues by HENRY VII.

In the inside upon his tomb erected by CATHERINE of Valois his widow lay his statue of silver gilt. The head of that image in the reign of HENRY VIII, with the plates of silver covering his trunk made of oak, and his regalia, were stolen away. His effigies, as in the print of his monument, was taken from an original painting formerly in the royal palace at Whitehall. The epitaph, which was defaced at the time his tomb was robbed, was only two wretched monkish verses:

Dux Normannorum, Verus Conquestor eorum,
Heres Francorum decessit, & Rector eorum.

In English:

Duke of the Normans, their true Conqueror,
Died heir of the Franks, and also their Rector.

An Account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

In the 9th of *Henry* V, a pound weight of gold, of the old ſtandard, was to make by tale fifty Nobles, or a hundred half Nobles, or two hundred quarter Nobles, amounting to ſixteen pounds, thirteen ſhillings and four-pence in tale. And a pound weight of the ſame old ſtandard, was to make by tale, ninety groſſes or groats, or a hundred and eighty half groats, or three hundred and ſixty ſterlings, or ſeven hundred and twenty mailes, or fourteen hundred and forty farthings, amounting to thirty ſhillings. *Bartholomew Goldbeater* was Maſter and Worker. This King's Roſe-Noble is inſcribed, HENRIC. DI. GRA. REX. ANGL. ET FRANC. DNS. HIB. the King ſtanding in a ſhip, holding in his right-hand a ſword, in the left a ſhield, with the arms of *France* and *England*, the Flower-de-lis being ſtrictly three; he being the firſt that bore them ſo. Reverſe, IHC. AVTEM. TRANSIENS. PER MEDIVM IL. LORV. IBAT. a croſs Fleuri, with four Fleurs-de-lis, and

as many Lions paſſant; each under a Crown above, and three pellets below; within the center of the croſs, in a Roſe the letter H, the whole within a large Roſe. *Evelin*'s deſcription of his Roſe-Noble, belongs to his Son's Angel. There was alſo gold money ſtamped at *Paris*, and in *Normandy*, by *Henry* V. called *Saluti*, bearing the Angel's Salutation of the Bleſſed Virgin (the one holding the arms of *England*, the other of *France*) with the King's title; and, on the reverſe, CHRISTVS VINCIT. CHRISTVS SIGNAT. CHRISTVS IMPERAT. which we find very little altered, upon ſome of the earlieſt Piſtols of *Lewis* XIV. The Legend indeed belongs to *France*, and *Du Freſne* reckons the *Salut* amongſt the proper coins of that Country. The King's gold coins were ſo debaſed, that it was

neceſſary

necessary to order, that they should be recoined at the *Tower gratis*. His silver money was mostly (as the statute directed) coined at *Paris*, though some of his pieces have CIVITAS LONDON, in the inner circle of the reverse. His silver coins are supposed to be distinguished (chiefly) from those of *Henry* IV, by two little circles, or eyelet holes, deeply impressed below the face, on each side the neck, which are answered by two more, in the middle of two triangles or globules in the quarters of the cross, on the reverse. See the *fig.* There was also white money coined by this King in *France*, after the victory of *Azincourt*; his stile being then REX. ANGLIÆ ET HÆRES FRANCIÆ. These Blanks, says Sir *Edward Coke*, were valued at eight-pence, and because of their baseness, were deemed *Gally-half-pence*, *Suskyn* and *Dotkyn*, and prohibited by act of Parliament. *Coke's Inst.* l. 3. c. 30. p. 92.

The NOBILITY, created by this King, was as follows: *Ann. C.*

Humphrey Plantagenet, Earl of *Pembroke*, and Duke of *Gloucester*. *April* 30. 1414.

John Plantagenet, Earl of *Kendal*, *Richmond*, and *Carlisle*; and Duke of *Bedford*. *May* 6. 1414.

Thomas Beaufort, Duke of *Exeter*. *Nov.* 18. 1416.

Richard Beauchamp (Earl of *Warwick*) Earl of *Albemarle*. 1417.

John Grey (Baron *Grey* of *Powis*) Earl of *Tankerville*. *Jan.* 31. 1417.

William Bourchier, Earl of *Ewe*. 1418.

Gaston de Foix, Earl of *Longueville*. *July* 5. 1419.

Richard Beauchamp, Earl of *Worcester*. 1420.

Knights of the Garter elected in the Reign of King HENRY V.

Sir *John Daubrichcourt*, Knight.
Richard Vere. Earl of *Oxford*.
Thomas Camois, Lord *Camois*.
Sir *Simon Felbryge*, Knight.
Sir *William Harmington*, Knight.
John Holland, Earl of *Huntingdon*.
Sigismund, Emperor of *Germany*.
The Duke of *Holland*.
——— Duke of *Brigg*.

Ann. C. Sir *John Blount*, Knight.
Sir *John Robbessart*, Knight.
Sir *William Phelip*, afterwards Lord *Bardolph*.
John, King of *Portugal*.
Eric, King of *Denmark*.
Richard Beauchamp, Earl of *Warwick*, afterwards Lieutenant-General, and Governor in *France* and *Normandy*.
Thomas Montacute, Earl of *Salisbury*.
Robert Willoughby, Lord *Willoughby*.
Henry Fitz-Hugh, Lord *Fitz-Hugh*.
Sir *John Grey*, Knight, Earl of *Tankerville*.
Hugh Strafford, Lord *Bourchier*.
John Mowbray, Earl-Marshal.
William de la Pole, Earl of *Suffolk*, afterwards Marquis and Duke of *Suffolk*.
John Clifford, Lord *Clifford*.
Sir *Lewis Robbessart*, Knight, afterwards Lord *Bourchier*.
The *Heer*, or Sir *Henry Van Clux*, a *German* Lord, Captain of *Creuilly* in *Normandy*, 7 *Henry* V.
Sir *Walter Hungerford*, afterwards Lord *Hungerford*, and Lord Treasurer of *England*.
Philip le Bon, Duke of *Burgundy*.

BOOK XII.

Containing the Reign of HENRY VI. *Being the space of* 38 *years, and a half.*

15. HENRY VI.

1422. *Reg.* 1. *Septemb.* HENRY VI. is proclaimed King of *England*, and Heir of *France*, being but nine months old.

John, Duke of *Bedford*, is appointed Regent of *France*, and *Humphrey*, Duke of *Gloucester*, Protector of *England*.

The *Welsh* begin to raise some disturbance on the borders, but they are soon appeased.

Oct. 21. *Charles* VI, King of *France*, dies; whereupon King *Henry* VI. is proclaimed King of *France*, at *Paris*, and the *French* Lords swear allegiance to him. At the same time, *John*, Duke of *Bedford*, takes the title of Regent of *France*.

Deputies are sent from *France* to congratulate the young King upon his accession to the throne; and, in their way, they

Vertue Sculp

they exhort the Duke of *Burgundy* to remain firm to his Alliance with *England*. *Ann. C.*

At the same time, *Charles*, the Dauphin, takes the title of King of *France*, and is crowned at *Poitiers*.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King the subsidy of staple-ware, tunnage, and poundage, for two years; particularly, five nobles of every sack of wool exported for three years. *Nov. 9.*

John, Duke of *Bedford*, is nominated, by Parliament, Protector of *England*, when there; and, in his absence, *Humphrey*, Duke of *Gloucester*, who is also made Chamberlain, and High-Constable: And *Thomas*, Duke of *Exeter*, and *Henry*, Bishop of *Winchester*, are appointed Governors to the King.

The *English* take St. *Valery*, the Duke of *Burgundy*'s General, *Bussi*; and the *French*, *La Rue*, and *La Hire*.

The *French* make themselves masters also of *Meulan*, and *La Ferté-Milon*, but they are both retaken by the *English*. 1423. *Jan. 4. &c.*

A League and Alliance is concluded between the King of *England*, the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Bretagne*, and the Earl of *Richemont*: And a marriage is agreed upon between the Duke of *Burgundy*'s eldest sister, widow of *Lewis*, the Dauphin, and the Earl of *Richemont*; and between *Ann*, the same Duke's fifth sister, and *John*, Duke of *Bedford*. *April 8.*

Thomas Montacute, Earl of *Salisbury*, is appointed Governor of *Champagne* and *La Brie*, with orders to clear those two Provinces of King *Charles*'s garrisons; accordingly, he takes *Montaigu*, *Crevant*, *Cuey*, and other places.

The *French* endeavour to raise the siege of *Montaigu*, and besiege *Crevant*; but they are defeated, at *Crevant*, by the *English*, and *Xaintrailles*, with most of their best officers, are taken prisoners.

Xaintrailles, being released by King *Charles*, surprizes *Ham* and *Guise*, as *Vignoles* does *Compiegne*; but they are all retaken by the *English*.— And, in the mean time, the Duke of *Bedford* takes *Orsay*.

Edmund Mortimer, Earl of *March*, is made Governor of *Ireland*. *May 9.*

King *Charles* receives an aid of 1000 men at arms, and 500 lances from the Duke of *Milan*; and of 5000 men from *Scotland*, commanded by *Archibald*, Earl of *Douglas*. In reward of which service, the said King creates *Douglas* Duke of *Touraine*, *Robert Steuart*, another of their officers, Baron *d'Aubigny*; and chuses a company of *Scots* Guards.

Ann. C. *Toulongeon*, Marshal of *Burgundy*, is taken prisoner by the *French*, who also defeat the *English* at the battle of *Gravelle*.

July 4. *Lewis*, son of King *Charles* VII, is born.

Reg. 2. The haughty Earl of *Richemont*, not obtaining the command of the *English* army, which he mightily desired, quarrels with the Duke of *Bedford*.

A truce for *Burgundy* and *Lionnois* is concluded between King *Charles* and the Duke of *Burgundy*.

Oct. 20. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King the duties of staple-ware, and tunnage (*viz.* 3 *s.* on every tun of wine) and poundage (1 *s.* in the pound of all merchandizes) for three years.

Septemb. After several Negotiations, *James* I, King of *Scotland*, is
Decemb. set at liberty, upon engaging to pay 40,000 *l.* and to marry *Joanna*, sister to the Earl of *Somerset*.

1424. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the
Apr. 30. King the subsidy of wools for three years, and tunnage and poundage for one year.

May. A seven years truce is concluded between *England* and *Scotland*.

May. The *Burgundians* surprize *La Charité*, and the *French*
Aug. take *Beaumont*, *Ivry*, and *Verneuil*; but the *English* retake
Aug. 16. those places, and defeat the *French* at the battle of *Verneuil*,
Reg. 3. where 9700 of the last were slain.

The Earl of *Salisbury* conquers all *Maine*.

The success of the *English* arms is stopped by an unhappy quarrel between the Dukes of *Gloucester* and *Brabant*, wherein the Duke of *Burgundy* was engaged: For the Duke of *Gloucester* having married, in 1422, *Jaquelina*, Countess of *Hainault*, that had been divorced from her
October. second husband, *John*, Duke of *Brabant*, comes over with 5000 men, and dispossessing the Duke of *Brabant* of *Hainault*, makes himself master of it; which the Duke of *Burgundy* takes very ill.

Edmund Mortimer, Earl of *March*, dies without issue, and is succeeded in his title, and in his right to the Crown of *England*, by his nephew *Richard Plantagenet*, Duke of *York*, son of his sister *Ann*.

1425. The affairs of King *Charles* are in a miserable condition, by his defeats at *Crevant* and *Verneuil*; by the treaties between the King of *England*, the King of *Scotland*, and the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Bretagne*, &c. but the difference between the Dukes of *Gloucester* and *Burgundy* is of great advantage to him.

The

The Duke of *Burgundy* makes preparations for dispossessing the Duke of *Gloucester* of *Hainault*. They give each other the lie, and challenge one another. *Ann. C.* *January.* *Reg.* 4.

A truce being concluded between the Dukes of *Brabant* and *Gloucester*, the latter returns to *England*. *October.*

King *Charles* gains to his side the Earl of *Richemont*, by making him Constable; and, by his means, gains also his brother the Duke of *Bretagne*, who does homage to him; and concludes a treaty with him on *October* 7. *March.* *October.*

A great quarrel arising between the Duke of *Gloucester* and *Henry Beaufort*, Bishop of *Winchester*, the Duke of *Bedford* comes over to *England* to put a stop to it, leaving the command of the *English* army in *France* to *Richard de Beauchamp*, Earl of *Warwick*. *Dec.* 20.

England proclaims war against *Bretagne*, and endeavours to raise commotions in that Duchy, in order to hinder the inhabitants from assisting the *French*. 1426. *Jan.* 15.

A Parliament meets at *Leicester*, which continues the subsidy of wool (*viz.* 43 *s.* and 4 *d.* on every sack, of Strangers, and 33 *s.* and 4 *d.* of Denizens) and tunnage and poundage, for two years. *Feb.* 18.

In this Parliament, articles are exhibited against the Bishop of *Winchester*, by the Duke of *Gloucester*; but, after a full hearing, the Bishop is acquitted, and the Parliament obliges the two contending parties to be reconciled.

The Great Seal is taken from the Bishop of *Winchester*; and, for fear he should raise any disturbance, the Duke of *Bedford* carries him to *France* along with him.

John Mowbray, Earl Marshal, is restored to the title of Duke of *Norfolk*, of which his father *Thomas* had been deprived by King *Richard* II. *May* 4.

In the mean time, the Constable *Richemont* raising an army in *Bretagne*, takes *Pontorson*, and besieges *Beuvron*; but being forced to raise the siege, he goes and takes *La Flèche* and *Galerand* in *Anjou*.

The Earl of *Warwick* enters *Maine* with a body of 5,000 men, and retakes several Castles that had been seized by the *Bretons*; but blocking up *Montargis*, he is defeated there by the Bastard of *Orleans*, with the loss of fifteen hundred men.

Jaquelina is delivered up to the Duke of *Burgundy*; and all *Hainault* unanimously receives the Duke of *Brabant* for Sovereign. But *Jaquelina* escaping into *Holland*, the Duke of *Burgundy* carries the war into that Country, which lasted till 1428. *June* 13. *Reg.* 5. *Septemb.*

Ann. D. 1427. *Thomas Beaufort*, Duke of *Exeter*, dies, and is succeeded, in his office of one of the Governors to the King, by *Thomas de Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*.

Feb. 5. The Duke of *Bedford* returns to *France*, carrying a considerable reinforcement along with him; together with the Bishop of *Winchester*, who receives a Cardinal's cap at *Calais*, and is, soon after, made the Pope's Legate in *England*.

William de la Pole, Earl of *Suffolk*, is surprized in *Mans* by the *French*, and forced to retire into the Castle, but he is relieved by *John* Lord *Talbot*; and they two joining together, go and take *Laval*. After which they lay siege to *Pontorson*.

June.

Reg. 6. In the mean time, the Duke of *Bedford* prepares to enter *Bretagne* with an army of 20,000 men; but the Duke of *Bretagne* sues for peace, which is granted him, upon his swearing to the treaty of *Troye*, and causing his *States* to do the same; and he remains, ever after, a friend to the *English*.

Sept. 8.

Oct. 13. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King tunnage and poundage; and 6 *s.* and 8 *d.* of every parish in the Kingdom, and of every person that held immediately by a Knight's-fee.

The Duke of *Glouceſter* sends a reinforcement of *English* to his Duchess *Jaquelina*, but they are defeated by the Duke of *Burgundy*; and, soon after, *Jaquelina*'s marriage with the Duke of *Glouceſter* being annulled by the Pope, he marries his old mistress, *Eleanor*, daughter of *Reginald* Lord *Cobham*.

1428.

King *Charles* negotiates a marriage between the Dauphin his son, and *Margaret* daughter of *James* I. King of *Scotland*, in order to obtain succours from him, his affairs being then in a desperate condition.

The Duke of *Bedford* resolving to exert himself upon this occasion, but not having wherewithal to maintain a large army, holds an Assembly at *Paris*, to whom he proposes, The revoking all the grants made to the Church for 40 years past; which proposal he is forced to desist from.

June. The Earl of *Warwick* being recalled from his service in *France*, is succeeded in his command by *Thomas Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, who brings over with him a reinforcement of 5,000 men.

The Duke of *Bedford*'s design being to drive King *Charles* beyond the river *Loire*, and for that purpose to make himself master of all the places near it, the Earls of

Salisbury, *Suffolk*, &c. are commissioned to take all those places, which they accordingly perform; and then go and lay siege to the strong City of *Orleans*, round which they build 60 forts, to prevent succours being thrown in. *Ann. C. Reg. 7. August. Septemb.*

During this siege, the Earl of *Salisbury* being slain, the Earl of *Suffolk* takes the command of the army, and carries on the siege with great vigour. *Oct. 12. Nov. 3.*

The Duke of *Bedford* sending the besiegers a convoy of salt-fish, under a guard of seventeen hundred men, commanded by Sir *John Fastolf*, the *French* way-lay it; but they are defeated with the loss of near 600 men. This was called, *The Battle of Herrings*. 1429. *Feb. 12.*

King *Charles*, extremely disheartened at this defeat, offers to deliver up *Orleans* to the Duke of *Burgundy* in trust, but the *English* reject that proposal.

This project failing, he resolves to retire into *Dauphiné*, when a strange and sudden alteration happens in his affairs by the appearance of *Joan of Arc*, the Maid of *Orleans*, who, defeating the *English*, introduces a convoy into *Orleans*, and enters that City in triumph. *Apr. 29.*

She takes four, of the 6 forts, built by the *English* round *Orleans*, with a great slaughter of them, about 3,000 being slain. *May 4. 6, 7.*

The *English* not being able, after this, to carry on the siege, they raise it, after it had continued seven months, and retire in great disorder. *May 12.*

From this time the *English* affairs began to decline in *France*, and they seemed to have lost all courage and discretion; amusing themselves with throwing numerous garrisons into the places lately conquered, instead of keeping their forces together, and making a brave resistance against the enemy.

The quarrel is renewed between the Duke of *Gloucester* and the Bishop of *Winchester*.

The Bishop is appointed by the Pope General of a Crusade against the *Hussites*, and raises troops for that purpose; but they being wanted in *France*, he engages to lend them till *December*. *June.*

Michael de la Pole, Earl of *Suffolk*, shutting himself up in *Gergeau*, with 400 men, is made prisoner there. *June 12.*

The *English* are defeated at the battle of *Patay*, with the loss of about 1,800 men, and the Lord *Talbot* is taken prisoner, Sir *John Fastolf* running away with the flying troops; whereupon the Duke of *Bedford* shuts himself up in *Paris*.

King *Charles*, seeing his affairs in so prosperous a condition, *Reg. 8.*

Ann. C. tion, resolves to become master of *Rheims*; so marching thither, and taking *Auxerre*, *Troye*, and other places in his way, he enters *Rheims* in triumph *July* 6, and is crowned there *July* 8.

He sends the Constable into *Normandy*, and Troops in *Guienne*, to make diversions there. And himself carries on his conquests with prodigious rapidity.

The Duke of *Bedford*, having received Supplies from *England*, marches against the *French*; but the two armies, after facing one another for two days, part without fighting: And King *Charles* carries on his conquests with great rapidity, whilst the Duke of *Bedford* marches to the relief of *Normandy*.

King *Charles* makes a fruitless attempt upon *Paris*, in which *Joan of Arc* was wounded.

Sept. 22. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King a tenth, and a fifteenth; and continues the subsidy of wools, and tunnage and poundage, as before.

Nov. 6. King *Henry* is crowned at *Westminster*, and the Protectorship suppressed.

1430. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which continues tun-
Jan. 12. nage and poundage for two years; and grants a subsidy from Merchant-Strangers; as also a tenth, and a fifteenth, and a third of both; and 20 *s.* from every Knight's-fee, or from every 20 *l.* a year in land.

Great complaints and murmurings are made in *England* upon the turn of affairs in *France*.

Apr. 24. King *Henry* goes to *France*, and is crowned at *Paris*.

Dec. 17. The Duke of *Bedford* secures the Duke of *Burgundy* in
Reg. 9. the Alliance of *England*, by delivering up to him *Champagne* and *la Brie*; and, obtaining an aid from him, takes several places in the Isle of *France*.

The Duke of *Burgundy* entering *France* at the head of a powerful army, retakes some places, and lays siege to *Compiegne*; out of which town *Joan*, the Maid of *Orleans*, making a sally, is taken prisoner, and delivered up to the
May 25. Duke of *Bedford*.

Boussac and *Xaintrailles* being led into an ambush by a shepherd, are defeated, and *Xaintrailles* is taken prisoner.

Decemb. A five years truce is concluded betweed *England* and *Scotland*.

1431. *Joan of Arc*, the Maid of *Orleans*, is tried for a witch, and condemned to perpetual imprisonment; and afterwards,
May 30. under pretence of a relapse, is burnt alive, at *Roan*.

Several

Several places on both sides are taken by the *French* and *Ann. O.* the *English*. *Reg.* 10.

An attempt is made by the Duke of *Gloucester* to deprive *Nov.* 6. the Bishop of *Winchester* of his See, but that affair is put off by the Council.

King *Henry* returns to *England*. 1432.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which continues the *Feb.* 21. subsidy of wools, and tunnage and poundage, and grants *May* 12. the King half a tenth, and half a fifteenth, but releases the 6 *d.* in the pound set upon foreign Merchants.

The Duke of *Gloucester* endeavours to prove the Cardinal of *Winchester* guilty of High-treason, but he is acquitted by the Parliament; which petition the King to grant him a full pardon for whatever he had done contrary to the laws, especially the statute of Provisors. *Reg.* 11.

The *French* take *Lagni*, which is three times besieged in vain by the *English*. They also make themselves masters of *Montargis*, as the *English* do of *La Hire*.

Ann of *Burgundy*, Duchess of *Bedford*, dies, and was buried at the *Celestines* at *Paris*. The *March* ensuing, the *Nov.* 14. Duke marries *Jaquelina* of *Luxemburgh*, daughter of *Peter* of *Luxemburgh*, Earl of *St. Pol*, at which the Duke of *Burgundy* is extremely offended.

Ambassadors are sent from *England* to the Council of *Basil*.

Sixty thousand peasants raise an insurrection in *Normandy*, 1433. but they are soon quelled by the Earl of *Arundel*.

The Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Bedford* have an interview *April.* at *St. Omer*; but an unhappy dispute about precedency hinders their reconciliation, and causes them to part, extremely incensed with each other.

The Duke of *Burgundy* takes *St. Valery*, *Ham*, *Laon*, and *Provins*, from the *French*.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the *July* 8. King a tenth, and a fifteenth, 3 *s.* on every tun of wine, *Reg.* 12. 1 *s.* in the pound of all merchandizes sold for two years, and a subsidy of 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* of every sack of wool, for three years.

The Duke of *Orleans*, a prisoner in *England*, offers to mediate a peace between the *English* and *French*; and, tho' he acted not sincerely, his mediation is accepted.

The war into *France* degenerates into real plundering and 1434. robbing, only small bodies acting on either side.

A body of *English* is defeated near *Beauvais*, and their *May.* Com- *Reg.* 13.

Ann. C. Commander, *John Fitz-Alan*, Earl of *Arundel*, mortally wounded.

The Lord *Talbot* arrives from *England* with a reinforcement of 800 men at arms, and retakes several places from the *French*.

1435. *Aug.* 6. A Congress is held at *Arras* between the Plenipotentiaries of *England* and *France*, wherein the *French* offer King *Henry* *Normandy* and *Guienne*, provided he would quit the title of King of *France*, and do homage for those two Provinces; but the *English* Ambassadors rejecting those proposals with indignation, the Conferences are broke up, after they had lasted about a month.

Rg. 14. *Sept.* 6. — 21. *Philip*, Duke of *Burgundy*, having beforehand resolved to break with the *English*, and been absolved by the Pope of his oaths to King *Henry* V. and VI, makes a separate peace with *France*, which makes a great alteration in the affairs of the *English* for the worse.

They apply themselves entirely to preserve *Normandy* and *Paris*, and in the mean time lose *St. Denis*, *Pontoise*, *Melun*, *Epernay*, and many other places.

Sept. 14. *John Plantagenet*, Duke of *Bedford*, and Regent of *France*, dies, and was buried in the Church of *Nostre-Dame* at *Roan*.

He is succeeded in the Regency of *France*, by *Richard Plantagenet*, Duke of *York*; but, through the intrigues of *Edmund*, Earl of *Mortagne*, who aspired to the same dignity, his patent is deferred till *July* 16, 1437, which proves very prejudicial to the affairs of *England*.

Oct. 10. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King a tenth, and a fifteenth, tunnage and poundage for two years; and 1*l.* 13*s.* 4*d.* of Denizens, and 2*l.* 6*s.* 8*d.* of Aliens, for every sack of wool; as also 6*d.* in the pound out of every estate worth above 5*l.* a year.

1436. *Jan.* 21. Another Parliament meets at *Westminster*, the beginning of this year, which grants a tenth, and a fifteenth, and continues the subsidy of wools for three years.

The Duke of *Burgundy* sends two Heralds to *England* to excuse his late proceedings, and to offer his mediation; but his Heralds are received with indignity, and all his subjects in *London* had like to be torn to pieces by the populace:

May. Whereupon he sends the *French* 500 lances, under the command of the Earl of *Lalain*, and thereby declares against *England*.

Apr. 13. The *French* make themselves masters of *Paris*, after the *English* had held it 17 years.

England being extremely desirous of a peace, gives the Duke

Duke of *York* instructions, and full power, to treat of a *Ann. C.*
peace, if he saw any appearance of success.

The Duke goes to *France*, and landing 8000 men in *Normandy*, retakes many places that had been seized by the *French*.

The Duke of *Burgundy* lays siege to *Calais* with an army of 50,000 men; but the Duke of *Gloucester* being sent to the relief of it with 15,000 men, the Duke of *Burgundy* raises in great disorder. *June. July* 27. *Reg.* 15.

Lewis, the Dauphin, marries *Margaret*, daughter of *James* I, King of *Scotland*.

Catharine of *France*, Queen Dowager of *Henry* V, dies at *Bermondsey*, and was buried in *Westminster-Abbey*. In 1427, she took to her second husband *Owen Tudor*, a *Welsh* Gentleman, by whom she had *Edmund*, *Jasper*, and *Owen*; whereof, *Edmund* marrying *Margaret*, only daughter of *John Beaufort*, Duke of *Somerset*, had by her King *Henry* VII. 1437. *Jan.* 3.

Jaqueline of *Luxemburgh*, the Duke of *Bedford*'s widow, marries Sir *Richard Woodville*, father of *Elizabeth*, King *Edward* the IVth's Queen.

James I, King of *Scotland*, being murdered in his bed, is succeeded by his son, *James* II, who was but seven years of age. *Feb.* 19.

Richard de Beauchamp, Earl of *Warwick*, is appointed Regent of *France*, in the Duke of *York*'s room.

The Lord *Talbot* takes *Pontoise*, and the *French* burn *Dreux* and *Chartreuse*. King *Charles* being roused by the Duke of *Burgundy*, heads his army, and goes and makes himself master of *Montereau*; whilst the Duke lays siege to *Crotoy*, but he is forced by *Talbot* to raise it with disgrace. *February. October.*

Joan of Navarre, relict of King *Henry* IV, dies, and was buried in *Canterbury* Cathedral, by the King, her husband. *July* 10. *Reg.* 16.

The Cardinal of *Winchester* gains ground upon the Duke of *Gloucester*, and obtains a general pardon from the King.

A cruel famine and plague rage in *England* and *France*. 1438.

Surienne, Governor of *Mantargis*, sells that place to the *French*, and inconsiderable conquests are made on both sides.

The Duke of *Burgundy* makes a second attempt upon *Calais*, and endeavours to drown the town, but missing his aim, he raises the siege.

After several insults between the *English* and *Scotch* Nations, a nine years truce is concluded between them. *May. Reg.* 17.

The

Aur. C. 1439. The *French* take *Meaux*, and besiege *Avranche*; but are forced to raise the siege, by the Lord *Talbot*, who makes himself master of *Harfleur*; so that *Dieppe* was the only town in *Normandy*, that remained in the hands of the *French*.

April 30. *Richard de Beauchamp*, Earl of *Warwick*, and Regent of *France*, dies.

May. *July*. Through the mediation of the Dukes of *Bretagne* and *Orleans*, Negotiations are set on foot for a peace between the Crowns of *England* and *France*, and Conferences are accordingly held between *Calais* and *Graveling*: The *English* offer King *Charles* the Provinces beyond the *Loire*, on condition of homage; and the *French* propose, that their master remaining sole King of *France*, would resign *Guienne* and *Normandy* to King *Henry*, on condition of homage: But these terms are relished by neither side.

Reg. 18.

Nov. 12. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King a tenth, and a fifteenth and a half; the subsidy on every sack of wool, as before in the year 1435; tunnage and poundage, for which aliens were to pay 7 *s*. and 8 *d*. They also granted 16 *d*. from all aliens in the Kingdom, if householders; and if not, 6 *d*.

1440. *June*. *Novemb*. The Duke of *Orleans*, prisoner in *England* ever since the battle of *Azincourt*, is set at liberty, notwithstanding the Duke of *Gloucester*'s opposition, who enters a protestation against it.

July 2. *Richard* Duke of *York* is appointed again Regent of *France*, in the late Earl of *Warwick*'s room.

July 10. The Duke of *Burgundy* makes a truce with King *Henry*.

Reg. 19. A treaty is concluded between King *Henry* and the Duke of *Bretagne*, whereby they mutually engage, not to suffer any naval armaments to be made in their ports, to the detriment of each others subjects.

1441. A new Congress about a peace is appointed at *St. Omer*; but the *French* Ambassadors refuse to treat with the *English*, on pretence of their inferior quality.

May. *June*. *July*. The *French* take *Creil*, and lay siege to *Pontoise*; but the Lord *Talbot* throws in succours three several times, and the Duke of *York* coming with a reinforcement, obliges the *French* to raise the siege: This King *Charles* taking to be a great dishonour to him, returns, and vigorously exerting himself, takes the place by storm.

July. *Novemb*. *Reg*. 20. *Eleanor*, Duchess of *Gloucester*, being accused of witchcraft and treason, is condemned to do public penance three times, and then to be imprisoned for life.

Tartas in *Guienne* is besieged by the *English*, and capitulates to surrender, if not relieved within six months; but King *Charles* relieves it on the 24th of *June*, and makes himself master of *St. Sever*, *Acs*, and other places in *Guienne*. *Ann. C.* 1442. *January.*

A Parliament is held at *Westminster*. — 25.

The Earl of *Armagnac* being disgusted by the Court of *France*, offers one of his daughters in marriage to King *Henry*; which offer is accepted.

John Lord *Talbot*, now created Earl of *Shrewsbury*, being sent into *France* with 5000 men, in order to make a diversion, takes *Conches* in *Normandy*, and blocks up *Dieppe*. *Reg.* 21.

John V, Duke of *Bretagne*, dies, and is succeeded by his eldest son *Francis*. *Aug.* 28.

The Duke of *Gloucester* exhibits 24 articles of accusation to the Council, against the Cardinal of *Winchester*, but the King grants him a pardon; and the good Duke's interest declines more and more.

A general truce is concluded between *England* and *Burgundy*, till one of the parties should put an end to it. 1443. *Apr.* 23.

The *French* raise the blockade of *Dieppe*, after it had continued eight months.

The Earl of *Armagnac* being dispossessed of his territories by the Dauphin, the Council of *England* quit all thoughts of marrying King *Henry* to one of his daughters. *Reg.* 22.

Sir *John Cornwall*, Baron of *Fanhope*, a brave Officer, dies. *Dec.* 1.

Henry Chichely, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and Founder of *All-Souls-College* at *Oxford*, died this year, and was succeeded by *John Stafford*.

Through the Duke of *Burgundy*'s intercession, a truce is concluded at *Tours* between *England* and *France*, till *April* 1, 1446. 1444. *May* 28.

William de la Pole, Earl of *Suffolk*, head of the *English* ambassy at *Tours*, proposes a marriage between King *Henry*, and *Margaret*, daughter of *René* of *Anjou*, titular King of *Sicily*, *Naples*, and *Jerusalem*; and instead of demanding any portion with her, agrees to deliver up the whole Province of *Maine* to her father, the King of *Sicily*.

The Duke of *Gloucester* strenuously opposes this match, which proves the cause of his ruin. *Reg.* 23.

The marriage is solemnized at *Tours* by proxy, the Earl of *Suffolk* being King *Henry*'s proxy. *Novemb*

A seven years truce is concluded between *England* and *Scotland*.

A Par-

Ann. C. 1445. *Feb.* 25. A Parliament is held at *Westminster*, which grants the King a tenth and a half, and a fifteenth and a half; tonnage and poundage, double on Aliens: And gives a subsidy of 1*l.* 14*s.* 4*d.* on Denizens, and 2*l.* 13*s.* on Aliens for every sack of wool, for four years.

April. Queen *Margaret* comes to *England*, and is married in the Abbey of *Tichfield*, on *April* 22. Then coming to *London*, she was crowned at *Westminster*, *May* 30.

Reg. 24. The Queen, the Marquiss of *Suffolk*, Cardinal of *Winchester*, and Archbishop of *York*, form a league against the Duke of *Gloucester*.

The truce between *England* and *France* is prolonged, at several times, till *April* 1, 1449.

1446. *Richard*, Duke of *York* is appointed Regent of *France* for five years longer; but, through the intrigues of his enemies, he is removed, and *Edmund Beaufort*, Earl of *Somerset*, put in his place.

Jan. 24. The Parliament, which had been prorogued to the beginning of this year, meeting again at *Westminster*, returns the Marquiss of *Suffolk* thanks, for his pains and diligence in concluding the truce and marriage, and grants him a fifteenth for the charges of his embassy.

Reg. 25. The Queen and Court-party contrive the Duke of *Gloucester*'s ruin; and, removing him from the Council, cause him to be accused, of having put criminals to another sort of death than the law of the land had ordered; but he fully vindicates himself.

1447. *Feb.* 10, 11. His ruin being determined, a Parliament is summoned to meet at *Cambridge*, and afterwards at *St. Edmundsbury*; where the Duke repairing, he is apprehended, and confined, but was the next night found dead in his bed, and exposed to public view, as though he had died a natural death. His body was buried in the Abbey-Church at *St. Albans*.

He laid the first foundation of the public Library at *Oxford*.

Thirty-two of the Duke of *Gloucester*'s chief domestics are accused of treason, and imprisoned; five of whom only being arraigned and condemned, are drawn to *Tyburn*, but a pardon is there brought for them all.

Such was the end of *Humphrey Plantagenet*, Duke of *Gloucester*; whose death made room for the Duke of *York* to aspire to the Crown, and was the cause of the subsequent miseries, as bringing an universal odium upon the Queen and her Ministers.

Henry

Henry Beaufort, Cardinal, and Bishop of *Winchester*, dies, having been fifty years a Bishop. *Ann. C. Apr.* 11.

The truce between *England* and *Burgundy* is prolonged till 1459.

The *English* murmur against the Marquiss of *Suffolk*; who, to vindicate his conduct, gives an account of all his proceedings, and thereupon receives Letters Patents, whereby he was acquitted from all imputation of misdemeanor. *Reg.* 26.

The people are very uneasy at the Queen's assuming the Government; and, spreading disadvantageous reports of her, on account of her intimacy with the Marquiss of *Suffolk*, begin to talk of the Duke of *York*'s title to the Crown; who, by his mother, *Ann*, sole heiress of the House of *March*, and great grand-daughter of *Lionel*, third son of King *Edward* III, had a prior right to the family then on the Throne.

The Marquiss of *Suffolk* is loaded with honours, which the people are highly disgusted at. 1448.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants a tenth, and a fifteenth; tunnage and poundage for four years, with the addition of 3 *s.* tunnage from Aliens; and the subsidy of wools for four years: They also granted 1 *s.* 4 *d.* from every housholder that was an Alien, and 6 *d.* from every other person; moreover, 6 *s.* 8 *d.* of every Merchant-stranger, and 1 *s.* 8 *d.* of their Clerks. *Feb.* 14.

Maine is delivered up to *Charles* of *Anjou*.

Sir *Francis de Surienne* takes *Fougeres*, and makes several incursions into *Bretagne*, of which the Duke complaining to the King of *France*, it induces that ambitious Monarch to take the affair into his hands, in order to have an opportunity to break the truce, and renew the war with *England*. *Mar.* 15. — 24. *Reg.* 27.

Whilst King *Charles* was making great preparations, he amuses the *English* with fruitless Negotiations; and they are so stupid as not to prepare for their defence. 1449.

He takes several places in *Normandy*, *Beauvoisis*, and *Guienne*, in the Duke of *Bretagne*'s name, by way of reprisals for *Fougeres*. *May*, &c.

And at last entering *Normandy* with four armies, makes himself master of most of the towns in that Duchy; and invests *Roan*, with an army of 50,000 men, which is surrendered to him, soon after. *Oct.* 8. — 19.

The truce between *England* and *Scotland* is renewed, after some interruptions, being to last till *Sept.* 20, 1450. *July* 8.

Ann. C. Reg. 28. A Rebellion happening in *Ireland*, the Duke of *York* is sent thither with very few forces, in order to put him out of the way, the Court being jealous of him; but, by his mild and gentle behaviour, he restores the *Irish* to their duty, without being obliged to use force; and so wins upon them, that they remained, ever after, attached to himself and his family.

1450. From this period may be dated the beginning of the wars between the Houses of *Lancaster*, and *York*; which usher in grievous complaints of the people against the Duke of *Suffolk*, and the Queen, for the loss of *Normandy*, the delivery of *Maine*, the Duke of *Gloucester*'s death, &c.

Jan. 22. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which grants the King 6 *d.* from every person worth from 20 *s.* to 20 *l.* from persons worth from 20 *l.* to 200 *l.* 12 *d.* in the pound: And all above that, to pay 2 *s.* in the pound.

Feb. 7. In this Parliament, several articles of accusation are exhibited against the Duke of *Suffolk*, who is thereupon committed to the *Tower*; but he is released, after a month's confinement, and resumes his old post at Court.

Mar. 9. The news of his release causes a sedition in *Kent*, headed by *Thomas Thany*, a Fuller, sirnamed *Blue-beard*; but the ringleaders being apprehended and executed, the sedition is stifled in its birth.

The Parliament being adjourned to *Leicester*, the King, Queen, and Duke of *Suffolk*, repair thither in great state. The Commons, not forgetting their old grudge against the Duke, petition, that the persons concerned in the delivery of *Anjou* and *Maine*, particularly the said Duke, might be punished; so the King, to pacify them, banishes him for five years, and removes *James Fynes*, Lord *Say*, High-Treasurer, and the rest of his Creatures.

Apr. 29.

The Duke immediately embarks for *France*, but being met at sea by a ship belonging to the Duke of *Exeter*, Constable of the *Tower*, he is brought into *Dover* road, where his head was struck off on the side of a cock-boat. Such was the end of *William de la Pole*, Duke of *Suffolk*.

May 2.

The Duke of *York* being freed from so powerful an enemy as the Duke of *Suffolk*, aspires to the Crown, and imploys some of his friends to sound the people's inclinations.

In the mean time, the war continues in *Normandy* to the disadvantage of the *English*, and a reinforcement of 3000 men being sent to the Duke of *Somerset*, under the command

mand of Sir *Thomas Kiriel*, are totally defeated by the *French*, at the battle of *Fourmigni*. *Ann. C.*

By the Duke of *York*'s instigation, *Jack Cade*, an *Irishman*, assumes the name of *John Mortimer*, and, coming to *Kent*, draws together great numbers of Malecontents, who advancing towards *London*, incamp on *Black-heath*, and present two petitions to the Parliament. The King marching against them, they retire near *Sevenoak*, and, laying in ambush, cut in pieces a detachment sent against them by the King, who was returned to *London*. *May.*

Cade marches back to *London*, which opening her gates to him, he seizes the Lord *Say*, and beheads him; but a quarrel happening between his Followers and the Citizens, and a general pardon being published, he soon finds himself deserted by all; whereupon, retiring into *Sussex*, he was there slain by *Alexander Iden*, and his body being brought to *London*, is quartered. *July 7.*

The *French* make themselves masters of *Caen*, and other places in *Normandy*, and in two campains conquer that whole Duchy. *June. August.*

Reg. 29.

A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which petitioning the King against the Duke of *Somerset*, he is committed to the *Tower*, and his Palace is plundered; but as soon as the Parliament was up, he is released, and made Prime-Minister. *Nov.* 6.

The *French* entering *Guienne* with an army of 40,000 men, make themselves masters of that whole Province. 1451. *April.*

Richard, Duke of *York*, being about to return from *Ireland*, the Court, which was very jealous of him, sends orders to the Sheriffs of *Wales*, *Shropshire*, and *Cheshire*, to oppose his landing; but he comes over, and lands, notwithstanding. *August.*

Then repairing to *London*, he concerts measures with his friends (the chief of whom were *John Mowbray*, Duke of *Norfolk*, *Richard Nevil*, Earl of *Salisbury*, and his son, *Thomas Courtney*, Earl of *Devonshire*, and *Edward Brook*, Lord *Cobham*) amongst whom it is agreed, That the Duke of *York* should retire into *Wales*, and privately raise an army.

Accordingly, he goes into *Wales*, and writes from thence a letter to the King, wherein he advises him to reform the Government, and to bring the guilty to justice, particularly the Duke of *Somerset*; but the King disappoints him in his designs, by returning him a mild answer.

Ann. C. 1452. *February.* However, the Duke takes up arms, and hearing that the King was advancing towards *Wales* with an army, he marches towards *London*, taking care to avoid the King's forces; but when he appeared before *London*, he found, to his great mortification, the gates shut against him; so, passing the *Thames* at *Kingston*, he goes and incamps on *Burnt-Heath*, and the King following him, pitches his camp on *Black-Heath*.

The King sends persons, to enquire of the Duke, Why he had taken arms? Who answers, That he was ready to lay down his arms, if the Duke of *Somerset* was put in safe custody, and brought to answer in the next Parliament.

Mar. 1. Being taken at his word, he dismisses his troops, and comes to Court, and accuses the Duke of *Somerset*, who stepping forth from behind the hangings, where he was concealed, accuses the other of aspiring to the Crown; whereupon the Duke of *York* is apprehended, but soon after set again at liberty, and, taking an oath to the King, retires to his Castle of *Wigmore*. — 10.

Reg. 31. *Oct.* 18. The *Gascons* offering to return to the obedience of the King of *England*, *John Talbot*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, sails over with about 5000 men, and recovers *Bourdeaux*, and other places in *Guienne*.

Mar. 17. A Parliament is held at *Reading*, which grants the King a tenth and a half, and a fifteenth and a half; tunnage and poundage during life; 23 *s.* and 4 *d.* of every sack of wool, of Denizens, and 5 *l.* of Aliens: Of every alien Merchant, who was an housholder 40 *s.* Of every foreign Merchant, that should remain within the Realm but six weeks, 20 *s.* And of every Merchant-alien, being no Denizen, 6 *l.* 13 *s.* and 4 *d.* yearly, during the King's life.

1453. *July* 7. *July.* The *English* are defeated by the *French* near *Bourdeaux*, and the brave Earl of *Shrewsbury*, with Sir *John Talbot* his son, are slain.

October. *Reg.* 32. The *French* make themselves masters of all *Guienne*; so that of all the *English* conquests in *France*, there remained only *Calais* and *Guisnes*.

Oct. 13. *Edward*, the King's son, is born.

Decemb. *John Kempe*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, dies, and was succeeded by *Henry Bourchier*.

1454. The Duke of *York* engages *Richard Nevil*, Earl of *Salisbury*, and his son *Richard* Earl of *Warwick* into his plot of dethroning the King.

The

The Queen is persuaded by the Duke of *York*'s friends, who pretended to be of the Court-party, to take the said Duke, with the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*, and other of the most popular Lords, into the Council: Which as soon as it is done, they engross the whole power to themselves, and arresting the Duke of *Somerset* in the Queen's Bed-chamber, send him to the *Tower*. *Ann. C.*

The Parliament meeting again, according to its prorogation, the Commons send to the House of Lords an accusation against the Duke of *Somerset*, for the loss of *Normandy*, &c. *Feb.* 11.

The Great Seal is given to the Earl of *Salisbury*. And the next day the Duke of *York* is appointed by the Parliament Protector of the Realm, Defender of the Church, and first Counsellor of the King: And is also made Governor of *Calais*, in the Duke of *Somerset*'s room. *Apr.* 2. — 3. *Reg.* 33.

The King, who had been long indisposed, recovering from his illness, resumes his authority, and releases the Duke of *Somerset*. 1455. *Feb.* 5.

The Dukes of *York* and *Somerset* put their quarrels to arbitration.

Richard Duke of *York* is removed from the Government of *Calais*, which is conferred again upon the Duke of *Somerset*.

Thereupon he withdraws from Court, and retires into *Wales*; where levying an army of about 3000 men, he marches towards *London*; but the King advancing against him, with about 2000 men, the two armies meet at *St. Albans*, where was fought the first battle between the Houses of *Lancaster* and *York*. *May* 23.

The King's army is defeated, with the loss of 800 men; among which were, *Edmund Beaufort* Duke of *Somerset*, *Henry Percy* Earl of *Northumberland*, &c. The Duke of *York* lost about 600 men.

The King being wounded in the neck with an arrow, falls into the hands of the Duke of *York*, who treats him with respect, and conducts him to *London*.

A Parliament meeting soon after, condemns the Queen's, and the Duke of *Somerset*'s, management, and acquits the Duke of *York*, and his Adherents, of Rebellion. *July* 9. *Reg.* 34. *Novemb.*

The Duke of *York* is appointed Protector, with a salary of 4000 marks.

Ann. C. 1456. *Feb.* 25. The King being recovered from his indisposition, the Duke of *York*, who lived in an amazing security, is removed from the Protectorship, and withdraws from Court, with the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*.

May. *Reg.* 35. A sedition happening at *London*, the Queen, who was afraid it was raised by the *Yorkists*, carries the King to *Coventry*; and tries to intrap the Duke of *York*, and the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*, by sending them letters under the Privy-Seal, requiring their presence at Court; but they, warned of their danger, retire; the Duke of *York* to *Wigmore*, the Earl of *Salisbury* to *Middleham*, and the Earl of *Warwick* to *Calais*.

1457. *August.* Two *French* fleets invade the coasts of *England*, and plunder *Sandwich*, and *Fowye*, &c.

Reg. 36. The *Scots* also enter *Northumberland*, and burn a few houses, but are repulsed by the Duke of *York*; and the truce between *England* and *Scotland* is renewed for one year, and prolonged afterwards to *July* 6, 1463.

1458. *January.* *April* 3. — 5. The Court sending the Duke of *York* an offer of a sincere reconciliation, the Duke and his Friends repair to *London*, and both parties are outwardly reconciled: For which there is a public thanksgiving, with a solemn procession to *St. Paul*'s Church.

The Duke of *York* and his Friends are re-admitted into the Council.

But, soon after, being afraid of some treachery, they withdraw from Court on divers pretences.

June. *Reg.* 37. *Nov.* 9. The Earl of *Warwick* having seized some foreign ships, as Admiral of the *Channel*, is forced to come to *England*, to answer for that action; but, one day, as he was at the Council, a quarrel arising between His and the King's servants, he is assaulted at his coming out, and like to be killed; and the King orders him to be arrested, and sent to the *Tower*, but he escapes.

Incensed at this affront, he goes and complains to his father, and the Duke of *York*, who take measures to execute their projects; whilst the Earl of *Warwick* returns to *Calais*, to secure that place.

1459. The Duke of *York* goes and levies an army in *Wales*; and, in the mean time, the Earl of *Salisbury* advances towards the Court, at the head of 5000 men, to demand satisfaction for the injury done to his son; but *James Tuchet* Lord *Audley* marching against him with 10,000 men, both

armies meet and engage on *Blore-heath* in *Shropshire*, and the Lord *Audley* is defeated and slain, with 2400 men besides. *Ann. C. Sept.* 23.

After this victory, the Earl of *Salisbury* goes and joins the Duke of *York*, and the Earl of *Warwick* repairs also to him, bringing him part of the garrison of *Calais*, commanded by Sir *Andrew Trollop*.

The King, in the mean time, having assembled together a large army, marches towards the Malecontents, who were incamped about *Ludlow*; and sending them an offer of pardon, great numbers accept of it; so that the Malecontents Leaders being deserted by their troops, are forced to fly, the Duke of *York* to *Ireland*, and the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*, with *Edward* Earl of *March*, to *Calais*. *Reg.* 38.

A Parliament meets at *Coventry*, wherein the Duke of *York*, and his Adherents, are attainted, and their estates are confiscated. *Nov.* 20.

The Duke of *Somerset* being appointed Governor of *Calais* in the Earl of *Warwick*'s room, goes with a body of troops to take possession of that place, but he is repulsed by the garrison, and forced to retire to *Guisnes*: And, moreover, the Queen having equipped a fleet, to transport succours to him, they are carried off to *Calais*, by the Earl of *Warwick*'s management. 1460.

With these ships, the Earl of *Warwick* goes to *Ireland*, and concerts measures with the Duke of *York*, who was there.

A Commission having been granted by the King, to *James Butler*, Earl of *Wiltshire*, and *Thomas*, Lord *Scales*, to make a strict search in all Counties and Towns, for the Duke of *York*'s Adherents, the inhabitants of *Kent*, who had most openly declared for him, invite over the *Yorkist* Lords, who had taken refuge at *Calais*.

They send *William Nevil*, Lord *Falconbridge* before, to sound the inhabitants, who sending back word to *Calais*, how well the people stood affected, they send the Duke of *York* word of their designs, and publishing a manifesto, embark for *England*, and arrive at *Sandwich* with 1500 men. *June.*

Their army soon increasing to 40,000 men, they are admitted into *London*, and the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, with the Bishops of *London*, *Lincoln*, *Ely*, and *Exeter*, declare for them. *July* 2.

Ann. C. In the mean time, the Queen, who was at *Coventry*, having assembled the Royal forces together, marches towards *London*; and *Edward*, Earl of *March*, goes out to meet her, with 25,000 men, resolved to give her battle, leaving the rest of his forces at *London*.

July 9. The two armies meeting near *Northampton*, a bloody battle is fought, wherein the Royal army was defeated, with the loss of 10,000 men, and, among the rest, *Humphrey Strafford*, Duke of *Buckingham*, *John Talbot*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, *John de Beaumont*, the first Viscount in *England*, &c.

The King being taken by the conquerors, is treated with
July 16. respect, and conducted to *London*.

As for the Queen, she flies first, with her son, the Prince of *Wales*, and the Duke of *Somerset*, into the Bishopric of *Durham*, then to *Harden* Castle, in *Wales*, and at last retires into *Scotland*.

James II, King of *Scotland*, enters *England* at the head
Aug. 4. of an army, and besieges *Roxburgh* Castle, but he is killed
Reg. 39. by the splitting of a cannon.

Oct. 7. A Parliament meets at *Westminster*, which repeals and annuls the proceedings of the last Parliament, held at *Coventry*.

The Duke of *York*, being come over from *Ireland*, goes to the House of Lords, where, standing for some time under the Canopy of State, with his hand on the Throne, he expects to be asked to seat himself thereon, but he is disappointed.

Oct. 16. So he sends a writing to the Parliament, to justify his right and claim to the Crown of *England*; and, after several debates, it is decreed, That King *Henry* should enjoy the Crown, during life, and the Duke of *York* be declared his Successor.

Nov. 1. For joy of this Settlement, a Procession is made at St. *Paul's*; and, soon after, *Richard*, Duke of *York*, is proclaimed, by sound of trumpet, Heir apparent to the Crown, and Protector of the Realm.

By his advice, the King sends orders to the Queen to repair to him, with her son, the Prince of *Wales*; but she, instead of obeying, draws together, in the North, an army of 22,000 men.

The Duke of *York*, having committed the King to the
Dec. 2. care of the Duke of *Norfolk* and Earl of *Warwick*, marches from

from *London* with about 5000 men, ordering his eldest son, *Edward*, to follow him with the rest of the army; and, being come to *Wakefield*, goes and shuts himself up in his Castle of *Sandale*, till the rest of the army should come up. *Ann. C.* 24.

But the Queen defying and abusing him, he is so imprudent as to come out, notwithstanding the disproportion of his forces; and so the two armies engaging, the Duke is defeated and slain, with 2200 of his men. And *Richard Nevil*, Earl of *Salisbury*, being taken prisoner, is beheaded at *Pontefract*. Such was the success of the battle of *Wakefield*, and such the end of *Richard Plantagenet* Duke of *York*. 31.

His son, *Edward* Earl of *March*, who was then at *Gloucester*, hearing of his father's misfortune, resolves to maintain the quarrel, and with an army of 23,000 men, goes in quest of the Queen; she, in the mean time, advances towards *London*, sending *Jasper Tudor*, Earl of *Pembroke*, to make head against the young Duke of *York*, but *Tudor* is defeated, near *Mortimer*'s Cross in *Herefordshire*, with the loss of 3800 men; and his father, *Owen Tudor*, being taken, is beheaded, with several others. 1461. *Feb.* 2.

The Queen continues her march towards *London*, and the Earl of *Warwick* coming out to fight her, is defeated, at *Bernard's-Heath* near *St. Albans*, with the loss of 2300 men. The King, who was in the *Yorkists* army, is freed by the Queen. *Feb.* 17.

Edward, Duke of *York*, advancing towards *London* with a numerous army, the Queen retires into the North; whereupon the Duke enters *London* in triumph. *Feb.* 28.

His friends resolving to place him on the Throne, he is elected, by a great Council of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal; and afterwards by the army and people. *March* 2.

Two days after, he goes in procession to *St. Paul's*, and thence is conducted to *Westminster-Hall*, where he sits in the King's seat, with *St. Edward's* Scepter in his hand; and after having received the homage of all the Nobles present, he is proclaimed King, by the name of *Edward* IV. *March* 4.

The Character *of* HENRY VI.

Thus ended the Reign of *Henry* VI, after it had lasted 38 years, 6 months, and 3 days, without his ever intermedling with the administration of the publick affairs.

It

It does not even appear, that he was, upon any occasion, much moved with events; which however were, for the most part such as would affect a Prince of a different character. He was fitter for a private life, than a crown. His great and only defect was a natural imbecillity, which rendered him incapable to govern of himself. Ever ruled by those who managed the affairs in his name, his capacity reached not to see the consequences of the counsels given him, which to him seemed always good. Herein, he was different from the King his Father, whose genius was always superior to that of his Ministers. As to the rest, he was chaste, temperate, extremely religious, abhorring injustice and cruelty. It was these virtues that have served for foundation to the praises bestowed on him by several historians, and which have made some consider him as a true Saint. Indeed, these virtues would have rendered him an accomplished Prince, had they been attended with the qualifications of a Sovereign. But being alone, they served only to make him an honest man, and withal, a very indifferent King, not to say worse. His incapacity rendered him contemptible to his subjects. But the innocency of his life, never suffered their contempt to turn into hatred.

During the first years of his Reign, his affairs were in a prosperous state, because they were managed by the Dukes of *Bedford* aud *Glocester* his uncles, Princes of great abilities, and who had his interest at heart. And, if even in their lifetime, his affairs began to decline, it may be said to be owing, not so much to their fault, as to some unforeseen accidents, which all the prudence in the world could not have prevented. After the death of the Duke of *Bedford*, *Henry* suffered himself to be governed by the Cardinal of *Winchester*, and the Duke of *Suffolk*; who, acting not by the same motives, and regarding only their own affairs, compleated his ruin. Afterwards, Queen *Margaret* by her uncommon abilities, might have restored his affairs, but the King's glory and the nation's interest, were the least in her thoughts. Her sole view, was to grasp all the power, and use the King's name to authorize her passions. The ministers she employed, were all of the same character. It is not therefore strange, that the King's affairs should run so swiftly into confusion. The death of the Duke of *Glocester*, will be an indelible stain in *Margaret*'s reputation, and, unhappily this crime reflected

ted but too much upon the King himself since he had not the resolution to oppose it, or punish the authors. Accordingly, it was manifest, that heaven took publick vengeance of this murder, by the civil wars which ensued, and which occasioned the ruin of the King, the Queen, the Prince, their Son, and the whole House of *Lancaster*.

Henry VI. was thirty-nine years and about a quarter old, when he was dispossessed of a Crown, which he had enjoyed almost from his very birth.

King *Henry* VI. by his Queen *Margaret* of *Anjou* had only one son named *Edward*.

In this Reign was found out the noble art of Printing.

An account of the MONEY *coined in this Reign.*

I. In this and the two foregoing Reigns, the Parliament was reformed in many particulars, as appears by the statutes. First, in point of elections, the Parliament 7 *Henry* IV. and (25 *Henry* VI.) ordained, "That the election "of Knights shall be at the next County-Court, after the "Writ delivered to the Sheriff, and that the names of "the persons elected shall be returned by indenture be-"between the Sheriff and the Electors." This the Sheriff was to do, under penalty of one hundred pounds, and a year's imprisonment, without bail or mainprise, besides damages for false returns, (11 *Henry* IV. 8 *Henry* VI. 23 *Henry* VI.) Thus the election was reduced, but the persons were not as yet, for hitherto any *Englishman* had right to give or receive a vote, wheresoever he resided. But (1 *Hen.* V.) (8 *Hen.* VI.) the Parliament reduced these also to their proper Counties, or else rendered them uncapable to vote or serve for any County: and the like order was made for the Burroughs, (23 *Heury* VI.) "That no person must "serve for any City or Burrough, nor give vote in electing "such as shall serve for that Town, unless they be both free "and Resiants within that City or Burrough." This was a seasonable law, for the times of *Henry* IV. had taught men, that a King that hath soldiers dispersed over the Kingdom, can easily sway the County-Courts, and make such Parliaments as they please. However, this was not

not enough: For all Electors though of the meanest sort, could do as much hurt by their vote, as those of the best sort could do good by theirs. This made elections much subject to confusions and parties, and rendered the Parliament less considerable. Hence (in 8 *Hen.* VI.) it was ordained, "That no man should give his vote in elections "in the County, unless he had forty shillings yearly in "free lands or tenements, and this is to be testifyed upon "oath of the party." And more plainly, two years after (10 *Hen.* VI.) it was ordered, "That the said "lands should be within the county." Thus the Freemen yielded up their liberty of election to the Freeholders, possibly not knowing what they did. But this change was no less good than great. 1st, It prevented parties, tumults, and bloodshed; for the Preface of the Statute shows, the meanest held himself as good a man, as the greatest in the County. 2dly, Where the multitude prevails, the meaner sort are superior; and these (generally ignorant,) cannot judge of persons, nor times; but being, for the most part led by faction or affection, rather than by right understanding, make such elections as are either inconvenient, or injurious to the state. 3dly, There is no less equity in the change than policy. For what can be more reasonable, than that those men only should have their votes in election of the Common-Council of the Kingdom, whose estates are chargeable with the publick taxes and assessments, and with the wages of those persons that are chosen for the publick service? But above all, this advancing of the Freeholders was beneficial to the Freemen of *England*, though perhaps they considered it not. First, It abated the power of the Lords and great men, who held the inferior sort at their devotion, and much of their possessions by their will. 2dly, It raised the spirit of the meaner sort to publick regards, and by a kind of ambition, to aspire to the degree of a Free-holder in order to be somewhat in the Commonwealth. And thus leaving the meanest rank, rack'd to the very dregs, they become less considerable, and more subject to the coercive power; whilst in the mean time, the Freeholder, now advanced to the degree of a Yeoman, becomes no less careful to maintain correspondency with the laws, than he was industrious to attain his degree. Lastly, to bind all the rest, a negative law was made, (23 *Henry* VI.) that the persons elected in the

 County

County, muſt not be of the degree of a Yeoman, but of the moſt noted Knights, Eſquires, or Gentlemen of the county, which tacitly implies, it was too common to advance thoſe of the meaner ſort. The perſon thus agreed upon, his entertainment muſt be accordingly; and therefore the manner of taxing in full County, and levying the rate of wages for their maintainance, is reformed and ſettled (23 *Hen.* VI:) and laſtly, Their perſons, are put under the protection of the law in an eſpecial manner; and a penal law is made (11 *Hen.* VI.) againſt force upon their perſons, either in going to, or attending the Parliament. Thus, even in theſe times of confuſion, a foundation was laid of a more uniform government in future times, than *England* hitherto had ſeen.

II. In the firſt year of *Henry* VI, a pound weight of gold, of the old ſtandard, was coined into forty-five Rials of ten ſhillings, or a proportionable number of Half-Rials, and Quarter, or Farthing Rials, at five ſhillings, and two ſhillings and ſix-pence. Theſe Rials give him crowned with an Imperial Crown, ſeated on the Throne, with a ſcepter and globe, inſcribed, HENRICUS. DEI. GRA. REX. ANGL. ET FRAN. DNS. HIB. Reverſe, the arms of *France* and *England*, quarterly, IHESUS. AVTEM. TRANSIENS. *&c.* (See *Fig.* 1.) By the ſame indenture, inſtead of Nobles, and half Nobles, were coined ſixty-ſeven and a half to the pound, Angels, at ſix ſhillings and eight-pence, or a proportionable number of Angelets, at three ſhillings and four-pence. Conſequently the pound Troy, was coined into twenty-two pounds ten ſhillings, by tale. The Angels were impreſſed with *Michael* and the Dragon, HENRIC. DI. GRA. REX. ANGL. Z. FRA. Reverſe, a ſhield, with the arms of *France* and *England* quartered, in a ſhip, having a croſs for a maſt, on one ſide the letter H, on the other the Roſe. PER. CRVCE. TVA. SALVA. NOS. XRE. RED. (See *Fig.* 2.) The *Salut* was a *French* coin, like his Father's, and very much reſembled the ſilver Groat, which he likewiſe coined in that Kingdom, ſaving that the Groats wanted the Angel and Virgin over the ſhield, and inſtead of CHRISTVS. VINCIT. had SIT NOMEN. DOMINI. BENEDICTVM. By the Indenture of the ſame firſt year of *Henry* VI, the ſilver money was of the old ſtandard, one hundred and twelve Groats to the pound, making

making in tale thirty-seven shillings and six-pence, or a proportionable number of Half-groats, Sterlings, Half-pence,

and Farthings. These are distinguished from all his Predecessors, by the Crown, he being the first of our Monarchs that bore the arched Crown, with globe and cross upon it. (See

(See *Fig.* 3.) These were most coined at *London*, but there were other Mints at *York*, *Bristol*, and *Dunwich*, *Dublin*, *Canterbury*, and at *York* with the Keys. The Half-penny has likewise the King's head very fair. H. D. G. ROSA. SIE. SPA. By Indenture, the 4th of this Reign, the value of gold was brought down again to sixteen pounds thirteen shillings and four-pence, and the silver to thirty shillings. By another Indenture of the last year of this Reign, it was raised again to thirty-seven shillings and six-pence, and so continued for near fifty years. In the thirty-seventh of this Reign, brass money was first coined in *Ireland*, but there is no perfect account from any Author that has ever seen it.

The NOBILITY created in this Reign, were as follows: *Ann. C.*

Richard Plantagenet, Earl of *March*. 1424.

——— Earl of *Rutland*, and Duke of *York*. *Jan.* 19. 1426.

Richard Nevil, Earl of *Salisbury*. 1428. *Nov.* 3.

John Cornwall, Baron *Fanhope*. 1432.

——— Baron of *Milbrooke*. *July* 17. 1433.

John Fitz-Alan (Earl of *Arundel*) Duke of *Touraine*. 1434.

Humphrey Strafford (Earl of *Strafford*) Earl of *Buckingham*.

——— Duke of *Buckingham*. 1444. *Sept.* 14.

John Beaumont, Earl of *Boulogne*. 1436. *July* 27.

——— Viscount *Beaumont*. 1439. *Feb.* 12.

William Phelip, Baron *Bardolf*. 1437.

Edmund Beaufort, Earl of *Dorset*. 1441. *Aug.* 28.

——— Marquiss of *Dorset*. 1443.

——— Duke of *Somerset*. 1447. *Sept.* 10.

Thomas Butler, Baron of *Sudeley*. 1442.

John Beaufort (Earl of *Somerset*) Duke of *Somerset*. *Jan.* 6.

John Holland (Earl of *Huntingdon*, and *Iurey*) Duke of *Exeter*.

John

Ann. C.

John Talbot (Baron *Talbot*) Earl of *Shrewsbury*.

1443. *William de la Pole*, Marquiss of *Suffolk*.
Sept. 14.

1448. ——— Duke of *Suffolk*.
June 2.

1444. *Henry Beauchamp*, Earl of *Warwick*.
April 2.

April 4. ——— Duke of *Warwick*.

July 26. *John Talbot*, Baron *Liste*.

1451. ——— Viscount *Liste*.
Oct. 30.

1446. *Henry Bourchier*, Viscount *Bourchier*.

May 2. *John Beauchamp*, Baron *Beauchamp* of *Powyke*.
John de Foix (Earl of *Longueville*) Earl of *Kendal*.

1448. *John Stourton*, Baron *Stourton*.
May 13.

May 29. *Richard Widville*, Baron *Rivers*.

1449. *Thomas de Hoo*, Baron *Hoo* and *Hasting*.
June 27.

July 8. *James Beteler* (Earl of *Ormond* in *Ireland*) Earl of *Wiltshire*.

July 17. *John Tiptoft*, Earl of *Worcester*.

July 23. *Richard Nevil* (Earl of *Salisbury*) Earl of *Warwick*.
Thomas Grey, Baron of *Rougemont-Grey*.
Thomas Percy, Baron *Egremont*.

1451. *John Mowbray*, Earl of *Warren* and *Surrey*.
Mar. 24.

1452. *Edmund Tudor* (of *Hadham*) Earl of *Richmond*.
Nov. 23.

Jasper Tudor (of *Hatfield*) Earl of *Pembroke*.

1458. *Richard Fienes*, Baron *Dacre*.

Knights of the Garter elected in the Reign of King HENRY VI.

John Talbot, Lord *Talbot*, afterwards Earl of *Shrewsbury*.
Thomas Scales, Lord *Scales*.
Sir *John Falstaffe*, Knight.
Peter Duke of *Conimbra*, third son of *John* I. King of *Portugal*.

Humphrey

Humphrey Strafford, Earl of *Strafford*, afterwards Duke of *Bucks*.

Sir *John Ratcliffe*, Knight.

John Fitz-Alan, Earl of *Arundel*, and Lord *Maltravers*.

Richard, Duke of *York*, the King's Lieutenant in *France* and *Normandy*.

Edward, King of *Portugal*.

Edmund Beaufort, Earl of *Morion*, afterwards Earl of *Dorset*, and Duke of *Somerset*.

Sir *John Grey*, Knight.

Richard Nevil, Earl of *Salisbury*, afterwards Lord Chancellor of *England*.

William Nevil, Lord *Falconbergh*, afterwards Earl of *Kent*.

Albert Duke of *Austria*, afterwards Emperor.

John Beaufort, Earl of *Somerset*, afterwards Duke of *Somerset*, and Earl of *Kendal*.

Ralph Butler, Lord *Sudley*, afterwards Lord Treasurer of *England*.

Henry, Duke of *Visco*, fourth son of *John* I. King of *Portugal*, afterwards King of *Portugal*.

John Beaumont, Viscount *Beaumont*.

Gaston de Foix, Earl of *Longueville* and *Benanges*, Captain *de Beuch*.

John de Foix, Earl of *Kendal*.

John Beauchamp, Lord *Beauchamp* of *Powick*, and afterwards Lord Treasurer of *England*.

Alphonsus, King of *Portugal*.

Albro Vasques d'Almada, Earl of *Avranches* in *Normandy*.

Thomas Hoo, Lord *Hoo*.

Sir *Francis Surien*, Knight.

Alphonsus, King of *Arragon*.

Casimir IV. King of *Poland*.

William, Duke of *Brunswick*.

Richard Widville, Lord *Rivers*, afterwards created Earl *Rivers*.

John Mowbray, Duke of *Norfolk*.

Henry of *Bourchier*, Viscount *Bourchier*, afterwards Lord Treasurer of *England*, and Earl of *Essex*.

Sir *Philip Wentworth*, Knight.

Sir *Edward Hall*, Knight.

Frederick III. Emperor of *Germany*.

John Talbot, Earl of *Shrewsbury*.

Lionel Wells, Lord *Wells*.

Thomas Stanley, Lord *Stanley*.
Edward, Prince of *Wales*.
Jasper, Earl of *Pembroke*, afterwards Duke of *Bedford*.
James Butler, Earl of *Wiltshire*.
John Sutton, Lord *Dudley*.
John Bourchier, Lord *Berners*.
Richard Nevil, Earl of *Warwick*.
William Bonvill, Lord *Bonvill*.
John Wenlock, Lord *Wenlock*.
Sir *Thomas Kyriell*, Knight.

End of VOL. I.

Directions to the Book-binder for placing the Heads, &c.

The HEADS of the KINGS to VOL. I.

MR. Rapin to face the Title-page.

Egbert,	Page 34
Alfred,	39
Canute,	56
William I,	72
William II,	87
Henry I,	96
Stephen,	108
Henry II,	124
Richard I,	143
John,	159
Henry III,	180
Edward I,	224
Edward II,	249
Edward III,	274
Edward Prince of Wales,	289
Richard II,	318
Henry IV,	340
Henry V,	355
Henry VI,	373

MONUMENTS of the KINGS to VOL. I.

Edward the Confessor,	Page 65
William I,	83
William II,	95
Henry II, and Richard I,	152
John,	173
Henry III,	208
Edward I,	239
Edward II.	262
Edward Prince of Wales,	296
Edward III,	301
Richard II, and Anne his Queen,	334
Henry IV,	353
Henry V, the brass-work first, and the Monument to face it, between	368 and 369

HEADS

HEADS of the KINGS to VOL. II.

MONUMENTS of the KINGS to VOL. II.

HEADS of the KINGS to VOL. III.

MONUMENTS of the KINGS to VOL. III.